RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

DISNEY PROFESSOR OF ARCHÆOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE; RECTOR OF COCKFIELD, SUFFOLK; LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

THE remainder of Higden's First Book, or Map of the World, is taken up with an account of England, and this is given in much more detail than any other, occupying in fact nearly a third of the whole book (capp. xxxix.–lx.).

Higden's account of England concludes his First Book.

In the thirty-ninth chapter he announces the ten divisions under which he proposes to treat of England, viz., its name, site, productions, marvels, principal divisions, adjacent islands, roads, rivers, cities, and counties. He then enlarges on the first of these, and notes that the island was originally called Albion, a name which he connects with the whiteness of its marine rocks, and afterwards Britannia, so called, according to Higden, from Brutus, the grandson of Æneas, in accordance with the Trojanising notions which held our medieval historians spell-bound.[1] Upon the Saxons or Angles conquering it, it obtained the name of Anglia, for which Higden gives more than one derivation,[2] not forgetting the jocularly pious etymology of Pope Gregory, recorded

Names of England.

[1] Dr. Lingard points out that Nennius says he extracted his history of Brutus "ex veteribus " scriptis veterum nostrorum;" which, as he observes, makes it older than Geoffrey or Tyssilio. *Hist. of Eng.* c. i. p. 14, note (6th ed., 1854). Some accounts make Brutus the great grandson of Æneas. See p. 442 of this volume.

[2] He refers to Isid. Hisp. *Etym.* lib. xv., as deriving Anglia "ab angulo orbis." The passage does not occur in that book, and I much doubt if Isidore gives any such derivation anywhere. But Higden's citations are so frequently inaccurate that I am compelled to say of his quotations and references generally, *Caveat lector.* (See vol. i. p. xxiii. note.) With regard to the derivation itself, Bede has led the way to it, who speaks of the native country of the Angli as "illa patria, quæ " Angulus dicitur." *Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. 15. According to a late Italian tradition, Anglus was a son of Ascanius. *Trés de Numism. et de Glypt. Méd. coul. et cis. en Italie.* vol. i. p. 2, Paris, 1834.

in Bede's well-known story.[1] He refers also to Solinus (c. 22), as well as to Alfred of Beverley,[2] for the importance of Britain, who speak of it as in a manner "another world."

Site and dimensions.

Higden next proceeds to speak of the site and dimensions of Britain in his fortieth chapter, and begins by defining its position nearly in the words of Pliny (lib. iv. c. 30, ed. Hard.[3]), to whom, as well as to Bede, he also refers for the duration of the longest day in Britain.[4] The length and breadth of the island are set down according to the estimates of Solinus and Alfred of Beverley,[5] and the circumference according to that of Bede; thus giving eight hundred miles for its length from the Land's End to the extremity of Caithness; two hundred miles for its breadth, measuring from St. David's to Yarmouth; and between three and four thousand for its outline.[6]

Natural productions.

The natural productions of the island are enumerated in the forty-first chapter. It is to be regretted that Higden, instead of stating facts which must have come within his own knowledge, should have done little else but remand us to the classical authors Pliny and Solinus, and to earlier medieval writers, as Isidore, Bede, William of Malmesbury, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon. There is little or nothing in their accounts of the animals, plants, and minerals of England to call for

[1] Lib. ii. c. 1. (Not lib. i., as Higden says.)

[2] I have failed to find the passages quoted.

[3] The MSS. both of the text and versions refer to lib. ii. c. 77, and this reference has been consequently allowed to stand in the edited text (p. 6). Higden does in fact quote from this book and chapter later on, p. 8, where he only gives *Plinius*.

[4] Pliny (lib. ii. c. 77) makes it xvii. hours, and so does his copyist, Marcianus Capella (see Hardouin's note); but Higden makes Pliny as well as Bede (lib. i. c. 1, not c. 11) say xviii. The MSS. of Bede appear to agree in xviii.

[5] Solinus, c. 22. I cannot discover the citation from Alfred in his *Annals*.

[6] The true greatest length is about 587 miles, and the true greatest breadth about 360 miles; the outline scarcely admits of satisfactory measurement. Bede excludes the tongues of the longer promontories.

remarks here.[1] Higden himself remarks principally on the richness of our ores, marbles, and other minerals; of our exports of wool to Flanders, of iron and lead to Gascony, of salt to Ireland, and of white metal (so Trevisa renders *æra nivea*) to all Europe.

An enumeration of some of the marvels of England follow, which may be passed over lightly (c. xlii.). They are principally derived from Alfred of Beverley,[2] Giraldus Cambrensis, and William of Malmesbury. Among the marvels are recounted various petrifying springs and windy caverns, while others are of a magical or supernatural character in connexion with lakes, mountains, and caves.[3] In conclusion it is observed that in no country are there more bodies of saints preserved from corruption than in England, as instanced in St. Ethelreda, St. Edmund, St. Elphege, and St. Cuthbert. Marvels.

In his forty-third chapter Higden gives an account of the principal parts of Britain, which are England, Wales, Principal divisions.

[1] The assertion of Isidore, which however I cannot find in his *Origines*, that wolves were scarce in Britain in his time, *i.e.* early in the seventh century, is somewhat surprising, when we remember how numerous they afterwards became in the reigns of Athelstan and Edgar. In Higden's own age they were, perhaps, scarcely extinct, in spite of the vigorous war of extermination waged against them by Edward the First.

[2] Alfr. Bev. *Ann.* lib. i. p. 6. (Ed. Hearne.) The names of places which are given here and elsewhere, require more topographical knowledge than I can claim to identify with their modern sites in all cases. One of these is Peccum or Pectum (p. 22), for the identity of *c* and *t* in the MSS. becomes, in cases like this, very embarrassing. As MS. C. has Pekkum, I had supposed in the note that some Peckham was intended, and there are three places bearing this name in Surrey and Kent. But in Henry of Huntingdon, lib. 1. (p. 694, *Mon. Hist. Brit.*) for Peccum we have "in monte qui "vocatur Pec," which strongly suggests the Peak of Derbyshire to be meant; and I have now very little doubt that this is so (see Mr. Dimock's glossary to Giraldus Cambrensis, vol. vi. p. 253). In the same place mention is made of one Cherdhole, or Sherdehoole, which only tends to mislead; but in Henry of Huntingdon the word is written Chederhole or Chedernhole, which leaves little doubt that at Cheddar in Somersetshire is to be sought the cavern described.

[3] The observation of Alfred that it is not clearly understood how or for what purpose Stonehenge was constructed is even now scarcely antiquated.

and Scotland. The ancient names of these he derives from three sons of Brutus; Loegria (England) from Locrinus; Cambria (Wales) from Camber; Albania (Scotland) from Albanactus. With the exception of a small extract from Bede's first book, Higden quotes no authorities in this chapter. The fountain-head however of much of what he says is no doubt Geoffrey of Monmouth. The chapter ends with a somewhat lengthy account of Offa's Dyke, which long separated England from Wales. We learn at the same time from the concluding sentence that in Higden's time Englishmen and Welshmen were found living together on both sides of the dyke, more particularly in Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire.

Adjacent islands.

He then proceeds to give some account (c. xliv.) of the principal islands adjacent to Britain, viz., the isles of Wight, Anglesey, and Man, which are described from Bede[1] and Giraldus Cambrensis;[2] a few observations about the Isle of Thanet being added from Bede.[3] He observes, apparently from his own knowledge, that various superstitions (as selling wind to sailors) prevailed in the Isle of Man.

The Four Royal Roads.

Higden's account of the Four great Royal Roads (c. xlv.) is more important, and has given rise to a good deal of discussion. He tells us, from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that Molmutius, king of the Britons, protected ploughs, temples of gods, and city roads by the privilege of refuge; and that in after times his son Belinus defined and reconstructed four royal roads,[4] which should

---

[1] Bed. *Hist. Eccl.* i. 3, ii. 9, iv. 16 (not 15, as Higden says).

[2] See Girald. Cambrens. *Itin. Camb.* ii. 7, 9. Top. Hib. ii. 15. (*Op.* vol. vi. pp. 127, 135; vol. v. p. 97 in this series.)

[3] The reference is to lib. ii., which is false. Lib. 1, c. 25, seems to be intended; but Higden has added sundry absurdities, which Bede has not.

[4] Geoffrey does not mention the names of the roads; his first road was probably the Foss road; "the "second, there can be doubt," says Dr. Guest, "was meant for the "Roman road which passed from "South Wales through Monmouth-"shire to Gloucester, and thence to "Winchester and Southampton." It is impossible to fix the identity of the others, as he thinks, beyond dispute. See Archæological Journal, No. 54.

have this privilege exclusively.[1] Higden defines these four to be, the Foss, Watling-street, Ermynge-street, and Rykenild-street, and he gives the course of them all. Dr. Guest speaks of Higden's account of the two roads, the Watling-street and the Foss, as (with some exceptions) accurate and important, and observes that "the "minute details into which he has entered, more par- "ticularly with respect to the Watling-street, are "extremely valuable." About the other roads, Erming-street and Rykenild-street, there is some difficulty and uncertainty, and the reader is referred to Dr. Guest's paper for a learned disquisition upon them.[2]

Rivers, cities, and shires.

Passing lightly over his account of the courses of the three famous rivers, the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber (c. xlvi.), as well as their political significance, taken principally from Alfred of Beverley and William of Malmesbury, we arrive at his enumeration and description of the ancient cities of Britain (capp. xlvii. and xlviii.). The sources from which he derived his information are not always set down;[3] but some parts of his account are taken from William of Malmesbury's work, De Pontificibus; from the Itinerary of Giraldus, and from Bede's Ecclesiastical History. He quotes likewise from Geoffrey of Monmouth and Alfred of Beverley. Upon the whole these chapters contain a good deal of interesting matter, especially what relates to the changes of names which certain towns and cities underwent.[4] The cities and

[1] The privilege was known in Norman times as *the King's peace.* Gal. Mon. lib. ii. c. 17; lib. iii. c. 5.

[2] It deserves attention that for *Rikenildstrete* one MS. of Higden has *Hikenilstrete.* It seems probable that Higden himself made a confusion between the Roman road called Rykeneld-street, passing through Warwickshire and Staffordshire (whose course may be seen in the map of *Britannia Romana* in the *Monumenta Historica* of Petrie) and the British trackway or Icknield-street, passing from Old Sarum towards Bury St. Edmund's.

[3] For his account of Gloucester, Lincoln, and Leicester (pp. 60, 62,) see Gal. Mon. iv. 15; ix. 3; ii. 11.

[4] His statements, however, must not be received implicitly. Thus he makes Brutus build a city Trinovantum, which Lud afterwards called Caerlud; and the Angles,

towns described are Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, York, Edinburgh, Alcluid (for whose identification the reader

still later, termed it Lundene; a form changed by the Normans into Loundres, and called in Latin Londonia (p. 56). It may be that Trinovantum or Augusta Trinobantum occupied the site of London; this opinion has been maintained, though not without doubts, by various scholars, from C. Stephens to our own time; but it was a great mistake in Higden to suppose that London is an English name, seeing that it occurs in slightly varied forms in Tacitus, Ptolemy, Eumenius, and Ammianus Marcellinus, as well as on Roman coins of the fourth century. But I now perceive that he was misled by Geoffrey of Monmouth (iii. 20), and Alfred of Beverley (i. p. 12). His account of Canterbury (p. 56) is substantially correct (setting aside Rudhudibras and his Caerkent), but Dorovernis, not Dorobernia, is the earliest medieval or English form of the word, as coins and charters prove beyond doubt (*Numism. Chron.* vol. iv. p. 120). Dorobernia was in use A.D. 790, as appears by a charter so dated, and continued so to be till about the middle of the tenth century, when we find Cantwara occurring on coins of Edgar. "Urbs "quæ nunc Cantuaria vocatur," says Lanfranc (Will. Malm. *Gest. Pont.* i. p. 207. Sav.), "antiquis "temporibus ab ipsius terræ in- "colis Dorobernia vocabatur." At what time however it first came into use for the name of Dover it would be interesting to know. It is, of course, older than Higden, but it may be suspected to be later than the Conquest. Florence of Worcester, at the beginning of the twelfth century, writes, "Doroberniam, id est, Cantuariorum "civitatem," (*Chron. s.*, A.D. 851), as though Dorobernia was then obsolete as a name of Canterbury; he calls Dover sometimes Dovera, sometimes Dorvernia (see *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index), as if no other place in Kent then bore such a name. Dorobernia is used for Dover by Henry of Huntingdon, lib. i. (p. 694. B. in *Mon. Hist. Brit.*), and Alfred of Beverley (p. 120). Dover, Dofera, Dofran, and Dofra are forms which occur on coins of Ethelred II. and Canute; and we have also Dofrenn and Dofre on those of Harold I. and William I. In the 14th century it was often called Dovorria. *Dugd. Monast.* iv. pp. 530–532, ed. Lond. 1823. In the Itinerary of Antoninus Canterbury and Dover are named Durovernum and Dubris respectively; so that the medieval or English names are, in fact, only modifications of the Roman names. Again, in what Higden says of Lincoln (p. 62), it is manifest that he was not aware that in Roman times it was called Lindum, before it was changed in medieval times into Lindecolinum. It would take up too much space to pursue Higden's topography farther. One of the more important sections is that which relates to Chester, which is in good part original, though to some extent taken from Gir. Cambr. (*Itin. Cambr.* lib. ii. c. 11.) The supposed tomb of the emperor Henry IV.

4

may consult Higden himself[1]), Carlisle, Hexham, Caerleon, and Chester, besides brief allusions to a few others.[2]

With regard to the enumeration of the British names of towns with which the forty-seventh chapter opens, which is taken from Alfred of Beverley,[3] there can be little doubt that the fountain head of some of the information is the sixty-seventh chapter of Nennius.

Higden's account of the shires of England (c. xlix.) is professedly taken from Alfred of Beverley,[4] but there are many things in Higden of which Alfred says nothing. His enumeration moreover of the different laws which prevailed at different times and places (c. l.) is to some slight extent borrowed from the same source, though without acknowledgment. Higden would seem to have added much from some legal authority which he does not name.[5] The law terms which occur in the laws of

---

(or rather Henry V.), who is said to have assumed the name of Godescal or Godestal, is still to be seen in the south aisle of the cathedral, not far from a tomb reasonably believed to belong to Higden himself. But the whole story is full of uncertainty, as may be seen by reference to Lyson's Magna Britannia, in his account of Chester (vol. ii. p. 558). See also for this, and for the true burial-place of Harold II., Mr. Dimock's notes on Giraldus, *u. s.*

[1] In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (Index) and in A. K. Johnson's *Dictionary of Geography* it is identified with Dumbarton. Higden evidently inclines to Aldburgh, in Yorkshire (p. 67, where he refers to Gal. Mon. iii. 17), but thinks Bede means some place close to Carlisle, which he assuredly does not. Higden has made a confusion between the two Roman walls.

[2] It may be here observed that the orthography of medieval names of persons and places differs a good deal in the various MSS. of Higden; their variations have been conscientiously noticed; but the contractions which abound, and the similarity of certain letters to one another (particularly *c* and *t*, *u* and *n*) increase an editor's difficulties considerably. I am now convinced that Ebrancus, which I have edited (p. 64, &c.), following Gale, should be Ebraucus. Possibly Mevania (p. 36, where see note) should be changed into Menavia; see Hearne on Alfr. Bev., p. 154.

[3] *Annal*, lib. i. p. 9.

[4] See his *Annals*, lib. vi. p. 97.

[5] In the notes I had supposed that the *Chronicon* of John Brompton was the fountain-head of his account, being misled by Cave, who considers (*Hist. Lit.* s. v.) that Brompton wrote about A.D. 1198. But it

Edward the Confessor, and which are explained by Higden, vary somewhat in the different MSS., and I am happy to acknowledge the kind assistance which Dr. Bosworth has rendered me in editing the text of some of them.[1]

Succession of rulers.

The fifty-first chapter, on the succession of kingdoms in Britain, is taken, according to most MSS.,[2] from Alfred of Beverley. It gives an epitome of the forms of government from Brutus to Julius Cæsar, from Cæsar to Septimius Severus, thence to Gratian; and proceeds at length to describe the cessation of Roman power and the foundation and durations of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy. The history and chronology are not always accurate, but it is an interesting chapter nevertheless.[3]

---

appears that Brompton, as he is now edited, quotes Higden, so that his chronicle " seems to have taken its " present form at least after the " middle of the fourteenth century." Hardy, *Descript. Cat. Mater. Brit. Hist.*, vol. ii. p. 540. What now appears in Brompton, therefore, was probably copied from Higden, not *vice versa.*

[1] "I have," (he writes), " a great " objection to conjectural readings, " but I think you will be safe in reading self finde in warde, p. 94, 13, " (see Note 18, B., pelffindinward). " It will then read in Anglo-Saxon: " In-fangen þeof self finde in warde, " *i. e., a thief taken within his own* " *ward or lordship* ; or as in your " text, 'id est, infra suum [attachia-" 'mentum] capere reum.' I think " that in your MSS. the A.S. ꞅ is " probably written ꞅ or ꞃ, easily " taken for þ or *p*.

" (1.) Fiht-wíte and (2.) Flít-" (3.) wíte are both good compounds.

" (1.) Fiht, fyht, feoht, e ; *f. A* " *fighting*, from feohtan *to contend*, " *fight.*

" (2.) Flít, es; *n. Strife, conten-* " *tion*, from flîtan *to strive, quarrel.*

" (3.) Wíte, es; *n. A fine, a fine* " *or penalty to the state or crown.*

" All the other words are clear " enough."

[2] Both versions however as well as MS. B., omit the reference. The words do not occur, I believe, in Alfred; the substance occurs more or less in every chronicle of England.

[3] It is hardly credible that Higdén should mean that all the Roman emperors who were rulers of Britain, from Septimius Severus down to Gratian, were of British extraction; but I scarcely know how else to interpret his words: Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum. The usurper Gratian here meant, who died A.D. 407, was indeed a native of England (Orosius, vii. 40.), and some claim Magnus Maximus to be one also; but Higden's assertion is beyond doubt erroneous. Carausius, who, as well as Allectus, kept exclusive possession of Britain in spite of the other emperors, Dioclesian and

Higden devotes no less than six chapters to the history of episcopal sees in England. He begins by alluding to the well-known story of the three archiepiscopal sees, (London, York, and Caerleon,) and the twenty-eight episcopal sees in the time of Lucius, whose occupants were called flamens, and refers to Alfred of Beverley as his authority; but the original historian of this and of many more legendary accounts transferred to the Polychronicon is Geoffrey of Monmouth.[1] Higden then describes the episcopal constitutions of the Saxons, as well as the ancient regulations of the Welsh episcopate, which, till the time of Henry the Second, made no profession of subjection to any other church. Beginning with Canterbury, the principal see, he proceeds to mention the temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric in the time of Offa, and the restitution of the primacy to the archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Kenulphus. In like manner he slightly touches on the varied fortunes of the other archbishops, viz., of York and Caerleon; and proceeds to name the suffragan bishops of England and Wales in order, mentioning the changes of the sees of some of them and the extinction of others, noticing also the creation of new sees from time to time; and concludes by an enumeration of the bishoprics as they existed in his own Bishops' sees.

Maximian, was not a Briton. Again, the chronology of the departure of the Romans from Britain is false. Magnus Maximus went over with the British soldiers to Gaul against the Emperor Gratian in 383, and the Roman mint does indeed appear to have ceased in England in his reign; but there were Romans fighting in Britain towards the middle of the fifth century. (See Mon. Hist. Brit. *Chron. Abstract.*)

The account of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is more trustworthy. Eadgar however, and not Athelstan, "solus et primus monarchiam An-"gliæ tenuit" (p. 108), though Athelstan says as much of himself. (Hawkins' *Silver Coins of England*, pp. 61, 65.) Athelstan's conquests, moreover, are misdated by a century (p. 108); but this may be a slip or a blunder of the scribes, which however, if it be one, occurs also in the versions.

[1] Alf. Bev. iii. p. 32., Gal. Mon. v. c. 19. See Fuller's dissection (or rather vivisection) of Geoffrey in his *Church Hist. of Brit.*, book i. cent. ii. § 9.

time, when thirteen bishops were subject to the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England, and four were under the archbishop of York, the primate of England.

The principal authorities referred to for England are Bede and William of Malmesbury, and for Wales, Giraldus Cambrensis. He also makes a good many statements on his own authority. This part of his work has evidently cost him some labour, and it appears to be one of the most trustworthy parts of his history.[1]

Successive inhabitants of Britain.

Higden next enters (c. lviii.) on the subject of British ethnology, and enumerates seven tribes or peoples who successively inhabited the country or settled therein; viz., the Britons, Picts, Scots (from Ireland), Saxons or

[1] I have compared a good deal of it with Professor Stubbs' valuable *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum*, and find that it commonly agrees; Higden however converts the bishopric of Leicester into a bishopric of Chester; an error arising from the name Legecestria being common to the two. Considering that Higden himself long dwelt in Chester, his blunder is the more extraordinary. That it is a blunder there can, I think, be no doubt; the following extract from a letter of Professor Stubbs will allay all misgivings. "The original au-" thority for placing Wilfrid's *Mer-*" *cian* bishopric at Leicester is the " list of bishops appended to Flo-" rence of Worcester, which is of " course much earlier than Flo-" rence's own time. This gives a " list of the bishops of Mid-Anglia, " 'nomina Præsulum Leogeren-" 'sium.' Of these, Leofwin, sec. " xi., united the 'Leogerensian' " and Lindsey bishoprics into the " modern diocese of Lincoln in the " time of Edgar; proof that the " maker of the list believed Leicester " to be the place signified, as indeed " is quite certain with reference to " all the later bishops. Totta, Ead-" berht, Unwona, Werenbert, Ret-" hun, Aldred, and Ceoldred all sat " at Leicester. In 874 the Danes " conquered Middle Anglia, and " thenceforth the see was at *Dor-*" *chester* in Oxfordshire. I believe " there is no doubt about this. And " the statement about Wilfrid stands " on the same authority. I should " question whether Chester could " be regarded as a Middle Angle or " Mercian town in Wilfrid's time, " and certainly no bishop could " unite *Chester* and *Lindsey* without " including Lichfield also. The " confusion between *Chester* and " *Leicester* in the early chronicles " is very trying, but on this point I " am quite sure." William of Malmesbury also, who gives a list of the bishops (*Gest. Pont.* iv. p. 289, Sav.) clearly meant Leicester to be their see; Legecestra est civitas antiqua *in mediterraneis* Angliæ; but Higden as clearly meant Chester (p. 128).

Angles, Danes, Normans, and Flandrians. His authorities are Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Giraldus Cambrensis, Marianus Scotus, and Alfred of Beverley, and he also interpolates various remarks of his own.

In tacit allusion to the Trojan story about Brutus, Higden considers the Britons the first inhabitants of our island, and that they came over from Armorica four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome.[1]

It is remarkable that he does not consider the Romans as worthy to be reckoned among the peoples who settled amongst us, but passing them over without notice, he proceeds to say that the Picts came over from Scythia in Vespasian's time, first to Ireland, where the Scoti dwelt, and thence to the northern parts of Britain, about Caithness. Bede, from whom the account professes to be taken, probably intended Scandinavia by Scythia, but says nothing about Vespasian, and seems to place their arrival at a more remote period;[2] their connexion with the age of Vespasian is due to Geoffrey of Monmouth,[3] from whom Higden has derived other untrustworthy statements in this chapter.[4] Higden then quotes Giraldus

[1] Notwithstanding all our laborious examinations, both of literary records and of archæological monuments, we are scarcely even now able to replace the medieval figments on this subject by anything which can well be called historical. "Who were the first inhabitants of "Britain, is among the unsettled "questions of history," says Professor Pearson (*Early and Middle Ages of England*, c. i., London, 1861); and if the question is ever to be settled, it must be by a careful comparison of the remains of man and of the art of man found in this country with those found in other countries.

[2] See Bede, lib. i. c. 1., where Smith observes that the Scoti, who came after the Picts, appear to have arrived, in Bede's opinion, "ante "Romanorum tempora."

[3] Lib. iv. c. 17.

[4] As that Carausius gave a settlement to the Picts in Scotland (lib. v. c. 3). Higden's speculation that we must understand the south of Scotland seems to be a castle built on air. Stukeley however persuades himself of the reality of Carausius' expedition into Scotland, which he places A.D. 290 (*Med. Hist. of Carausius*, pp. 128–138), as does also Dr. Lingard (*Hist. Engl.* c. i. p. 35). The additions to Nennius

Cambrensis (*De Instruct. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.) in favour of the view that the Picts are the same as the Agathyrsi, and of Gothic stock.[1]

He proceeds to relate the migration of some of the Scoti from Ireland under the leadership of Reuda to the district of Argyle, in the country which several centuries afterwards became known as Scotland. This Dalriadic kingdom, which is commonly dated from the beginning of the sixth century, expanded itself, according to Higden, into a dominion over the whole of Scotland in the reign of Kenneth MacAlpine, king of Scots, in the middle of the ninth century, who destroyed the Pictish kingdom of the north of Scotland.[2]

He next tells us how the Saxons, or as the Britons called them Germans, being invited by the Britons against the Picts and Scots, by degrees forced the Britons into Wales, and extended their own empire as far as the Scotch sea; and at length, in the reign of Egbert, were known by the common appellation of Angles or Englishmen.

The Danes, who kept invading the country from the reign of Egbert to that of the Confessor, left, according to Higden, no trace behind, and like the Picts completely died out.

(p. 19, ed. Stev.) connect Carausius with the river Carron in Stirlingshire, but no author of credit, so far as I know, mentions any deed of Carausius done in Scotland. I know not on what authority Dr. Lingard says that "the Caledo-"nians were compelled to flee "before his arms," unless it be the pseudo-Nennius.

[1] The best modern critics, according to Professor Pearson, consider *Pict* (painted) as merely the Latin rendering of *Briton*, and that the Picts are consequently not of Gothic origin; he thinks them of the Kymric variety. Pearson, as above, c. ii. p. 17 (note). Dr. Lingard feels confident that they are the Caledonians under a new name (*Hist. Engl.* c. i. p. 39).

[2] On the obscurity and difficulty of the history of this event, for which Higden's authority is Giraldus, see *Penny Cyclopædia*, s. v. Scotland. According to Giraldus, the Pictish chiefs were fraudulently murdered at a banquet. His account is tinged with a mythological colouring, but may very possibly be founded on fact.

The Normans, who came in with the Conqueror, remained in possession of the soil in Higden's time, the English being still in a state of subjugation.

The Flandrians, or Flemings, are the seventh and last people, according to Higden, who settled in the island. He tells us, from Alfred of Beverley,[1] that King Henry I. gave them a temporary abode at Melrose in Roxburghshire, but that he afterwards removed them to Haverfordwest in Wales; and it appears that their descendants remain there to this day, being readily distinguished from the aboriginal inhabitants both by language and manners.[2]

Higden sums up by saying, that as the Picts and Danes had vanished, there were five nations at present living in the island, viz., the Scots in Albania or Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and English mixed in the whole island.

Languages and dialects spoken in Britain.

The fifty-ninth chapter, on the languages of the natives of Britain, is almost entirely Higden's own. The Scotch and Welsh (he observes) retain their own dialects nearly pure, as mingling but little with the other tribes; though the Pictish element may perhaps have somewhat entered into the Scotch speech. The Flemings had adopted the English language, and spoke it tolerably well. The English dialects were originally three, Southern, Midland or Mercian, and Northern or Northumbrian; being due to as many German tribes. These forms however, which extended east and west, became much corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The midland dialect partook of many northern and southern forms, so that a midlander might understand these in some degree; but a North-Englander and a South-Englander were barbarians to each other. Higden observes that one great cause of the corruption was the neglect of the English language in schools, boys being always taught to construe

[1] See lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.

[2] Lewis, *Topogr. Dict. Wales*, vol. i. s.v. Haverfordwest. Lond. 1833.

their lessons in French, and, among the noble class, to speak French from their infancy. Trevisa inserts here an interesting passage, in which he notes a great change since Higden's time. He tells us, writing in 1385, that in all the grammar schools of England English was then taught and French laid aside;[1] and that gentlemen taught their sons French less than formerly. He also observes, in reference to Higden's assertion that the Anglo-Norman French is one and the same in all England, that there are as many forms of French, in France at least, as of English in England. Another cause of the debasement of our language is due, in Higden's judgment, to the affectation of the words and language of their betters by the ignorant rustics, who "francigenated" or frenchified their talk to the utmost of their power.

Character of the English.

The sixtieth and last chapter of the first book, on the manners of the English, is mostly by Higden, who has certainly shown little disposition to paint his countrymen in too favourable colours. His bombastic and not very intelligible periods warn us that he must not be taken too literally. Among our faults he especially reckons the discontented spirit in every class, which affects to appear and to be thought above itself. Thus the yeoman affects the squire; the squire the knight; the knight the duke; the duke the king. Consequently such a variety of dress had been introduced that a man's clothes gave little indication of his degree. Gluttony, drunkenness, dishonesty, and irreligion appear to have taken deep root amongst us. The first two vices he dates more especially from the days of Harthacnut (1041–1042), whose death was occasioned thereby.

Among our better qualities he enumerates our aptitude for every kind of industry, our desire to visit foreign

[1] The authors of the change were, it seems, John Cornwaile, a master of a grammar school, and his pupil, Richard Pencrich.

parts with a view to learn, our bravery in war, and the excellent discipline of our soldiers, both horse and foot.

He observes that the southerners were more civilized and gentle than men of the north; those of middle Anglia occupying an intermediate position, socially as well as geographically.[1]

The Welsh Flemings, he observes from Giraldus,[2] had become in a manner anglicised by contact with the English; they were industrious, enterprising, and equally successful in the arts of peace and of war. They were addicted, however, to some singular superstitions, such as divining with the boiled shoulder bone of a ram, by which they both dived into futurity, and saw, as by a kind of clairvoyance, what was going on or had been performed afar off. They entertained a cordial hatred towards the Welsh.

The Welsh Flemings.

Thus ends Higden's First Book, or Geographical Introduction to his Universal History. Of the sixty chapters of which it is composed, twenty-nine are occupied with an account of Great Britain and Ireland, twenty-two of these, all comprised in the present volume, being devoted to England alone, the country, as he tells us himself, on whose account he compiled and elaborated his chronicle. This is the only part of his introduction of which, as being to some slight extent original, the historian or antiquary can well make use;[3] the remainder, relating to foreign parts, being derived from other sources, and those not always the most trustworthy.

End of Higden's First Book; which is not without value for the History of England.

---

[1] Higden quotes from Henry of Huntingdon (lib. vi. p. 359, Sav.), the prophecy of a holy anchorite, which bears every appearance of being composed after the event. It was written, or ought to have been written, in the time of king Egelfred or Egilred, by whom he intends Ethelred the Second, who is called Egilred by Roger de Hoveden (p. 472, Sav.) and William of Malmesbury. (*Gest. Reg.* ii. § 159, p. 255, Hardy.)

[2] *Itin. Cambr.* i. 11.

[3] It has been published by Gale, *Hist. Brit. Script.* xv. pp. 191–212. The only other portion of this volume contained in his collection are parts of lib. ii. c. 27 (nearly all), and c. 28 (a few lines); they occupy less than a folio page. See Gale, *u. s.* pp. 212, 213.

The book however, taken as a whole, is not without its value, as indicating the geographical knowledge of a writer, who in his own and in the next age was widely read and generally followed.

Higden's Second Book. Doctrine of the microcosm.

The second book has for its prologue (cap. i.) a comparison between man and the world. The geography of the world is properly followed by the history of the world, that is of man, who is himself the microcosm or little world. He then proceeds to point out the similarities between man and the world in their dimensions, composition, and operations. The doctrine of the microcosm is as old as Pythagoras, or at least was espoused by some of his disciples,[1] and found numerous adherents in after times, and has survived almost down to our own age.[2] Higden's application of it may be in good measure his own; at least he refers to no authority, except for slight details.[3] For the facts in natural history which he adduces in illustration he is indebted principally to

[1] See the anonymous *Life of Pythagoras* in Phot. *Bibl.* Cod. 249 (p. 440, ed. Bekk.), where we learn that man is called a little world, not only because he is composed of the four elements, but also because he possesses all the forces of the world. Higden's account is an expansion of these views.

[2] See a note on *Nicholas Ferrar*, pp. 239, 240, Cambridge, 1855, by my learned friend Mr. J. E. B. Mayor, to which add that Nathan Wanley wrote a book entitled *The Wonders of the Little World, or a General History of Man*, first published in 1678 (fol. London). It was re-printed with additions in the last and also in the present century. Wanley much resembles Higden in style, and he sometimes refers to the same examples. See more especially his eighth chapter (*On the strange constitution and marvellous properties of some human bodies*), in which he refers to the great toe of Pyrrhus. See Higden, p. 188. Robinet, who considered certain natural objects, as the brain-stone coral, to be types of parts of man, died in the present century. See also Shakesp. Rich. II. Act V. sc. 5, and the notes. (Clar. Press Series).

[3] As St. Gregory the Great. The "Homily on the Ascension," as Higden calls it (p. 182), occurs in his *Moral. in Job*, lib. vi. vol. i. p. 190 (ed. Ben. Paris, 1705). The "Homily "on Advent" (quoted at p. 184) will be found among *In Evang. Homil.* (vol. i. p. 1439). The passage of Plato to which he alludes, p. 180, is, perhaps, *Phœd.*, p. 81. E. (ed. Steph.); but if so, it is not quite accurately rendered.

Pliny,[1] and in a smaller degree to St. Augustine, Hugutio, Livy, and Avicenna; for the historical allusions he refers to Pliny and Seneca. On these we need not dwell; but merely observe that for the only historical facts or pretended facts in this chapter, not otherwise known, we are under obligation not to Higden, but to Trevisa, who relates some marvellous peculiarities in the constitution of one Roger Bagge, and (in the following chapter) in the conformation of a child born in Lorraine, on the eye-witness of one of his own parishioners at Berkeley, William Wayte.[2] But on these points, as well as on the details and speculations given by Higden respecting monstrous forms of the human species, as cyclopes, sciapodes, &c., which form the subject of his second chapter, we shall only say that he is indebted for almost all his remarks to St. Augustine and to Isidore of Seville. He does not, like Augustine, entirely repudiate the notion of the Antipodes, and cites with approbation the astronomical views of Marcianus Capella on this subject.

Higden's third chapter is a rhetorical flourish on the differences between man and the world. Before his fall he had prerogatives above the rest of nature; afterwards he fell below the creatures themselves, being destitute of their natural defences, as he observes from Pliny.

First Age of the World. From the Creation of Adam to Noah's flood.

The fourth and fifth chapters comprise his History of the First Age of the World,[3] which commences with the creation of Adam, and ends with Noah's flood. The greatest part of it is naturally taken from Scripture, but a few speculations and traditional details are added from

[1] Whom in one instance he misnames Trogus (p. 196). Some other of his references to Pliny are more or less erroneous (see pp. 190, 196, 198, 214, 422 notes). His capitulation of lib. vii. (see pp. 176, 178, 188, 194, 200) apparently differs a little from that now adopted; his chapters are capp. 17, 16, 15, 18, and 10 respectively in the edition of Franzius. (Lips. 1778.)

[2] See pp. 195, 209.

[3] His division of the history of the world into six ages agrees with that of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39,), from whom he probably takes it. It was adopted by various other writers.

Pseudo-Methodius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville Hugutio Pisanus, Jerome, and Josephus, which scarcely require to be discussed in this place.

In adjusting his chronology he has made constant use of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39) and of Marianus Scotus, whom he mentions at the beginning of his *Polychronicon* (lib. i. c. 2) as one of his main authorities in this matter. From them he probably derives most or all that he knew of the patriarchal chronology followed by the Septuagint, which differs from the Hebrew text.[1]

SECOND AGE OF THE WORLD. From Noah's flood to the birth of Abraham.

The History of the Second Age of the World, from Noah's departure from the ark to the birth of Abraham, is comprised in the sixth, seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters. The eighth chapter, however, is in a great measure anticipatory, being occupied with an account of the rise and progress of the great empires of the ancient world generally, some of which originated in times long posterior to Abraham. Higden commences his sixth chapter with a notice of God's covenant with Noah after he came forth from the ark, as signified by the rainbow, and notes from Petrus Comestor the figurative or rather fanciful significance of its outer and inner colours.[2] After remarking that "secundum sanctos" there was neither rain nor rainbow before the flood, and that neither fish, flesh, nor wine were in use till after the flood, he proceeds to give a pedigree of Shem's children, noticing the differences between the chronology of the Hebrew text and that of the Septuagint, till he at length comes down to Terah and the birth of Abraham, at which point the second age terminates,

The children of Shem.

[1] Thus Marianus writes:—Septuaginta interpretes ante natum Seth duxerunt annos ducentos triginta, et postea annos septingentos (col. 4, ed. Bas. 1559). This is in substance, though not in words, what we have in Higden, p. 220.

[2] Here and elsewhere the number of the chapters as cited by Higden does not agree with the capitulation of the *Historia Scholastica* in the edition which I have consulted, printed at Lyons in 1543; and I am inclined to believe that his copy was differently capitulated; but the trivial variations cause but little difficulty.

comprising 992[1] years according to the Hebrews, or 1072 according to the LXX., which leads him to discuss the cause of the diversity after Bede and Augustine.[2] He takes this occasion to say, following Eusebius, that from Adam to Abraham we have no history either of the Greeks or barbarians.[3]

The other sons of Noah, and their descendants.

Higden now takes into account the other sons of Noah and their descendants, and begins by borrowing from the spurious "Revelations" of Methodius a history of Ionichus, a son of Noah, who reigned as far as the sea Eliochora, that is to say, as Methodius explains, the region where the sun rises, or, in other words, the Indian Ocean; his disciple Nemphrot or Nimrod ruled in Babylon among the children of Ham.[4] In Nimrod's time, according to Higden, following Josephus, the tower of Babel was built; and he observes in conclusion from Petrus Comestor, that Nimrod was the first founder of Nineveh as well as of Babylon, and the inventor of fire worship.

Their respective seats; rise of kingdoms; their progress traced here by anticipation.

The seventh chapter, which mentions the seats of the first descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon, which

---

[1] For *ducentos* in the Latin text of the MSS. (which Trevisa also read) we should, no doubt, read *nongentos* with the Harleian translator.

[2] The quotations, like many others, are derived from Marianus Scotus (coll. 49, 50.)

[3] The passage occurs in the author's preface to his *Chronicon* (i.e. his *Canon*), translated by St. Jerome, which is the Chronicle of Eusebius as known to Higden. (See Hieron. *Op.* t. viii. p. 57, ed. Migne, and Higd. *Polychron.*, vol. i p. 38.) It will be found at p. 32 of the Armenian version of the entire work (the second part), published by Aucher in 1818; see his remarks, *Præf.* § v. p. xiv. Higden seems, however, to derive much of his acquaintance with Eusebius' chronicle from Marianus Scotus, who quotes it by name frequently, and more often copies it tacitly. This passage is quoted by him from Eusebius at lib. i. æt. ii. (col. 72, ed. Basil, 1559.)

[4] See Pseudo-Method. *Revel.* Sig. a. vii., ed. Bas. 1504. His words are (in the Latin version): Ionichus autem filius Noe tenuit introitum in Etham usque ad mare quod vocatur Eliochora; id est, regio solis in quo solis ortus fit, et habitavit ibidem. For the very late production itself see Cave's *Hist. Lit.* s. v. Methodius.

were founded nearly contemporaneously with the first dispersion of nations, is mostly derived from St. Augustine and from Isidore of Seville, a few unimportant remarks being added from other authors. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded each other, became most notable for their progress, but Higden promises to take first into consideration the earlier kingdoms contemporary with Assyria.

Brief history of the kingdoms contemporary with Assyria;

The eighth chapter gives an outline of the three kingdoms which arose, according to Higden, about the same time as the Assyrian monarchy, viz., those of Scythia, Sicyon, and Egypt.

of Scythia;

For the first the longer text[1] gives no authority, but the latter part of the account is certainly derived from Justin. The former portion has the appearance of being to some extent borrowed from Isidore.[2]

of Sicyon;

The notice of the kingdom of Sicyon is taken from Petrus Comestor,[3] who derives it in all likelihood from Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius.[4] There is, however, some slight variation in the number of years during which the kings are said to have reigned.[5] Higden in conclusion notes an imaginary discrepancy in the chronology of Dionysius Exiguus.[6]

[1] The shorter MSS. C. D. prefix *Willelmus* here and before §§ 4, 5, 6. William of Malmesbury is usually so cited in this work, and the only other William mentioned by Higden in his catalogue of authorities is William of Rievaulx, who may perhaps be the same as William of Newbury. (See Cave and Hardy). I do not know whence these citations from William are derived. For the last sentence, see Justin, lib. ii. c. 3., whose Zopyrion is transformed into Zephiron by Higden.

[2] Lib. xiii. c. 21. § 24.

[3] *Hist. Lib. Gen.* c. 64. (not 60, as Higden says.)

[4] See Hieron., *Op.* t. viii. coll. 76, 111, 281 (Migne), and Euseb., *Can.* pp. 13, 79. (Vers. Arm.)

[5] 967 (Arm. version); 962 (Jerome's version); 971 (Petrus and Higden).

[6] Dionysius says that in the 50th year of Terah, Europs, whom Higden miscalls Cecrops, was the *second* king of Sicyon, (not quod regnum Sicyoniorum *inceperit*), and that Ægialeus, the first king, reigned 52 years, *i.e.*, according to his computation, in the 28th year of Nahor. This differs from Petrus only by four years, who places him in the 24th year of Nahor. See Marianus Scotus, who follows Dionysius (coll. 69–71).

The account of the third kingdom, Egypt, is nearly all derived from Eusebius, more or less blundered,[1] one sentence being added from Josephus. of Egypt;

Fourth in order, but first in time, the Assyrian kingdom is described in outline. A well-chosen passage adapted from Augustine commences the section, followed by another, taken from the same chapter of Petrus, but ultimately derived from Eusebius,[2] which brings the history down to the death of Sardanapalus. Higden then gives in his own view the state of Assyrian affairs afterwards, and following the language of Scripture, calls Sennacherib, &c. *kings* of Assyria, whom he considers to have been *independent*, but not monarchs of the whole country (reges potentes, quamvis non monarchæ), of whom Sargon was the last. He goes on to say that some consider a Median monarchy over the entire East arose after the death of Sardanapalus, beginning with Arbaces, and ending with Astyages, (whom Cyrus overthrew, and so transferred the empire to Persia,) or in other words that the Assyrian kings, so called, were but Median tributaries. In saying this he seems to express his disagreement with Eusebius, who makes no more mention of an Assyrian kingdom after the death of Sardanapalus. Still giving no authority he proceeds to the end, and notices the rise of the Babylonian and Chaldean kingdoms, giving a catalogue of their kings according to his own view.[3] and of the kingdom of Assyria itself.

After this he traces the Persian kings from the begin- The Persian kings.

---

[1] Jerome's version says: "Porro "apud Ægyptios xvi. potestas erat, "quam vocant dynastiam; quo "tempore regnabant Thebæi, qui "præfuerunt Ægyptiis annis cxc." (col. 108.) But Higden says (p. 260): "Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt xvi. "dynastias," which completely destroys the sense. It is not worth while to point out other errors.

[2] See Hier. *u. s.* coll. 337, 339.

[3] It is mostly derived from Marianus Scotus (who refers to Josephus), but with variations of spelling (coll. 52.) Higden has Balthasar, *qui et Nabar*, (*Naban* is read in the printed text of Marianus), but Josephus has Naboandelus (*Ant.* x. 11), writing elsewhere (Lib. 1. *c. Ap.* § 20) Nabonnedus. Ruffin, however, has Naboar. See the notes in Havercamp's edition, vol. i. p. 539.

ning to the end of the monarchy, professing herein to follow Giraldus;[1] but Eusebius seems to be the original source from which the history is mostly drawn.[2] He gives little besides their names, some of which are corrupt.[3]

Foundation and destruction of the Greek kingdoms.

Having observed that Alexander the Great absorbed the kingdom of Persia into that of Macedonia, he goes on to add that this kingdom, which lasted 636 years, was founded by Caranus, whom he erroneously calls Cranaus, and lasted till the capture and dethronement of Perseus by the Romans.[4] This computation nearly agrees with Eusebius.[5] He concludes by remarking that there were other kingdoms of Greece in Sicyon, Argos, Athens, Sparta, and Epirus, which, like Macedonia, ultimately formed part of the great empire of Rome. For this section, as well as for the following, the MSS. of the longer form of the Chronicle refer to no authority; in the shorter form reference is made in each case to William of Malmesbury.

Rise and progress of the Roman empire.

The concluding section sketches the rise and progress of the Roman empire, from the Latin, Alban, and Roman kings, to the consuls, tribunes of the people, dictators, and emperors. Tacitly following St. Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius, he makes Philip Senior the first Christian emperor.[6] He seems also to allude to the

[1] The *Chronographia metrica* of Giraldus may possibly be intended (see *De libris a se scriptis*, Gir. Cambr. Op., tom. i. p. 414.), but I rather suspect that *Giraldus* is an error.

[2] See Euseb. *Chron.* pars. 1, p. 50; pars. 2, p. 19 (ed. Auch.) for the list of kings, and Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 1487 for what is said of Judith, and s. a. 1540 for Esther; and compare Marianus Scotus *passim*.

[3] He has Ermeides for Smerdis; Fogodianus for Sogdianus; to say nothing of smaller errors.

[4] Higden errs in saying "quem "*occiderunt* Romani."

[5] He makes Caranus begin to reign 1203 years after Abraham; and Perseus' reign to end 1850 years after Abraham.

[6] See Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 2261. But the words "primusque omnium "ex Romanis imperatoribus Chris- "tianus fuit" have no counterpart in the Armenian version, and are probably an addition by Jerome himself. (See Aucher's note, p. 197.)

fabulous donation of Constantine to the pope at the conclusion.

Early history of Assyria up to the age of Abraham.

The ninth chapter is devoted to the early history of Assyria, from the times of Belus, the son of Nimrod, and second founder of Babylon, and of Ninus, the son of Belus, and second founder of Nineveh. The chapter concludes with the exploits of Semiramis, wife of Ninus, who had also a son of the same name. The authorities referred to are St. Augustine, Orosius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, and Justin. It would be useless to dwell upon the history, where all is mythology and fable. Higden in the same chapter discusses the origin of pagan idolatry from Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, St. Augustine, and an Alexander who is doubtless Alexander Neckham.[1] He also mentions from St. Jerome a strange superstition connected with the worship of Fortune. In the course of his quotations are many things which may reasonably be questioned, but their discussion need hardly be entered upon in this place.[2]

THIRD AGE OF THE WORLD. Lives of Abraham and of his children.

The histories of Abraham and the patriarchs comprised in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth chapters need not detain us long. The life of the former is mostly taken from Genesis, a few particulars about him being added from Josephus and Petrus Comestor. Melchisedech's history and interview with Abraham are slightly enlarged from St. Jerome and Petrus Comestor; from the latter Higden explains the meaning of Kirjath-Arba to be the City of Four.[3] From the same authority he tells us that the Jews give their sons names, when they are circumcised, in allusion to Abram's name being

[1] See Fabricius, Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin. s. v. p. 174. His *Mythologia* has not, I believe, been printed.

[2] As the identification of Zoroastes, king of Bactria, with Ham, and of Belus with Baal. They are taken from Petrus Comestor, *Hist. Lib. Genes.* capp. 39, 40.

[3] The Rabbins and St. Jerome are the original authorities for this view, which seems contrary to the derivation given in Josh. xiv. 15. See Mr. Grove's remarks in Smith's *Dict. of the Bible*, s. v.

changed into Abraham at the time of his circumcision; also that Keturah, Abraham's wife after Sarah's death, was Hagar under a new name.[1] For the other patriarchs, Isaac, Jacob, and his family, as well as Lot, Higden has scarcely anything to say which is not contained in the Old Testament,[2] though he sometimes prefers to refer to other books, and not to the original authority itself.

Contemporary events in Greece and Egypt.

The eleventh and twelfth chapters contain a few particulars relating to the early traditions of Greece and Egypt; Higden regards them as real events, and, like Eusebius and others, assigns dates to their occurrence.[3] His remarks on Minerva and Prometheus are mostly taken from St. Augustine; also those on the kingdom of the Argives, and on Egyptian affairs. The last are further illustrated in some slight degree from Isidore, Petrus Comestor, and Hugutio Pisanus. The myths of Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres, are related from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. It is needless to say anything of these in this place; but it may be observed Higden's knowledge of them is not very profound.[4]

---

[1] The derivation of Ishmael's descendants, the Saracens, from Sarah (p. 292), occurs in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2., and in Marianus Scotus, Col. 76.

[2] St. Augustine's remarks, if indeed they be his, quoted by Higden (p. 304), about Potiphar, arise from the misrendering, as it would seem, of the LXX. and Vulgate. The identification of Potiphar with Potipherah is very questionable, and is not mentioned with favour by Augustine, *Quæst in Gen.* 136. (tom. iii. Col. 307, ed. ant. v. 1700.) But Higden appears to copy not from Augustine, but from Petrus Comestor, capp. 88 and 92.

[3] The events which Higden notices are in several instances tacitly taken from Eusebius; his history of Cres, for example, p. 294. Cf. Euseb. *Can.* s. a. 56, p. 37, Auch. The dates however do not always accurately correspond. Higden's date of the Ogygian deluge (p. 300) is 265 years after Abraham; the MSS., however, vary; in Eusebius it is eleven years earlier. See Euseb. *Chron.* s. a. 254, and Migne's notes, col. 142. Marianus Scotus places it (col. 80), 260 years after Abraham.

[4] Thus we have (p. 296) professedly from St. Augustine: "Ap-"paruit virgo Tritonia nomine, "quam Græci Minervam dicunt." The passage about Tritonia is in *De*

Higden's account of Moses (capp. xiii. and xiv.) is mostly to be found in the Pentateuch, though he prefers to derive it from secondary authorities, such as Josephus and Petrus Comestor.[1] There are however traditional stories mingled with the scriptural account, nearly all of which are preserved by Josephus.[2] In the same chapters are brief allusions to Grecian history and mythology (see summary of contents), on which we need not dwell,[3] for which Higden refers to Josephus,

Histories of Moses,

Civit. Dei lib. xviii. c. 8., but St. Augustine (as may be supposed) does not say that Minerva is a Greek name; this error was derived from Petrus Comestor, who doubtless was thinking of this same passage, but in ignorance of Greek wrote "apud lacum Tritonidem "virgo apparuit, quam Græci "Minervam dixerunt." Hist. Gen. c. 76. Elsewhere, when Higden professes to refer to St. Augustine, he is in reality closely copying Petrus Comestor. At p. 310, his account of Prometheus agrees almost word for word with Petrus (*Hist. Gen.* c. 86), though he refers to Aug. *C. D.* lib. xviii., meaning no doubt c. 8, which however does not contain all that Petrus says, and which Higden transfers. Probably in Higden's MS. of Petrus, the authorities were set down in the margin. Higden's reference in the same place to Isidore, lib. xiii. should be lib. xix. [c. 32.], and ought to be prefixed to the sentence beginning *Et etiam*; but here also he is really copying Comestor.

[1] Higden, when he refers to the Pentateuch directly, misquotes it. Thus at p. 318, and at p. 324, he refers to *Genesis*, when he should have written *Exodus*. At p. 328 *Genesis* is similarly an error for *Exodus*; but, as most MSS. omit all reference, this false reference may not be due to Higden himself.

[2] As the name (Thermuth) of Pharaoh's daughter; the treading under foot of Pharaoh's crown by Moses; the war of Moses against the Ethiopians; his marriage with Tharbis, daughter of the king of Ethiopia; and a few other smaller matters (Ant. ii. 9, 10.) The story of Moses burning his tongue with live coals is taken from Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 5.), and does not, I believe, occur in Josephus. Petrus indicates that it is derived from Hebrew sources. The story about Moses making a ring of memory and a ring of forgetfulness, also preserved by Petrus (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 6), savours of an Arabian origin. See Higden, p. 322.

[3] For Dasaneus, which is the name by which he tells us (p. 336) that Marianus Scotus calls the Phenician Hercules, we should perhaps read Dosenaus, as in Herold's edition of Marianus, col. 90. Eusebius, in Jerome's version, has Desinaus; in the Armenian, Desaudas; in Syncellus, Dibdas. See Hieron. *Op.* tom. viii. col. 182, and the notes in Migne's edition (Paris, 1846), and Euseb. *Canon.* Vers. Arm. p. 59. (Auch.)

St. Augustine, and Orosius; he has likewise tacitly incorporated some parts of the Canon of Eusebius.[1]

and of Joshua.

The history of Joshua is very briefly contained in the fifteenth chapter; with the exception of the length of his government, which is added from Josephus,[2] and of the confirmation of his dying covenant, by the pouring out of water, related from Petrus Comestor,[3] the whole may be found in the Old Testament.

History of other nations in their times.

The allusions to profane history and mythology are numerous, but mostly brief. Some of them are evidently taken from Eusebius, or rather from his copyist Marianus Scotus, as, for example, those relating to Erichthonius, Phenix, Cadmus, and Asterius.[4] He is more particular about the legends relating to Jove and Saturn, for which he refers to St. Augustine, Isidore, Eutropius, as well as to Alexander Neckham and Henricus, who may be Henry of Huntingdon. Higden himself properly points out the inconsistencies in the accounts which authors have delivered. In this chapter we have (from Isidore) an example of the rationalizing method of explaining myths, viz., in the case of Europa, which in a succeeding chapter is set forth at length.

Sacred and profane history in

In the following chapters Higden gives an account of Jewish affairs under the judges, most usually assigning

[1] As the building of the temple of Delphi by Erysichthon (p. 334). This is also included in the Chronicle of Marianus Scotus, cap. *Moses*, as well as the change of the name Aerea into Egypt.

[2] The allusion to Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* v. 1. § 29.) occurs in the midst of a sentence said to be taken from Isidore, *Etym.* lib. v. No such passage occurs there, nor elsewhere in Isidore, so far as I know. The versions may be right in omitting all reference.

[3] *Hist. Lib. Jos.* c. 16, where both quotations on p. 346 will be found. I have in vain sought for Comestor's authority for his statements, which are very positive and explicit. At p. 346. l. 5. *Petrus* and not *Genesis* (see versions) must be the true reading.

[4] Higden's reference to Marianus as the authority for saying that Asterius and not Jupiter is the father of Rhadamanthus and his brothers, shows that he did not consult Eusebius himself in this instance, from whom Marianus borrows. See Euseb. *Can.* s. a. 570, and Marianus Scotus, Col. 94.

one chapter to each judge in order. He also takes notice of profane history, as the events occur in the times of the government of the successive judges. The sixteenth chapter is devoted to a notice of Othniel, the first of the judges, and to mythical events in Greece and Italy supposed to be contemporary, particularly the birth of the Delian Apollo, and of the Theban Bacchus; also the introduction of letters into Greece and Phenicia by Cadmus and Phenix. These and other matters in this chapter are tacitly derived, as usual, from Eusebius, probably through Marianus Scotus. The only authors referred to in this unimportant chapter are Petrus Comestor, St. Augustine, and Isidore.

the times of the Judges.

Othniel.

Ehud.

The Jewish history in the times of Ehud is related very briefly in the seventeenth chapter. The allusions to Grecian history and mythology are numerous, and mostly the same as those given in Eusebius; they are often expressed in the very words of Jerome's version. Of Hercules we have a full account at the end of the chapter, derived from Justin, Lucan, Virgil, Claudian, and others. Following St. Augustine, he considers that more heroes than one bore the name of Hercules; and mentions the opinion of some, that the word itself signifies a glorious man.

The Greek myths arose principally in the time of Ehud.

The eighteenth chapter is devoted to the explanations of the Greek mythology which have been proposed by St. Augustine and others, and to the different kinds of fables current in antiquity. Higden quotes Eusebius[2] as an authority for saying that mythological

[1] From this chapter we infer that Higden was not absolutely ignorant of Greek, or at least not ignorant of the numerical value of the Greek letters. It is curious to observe the improvement of the sentence in the later form of the chronicle. But his knowledge perhaps well nigh ended with the alphabet; he manifestly shows ignorance of the language in various places.

[2] The heading is, *Eusebius in Chronicis*. I have in vain searched the Canon of Eusebius for the passage. It is true that Eusebius places a good many of the myths in Ehud's time in the body of his chronicle.

fables were invented in Greece principally in the time of Ehud, and Augustine's opinion that they arose between the time of Joshua's death and the Trojan war. It is not necessary to say anything here of the different kinds of fables, or of the interpretations given to the different myths. Higden refers in the course of his remarks upon them to St. Augustine, Isidore, Peter Comestor,[1] and Alexander Neckham. He concludes with an account of Mercury and his inventions.

Events in the time of Deborah; The history of the judges is continued in chapter nineteen, which contains the history of Deborah (or, as Higden, in common with Petrus Comestor, writes her name, Delborah) and of Barak. He notices, from St. Augustine, the fall of the Argive kingdom, which is translated to Mycenæ, and the rise of the Laurentine monarchy in Italy. The death of Liber Pater, the reign of Midas, and the foundation of Troy, are introduced here after Eusebius, though without reference to any authority.

of Gideon; Higden proceeds in the twentieth chapter to notice very briefly the history of Gideon, and observes, from Josephus,[2] that Tyre was founded in his days. He then touches on the histories of Minos, Theseus and the Minotaur, Helen, Dædalus, his son Icarus, and his nephew Perdix, from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. This leads him to describe the various Labyrinths from Hugo Pisanus.[3] From the same authority he gives an account

[1] See p. 378. Comestor, who refers to Walafrid Strabus, strangely supposes the chorus introduced into Greece to be a kind of musical instrument. See *Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 9. The passage quoted at p. 376 occurs in c. 8 of the same book, but Comestor places the event in time of Gideon; this is not the only chronological discrepancy betweeen Higden and Comestor. The former places the rape of Helen in the time of Gideon, quoting the words of Comestor very closely (p. 382), who places it in the time of Jair. (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 11.)

[2] The citation is probably derived from Marianus Scotus, cap. *Gedeon,* who, copying Eusebius, refers to his *Ant. Jud.* lib. iii. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 3.

[3] Hugo however does but copy Isidore, lib. xv. cap. 2. § 36.

of the plague which afflicted the Athenians in consequence of their murder of Icarus and of the suicide of his daughter Erigone; and of its expiation by images oscillating in the air.[1]

The histories of Abimelech and Tola are briefly related in the twenty-first chapter, in which Higden introduces (after Eusebius) allusions to the battle of the Lapithæ and the Centaurs, and to the departure of Medea to Colchis. From Justin an account is given of Faunus, king of Italy, and of his wife Fatua; also of the birth of king Latinus. He concludes with an account of Vesores, who is possibly the same as Sesostris, king of Egypt, and his war with the Scythians, and thence passes to the origin and history of the Amazons, herein copying pretty closely the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters of the first book of Orosius.

of Abimelech and Tola;

After alluding to the history of Jair in his twenty-second chapter, Higden mentions (after Eusebius) the opinion of some that Carthage was now founded. He alludes also (still following the same authority,) to the war of Minos with Dædalus, and ends this short chapter with an account of the introduction of the Latin alphabet into Italy by Carmentis, mother of king Latinus, and one of the Camenæ, to which is appended a brief history of the four stages of Latinity; the whole being taken from Isidore.[2] Of Jephthah, the successor of Jair, Higden mentions little more than the name (c. xxiii.), but immediately passes on to mention the rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus, the first king. He then tells us, from Isidore, that the Erythrean Sibyl flourished in his reign, and gives an account of the ten Sybils, and a derivation of the word Sibylla. From St. Augustine, who places

of Jair, Jephthah, and Ibzan.

[1] Hugo derives his account from Servius on Virg. *Georg.* ii. 389. See also Facciolati, *Lex.* s. v. *Oscillum.*

[2] Lib. i. c. 4. (not 10.), and Lib. ix. c. 1. (not 7).

the Erythrean Sibyl in the time of Romulus, he quotes a prophecy of hers relating to Christ. He then goes on to give an account of the Argonautic expedition and of the Trojan war, principally from Justin and Dares Phrygius. The history of the latter is pursued throughout the whole of the twenty-fourth chapter, which also relates (or rather, barely alludes to) the government of Israel by Ibzan, or, as Higden writes it, Abessa.[1]

The Argonautic expedition and the Trojan war.

Sacred and profane history in the times of the later judges, Elon, Abdon, and Sampson.

In the twenty-fifth chapter we have brief notices of Elon (Aylon. *Higden;* Ahialon, *Vulg.*), and of some variations of chronology of Josephus and Eusebius, tacitly derived from Marianus Scotus;[2] also of Abdon or Labdon, in the third year of whose government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. He then goes on to remark, from St. Augustine, that the Greeks on their return home from Troy met with many disasters, mentioning particularly the change of the companions of Diomede into birds. This gives Higden an opportunity of bringing together a number of curious stories to the same effect from Varro, Pliny, St. Augustine, Apuleius, and William of Malmesbury. These need not be discussed here, entertaining as they are. He concludes with quotations from St. Augustine and Giraldus,[3] which incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.

Return of the Greeks from Troy; certain miraculous accounts discussed.

Trojans' affairs.

Higden now passes on (c. xxvi.) to the affairs of the Trojans after the siege of Troy, and relates the wanderings of Eneas to Sicily and Africa after Martinus Polonus,[4] but expresses his doubts about the truth of his meeting with Dido, as Eneas probably lived more than three centuries before Carthage was built, if Justin and

[1] The Vulgate (*Jud.* xii. 8) has Abesan; Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 13) calls him Abessan.

[2] Marian. Scot. cap. *Achialon*, 105.

[3] Aug. *C.D.* lib. xviii. c. 18. and Girald. Cambr. *Top. Hib.* ii. 19., who refers to the same passage of Augustine.

[4] Mart. Polon. *Chron.* p. 4, ed. Bas, 1559.

others are to be trusted. He then proceeds to relate, after the same Martinus, the conquests of Eneas in Italy, the foundation of Lavinium, and the death of Eneas, who was succeeded by his son Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa. He left his kingdom to Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother, because his own son Iulus, from whom the Julian family sprang, was of too tender an age. For these events Higden appears mainly to follow Eusebius, Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), and Martinus Polonus, but there is some error in the references in his MSS. (see notes.)[1] He then, following Eusebius, makes mention of the events in the time of Sampson, such as the escape of Ulysses from Scylla and the Sirens, and the murder of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, by Orestes.[2] He concludes by observing (after Eusebius) that some place Homer's age here, but notes the variations of ancient authors in determining the time when he flourished.

Eneas in Italy.

Age of Homer.

Our author now approaches the fabulous history of Britain. After slightly touching the history of Eli (noticing the variations in chronology between Josephus and the Septuagint), and of Ruth, and of the recovery of Troy by Hector's sons after Eusebius (who however places the event earlier) he proceeds, still following Eusebius, with the succession of the Latin kings. Silvius Posthumus, the third king, son of Eneas, and brother of Ascanius, now begins to reign, whose son Brutus, according to the British accounts, invaded Britain. The Roman account, he observes (with which

Times of Eli.

Succession of Latin kings.

Early history of Britain.

---

[1] I now believe that *Eutropius* is an error for *Eusebius*, whose Canon (s. a. 870) contains part of Higden's account.

[2] The word *Ægyptiorum* (p. 438), which perplexed me (see notes), is taken from Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), who intended *regnum* or *rex* to be supplied. (In Eusebius, however, whom he miscopies, the name occurs in the column headed *Atheniensium* [*regnum*,] s. a. 854.) But Pyrrhus was doubtless king of some part of Northern Greece, perhaps Epirus, as the later kings of Epirus claimed affinity with Achilles. See also Isidore, xv. 1. § 43.

Eusebius agrees), differs from our own respecting the father of Brutus, and then, after entering minutely into the pedigree and history of the Latin kings, he concludes that Silvius Posthumus cannot be the father of Brutus. He proceeds, however, with the history of Brutus according to Geoffrey of Monmouth,[1] and in due course notices his invasion of Britain, of which he became the first king, after his destruction of the giants. The British history is now slightly interrupted by a notice of Samuel and his chronology according to Josephus; but Higden soon returns to it, and notices, after Geoffrey, the reigns of Locrinus, son of Brutus, and of his wife Guendolena, who murdered him.

History of Saul.

In the twenty-eighth chapter we have an account of Saul, and of the length of his reign according to Josephus; also a notice (after Eusebius) of the succession of the Latin kings, and of Codrus, the last king of Athens, which he partly derives from St. Augustine. Higden then reverts to Britain, and, following Geoffrey tacitly,[2] relates that Maddan succeeded his father Locrinus, leaving two sons, Mempricius and Maulus.

Termination of the third age of the world.

With Saul's death terminates the third age of the world, from the birth of Abraham to the reign of David, and Higden notices the unimportant variation of the chronology between Isidore and Josephus.

Description of MSS. β. and γ. which have been occasionally collated for this volume.

In bringing the second volume of Higden to a close, I should observe that I have occasionally consulted two MSS. of Trevisa's translation, which were not made use of in the first volume.[3] The older of these (γ. of the notes) is Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. in the British Museum. In the last printed catalogue it is said to be wanting, "Desideratur;" but a note in the copy in the Museum

---

[1] *Hist. Reg. Brit.* lib. i. c. 3, et seqq. Alfred of Beverley (p. 10. et seqq.) copies his account, to whom Higden also refers.

[2] Lib. ii. c. 6. Geoffrey writes Malim for Maulus; Alfred has Maulim (p. 13.)

[3] Some corrections of the text made by their aid in vol. i. will be found in the addenda to the present volume.

says, "Restored, J. Holmes." It had been seen by T. Smith, who wrote the Catalogue of the Cotton MSS. printed at Oxford in 1696, and afterwards by the Hon. W. Burton in the following century, who annotated the copy in the British Museum. It is likewise mentioned in the Report on the Cotton MSS. after the fire, printed in 1732. The MS. is in quarto, on vellum of 296 leaves, each page containing about 37 lines, and is rubricated and slightly illuminated. It contains moreover the Dialogue of Dominus and Clericus, and Trevisa's Epistle to Lord Berkeley. It is injured by fire, though not very considerably; a few leaves however at the beginning and end are only partially legible. It would seem to be written towards the close of the fourteenth century, or rather a little later. Some extracts from it have been lately printed in Mr. Morris's *Specimens of Early English*, whose book first made me acquainted with its existence.[1] It differs much from the standard MS. and α. in the forms of the pronouns, and preserves in some cases the true text, where they have corrupted it. The other MS. (β of the notes) which has been collated in cases of difficulty is MS. Harl. 1900; it has been sufficiently described in the Harleian Catalogue of 1808. It would appear to belong to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Cockfield Rectory,
February 13, 1869.

---

[1] Printed at Oxford, in 1867. See pp. 333–344; in which are contained the forty-first, forty-second, and fifty-ninth chapters of the first book. Compare pp. 13–31, and pp. 157–163 of the present volume.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST—(*continued*).

Cap. XXXIX.

Great Britain or England. Various designations of the island.

Cap. XL.

England, continued. Its site and dimensions.

Cap. XLI.

England, continued. The richness of its natural productions.

Cap. XLII.

England, continued. The marvels therein explained.

Britain contains hot springs, over which Minerva presides, which are splendidly decorated as baths. In Peccum (the Peak of Derbyshire?) are caverns full of mighty winds; and at Cherdhole (Cheddar?) is an endless cave under ground. At Stonehenge are marvellous stones of unknown origin and significance. Britain has several wonderful lakes; one containing sixty inhabited islands, surrounded by sixty rocks, and having sixty rivers flowing into it. Also a lake, which becomes hot or cold according as the bather desires. Other lakes with various miraculous qualities. Petrifying springs near Winchester and Bath. Prophetic fluctuations of the Dee near Chester. No salmon found in Bala lake, though abundant in the Dee. Many bodies of saints preserved in England uncorrupt, as SS. Ethelreda, Edmund king of East Anglia, Elphege, Cuthbert. - - - - - pp. 22–30.

Cap. XLIII.

England, continued. The principal divisions of the island.

After the time of Brutus Britain was divided into three parts: Loegria, now England; Cambria, now Wales; and Albania, now Scotland; so named from Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus, sons of Brutus. Their limits described. Full account of Offa's dyke, which afterwards artificially separated Wales from England. - - - - pp. 30–34.

Cap. XLIV.

England, continued. The islands adjacent to Britain.

The Isle of Wight described; its dimensions. The dimensions, population, and fertility of the Isle of Anglesey. The Isle of Man and its superstitions. The Isle of Thanet. - pp. 36–42.

Cap. XLV.

England, continued. The Royal Roads.

Immunities attached to ploughs, temples and city roads by Molmutius, king of the Britons. King Belinus, his son, to

Cap. XLVI.

England, continued. The famous rivers.

Cap. XLVII.

England, continued. The famous cities and towns.

Cap. XLVIII.

England, continued. Cities and towns, continued.

Cap. XLIX.

England, continued. The counties or shires.

Cap. LII.

England, continued. The Episcopal sees.

Three archiepiscopal and twenty-eight episcopal sees in Britain in the time of Lucius. The former were London, York, Caerleon. Augustine constituted Canterbury the principal see in place of London. Temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric. York always an archiepiscopal see, but Scotland at length ceased to be subject to its jurisdiction. In king Arthur's time this archbishopric was removed from Caerleon to St. David's. Sampson, the twenty-fourth bishop of St. David's, retired in consequence of the prevalence of the plague to Dol in Brittany; twenty-one archbishops from Sampson to the time of Henry I. Up to this time the Welsh bishops were wholly independent of the authority of any other church. From the time of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Henry II., the Welsh bishops became subject to that see. Two primates now in England; the archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England; the archbishop of York, primate of England. From and after the time of the Conqueror various sees, (Dorchester, Lichfield, Thetford, Sherburn, Wells, Cornwall, and Selsey,) were translated to more important cities. The bishop of Rochester is only the chaplain of the archbishop of Canterbury, and has no diocese. pp. 110–118.

Cap. LIII.

England, continued. The Western bishops.

Foundation of the sees of Dorchester (near Oxford) and Winchester. The see of Sherburn separated from Winchester by archbishop Theodore. King Edward the Elder created the sees of Wells, Crediton, and St. German in Cornwall. Ramsbury created soon after. All these sees, except Winchester, translated to larger places by William the Conqueror. pp. 118–122.

Cap. LIV.

England, continued. The Eastern bishops.

The sees of Dunwich and Elmham founded. The former see suppressed. In the Conqueror's time Elmham transferred to Thetford. William Rufus removed the see of Thetford to Norwich. Henry I. separates Ely from the see of Lincoln. pp. 122–124.

Cap. LV.

England, continued. The Midland bishops.

Cap. LVI.

England, continued. The Northern bishops.

Cap. LVII.

England, continued. The Number of the episcopal sees.

Cap. LVIII.

England, continued. The different Tribes that peopled the country.

they found the Scots dwelling. These recommended them to settle in the north of Britain about Caithness, and promised them aid against the Britons. The Picts and Scots intermarry. The Picts said by some to be synonymous with the Agathyrsi or with the Goths. The tyrant Maximus, A.D. 383, carried them to Gaul to aid him against Gratian. Carausius, the tyrant (circa 290) gave them a dwelling-place in the south of Scotland, where they have since remained mingled with the Britons. This tract afterwards belonged to Northumbria, but was at length made by Kenneth (Macalpine), king of Scotland (circa 840), part of his own dominions. The Irish Scot- afterwards (circa 500) came over with their chief Reuda to Scotland, and settled about Argyle. The Saxons or Angles assisted from Germany by the Britons against the Scots and Picts, drive the Britons themselves into Wales. In the time of Egbert, king of the Westsaxons, all the natives of England were called Angles. The Danes next invade the country and ravage it for about two hundred years; they afterwards fail. The Normans next come over with duke William. Last of all, men of Flanders sailed hither in the reign of Henry I., and settled at Haverfordwest. In Higden's time the Scots lived in Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and Angles mixed in the whole island. The Danes have vanished insensibly, but the Picts were exterminated by fraud by the Scots. - - pp. 142–156.

CAP. LIX.

England, continued. The languages of the natives.

The native dialects are of the same number as the native tribes. The Scotch and Welsh being less mixed with the rest retain their dialects most uncorrupt. The Flemings of West Wales speak English fairly. The English dialects were formerly three, southern, midland, and northern; these originated with the three Germanic tribes who peopled these districts; they became corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The corruption of English is increased by two causes; the first is, that boys construe their lessons in school in French, and are taught to speak French to the neglect of their own language; the second is, that rustics endeavour to ape their betters and to appear as Frenchified as possible. The three English dialects extend east and west across the island, and consequently the inhabitant of Mid-Anglia is better able to understand a North Briton or a South Briton than these can understand each other. The Northumbrian dialect, especially in Yorkshire, is almost un-

intelligible to the southerners, who have little intercourse with their less civilised countrymen of the north, whither the Court seldom repairs. - - - - - pp 156–162.

Cap. LX.

England, continued. The manners of the natives.

The Welsh Flemings brave and enterprising, apt for the arts of war and peace, English in feeling, hostile to the Welsh. Their superstitions. The southern English are of a more quiet and mild disposition than the northern; the midlanders intermediate in character. Gluttony, drunkenness, and excess of apparel, are vices especially English. Skill of the English in war; their love of travel, and wide dispersion over the world. Their industry of all kinds. Pope Eugenius' praise and blame of the nation. Higden's invectives against their fastidious and discontented spirit, ever affecting the dress and manners of those above their own station. A prophecy of a holy hermit against their vices. - - - - pp. 164–174.

BOOK THE SECOND.

The History of the World down to the Destruction of the First Temple.

Cap. I.

The Prologue. Man. His likeness to the World.

A description of the countries of the world must be followed by the history of the world's actions. The great world was made for the little world, which is Man, on whom the Creator impressed the likeness of the great world. Man and the world resemble each other in three respects; in their dimensions, in their composition, and in their operations.

(1.) As from the zenith to the nadir the distance is as great as from east to west, so the height of a man from head to foot is as great as the space from the end of one extended arm to that of the other.

(2.) Secondly, in the great and little world the natural disposition is similar; its parts and members correspond to one another, and a dislocation of any part is followed by disturbance in both. The world and man are both framed on a system of adaptation and gradation. Existence, life, and

Cap. IV.

The creation of Adam.

Cap. V.

The posterity of Lamech.

Cap. VI.

The posterity of Noah.

Cap. VII.

Of Noah's children, and the kingdoms founded by their posterity.

Cap. VIII.

On the kingdoms of Scythia, Sicyon, Egypt, Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome.

The kingdom of Assyria, the earliest of all, was founded by Belus, the son of Nimrod, and lasted till the reign of Sardanapalus, who died in the reign of Uzziah, king of Judah. Arbaces then transferred the kingdom of Assyria to the Medes. Assyria, however, had still governors of its own, though not monarchs, as Pul, Tiglath-Pileser, Shalmaneser, Sennacherib, Esarhaddon, Sargon. In the time of the elder Cyrus, who overthrew Astyages, the kingdom of the Medes was transferred to the Persians.

In the time of Hezekiah, king of Judah, arose the great kingdom of the Babylonians and Chaldeans, governed by seven kings, of whom Belshazzar or Nabar was the last. Cyrus slew him and joined his kingdom to his own.

The monarchy of Persia founded by Cyrus. The names of the kings. Alexander annexes Persia to Greece.

The Macedonian kingdom began under Granaus (Caranus) in the time of Uzziah, king of Judah, and lasted till the reign of Perseus, slain by the Romans. There were other Greek kingdoms at Sicyon, Argos, Sparta, Epirus, all of which fell before the power of Rome.

The kings of Italy, of whom Janus was first, lasted till Tarquin the Proud, six being Latins, fourteen Albans, seven Romans after the foundation of the city. Consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators successively governed the Roman State down to the time of Julius Cæsar. Thenceforward Emperors ruled. Augustus reduced the world to one monarchy. Philip Senior, the first Christian Emperor. Constantine the Great made Constantinople a second seat of empire, leaving to the Pope the dignity of the Apostolic See. When Charlemagne, king of France, became Emperor of the West, the title of Roman Emperor remained at Constantinople alone. - - - - - - pp. 258–274.

Cap. IX.

The empire of Ninus and Semiramis.

Belus, son of Nimrod and king of Babylon, is succeeded by his son Ninus, who reigned over almost all Asia, except India. Abraham is born in his reign, about 1300 years before the building of Rome. Ninus builds Nineveh, subdues Zoroaster, king of Bactria, and burns his books on magic. After the death of his father Belus, he made an image of him; hence arose idolatry. Baal and Beel, which occur in various combinations, are forms of Bel, the general name for idol. Further remarks on the origin of idolatry and of the heathen gods and superstitions from Alexander Neckham, Isidore, Augustine, and Jerome. Upon the death of Ninus, who was killed by an

Cap. X.

The History of Abraham.

Cap. XI.

History of Isaac and his family. Early history of Greece.

Cap. XII.

History of the patriarchs concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Apis, third king of Argos, comes into Egypt; and is there after his death worshipped as Serapis. Apis appears annually in the form of a bull emerging from the Nile. In the reign of Argus, fourth king of Argos, corn began to be cultivated in Greece. Jacob dies, is embalmed, and afterwards buried in Hebron. Legends of Prometheus, Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres. Joseph dies, and he and his brethren, as they die, are buried in Hebron. Their bones afterwards translated to Shechem. pp. 306–314.

Cap. XIII.

History of Moses.

Moses, the son of Amram, was born in the time of the Pharaoh known as Amenophis. Pharaoh's cruelty to the Israelites; their male children cast into the Nile. Moses is saved by Thermuth, the daughter of Pharaoh. Moses brought before the king when an infant; he tramples the king's crown, on which an image of Jove is carved, under foot. His narrow escape from being killed; he then scorches his own tongue with burning coals, and is accordingly supposed to have acted in the matter of the crown in childish simplicity. Moses in process of time leads the Egyptians against the invading Ethiopians, whom he blockades in Saba, the royal city. Tharbis, the king's daughter, surrenders the city to Moses, on condition of his marrying her. Tharbis opposed his return to Egypt; but he gave her a ring of forgetfulness, and so returned. While visiting his brethren in the land of Goshen, he slew an Egyptian who had smitten an Israelite. The deed being known, he fled into the land of Midian, and married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro the priest.

Legends of Antæus, Phaeton, and Deucalion. Cecrops the first king of Athens. - - - - - pp. 314–326.

Cap. XIV.

History of Moses concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Moses and Aaron stand before Pharaoh, who refuses to let Israel go. The plagues of Egypt. The Exodus. The miracles in

Cap. XVII.

History of Ehud and Shamgar. Notices of many ancient heroes, especially Hercules.

Cap. XVIII.

Explanations of the mythical narratives of antiquity.

Cap. XIX.

History of Deborah and her contemporaries.

Cap. XX.

History of Gideon and his contemporaries.

Cap. XXI.

Histories of Abimelech and Tola, and their contemporaries.

Cap. XXII.

History of Jair, and contemporary events.

Cap. XXIII.

History of Jephthah and his contemporaries.

Cap. XXIV.

History of Ibzan and of the Trojan war.

Cap. XXV.

History of Elon and Abdon, and of the return of the Greeks from the Trojan war.

Elon, of the tribe of Zebulon, judges Israel ten years. Variations of chronologers. Abdon judges Israel eight years In the third year of his government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. The Greeks on their way home met with many troubles. The companions of Dioméde were changed into birds, and haunted a temple of Diomede (who had miraculously disappeared, and was held as a god) near Mount Garganus in Apulia. Varro confirms the story by the changes of Ulysses' companions into hogs, and of certain Arcadians into wolves. Augustine heard stories of Italian witches who turned men into beasts by giving them cheese. Apuleius' account of himself. A similar account related by William of Malmesbury, in the time of Peter Damian. St. Augustine's story about Præstantius. He and Giraldus incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories. - - - - - pp. 418–430.

Cap. XXVI.

The wanderings of Eneas after the fall of Troy.

Accompanied by Anchises and Ascanius he comes to Sicily, and while intending to sail to Italy is driven by a storm to Africa, where, according to the common account, he meets Dido, who falls in love with him. But there are chronological reasons against the common account, as Eneas seems to have lived three centuries before Carthage was built. Dido burns herself to death on a funeral pile. Eneas comes to Italy, allies himself with Evander, who reigned in the Palatine Mount, and in the end overcomes the Tuscans and Latins, and builds Lavinium, named after his wife, Lavinia, a daughter of king Latinus. Ascanius (or Iulus), son of Eneas by Creusa, succeeds Eneas, who fell in fighting against Mezentius; he leaves Lavinium and builds Alba Longa. He is succeeded by Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother.

In the time of Sampson, who judged Israel twenty years, occurred the events of the Odyssey. Pyrrhus is slain by Orestes. Homer now flourished, according to some. Age of Homer uncertain. - - - - pp. 432–440.

Cap. XXVII.

History of Eli and his contemporaries. Early History of Britain.

Cap. XXVIII.

History of Saul and his contemporaries.

ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Vol. 1.

Introd. p. xii., notes, col. 1, l. 9. In Chester Cathedral an arched monument is still to be seen in the wall of the south aisle near the choir, which corresponds perfectly with the description quoted, and it has been recently supposed by some antiquaries, as I learn, to be the tomb of Higden. The opinion, so far as I can judge, seems to be well founded.

Page xviii., line 13. "There was . . . . facts of the case." This sentence must be cancelled, and the first three lines of the note also. Roger Frend was abbot of Chester, not in Higden's time, as my argument required, but about a century earlier.

Page xxv., line 12, for *Jersuaelem* read *Jerusalem*.

Page xxxii., note, col. 1, l. 18, and p. 256, note 20, for *Auroch* read *Aurochs*.

Page 64, line 1, for *omnia* read *omnis*.

Page 190, line 11, for *Moysis* read *Moysi* with the MSS. It had escaped me that this is the Latin form of the genitive in the Vulgate, &c.

Page 222, line 10, sqq. Tacitly taken from Will. Malm. *Reg. Angl.*, lib. ii., p. 357 (Hardy).

Page 224, line 3, for *speliebatur* read *sepeliebatur*.

Page 335, line 28, for *he* read *be*.

Pages 394–430. This metrical description of Wales is published by Mr. T. Wright among the poems of Walter Mapes, Camden Soc., 1841, to whom some old lists of his works ascribe it. Mr. Dimock, however, has shown (Pref. to Gir. Cambr., vol. vi. p. li.) that there is no reason to doubt that Higden is the author. Mr. Wright's text, which I have examined throughout, has not a single various reading of importance.

Vol. 2.

The erroneous and defective references which have been corrected in the introduction or notes are not noticed here.

Page 6, line 5. Solinus, add cap. 22 here and at pp. 10, 14, 22.

Page 10, line 4. After *quartodecimo*, add cap. 6.

Page 10, line 6. After *Giraldus* add *Top. Hib.* i. 3; where also the citation at p. 12, l. 10, occurs.

Page 10, line 7. Orosius, add lib. i. c. 2.

Page 10, line 12. After *primo* add cap. 1; the same chapter is referred to pp. 12 (ter.), 16, 142, 150.

Page 14, line 15. The true reference is to Plin., lib. xvii. c. 4 (al. 6).

Page 26, line penult. After *Itinerario* add ii. 10.

Page 38, line 4, insert semicolon after *villas*, and cancel it after *cantredis*.

Page 48. After *Alfridus* add lib. i. p. 8, who has *rheuma* for *fleuma*.

Page 50, line 14. After *quarto* add p. 283 (Sav.).

Page 54, line 19. After *secundo* add p. 234 (Sav.), and p. 254 (Sav.) at p. 58, l. 10.

Page 56, notes, col. 2, line 11, cancel C. D.

Page 58, line 13. See *Galf. Mon.*, lib. ii. c. 10.

Page 62, line 15. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).

Page 64, line 6. Insert in marg. *De Edinburgh*, and at l. 14, *De Alcluid.*

Page 66, line 15. After *Britonum* add lib. iii. c. 17.

Page 70, line 2. The first citation from William of Malmesbury occurs lib. iii. p. 258 (Sav.); the other (l. 17) at p. 272 (Sav.).

Page 74, line 1. After *Itinerario* add ii. 11. But little of the description of Chester is found in Giraldus; it is probably due to Higden himself.

Page 78, line 14. See Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. iv. p. 288 (Sav.).

Page 84, line 5. After *Alfridus* add lib. vi. p. 97; and lib. vi. *passim* after *Alfridus* at p. 100, l. 2; and lib. iii. p. 32, after *Alfridus*, p. 110, l. 3.

Page 110. After *primo*, l. 15, add p. 195 (Sav.), (in part).

Page 130. After *tertio*, l. 17, add p. 269 (Sav.). For the other reference to William (l. 10), which I cannot find in lib. iv., compare Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. i. p. 232 (Sav.); also Bed. lib. ii. c. 20.

Page 132, line 7. After *tertio* add p. 259 (Sav.).

Page 132, line 11. The early part occurs at Bed. lib. iv. capp. 3, 4; the latter (beginning *sed et ipse* down to *exstiterat*) is mostly from c. 12; we should read, however, with Bede and Trevisa, *Ecgfrid* for *Oswy.* After this Higden begins to speak for himself; but the information is no doubt derived from William of Malmesbury (*De Pont. passim*).

Page 134, line 5, for *post* read *primo*, see note.

Page 144, line 12. After *Gaufridus* add lib. iv. c. 17.

Page 146, line ult. After *Gaufridus* add lib. v. c. 3.

Page 150, line 5. See Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, i. 6.

Page 152, line 6. *Alfridus.* Compare lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.

Page 162, line 4. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).

Page 164, line 3. Cancel *Giraldus.*

Page 168, line 9. See Joh. Saresb. *Polycrat.*, vi. 19.

Page 172, line 8. After *sexto* add p. 359 (Sav.).

Page 176, line 7, for *assimulantur* read *assimilantur.*

Page 190, line 14. See Senec. *Controv.*, lib. i. in princ. (t. iii. p. 50, Elz.).

Page 206, l. 8. After *undecimo* add *cap.* 3, § 4.

Page 220, line 1. After *Methodius* add *Div. Rev.*, Sig. a. v., Ed. 1504.

Page 226, line 3. Tubal; Jubal, the reading of D., is correct.

Page 226, lines 6 and 22. See Joseph. *Ant. Jud.*, lib. i. c. 2. But Petrus, whom Higden follows, has more than Josephus about Jabal.

Page 230, lines 7 and 14. See Joseph., u.s., c. 3, § 3 and § 1. (The latter citation occurs in Petrus, cap. 1, whence Higden derives it.)

Page 232, line 6. See Joseph., u. s., c. 2, § 3 (quoted from Marianus, col. 46, by Higden, almost word for word).

Page 236, line 7. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., lib. 1, c. 3, § 3. For the other allusions, see Isid., lib. v., c. 39; Hieron. Op., t. viii. col. 71 (Migne); Marianus Scotus, col. 48; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vi. b.

Page 237, line 12. Print the words in Roman character, and substitute comma for colon after *quarto.*

Page 240, line 19. Dele *Salah* in margin.
Page 244, lines 21 and 22. See Isid., lib. v. c. 39; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vii.
Page 248. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., c. 4, § 3.
Page 252, line penult. For *Britanicum* read *Britannicum*.
Page 274, line 17. After *primo* add c. 4.
Page 280, line 14. After *octavo* add c. 11.
Page 290, line ult. The statement is really derived from Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 57.
Page 296, lines 2 and 4. *Tritonia* and *Pallene* are preferable readings. So Augustine and Isidore (lib. viii. c. 11, § 75).
Page 296, line 21. For *Deeboræ* read Delboræ.
Page 310, line 7. The true reference is to Isid. xix. c. 32; but Petrus, c. 86, is Higden's real authority, who has more than Isidore.
Page 314, line 1. After *quinto* add c. 39.
Page 330, line penult. After *tertio* add *cap.* 1.
Page 334, line 16. After *primo* add *cap.* 11.
Page 334, note, col. 1, l. 5. For *Vers.* read *Venet.*
Page 336, line 12. See Joseph., u. s., lib. i. c. 15; but he does not give the name of Afer's daughter.
Page 338, line 2. After *quinto* add cap. 39, but Isidore has 27, not 28.
Page 340, line 18. After *quartodecimo* add cap. 4 (pr. part).
Page 350, line 5. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 3.
Page 350, line penult. Demetra occurs in Jerome's version of Eusebius, and in Marianus Scotus; it is rare as a form of the ablative. See Pape, s. v.
Page 372, line 16. See Macrobius *sup. Somn. Scip.*, lib. i. c. 2, and c. 1 for what is said of Plato and Cicero in the same extract.
Page 374, line 13. Boethius. See *De Cons. Phil.*, lib. i., prop. init.
Page 384, line 6. After *quintodecimo* add *cap.* 2, § 36.
Page 388, line 15. After *quadragesimo tertio* add *cap.* 1; and after *secundo*, p. 402, line 5, add cap. 7.
Page 396, line 4. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 4.
Page 398, line 8. After *octavo* add c. 8.
Page 418, line 8, sqq. Tacitly copied from Marianus Scotus, col. 105.
Page 424. After *secundo* add § 171, p. 282 (Hardy).
Page 432, line 4. See Mart. Polon. *Libell. Chron. præfix.*, p. 4, ed. Bas. 1559. The quotation from him at p. 434, l. 5, occurs at p. 5.
Page 434, line 1. After *octavodecimo* add cap. 6.

TREVISA'S TEXT, AS EDITED, COLLATED WITH MS. HARL. 1900 (β.) AND MS. COTTON. TIBER. D. VII. (γ.) IN CERTAIN DOUBTFUL PASSAGES.

VOL. 1.

Page 13, note 14] *in caas*, β.; *on caas*, γ. This reading is correct.
Page 15, note 9] *þat* is wanting in β. and γ., and should be cancelled.

Page 21, note 1] β. inserts *I* only after *þat*, and omits it before *take*; γ. is much burnt, but seems to have *þat y wryte in þe bygynnyng*. This reading at any rate completes the sense.
Page 87, note 10] Read *fethery* with α.; *vepery*, γ.
Page 89, note 9] Read *his* with β. γ. Cx.
Page 95, note 2] β. and γ. also omit *of þe tyme*, rightly.
Page 95, note 3] Read languages with β. γ. Cx.
Page 119, note 13] Read *to falliþ* with α. β. γ.
Page 155, note 1] Read *wytte is wonder* with α. β. γ.
Page 155, note 6] Cancel *ful* with α. β. γ. Cx.
Page 175, note 8] Read *þe empere* with α. β.; *the empery*, γ.
Page 187, note 9] *osels*, β.; *oseles*, γ. This reading is correct.
Page 187, note 10] Read *þeyz* with γ.
Page 189, note 1] Read *wel faste* with α. β. γ.
Page 193, note 6] The words in brackets occur also in β. γ.
Page 197, note 10] Omit *in* before *þilke* with γ.; β. however has it.
Page 213, note 2] *a falle* (*i.e. fallen*), γ., rightly; *a nalle* or *a ualle*, β.
Page 227, note 2] *in*, β. γ.
Page 251, note 1] γ. omits the sentence in brackets; β contains it.
Page 277, note 7] omit the clause with β. γ. Cx.
Page 303, note 3] *seyle*, β. γ.
Page 347, note 9] Read *of wenches* with β. γ.
Page 373, note 6] for *chirche ȝerde*, β. and γ. have *chirch hey*.
Page 403, note 6] *segges*, β.
Page 411, line 7] For *Best in* read with γ. *Bestial.*
Page 419, note 15] β. and γ. agree with text.
Page 419, note 16] β. and γ. agree with Cx.

Vol. 2.

For this volume the readings of β. are given in the notes throughout; those of γ. are mentioned here up to p. 211, after which they also are recorded in the notes.
Page 7, note 13] after β. add, and γ.
Page 9, line 1] Read, with γ., *clif.*
Page 21, note 2] γ. agrees with text.
Page 21, note 4] *haunes*, γ.
Page 39, line 20] *longe yn þe*, γ.; which adds *wel schort* after *cold*, below.
Page 49, note 4] β. and γ. have *atwynne*, correctly.
Page 83, line 4, lötynge] luttyng, γ.
Page 83, line 14, þere is here] orþ (erþ, β.) ys þar, γ.
Page 85, note 1] β. and γ. agree with the text.
Page 133, note 6] With γ. cancel *from.*
Page 135, note 4] With γ. read *Whanne Wilfrede.*
Page 183, note 1] add, and γ.
Page 207, note 7] γ. has *sceene.*

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

Cap. XXXIX.

De Britannia Majori jam Anglia dicta.[1]

Post insulas oceani libet Britanniam[2] describere, cujus terræ gratia hæc presens lucubrata est historia; ubi dicetur:—

Incipiunt capitula.

i°. De varia insulæ nuncupatione.
ij°. De situ ejus et dimensione.[3]
iij°. De ejus prærogativis[4] attollendis.
iv°. De mirabilibus in ea[5] stupendis.
v°. De partibus ejus principalibus.
vj°. De insulis collateralibus.
vij°. De plateis ejus[6] regalibus.
viij°. De famosis fluminibus.
ix°. De antiquis urbibus.
x°. De provinciis et comitatibus.

---

[1] *Majori . . . dicta*] om. A.C.D.; *quæ et Anglia. Beda libro primo*, B.

[2] *libet Britanniam*] Britannia restat, B.; A. omits *libet*.

[3] *et dimensione*] om. B.

[4] *prærogativis ejus*, B.

[5] *ejus*, B.

[6] *ejus*] Added from Gale; om. A.B.E.

TREVISA'S TRANSLATION.

De Britannia. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

AFTER þe ilondes[1] of occean now Bretayne schal be descreued. By cause of Bretayne alle þe trauaile of þis storie was bygonne. Þe firste poynt þat me schal telle is of þe names of þe ilond; þanne of þe stede and place of þe lengþe and brede; þe þridde of þe worþynesse of þe lond; þe ferþe of þe[2] mervayles and wondres þat beeþ þere ynne; þe fifte of þe chief parties of þe lond. Þe sixte of ilondes þat beeþ bisides þat lond; þe seuenþe of þe kynges hiȝe weies; þe eiȝtþe of famous ryueres and stremes; þe nynþe of olde citees and townes; þe tenþe of prouinces and schires; þe elleuenþe of lawes and of þe names of lawes; þe twelfþe[3] of kyngdoms, of boundes, and of markes by twene kyngdoms; þe þrittenþe

ANONYMOUS TRANSLATION OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

Of Briteyne, otherwise callede Englonde. Capitulum tricesimum nonum. MS. HARL. 2261.

AFTER the yles of the occean hit pleasethe vs to describe Briteyne, for cause of whom this presente story and cronicle was compilede. Where hit schalle be seide firste of the diuersite of names of that yle. In the secunde of the site of hit and dimencion. In the thrydde of the prerogatiues of hit to be extollede. In the iiij^{the} of meruayles in hit to be hade in wondre. In the v^{the} of the principalle partes in hit. In the vj^{the} of yles colateralle to hit. In the vij^{the} of the kynges hye weyes. In the viij^{the} of famose floodes. In the ix^{the} of olde cites. In the x^{the} of prouinces and of schires. In the xj^{the} of lawes and of the hard wordes of hit. In the xij^{the} of the realmes and of the merkes of theyme. f. 59. a.

[1] *ilond*, Cx., who has various other slight alterations in this chapter.

[2] *þe*] om *α*.

[3] *twelfe*, *α*.

xj°. De legibus legumque vocabulis.

xij°. De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

xiij°. De episcopatibus et sedibus.

xiiij°. A quot quando[1] et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.

Expliciunt capitula.

xv°. De incolarum linguis et moribus.[2]

De varia insulæ nuncupatione.

Incipit historia.

PRIMITUS hæc insula vocabatur[3] Albion ab albis rupibus circa littora maris a longe apparentibus; tandem a Bruto eam acquirente dicta est[4] Britannia. Deinde a Saxonibus sive Anglis eam conquirentibus vocata est Anglia; sive ab Angela regina, clarissimi[5] ducis Saxonum filia, quæ[6] post multa tempora eam possedit;[7] sive, ut vult[8] Isidorus, Etymolog., quinto decimo, Anglia dicitur ab angulo orbis; vel secundum Bedam, libro primo,[9] beatus Gregorius videns Anglorum pueros Romæ[10] venales, alludens patriæ vocabulo ait: Vere

---

[1] *et quando*, A.

[2] The numbers and divisions of the chapters are not given quite uniformly in the MSS. of the text and versions.

[3] *Britanniæ Majori primo nomen fuit Albion*, C.D., which omit all the preceding part of the chapter.

[4] *dicitur*, B.

[5] *præclarissimi*, C. (not D.)

[6] *qui*, B.

[7] *possedit eam*, B.

[8] *ut vult*] *secundum Ysidorum*, C.D.

[9] *de gestis Anglorum* added in C.D.

[10] *Romæ*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

of bisshopriches[1] and of bisshoppes sees; þe fourtenþe how many manere men haueþ woned and i-dwelled[2] in þat lond.[3] Þe fiftenþe[4] of longage,[5] of maneres, and vsage of men of þat lond. *De varia insulæ nuncupatione.* Firste þis ilond hiȝte[6] Albion, as it were þe white lond, of white rokkes aboute þe clyues of þe see þat were i-seie wide.[7] Aftirward Bruyt conquered þis lond and cleped hit Bretayne after his owne name; þanne Saxons oþer Englische conquered þat[8] lond, and cleped hit Anglia, þat is Engelond; oþer it hatte Anglia, and haþ þat name of a quene þat owed þis lond þat heet Angela, and was a noble dukes douȝter of Saxouns. Oþere as Isidre saiþ, Eth. 15, Anglia haþ þat name, as hit were an angul and a corner of þe world; oþer, as Beda seiþ, libro primo: Seint[9] Gregorie seih[10] Englische children to selle[11] at Rome, and he accorded to þe name of þe lond, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261

In the xiij^the chapitre of byschopryches, and of the setes of þeim. In the xiiij^the of how mony, what peple, and when that londe was inhabite. In the xv^the of the langage of the inhabitatores of hit, and of the maneres of theyme. *Of diuersite of names of the yle of Briteyne.*[12] That yle was callede firste Albion, of white hylles apperenge a ferre abowte the brynkes of the see. And at the laste hit was callede Briteyne by Brute gettenge hit. After that hit was callede Englonde of the Saxones other Englishe men conquirenge hit. Other elles hit was callede Anglia, of Angela qwene and doȝhter of the nowble duke of Saxones, whiche hade that londe in possession by mony yeres. Other elles, after Ysoder, Ethi., xv° li°, Anglia, whiche is callede Englonde, toke the name of hit of an angle of the worlde: other elles, after Bede in his firste booke, blessede Gregory seenge childer of Englonde to be sette furthe to be solde at Rome seide: Now truly thei may be callede Englishe men (Angells or Angellysmen),[13] for the

---

[1] *bisshops riches*, *a.*
[2] *haue dwelled*, Cx.
[3] *ylond*, Cx.
[4] *fifteneþ*, *a.*
[5] *langage*, Cx.; *longe age*, MS. and *a.*
[6] *hit*, *a.*; *heyte*, Cx.
[7] *fro ferre*, Cx.
[8] *this*, Cx.
[9] *Seyn*, *a.*
[10] *seiȝ*, *a.*
[11] *to sellynge*, *a.*; (not Cx.)
[12] This is marked cap. xl. in Harl. MS.; but the capitulation is here and elsewhere brought into agreement with the Latin text.
[13] The words in a parenthesis are inserted in a later hand.

Angli, quia vultu nitent ut angeli. Nam terræ[1] nobilitas in vultibus[2] puerorum relucebat.[3] *Alfridus.*[4] Anglia Britannica[5] alter orbis[6] appellatur; quam olim Carolus Magnus[7] præ omnium bonorum copia cameram suam vocavit. *Solinus.* Ora Gallici littoris[8] finis foret orbis, nisi Britannia[9] insula nomen pene[10] alterius orbis mereretur.[11] *Alfridus.* Et[12] dicta est insula eo quod in salo sit posita, crebrisque undarum jactibus[13] adversariorumque incursibus[14] tundatur.

Cap. XL.

De situ ejus et dimensione.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. Hæc[15] Britannia clara Græcis nostrisque monumentis, Germaniæ,[16] Galliæ, Hispaniæ[17] adversa inter septentrionem[18] et occidentem jacet interjecto mari.[19]

---

[1] *Terræ enim*, C.D.
[2] So A.B.C.D., Gale; *vultu*, E.
[3] *resultabat*, C.D.
[4] *Alfredus*, B.
[5] So A.B.; *Britannia*, D.E., Gale.
[6] *orbs*, B.
[7] *Karolus*, B., Gale.
[8] *Circa Galliæ litora*, B.
[9] *Britannica*, A.
[10] *quasi*, C.D.
[11] The sentence slightly transposed in C.D.
[12] *Et*] om. C.D.
[13] *ictibus*, C.D.
[14] *insultibus*, B.
[15] *Hæc*] om. C.D.
[16] *Germaniæ*] om. C. (not D.)
[17] *Hispaniæ, Galliæ*, B.
[18] *septentrionalem*, A.
[19] *mare*, B.

seide :[1] Soþeliche aungelis, for hir face[2] schyneþ as aungelis ; for þe nobilte of þe lond schone[3] in þe children[4] face. *Alfr.* Þe Bryȝtische Anglia is[5] i-cleped þe oþer world ; and for greet plente of al good þe Grete Charles cleped hit his owne chambre. *Solinus.* Þe egge[6] of þe Frensche clif[7] were[8] þe ende of þe world, nere þat þe ilond of Bretayne is nyh worthy to haue þe name[9] of anoþer world.[10] *Alfr.* Þis ilond is i-cleped insula, for hit is in salo, þat is þe see, and is often i-bete wiþ dyuers cours of wateres and[11] stremes and wiþ[12] wawes of þe see. TREVISA.

De situ eius et dimensione. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. This Britayne is acounted an holy[13] lond bothe in oure stories and also in stories of Grees, and is i-sette aforn aȝe[14] Germania, Gallia, Fraunce,[15] and Spayne bytwene þe north and þe west and þe see bytwene. Þis lond is fifty myle from

---

chere of theyme dothe ȝiffe grete resplendence lyke to an angelle ; for the nobilite of the londe schewethe in the siȝhte of the childre. That londe of Englonde is callede as that other worlde, whom Grete Charles the kynge callede his chambre for þe habundaunce of plente of alle goode thynges. *Solinus.* For the costes of Fraunce scholde be as an ende of the worlde, but that Briteyne deseruethe allemoste the name of an other worlde. *Alfr.* That londe of Englonde is callede an yle, in that hit is trowblede ofte with waters and with þe incurses of enmyes. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 59. b.

Of the site and dimencion of hit. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. That londe of Briteyne lyethe from the costes of Germany, of Fraunce, and of Speyne, betwene the northe and weste, departede from theyme by the see. That londe is

---

[1] Cx. inserts *They ben.*
[2] *name face*, MS.
[3] *schoon*, α.
[4] So also α. and Cx.
[5] So Cx. and β. ; *Anglians*, MS.
[6] *edge*, Cx.
[7] *clyve*, α.
[8] *sholde be*, Cx.
[9] So Cx. ; *names*, MS.
[10] *yf the ylonde of Brytayn ne were not, whiche is worthy to haue the name*, Cx.
[11] *wiþ*, α., Cx.
[12] *wiþ*] om. α. (not Cx.)
[13] *a noble*, Cx., and β., which seems right.
[14] *sette agaynst*, Cx.
[15] We should probably read *or Fraunce.*

Hæc[1] abest a Gessoriaco Morinorum[2] gentis littore proximo trajectu milium[3] quinquaginta. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo undecimo.*[4] Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali mundi vertice jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut sæpe medio noctis tempore in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit[5] matutinum, utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem per plagas boreales redeunte; unde fit ut plurimæ longitudinis habeat dies in æstate, (sicut econtra noctes[6] in hieme,) id est horarum xviij.[7] Et iterum in hieme noctes sunt[8] horarum[9] xviij. et dies sex; cum tamen in Armenia, Macedonia,[10] Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ[11] regionibus longissima dies sive nox sit solummodo xv. horarum æquinoctialium; brevissima vero dies sive nox novem duntaxat horas compleat. *Plinius.* In Meroe[12] insula, quæ caput est Æthiopum, sic fit ut longissimus dies sit duodecim[13] horarum æquinoctialium; Alexandriæ Ægypti[14] xiij. horarum; in Italia xv.;[15] in

---

[1] *Hoc*, B.

[2] *Normannorum*, B.; *Gellaria Armoricorum*, C.; *Gessarico Armoricorum*, D.

[3] *miliariorum*, C.D.

[4] *capitulo* xi°] om. A.C.; B.D. omit the reference. It should be *primo*.

[5] *adveniat*, A.; *evenerit*, B.

[6] So C.D.; *longas*, A.E.

[7] *sicut...xviij.*] *Scilicet horarum xviii., et noctes breves, scilicet horarum sex*, B.

[8] *sint*, E.; *habet*, D.

[9] *horarum*] om. A.

[10] *cum ... Macedonia*] *Achaia et*, C.D.

[11] *ejusdem libet*, B.

[12] *Merore*, B.

[13] *duodecim sit*, B.

[14] *Ægypti*] om. C.D.

[15] *horarum* added in B. and Gale.

þe clif of þe men þat hatte Morini Gesserico, so þe chif hatte.[1] *Beda, libro primo.* And for þis lond[2] lieþ vnder þe norþ nolle[3] of þe world, þey[4] haþ liȝt and briȝt myȝtes in þe somertyme, so þat ofte tyme at mydnyȝt men haueþ questiouns and doute where[5] it be euentyde or[6] dawenynge, þat is for þat[7] tyme of þe ȝere þe sonne goþ[8] nou̇ȝt fer vnder erþe by nyght, but passeþ by þe north side and comeþ sone in to þe est aȝe, and þerfore þere beeþ in[9] somer dayes ful longe of xviij.[10] houres long, and þe ny̆ȝtes of sixe.[11] And efte[12] in þe wynter beeþ longe ny̆ȝtes of xviij.[13] houres and schort dayes of vi.[14] houres. Þey in[15] Armenia, Macedonia, Italia, and in oþer londes of þe same lyne þe lengest day and þe lengest nyght also is of fiftene houres; and þere[16] þe schorteste day oþer nyȝt is of nyne houres. *Plinius.* In Meroe, þat ilond is chief[17] of Bloomen,[18] þere þe lengest day is of twelue houres; in Alexandria in Egipt of þrittene houres; TREVISA.

from the peple of Gesserike and from the brynkes in that cuntre in the nyeste place by l^ti myles. *Beda, libro primo.* And for cause that londe lyethe in the northe partes of the worlde, hit hathe liȝhte nyȝhtes in the somer, in so moche that a question is made oftetymes abowte the myddes of the nyȝhte wheþer hit be day or nay for cause of suche liȝhte; for the sonne is not ferre vnder the erthe from that cuntre, wherefore that cuntre hathe daies in the somer of a grete lenghthe, and longe nyȝhtes in the wyntere; that is to say, the daies be of xviij. howres in somer, and the nyȝhtes in wyntere of xviij. howres, and the day of vj. howres. Sythe in Armeny, Macedony, Ytaly, and other regiones of the same costes, the longeste day other nyȝhte is but oonly of xv. houres equinoccialle, and þe moste schorte day other nyȝhte dothe complete oonly but ix. howres. *Plinius.* In an yle callede Meroris, whiche is as the hede of men of Ethioppe, where hit is that the longeste day is but of xij. howres equinoccialle, and at Alexandria in Egipte MS. HARL.

1 Cx. omits the last four words. A space for two lines left blank in *a*. The text seems corrupt.
2 *ilond*, *a*., Cx.
3 *hede*, Cx.
4 *hit*, Cx.
5 *whether*, Cx.
6 *euetide oþer*, *a*.
7 *the*, Cx.
8 *gooþ*, *a*.
9 *in þe*, *a*.
10 *eyȝtene*, *a*.
11 Sentence varied in Cx.
12 *after*, Cx.
13 *eyȝtene*, *a*.
14 *sixe*, *a*. (omitting *houres*); and so Cx.
15 *Also in*, Cx.
16 *þere*] om. Cx.
17 *chif*, *a*.
18 *black men*, Cx.

Britannia xviij. Apud insulam Tilæ senis[1] mensibus æstivalibus dies habetur[2] continuus, et iterum senis[1] mensibus brumalibus nox continua. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* Britannia intra[3] oceanum quasi extra orbem posita, adversa Galliis[4] ad prospectum Hispaniæ sita[5] est. *Giraldus.* Oblonga est et amplior in medio quam in extremis. *Orosius.* Britannia per longum extenditur ab austro in boream; ab euro habet Galliam,[6] ab austro Hispaniam,[7] ab aquilone Northuegiam,[8] ab occasu Hiberniam; cujus proximum litus transmeantibus civitas apparet quæ dicitur Rutupi[9] portus. *Beda, libro primo.* Quæ[10] a gente Anglorum nunc corrupte vocatur Reptacestre.[11] *Solinus.* Britannia octingenta millia passuum in longum[12] detinet,[13] si quis eam a Totenesio[14] littore usque in Calidonicum angulum metiatur. *Alfridus.*[15] Hoc est a loco qui Penwihtistert[16] dicitur[17] xv. leugis[18] ultra Muchilstow[19]

---

[1] *sævis*, Gale, (twice).

[2] *habetur*] om. B.

[3] *inter*, A; *extra*, C. (not D.)

[4] *Gallis*, B.

[5] *sita*] om. C.D.

[6] *Gallias*, C.D.

[7] *Hispanias*, C.D.

[8] *Northguegiam*, A.; *Norwegiam*, B.

[9] *Ruthupi*, B.; *Rutipi*, Gale; *Rupti*, C.; *Rutuphi*, D.

[10] *Qui*, B.

[11] *Repcacestrius*, Gale.

[12] *in longum*] longa, C.D.

[13] *continet*, Gale (not Solinus).

[14] *Cathenesio*, B.

[15] *Alfredus*, B., and so throughout.

[16] *Penwithistret*, B.; *Penwithistrete*, Gale.

[17] *Hoc ... dicitur*] Hoc est a lopenwithstrete vocato, qui situs est, C. D.

[18] So A.E.; *leucis*, D., Gale.

[19] *Michestowe*, B.C.; *Michelstawe*, A.; *Michelstowe*, D.; *Michelistowe*, Gale.

in Italia of fiftene houres ; in Bretayne of eyȝtene houres ; in þe lond þat hatte [1] Tile alle þe sixe somer monþes is day, and alle þe sixe wynter monþes is nyght. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* Britayne is i-sette wiþ ynne occean, as it were wiþ oute þe world, and is i-sette aȝenst Fraunce and Spayne. *Giraldus.* Bretayne is euen longe [2] and larger in þe myddes [3] þan in þe endes. *Orosius.* Bretayne streccheþ in lengþe out of þe souþ [into þe north, and in þe souþ] [4] est side he [5] haþ Fraunce, in þe souþ Spayne, in þe norþ Norwey, and in þe west Hibernia, þat is Irlond. Whan schipmen passiþ þe next clif of þat lond, þei seeþ a citee þat hatte Rutpimouþ.[6] *Beda, libro primo.* Þat cite is now i-cleped schortliche of Englische men Reptacestre. *Solinus.* Bretayne is eyȝte hondred myle in lengþe, and he be i-mete [7] fro þe clyf of Tottenys to þe angle of Calidoun. *Alfr.* Þat is from þe Penwythis strete [8] fifte[ne] [9] leges byȝonde Mochel [10] Stowe in Cornwayle anon to Catenesse þat is byȝonde Scotlonde. And Bretayne is more þan two hondred

TREVISA.

---

of xiij. howres, and in Ytaly of xv. howres, in Briteyne other Englonde of xviij. howres ; and the day in somere is [11] continually by vj. monethes in an yle callede Tile, and nyȝhte continually by vj. other monethes. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Briteyne is putte betwene the ocean, as with owte the worlde, sette as vn to the prospecte of Speyne. *Giraldus.* That londe of Englonde is longe, more large in the myddes of hit then in the extremites. *Orosius.* That londe of Briteyne is extendede by lenghthe from the sowthe in to the northe, hauenge on the este to hit Fraunce, on the sowthe Speyne, on the northe Norway, on the weste Yrlonde, nye to the brynkes of whom a cite dothe appere to men sailenge in the see, whiche is callede Rutipi portus. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche cite is callede now of the peple of Englonde Reptachestre. *Solinus.* Briteyne conteynethe in longitude lxxx^{ti} m^{l} passes, what man that wylle take the measure of hit from Toteneise vn to the angle of Calidonia. *Alfr.* That is from a place that is callede Penwithstrete, by xv. leukes behynde Mochillestowe in Cornewaile, vn to Catenesse : hauenge in latitude moo then ij. c. m^{l}.

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 60. a.

---

[1] *ylonde named*, Cx.
[2] *evelonge*, α. ; *endlonge*, Cx.
[3] *myddel*, Cx.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *and he*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[6] *Rutpiniouþ*, α.
[7] *moten*, Cx.
[8] *Penwithisstert*, α. ; *Penwithistert*, β. ; *Penwithstrete*, Cx.
[9] *fiftene*, α. ; *xv. myle*, Cx.
[10] *Mychels*, Cx.
[11] *is of vj. houres continually*, MS. originally ; but the cancel is apparently by the first hand.

in Cornubia usque Catenesse,[1] quæ [2] est trans Scotiam. In latitudine autem [3] habet plus quam ducenta milia passuum a Menevia, scilicet [4] quæ est in extremo Walliæ, usque ad Gernemutham [5] in Northfolchia. *Beda.*[6] Exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promunctoriorum [7] tractibus,[8] quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragesies octies septuaginta [9] milia passuum contineat.

Cap. XLI.

De prærogativis[10] *insulæ attollendis.*[11]

Giraldus in Topographia. Ut[12] Gallia Britanniam, sic Britannia Hiberniam vincit serenitate, sed non salubritate. *Beda, libro primo.* Quia [13] hæc insula opima[14] est frugibus et arboribus, alendisque apta pecoribus ac jumentis, vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans, sed et [15] avium atque bestiarum diversi generis terra marique[16] ferax, fluviis piscosis atque fontibus præclara copiosis, isicio [17] potissime abundat et anguilla. *Willelmus de Pontificibus,*[18] *libro tertio.* Ita ut rustici projectis piscibus sues pascant. *Beda, libro primo.* Capiuntur ibi [19] sæpissime delphini [20] et vituli marini,

De animalibus Britanniæ.

---

[1] *Cautenesse,* A.; *usque ad,* Gale, D.

[2] *qui,* B.

[3] *vero,* C. ; om. D.

[4] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[5] *Gernemutam,* B.; *Gernemudam,* D.

[6] *libro primo* added in C.D.

[7] *promuctoriorum,* E. ; *promuntoriorum,* Gale.

[8] *tractatibus,* Gale.

[9] *quinque,* add. C.D.

[10] *hujus* added in A.

[11] *attollendis*] om. B.

[12] *Sicut,* C.D. ; *Uti,* Gale.

[13] *Quia*] om. C.D., Gale.

[14] *optima,* C.D.

[15] *et*] om. Gale.

[16] *mari,* B.

[17] *ysicio,* MSS.

[18] *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

[19] *etiam,* C. ; om. D. ; *sæpissime ibi,* B.

[20] *delphines,* B.C.D.

myle brood from Meneuia þat is in þe vttermeste[1] place of[2] Wales anon to Gernemoutham[3] in Norþfolk. *Beda.* Onliche outake þe lengest out schetynge of dyuerse forlondes, wiþ þe whiche Britayne is al aboute eyȝte and [fourty][4] siþe seuenty þowsand paas. TREVISA.

De prærogativis huius insulæ attollendis. Capitulum quadragesimum primum.

Giraldus in Topographia.[5] As Fraunce passeþ Bretayne, so Bretayne passeþ Irlond in faire weder and nobilte, but nouȝt in helþe. *Beda.* For þis ilond is beest and bringeþ[6] forþ trees and fruyt and reþeren[7] and oþer bestes, and wyn groweþ þere in som place. Þe lond haþ plente of foules and of bestes of dyuers manere kynde ; þe lond is plentevous and þe see also. Þe lond is noble, copious, and riche of nobil welles and of nobil ryueres wiþ plente of fische ; þere[8] is grete plente of small fische, of samon, and of elys.[9] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* So þat cherles[10] in som place fediþ sowes[11] with fische. *Beda, libro primo.* Þere beeþ ofte i-take dolphyns, and see calues, and baleynes,

---

passes from Meneuia, whiche is calle[12] Seynte Dauid, whiche place is in the extremite of Wales, vn to Gernemowthe[13] whiche is in Norfolke : the circuite of whom conteynethe, after diuerse auctores, xl^ti tymes viij^the and lxx^ti m^l of passes. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the prerogatifes of that yle to be enhauncede. Capitulum quadragesimum primum.

LYKE as Fraunce excellethe Briteyne, so in lyke wyse Briteyne excedethe Yrlonde in beaute, but not in whollesomnesse. *Beda, libro primo.* For that londe is moste plentuous in cornes and trees to be norischede, whiche is apte to bestes ; plentuous of bryddes bothe in the see and londe of diuerse kyndes ; habundante in waters fulle of fische, specially of pyke and ele. *Willelmus de Pont. libro tertio.* Where fisches be so habundante that churles fede theire swyne with fische. *Beda, libro primo.* Fysches whiche be callede dolphynes be taken there oftetymes, and porpas,

---

[1] *vtmeste, a.*, Cx.
[2] *in*, Cx.
[3] *Gernemutham, a.* ; *Yarmouthe*, Cx.
[4] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[5] *topicis*, MS., and similarly elsewhere.
[6] *is best to brynge forth*, Cx.
[7] *ruthern*, Cx.
[8] So *a.* and Cx. ; *þat*, MS.
[9] *eles, a.*
[10] *the peple*, Cx.
[11] *their swyne*, Cx.
[12] So Harl. MS.
[13] *Yarmouth* is written above the word in a later hand.

necnon et balænæ, exceptis variorum[1] conchyliorum generibus, in quibus sunt et musculæ[2] inclusam continentes margaritam[3] omnis quidem coloris, id est rubicundi, purpurei, jacintini, prasini, et[4] maxime candidi.[5] Sunt et abundantes cochleæ, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris efficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior. De fontibus et lapidibus. Habet et fontes salinarum[6] fontesque[7] calidos, et ex eis fluvios balneorum calidorum[8] omni ætati et[9] sexui per distincta loca cuique accommodos. Aqua enim, secundum Basilium, fervidam qualitatem recipit, cum per certa quædam metalla transcurrit. Hæc etiam insula venis[10] metallorum, æris, ferri, plumbi, stanni,[11] et argenti est[12] fœcunda. *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto.* In qua etiam insula[13] desub cortice soli inventum est genus terræ, quam marlam[14] vocant, in qua tanquam desiccante se pinguedinis nucleo, spissior,[15] cum spargitur, ubertas in agris reperitur. Est et ibi[16] aliud genus albæ cretæ,[17] quæ respersa fœcundat agros usque ad lxxx.[18] annum. *Solinus.*[19]

---

[1] *variis*, C.
[2] *mustelæ*, B., Gale.
[3] *margaritas*, B.
[4] *et*] om. A.
[5] The sentence is slightly altered in C.D.
[6] *et salivarum*, Gale ; *etiam fontes*, D.
[7] *fontesque*] habet et fontes, C.D.
[8] *calidorum*, B.
[9] *atque*, B.
[10] *habet . . . venas*, C.D.
[11] *stagni*, MSS. (not Gale).
[12] *est*] om. C.D.
[13] *insula*, om. C.D.
[14] *malam*, E.
[15] *et spissior*, B.
[16] *ibi*] om. C.D.
[17] *gretæ*, C. (not D.)
[18] *xv.*, B.
[19] Title omitted in B.E.

grete fisches as hit were of whales kynde, and dyuers manere schelfische. Among þe[1] schelfisch beeþ muskles[2] þat haueþ wiþ ynne hem margery perles of alle manere colour and hewe, of rody and rede, of purpur and of blew, and specialliche and moste of whyte. Þere is also plente of schellefische þat me dyeþ wiþ reed fyn;[3] þe redenesse þerof is wonder fyn[4] and stable, and steyneþ neuere wiþ colde ne with hete, wiþ wete ne wiþ drie; but euere þe eldere[5] þe hewe is þe[6] fairer. Þere beeþ also salt welles and hote welles; þer of renneþ stremes of hote bathes i-deled[7] in dyuers places, acordynge for man and womman, and for alle manere age, olde and ȝonge. Basilius seiþ þat [þe water þat][8] renneþ and passeþ by veynes of certayn metal takiþ in his cours grete hete. Þis ilond is plentevous of veynes of metals, of bras, of iren, of leed, of tyn, of siluer also. *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto.* In þis ilond vnder þe torf of þe lond is good marl i-founde; þe þrift of þe fatnesse drieþ himself þeryn: so þat euere þe þickere þe felde is i-marled, þe better corn it wil bere. Þere is also anoþer manere white marle, þat þe lond is þe better foure score ȝere þat þere wiþ is TREVISA.

---

and other grete fisches, excepte diuerse kyndes of schelle fisches, as muscles, in whom margarites be founde of euery coloure, as redde of a purpulle coloure, and of the coloure of a iacinte, but moste specially white margarites. Also there be schelle fisches habundantely with whom a nowble redde coloure is made and diede. The beautuous reddenesse of whom may not appaire in eny tyme thro the heete of the sonne, neither thro the iniury of reyne, but euer the more hit is werede, and in age, hit is the moore feire in coloure. Also in that londe be welles of salte and hoote waters, and bathes conueniente to euery kynde by distincte places, for after the grete clerke Basilius water receyvethe a feruente qualite when hit rennethe by diuerse metalles. Also that londe is plentuous in mony veynes of metalles, as of brasse, of yrne, of lede, of tynne, and of syluyr. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo sexto.* Also there is founde in that yle vnder the erthe a kynde of erthe, whom men calle marle, whiche caste in to the feldes causethe grete plentuousenes of corne. Also there is founde an other kynde of chalke, whiche dispersede in feldes makethe theym plentuous vn to the lxxx. yere folowenge. *Solinus.* That yle MS. HARL. 2261. f. 60. b.

---

[1] *whiche*, Cx.
[2] *moskles*, α.
[3] *that men dyen ther with fyn reed*, Cx.
[4] *fayr*, Cx.; *fayn*, α.
[5] *older*, Cx.
[6] *þe*] om. α. (not Cx.)
[7] *to deled*, α.; *departed*, Cx.
[8] Added from α. and Cx.

Gignit etiam[1] hæc insula lapidem gagatem,[2] cujus si decorem[3] requiras, nigro-gemmeus[4] est; si naturam, aqua ardet, oleo extinguitur; si potestatem, attritu[5] calefactus applicita detinet;[6] si beneficium, hydropicis eam potantibus confert.[7] *Beda.*[8] Incensus ab igne serpentes fugat; calefactus applicita detinet, æque[9] ut succinum.[10] *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Ibi oves lanigeræ, ferarum et cervorum multitudo, sed pauci lupi. Ideoque oves ibi[11] tutius sine custodia in[12] caulis relinquuntur. *Ranulphus.* In ea quoque sunt urbes[13] multæ speciosæ et opulentæ, flumina magna et piscosa, nemora pecualia[14] spatiosa, gleba terræ mineris et salinis copiosa.[15] In ea quippe[16] sunt lapidicinæ marmoris varii, saxi rufi[17] et albi, mollis et solidi, calcisque[18] candidæ. Est etiam[19] ibi[20] argilla alba et rubea ad componendum vasa fictilia, et tegulis tingendis[21] velut altera Samia multum accommoda;[22] denique

---

[1] *et*, A.
[2] *gagantem*, C. (not D.)
[3] *colorem*, C.D.
[4] *nigra gemma*, B.C. (not D.)
[5] *attritu*] om. B.
[6] *si . . . æque*] om. B.
[7] *confer*, C. (not D.)
[8] *libro primo* added in C.D.
[9] *æque*] om. A.
[10] *succinctum*, B.
[11] *ibi*] om. C. (not D.)
[12] *custodia in*] om. B.
[13] *civitates*, C.D.
[14] *pecualia*] feris copiosa et, C.D.; pecualia et, A., Gale.
[15] *abundans*, C.D.
[16] *quoque*, C.; *quidem*, D.
[17] *rubi*, C.
[18] *calxis et*, B.; *candidi*, MSS. (not Gale.)
[19] *ibi quoque*, C.D.
[20] *ibi*] om. A.
[21] *tingendis*] om. C. (not D.); Trevisa read *tegendis*.
[22] Clause abbreviated in C.D.

i-marled. *Solinus.*[1] In þis ilond groweþ a stoon þat hatte gagates; ȝif me axeþ [2] of[3] his fairenesse, he is blak as gemmes beeþ; [ȝif me axeth his kynde, hit brenneþ in water and quencheþ in oyle].[4] ȝif he is i-froted and i-het,[5] he holdeþ what hym neiȝheþ; ȝif me axeþ his goodnesse, hit heleþ þe dropesy and hit be i-dronke. *Beda.* I-tend in þe fire hit feseþ awey serpentes; if[6] hit is hotter,[7] hit holdeþ what hym neigheþ, as succinis, a stoon þat so hatte.[8] *Isid., libro quinto-decimo.* Þere beeþ schepe þat bereþ good wolle, þere beeþ meny hertes and wylde bestes and fewe wolues; þerfore þe schepe beeþ þe more sikerliche wiþ oute [kepynge][9] i-lefte in þe folde.[10] In þis ilond also beeþ many citees and townes, faire and noble and riche; many grete ryueres and stremes wiþ grete plente of fische; many faire wodes [11] and grete wiþ wel [12] many bestes tame and wylde. Þe erþe of that lond is copious of metal ore and of salt welles; of quarers [13] of marbel of dyuers manere stones, of reed, of whyte; of nesche,[14] of hard; of chalk [15] and of whyte lyme.[16] Þere is also white cley and reed forto make of crokkes [17] and stenes and oþer vessel and brent [18] tyle to hele [19] wiþ hous and cherches as hit TREVISA.

---

gendrethe a ston that is callede iette. If thou inquire the beawte off hit, hit is blacke; if thow inquire the nature, hit brennethe in water, and is extincte with oyle; if thou inquire the vertu of hit, that ston made hoote with rubbenge dothe attracte chaffe to hit. If thow inquire the benefite, hit helpethe moche men hauenge the dropecy, drynkenge hit. *Beda.* That ston made in powdre, and caste in to the fire, expellethe serpentes. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* There be schepe plentuous in wolle, and moche dere of diuerse kyndes, fewe wulphes, þerfore schepe be lefte in more suerte in theire places. R. In that londe be mony feire cites, grete waters and fulle of fische, and plentuous in wodes, where be also mynes of stones diuerse in colour, redde and white, softe and harde, and white chalke. Also there is white cleye and redde, where of thei make pottes MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Reference added from α. and Cx.
[2] *yf ye wil knowe*, Cx.
[3] *of*] om. α.
[4] Added and restored from β. and Cx.
[5] *chauffed*, Cx.
[6] *ȝif*, α.
[7] *hatt*, α.
[8] Cx. (who prints *succuns*) has considerable omissions in the previous sentence.
[9] Added from α. and Cx.
[10] So α. and Cx.; *felde*, MS.
[11] So α. and Cx.; *wordes*, MS.
[12] *wel*] *right*, Cx.
[13] *quareres*, α.; *quareis*, Cx.
[14] *soft*, Cx.
[15] *chark*, α.
[16] *lym*, α.
[17] *make poties*, *crokkes*, Cx.
[18] *brand*, α.
[19] *couere*, Cx.; and so often.

lanam ejus zelat Flandria, coria et pelles[1] Normannia, ferrum et plumbum Vasconia, mineras et sales Hibernia, æra ejus nivea universa sitit Europa. *Alfridus.* Ceterum Britannia omni materia affluit, quæ pretio[2] ambitiosa seu usu[3] necessaria est ferrariis, et salinis nunquam deficit. Unde et quidam metricus in laudem[4] ejus sic prorupit.[5] *Henricus de Prærogativis Angliæ: Versus:*[6]

Anglia terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,
Anglia plena jocis, gens libera digna[7] jocari;
Libera gens, cui libera mens et libera lingua,
Sed lingua melior liberiorque[8] manus.
[9] Anglia, terrarum[10] decus et flos finitimarum,
Est[11] contenta sui fertilitate boni.
Externas gentes consumptis rebus egentes,
Quando fames lædit, recreat et reficit.

---

[1] *coria et pelles*, B.
[2] *quæ pretio*] quod predicto, C. (not D.)
[3] *visu*, D. (clerical error.)
[4] *et . . . laudem*] in laudes, C.D.
[5] *scribitur*, C.D.
[6] *de . . . Versus*] om. C.D.; A.B., Gale omit all the reference.
[7] *plena*, B.
[8] *liberaque*, B.
[9] *Item Henricus*, A. B.
[10] *terra*, A.
[11] *Et*, Gale.

TREVISA.

were in þe other Samia, þat hatte Samos also. Flaundres[1] loueþ þe wolle[2] of þis lond, and[3] Normandie[4] þe skynnes and þe velles;[5] Gasquyn[6] þe iren and þe leed; Irlond þe ore and þe salt; [al][7] Europa loueþ and desireþ þe white metal of þis lond. *Alfridus.*[8] Bretayne haþ i-now of alle matire[9] þat þere nedeþ begge[10] and selle, oþer þat[11] is nedeful to manis vse;[12] þere lakkeþ neiþer[13] salt ne iren. Þerfore a versifioure in his metre preyseþ the lond in þis manere: Engelond is good lond, fruytful of þe wolle, but[14] a corner; Engelond ful of pley, fremen well worþy to pleye; fre men, fre tonges, hert fre; free beeþ al þe leden;[15] here hond is more fre, more better[16] þan here tonge. Also Henricus:[17] Engelond hiȝt of lond,[18] floure of londes al aboute; þat londe is ful payde wiþ fruyte and corn[19] of his owne.[20]

Straunge[21] men þat needeþ,
Þat lond wel ofte releueþ.
Whan hunger greueþ,
Þat lond alle suche men[22] fedeþ.

MS. HARL. 2261.

and tylestones. The wolle off whiche londe men of Flaundres luffe gretely; and Normandy, the leder of hit and skynnes; Vasconia yrne and lede. Whiche Briteyne is a londe habundante in metalles, and in pleasure that is necessary to the lyfe of man, in to the lawde of whom a metricion seithe: Englonde is a plentuous londe, and an angle of the worlde. That londe is fulle of disportes, whiche peple is worthy to make disportes, the tonge of whom is goode, and the honde more liberalle. *Item Henricus sic.* The londe of Briteyne is the worschippe and floure of regiones of the costes of the see, whiche londe is contente with the propre fertilite of hit selfe, refreschenge other straunge peple hauenge nede

---

1 So *a.* and Cx.; *Flaundreþ*, MS.
2 *loueth wel the wulle*, Cx.
3 So *a.*; *in*, MS.
4 *Holand*, Cx.
5 *felles*, Cx.
6 *Guyan*, Cx.
7 Added from *a.* and Cx.
8 So *a.* and Cx.; *Gir.*, MS.
9 So *a.* and Cx.; *manere*, MS.
10 *bye*, Cx.; *bigge*, *β.*
11 *þer*, *a.*
12 *vys*, *a.*
13 *neuere*, *a. β.*
14 *but it is*, Cx.; and similarly elsewhere.
15 *ledyn*, *a.*; *lyden*, *β.*; *alle theyr thynges*, Cx.
16 *and better*, Cx.
17 *Henre*, *a.*; *Henr*, *β.*; *Her.*, MS. Cx. omits the word.
18 *is beauteuous* (sic) *of lond*, Cx. Perhaps *of lond* in the text should be simply cancelled.
19 *good*, *a. β.* and Cx.
20 From this point Trevisa seems to have intended verse.
21 So Cx. and *β.*; *stronge*, MS. and *a.*
22 *men siche*, *β.* The text is capriciously altered in Cx. more or less throughout.

Commoda terra satis mirandæ fertilitatis
Prosperitate viget, cum bona pacis habet.
Anglorum portus occasus[1] novit et ortus,
Anglica[2] classis habet quod loca multa[3] juvet;
Et cibus et census magis hic communis habetur,
Nam de more viri sunt ibi magnifici.

Item Alfridus sic:[4]

Illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata
Glebis,[5] lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis.
Insula prædives, quæ toto non eget[6] orbe,
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope;
Insula prædives, cujus miretur et optet
Delicias Salomon, Octavianus[7] opes.

---

[1] *occasum*, E.
[2] *Anglia*, A.D.
[3] *multa loca*, B.
[4] *Item Alfridus sic*] So A.B.; placed after *opes* in E.; reference omitted in Gale and D.
[5] *Glebes*, C. (not D.)
[6] *eguet*, E.
[7] So Gale and the versions; *Octovianus*, MSS.

TREVISA.

Þat lond is good i-now,
Wonder moche [1] fruyt bereþ and corn.[2]
Þat lond is wel at ese,
As long as men lyueþ in pese.[3]
Est and west al lond
Knoweþ hens riȝt wel of Engelond.[4]
Here schippes fondes,
And ofte helpeþ meny londes ;
Þere mete þey[re] [5] money [6]
Men haueþ more [7] comyn alle wey.
For here þat craftes
Men wole gladliche ȝeue ȝiftes.[8]
In londe, in [9] stronde
Wel wyde men [10] spekeþ of Engelonde ;
Lond, hony, melk, chese,
Þis ilond schal bere the prys.[11]
Of alle londes riches [12] þis lond hath nede
to noon ;
Alle londes moot [13] seche helpe nedes of þis
allone.
Of likynge þere won
Wonder [14] myȝt Salamon.
Riches þat þere is an
Ȝern [15] wolde Octauian.[16]

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 61. a.

to þe helpe of that londe, when hungre reignethe in theire cuntres. That londe is of plentuousenes to be hade in mervayle, whiche londe dothe encrease gretely in tyme of pease and of prosperite. That londe hathe also mony schippes, whiche do helpe mony places, for in that be men of grete nobilite. *Item Alfridus sic.* This yle of Englonde is plentuous, and to be enhauncede with a lawde celicalle, whiche is so habundante in hit selfe that hit hathe not necessite to eny other yle other place of the worlde. Whiche londe is a towre of refute to alle other regiones, the delites of whom Salomon desirethe, and Octauian the rychesse.

---

[1] *meche*, α.

[2] The text must have suffered here. Cx. has : *That lond bereth fruyt and corne good ynowgh*

[3] So α. and Cx. ; *at ese*, MS.

[4] *Eeste and weste in eche lond ben knowen well the hauenes of Englond*, Cx , who has some other variations. For *hens* in text (*hānes*, β.) perhaps we should write *hauens*.

[5] *þey*] and, Cx., perhaps rightly ; *þar mete*, *þar money*, β. ; *þeyre* is probably intended in MS.

[6] *þei monay*, α.

[7] So α. and Cx. ; *money*, MS.

[8] *And for to lerne men gladly yeue yeftes*, Cx.

[9] *and*, α. β., Cx.

[10] *me*, β.

[11] *price*, α.

[12] *riche*, α. β.

[13] *muste*, Cx., with other slight variations.

[14] *wondrie*, α ; *wondrye*, β.

[15] *ȝern*] desire, Cx.

[16] *Octouian*, β.

Cap. XLII.

De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.[1]

Solinus. Sunt in Britannia fontes calidi opiparo[2] ex cultu[3] apparati[4] ad usus mortalium, quibus fontibus præsul est numen Minervæ, in cujus æde perpetui ignes nunquam canescunt in favillas;[5] sed, ubi ignis tabet,[6] vertitur in globos saxeos. *Alfridus.*[7] Cum Britannia in se plura[8] contineat[9] mirabilia, quatuor tamen præ cæteris habet miranda. Primum est, quod apud Peccum[10] ventus egreditur de cavernis terræ tam valide ut vestes injectas ejiciat.[11] Secundum est, quod[12] apud Stanhenges juxta Sarum lapides miræ magnitudinis in modum portarum elevantur, ita ut portæ portis superpositæ videantur; nec tamen liquido[13] perpenditur qualiter aut quare ibi sunt[14] constructi.[15] Tertium est apud Cherdhole, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe[16] sint[17] ingressi, terræ spatia et flumina videntes, nusquam[18] ad finem venire potuerunt. Quartum est,[19] quod pluvia videtur de montibus elevari

Quatuor præ cæteris mirabilia.

---

[1] C. omits title. *De mirabilibus, Angliæ,* D.; *stupendis,* om. B.
[2] *opipario,* A.B.
[3] *et cultu,* C.D.
[4] *exculti apparatu,* Solinus, c. 22.
[5] *favillam,* C. (not D.)
[6] *tabuit,* C.D.
[7] *Alfridus*] om. A.B.
[8] *plurima plura in se,* B.; *plurima in se,* D.
[9] *continet,* A.B., Gale.
[10] *Peccum* (*or Pectum*), A.B.D.E., Gale; *Pekkum,* C. This form leads us to suppose *Peckham* to be the place meant; see however the versions.
[11] *rejiciat,* A.B., Gale; *repellat,* C.D.
[12] *quod,* added from B.; Gale's text is mutilated.
[13] *tamen liquido*] liquide, C.D.
[14] *sint,* C.D.
[15] *constructæ,* A.B.
[16] *sæpe*] after *ingressi* in Gale.
[17] *sint*] om. B.; *sunt,* D.
[18] *nunquam,* A.
[19] *est*] om. C.

De mirabilibus in ea stupendis. Capitulum quadragesimum secundum. TREVISA.

Solinus. In Brytayne beeþ hoote welles wel arrayed and i-hiȝt [1] to þe vse of mankynde. Maistresse of þilke welles is þe grete spirit of Minerua. In hire hous fuyre dureþ [2] alway, þat neuere chaungeþ into askes; but [þere] [3] þe fuyre slakeþ, it chaungeth into [4] stony clottes. *Alfr.* In Bretayn, beeþ many wondres; neuerþeles foure beeþ most wonderful. Þe firste is at Pectoun; þere bloweþ so strong a wynde out of chenes [5] of þe erþe, þat it casteþ vp aȝen cloþes þat me casteþ yn. Þe secounde is at Stonhenge by sides Salisbury; þere beeþ grete stones and wonder huge, and beeþ arered an hiȝ as hit were ȝates; [so þat þere semeþ ȝates] [6] i-sett vppon oþer ȝates; noþeles hit is nouȝt clereliche i-knowe noþer perceyued [7] how and wherfore þey beeþ so arered and so wonderliche i-honged. Þe þridde is at Cherdhole; [8] þere is grete holownesse vnder erþe; of [9] meny men haueþ i-walked þerynne and i-seie ryueres and stremes, but nowher konneþ þey fynd non ende. Þe ferþe is þat reyn is y-seie arered [10] vppon þe hilles and anon [11] i-spronge

---

Of meruailes in hit to be hade in wondre. Capitulum quadragesimum secundum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Solinus. Sythe the yle of Briteyne conteynethe in hit mony thynges to be hade in meruayle, neuertheles iiij. thynges ar to be hade in meruayle in hit specially afore other thynges. The firste is at Pectun, where the wynde goethe furthe so faste that hit castethe owte clothes caste in to hit. The secunde is at Stanhenges, nye to Salisbury, where stones of a grete magnitude be exaltede in to the maner of ȝates, that thei seme as ȝates putte on ȝates, where hit can not be clerely perceyvede how and wherefore the stones were sette there. The thrydde is at Sherdehoole, where a holo place is vnder the erthe in to whom mony men haue entrede, seenge waters in hit, cowthe not come to thende of hit in eny wise. The iiij^the is, that reyne is seene to be eleuate from hilles, and to be diffudede anoon thro the

---

1 *adressyd*, Cx.
2 *endureth*, Cx.
3 *þere*] Added from Cx. and β.; α. has *þe þe*; *where* would seem the truer reading.
4 *and in to*, α.
5 *chynes*, α. Cx.
6 Added from α. β. and Cx.
7 *apperceyued*, Cx.
8 *Cherdhoke*, Cx.
9 *ofte*, Cx.
10 *reysed*, Cx.
11 *noon*, α.

Fontes mirabiles.

et cito per campos[1] diffundi. Est etiam in ea stagnum sexaginta insulas habitabiles continens, quod[2] sexaginta rupibus ambitur, in quarum[3] qualibet aquila nidificat, et sexaginta[4] flumina fluunt in illud,[5] quorum nullum ad mare progreditur præter unum. Est ibi[6] stagnum muro lapideo et lateritio circumdatum, in quo frequenter lavantur homines; quibus fit lavacrum unicuique, sicut voluerit, frigidum seu[7] calidum.[8] Sunt in ea fontes salis longe a mari, quorum aquæ per totam hebdomadam salsæ sunt usque ad horam nonam[9] Sabbati, et tunc dulces usque ad diem Lunæ,[10] a quibus decoquitur sal candidum et[11] subtile. Est etiam[12] in ea stagnum cujus aqua tantam habet efficaciam, ut si totus exercitus[13] patriæ astaret juxta et faciem dirigeret versus[14] undam,[15] unda eos[16] attraheret violenter, vestibus humore madefactis;[17] similiter et equi traherentur; si autem facies hominum fuerint aversæ,[18] non nocebit[19] unda. Est etiam fons[20] in quo nec a quo fluit rivus,[21] et tamen in[22] eo capiuntur

---

[1] *diversa*, B.
[2] *quod*] om. C.D.
[3] *quarum*] added from A.C.
[4] *insulas . . . sexaginta*] om. B.
[5] *eo*, C.D.
[6] *ibi*] in ea, C.; et ibi, B.; om. D.
[7] *vel*, A.
[8] *calidum seu frigidum*, B. Sentence slightly transposed in C.D.
[9] *nonam*] om. B.
[10] *Lunæ*] om. E.
[11] *et*] om. A.
[12] *etiam*] om. B.; autem, A.
[13] *populus*, A.
[14] *ad*, B.
[15] *et . . . undam*] om. D.
[16] *illos*, A.B.C., Gale.
[17] *repletis*, C.D.
[18] *adversæ*, B.
[19] *nocet*, C.D.
[20] *fons*] om. E.
[21] *Tynus*, C.
[22] *in*] om. A.

aboute in þe feeldes. Also þere is a grete ponde þat conteyneþ þre score ylondes couenable for men to dwelle ynne: þat pond is i-clipped[1] aboute wiþ sixe roches; vppon euerich roche is an egles nest.[2] And þre score ryueres renneþ into þat pond; and noon of hem alle renneþ into þe see, but oon. Þere is a pond i-closed aboute wiþ a wal of tyle and of stoon. In þat pond men wascheþ and baþeth wel ofte; and eueriche man feleth þe water hoot or colde, riȝt as he wolde[3] hymself. Þere beeþ salt welles fer fram þee[4] see, and beeth salte alle þe woke longe, forto Saturday[5] at none; and fresche from Saturday at none for to Monday. Þe water of þese welles,[6] whan hit is i-sode, torneþ in to smal salte, faire and white. Also þere is a pond, þe water þerof haþ moche [wonder][7] worchynge; for þeyh al an oost stood by þe pond and torned þe[8] face thiderward, þe water wolde drawe hem violentliche toward þe pond and wete al her cloþes. So schulde hors be drawe in þe same wise. But[9] ȝif þe face is a weyward[10] from þe water, [þe water][11] noyeth nouȝt. Þere is a welle þat no streem renneþ þerfrom,[12] noþer þerto, and ȝit foure manere

TREVISA.

---

feldes and cuntre nye to theyme. Also there is a water conteynenge lx. yles inhabitable, whiche is compassede abowte with lx. hilles, in eueryche of whom an egle makethe a neste, and lx. waters floo in to hit, of whom there goethe noon to the see but oon. Also there is a water compassede with a walle of ston of tyles, where men be waschen oftetymes, whiche is to euery man after his pleasure either hoote other colde. Also there be welles of salte in hit, ferre from the see, the waters of whom be salte by alle the weke vn to the howre of none in Seturday, and then the waters be fresche; of whiche water white salte is made and subtile. Also there is a grete damme in hit, the water of whom makethe moiste the clothes of men hauenge theire siȝhte directe to hit, and drawenge theym towarde hit, f. 61. b. thauȝhe hit were a grete hoste, the water is of suche efficacite; and if the faces of men be turnede from hit, that water schalle not greve theyme. Also there is a welle in whom a ryuer is not, neither a ryuer floethe from hit, in

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *byclipped*, Cx.

[2] *egle his nest*, a.; varied in Cx.

[3] *wole*, a.; *will*, Cx.

[4] So MS.; *þe*, a.

[5] *Saturdat*, a.

[6] *þis*, a. (not Cx.)

[7] Added from a. and Cx.; the later omits *moche*.

[8] *theyr*, Cx.

[9] *And*, Cx.

[10] *be torned away*, Cx.

[11] Added from a. and Cx.

[12] *fro*, Cx.

quatuor genera piscium, et habet[1] fons tantum[2] xx.[3] pedes in longitudine et xx. in latitudine,[4] nec tamen est profundus, sed usque ad genua, ripas altas habens[5] ex omni parte. In regione Wenta est fovea a qua ventus flat incessanter, ita[6] ut nemo possit subsistere ante eam. Est etiam in ea stagnum, quod facit lignum impositum[7] durescere in lapidem, si per annum in eo[8] manserit, unde formantur ligna in cotes. Est in cacumine[9] montis sepulcrum, cui quilibet accedens et se dimetiens inveniet mensuræ suæ[10] quantitatem; et si peregrinus vel lassus aliquis[11] ibi flexerit[12] genua ad illud, nullum[13] illico sentiet tædium.

Alia mirabilia.

Giraldus in Topographia. Juxta monasterium Wynburnense,[14] quod est[15] non longe a[16] Bathonia, est nemus fruticosum;[17] cujus ligna, si in aquam vel in terram vicinam per annum[18] ceciderint, in saxum convertentur.[19] *Giraldus*[20] *in Itinerario.* Sub civitate Cestriæ currit flumen Dee, quod hodie disterminat[21]

---

[1] *habet autem,* C.D.
[2] *centum,* C. (not D.)
[3] *xx.*] om. C.
[4] *et . . . latitudine*] om. B.
[5] *habetque ripas altas,* B.
[6] *ita*] om. B.
[7] *impositum*] om. C.D.
[8] *si ibi per annum,* &c., C.D.
[9] *cujusdam,* ins. C.D.
[10] *suæ*] om. A.
[11] *aliquis*] om. C.D.; before *vel* in B.
[12] *flexerit ibi,* B.
[13] *multum,* B.
[14] *Wynburiense,* B.; *Wimburnense,* A.
[15] *est*] om. B.
[16] *non longe a*] prope, C.D.
[17] *fructuosum,* Gale.
[18] *per annum*] om. B.
[19] *convertuntur,* B.D.
[20] *Idem,* C.D.; *Itinere,* B.
[21] *dividit,* C.D.

TREVISA.

fische beþ i-take þere ynne. Þat welle is but twenty foot long and twenty foot brood, and nouȝt depe bot to þe kne, i-closed wiþ hiȝe bankes in eueriche side. In þe contray aboute Wynchestre is a den;[1] out of þat den alwey bloweþ strong wynd, so þat no man may endure[2] forto stonde to fore þat den. Þere is also a pond þat torneþ tre to iren, and hit be þerynne al a ȝere; and so treen be i-schape into whetstones.[3] Also þere is in þe cop[4] of an hille a burielles; euerich man þat comeþ and meteþ þat buriel, he schal fynde it euene riȝt[5] of his owne mette;[6] and ȝif a pilgryme kneleþ[7] þerto, anon he schal be al fresche, and of werynesse schal he fele none noye.[8] *Giraldus in Topographia.* Faste by þe mynistre[9] of Wynburney, þat is nouȝt fer from Baþe, is a wode þat bereþ moche fruyt; yf þe trees of þat wode falle into a water oþer grounde þat þere is nyh, and lye þere alle aȝere, þe trees torneþ into stones. *Giraldus in Itinerario.*[10] Vnder þe citee of Chestre renneþ þat ryuer Dee, þat now to deleþ[11] Engelond and

MS. HARL. 2261.

whom iiij. kyndes of fisches be taken; whiche welle hathe oonly xx^ti foote in longitude, and xx^ti foote in brodenes, whiche is not deipe but to the knees of a man, hauenge hye brynkes to hit on euery side. Also in the cuntre callede Wenta is a diche, from whom the wynde blawethe incessantely, in so moche that a man may not stonde afore hit. Also there is a water in that cuntre that turnethe a tre in to a ston if hit tary in þat water, where trees or woode be formede in to whettestones. Also there is a beryalle in the toppe of an hille, where euery man commynge schalle fynde his measure and quantite; and if a pilgreme, other elles a wery man, boo his knees þer to hit, he schalle not fele eny disease. *Giraldus in Topographia.* Also there is a woode fulle of frute nye to the monastery of Wynneburne, not ferre from Bathe; the wodde of hit putte in to a water nye to that place by a yere be turnede in to a ston. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Also there rennethe a water vnder the cite of Chestre namede Dee, whiche di-

[1] *a den or a caue*, Cx.
[2] Cx. here does not substitute *dure*.
[3] *westones*, α.
[4] *toppe*, Cx.; *c* and *t* are almost identical in MSS., and both readings are good.
[5] *riȝt*] om. Cx., who often omits *wel* in similar passages.
[6] *meete*, α.; *lengthe and mesure*, Cx.
[7] *kneoleþ*, α.
[8] Sentence varied in Cx.
[9] *mynster*, Cx.
[10] Reference added from α. and Cx.
[11] *to deleþ*], departeth, Cx.

Angliam a Wallia,[1] quod[2] singulis mensibus, ut asserunt accolæ, vada sua solet mutare;[3] et utri finium[4] Angliæ seu Cambriæ, alveo relicto, magis[5] incubuerit, gentem illam[6] eo anno succumbere et alteram prævalere certum habent pronosticum.[7] Iste[8] fluvius Dee[9] de lacu cui nomen Pymbelmere[10] originem ducit; et cum flumen[11] salmonibus abundet, nusquam[12] tamen in lacu salmo reperitur. [13] *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Considerandum est quantus[14] divinæ[15] pietatis fulgor ab initio susceptæ fidei populum Anglorum illustraverit,[16] quod nusquam gentium in una provincia reperiuntur tot sanctorum post mortem illibata corpora, finalis incorruptionis simulacrum præferentia,[17] sicut patet in beatis Etheldreda, Edmundo rege, Elphego,[18] Cuthberto. Quod[19] ideo fieri credo cœlitus, ut natio extra orbem pene posita ex consideratione talis

---

[1] Transposed in C.D.

[2] *hoc*, C.D.

[3] *permutare*, C.D.

[4] So B.C D.; *in utri finium*, A.; *ut si finium*, E.; *et ut finium*, Gale and D. (first hand), which is probably right.

[5] *magis*] om. C.D.

[6] Omitted in C.

[7] *prænosticum*, Gale; *pronosticum est*, C. (not D.)

[8] *Hic*, C.D.

[9] *Dee*] om. C.D.; *De*, A.

[10] *Pymbulmere*, B.; *Pimbilmere*, A., Gale; *Pimbelmere*, D.

[11] *fluvius*, C.D.

[12] *nunquam*, C.D.

[13] *Willelmus . . . animetur*] om. C.D.

[14] *quantum*, B.

[15] *diem*, Gale, absurdly.

[16] *illustravit*, A.

[17] *proferenda*, Gale.

[18] *Alphego*, B.

[19] *et*, A.

Wales; þat ryuer eueriche monþe chaungeþ his foordes, as men of þe contrey telleþ, and leueþ ofte þe chanel; but where[1] the water drawe more toward Engelond oþer toward Wales, to what side [þat hit be, þat ȝere men of þat side][2] schal haue the worse ende and be ouercome,[3] and men of þe oþer side schal haue þe better ende and be at here aboue. Whan þe water so chaungeþ his cours, it bodeþ suche happes. Þis ryuer Dee renneth and comeþ out of a lake þat hiȝt Pymbilmere. In þe ryuer is grete plente of samoun, neuerþeles in þe lake is neuere samoun[4] i-founde. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Take hede how greet liȝt and briȝtnesse of Goddiss myldenesse haþ by schyne[5] Englische men, seþþe[6] þey torned first to riȝtful[7] byleue. So þat of[8] no men in oon[9] prouince beþ i-founde so meny hool bodyes of men after hir deþ in liknesse of euere lastynge lif[10] þat schal be after þe day of dome, as it wel semeth in þese[11] holy seyntes Etheldred, Edmond the kyng, Elphege, and Cuthbert.[12] I trowe þat it is i-doo by special grace of God alle myȝti, for þe nacioun þat is i-sette, as it were, wiþ oute þe worlde, schulde take hede to durynge of bodies wiþ oute corrupcioun and rotynge, and be þe[13] TREVISA.

---

uidethe Englonde from Wales, whiche is wonte, as hit is seide, to chaunge his furdes in euery monethe; and wheþer hit do drawe more nye to the partes of Englonde other elles of Wales, the peple do prenosticate a falle to the peple to whom hit is more nye. Also this water callede Dee hathe his begynnenge of a water callede Pimbelmere, and this floode of Dee is habundante in salmones, and vn te this tyme presente a samon was not founde in that water from whom the water of Dee commethe. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Hit is to be considerate how that diuine powere hathe lyȝhtede the peple of Englonde sythe that thei toke the feithe of Criste, where so mony seyntes be not founde in eny other prouince as in that; as of Seynte Edwarde, Seynte Edmunde the kynge, Elphegus, Cuthberte, and Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, with mony other seyntes; whiche y suppose to be causede by the inspiracion of Godde, that a nacion as putte with owte the worlde thro þe con- MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *wheþer*, *a.*, Cx.
2 Added from *a.* and Cx.
3 *oversett*, *a.*, Cx.
4 So *a.* and Cx.; *is a samoun*, MS.
5 *be shewed vpon*, Cx.
6 So *a.*; *sith*, Cx.; *soþeliche*, MS.
7 *right*, Cx.
8 So *a.* and Cx.; *if*, MS.
9 *oo*, *a.*
10 *lif*] om. *a.*; *euerlastyngnes*, Cx.
11 *þis*, *a.*
12 *Cutberd*, *a.*, Cx.; the latter adds, *and Seynt Edward and many other.*
13 So *a.* and Cx.; *beeþ*, MS.

incorruptelæ fidentius ad spem resurrectionis animetur.

Cap. XLIII.[1]

De partibus insulæ principalibus.

Cœpit[2] Britannia[3] post Bruti primi[4] tempora tres habere[5] partes principales, scilicet, Loegriam, Cambriam, Albaniam,[6] quæ nunc Scotia dicitur.[7] Loegria a Locrino,[8] Bruti primogenito, denominata[9] hodie vulgato vocabulo Anglia dicitur, cujus limites primo fuerunt fretum Gallicanum ad ortum et[10] austrum. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*[11] Et ad aquilonem duo maris brachia altrinsecus in terram[12] longo spatio irrumpentia,[13] quamvis ad se invicem non pertingant;[14] quorum orientalis sinus incipit duobus ferme milibus[15] a monasterio Ebbircurnig[16] ad occidentem urbis[17] de Pemiltoun, et habet in se urbem Guydi;[18] occidentalis vero sinus habet ad dextram[19] sui

Leogria sive Anglia.

---

[1] Misnumbered 34 both in E. and Cx.

[2] *Insula*, B.

[3] *Cœpit Britannia*] *Brittannia*, (*-iæ*, D.) *insula*, C.D.; *Cœpit Britannia insula*, A., Gale.

[4] *primi*] om. B.

[5] *cepit habere*, C.D.

[6] *Albaniam ... dicitur*] et Scotiam, C.D.

[7] *quæ . . . dicitur*] om. B.

[8] *Logria a Logrino*, B.

[9] *dicta*, C.D. ; om. B.

[10] *ad*, C.

[11] *capitulo duodecimo*] om. C. ; *septimo*, D. The text is correct.

[12] *in terram*] om. E.

[13] *interrumpentia*, B.

[14] *quamvis pertingant*] om. C.D.

[15] *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

[16] *Herbercurnig*, C. ; *Ewircurnig*, B. ; *Ebburcurnig*, A. ; *Æbercurnig* (*i.e. Abercorn*), Bede. (The termination in the MSS. may either be *-ing*, or *-nig*. See Trevisa.)

[17] *urbis*] om. C.D.

[18] *habet . . . Guydi*] fluit in illud flumen Twede, C.D.; Gyndi, B.

[19] *a dextra*, B.

more bolde and stedefast for to triste[1] on þe final arisynge of deed bodies forto laste euermore after þe day of dome. TREVISA.

De partibus Britanniæ principalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.

After þe firste Brutes[2] tyme þe ilond of Bretayne bygan for to haue þ[r]e[3] principal parties, þat beeþ Loegria, and[4] Cambria, þat is Wales, and Albania, þat is now[5] Scotlond. Loegria had þat name of Locrinus [þat was Brut his sone eldest, and hatte Loegria, as hit were Locrinus][6] his lond; but now Loegria hatte Engelond. Þe meeres and þe marke[7] were þerof somtyme þe Frensche see boþe by est and by souþ. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*[8] And by north tweie armes of þe see þat brekeþ fer in to þe lond, eyþer aȝenst oþer. But he[9] recheþ nouȝt to gidres; þe est arme of þilke tweyne bygynneþ aboute a tweie litel myle fram þe ministre of Ebbercuryng[10] in þe west side of þe citee of Penultoun; in þat arm[11] is[12] a toun, þat hatte Guydy. Þe west arme of þilke tweyne haþ in þe

---

sideracion of that corruptele scholde be more bolde in feithe to the hope of the resurreccion. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the principalle partes of Briteyne. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium. f. 62. *a.*

THE yle of Briteyne began to haue iij. principalle partes in hit after the firste tymes of Brute, that is to say, Loegria, whiche is callede now Englonde, takenge the name of hit of Locrinus the firste son of Brute, and Wales, and Albania that is now Scottelande. The merkes of whom were firste the see of Fraunce at the este and at the weste. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.* Also in the northe partes of that cuntre be ij. floodes brekenge vp eiche from other by a grete space, thauȝhe thei towche not to gedre, the este parte of whom begynnethe allemoste by the space of ij. myles from a monastery callede Eburcuring, at the weste of a cite callede Penulton, whiche hathe in hit a cite calledde Tweda. The oþer parte of the weste see begynnethe at

---

[1] *truste*, *a.*, Cx.

[2] *Brutys*, *a.* (not Cx.)

[3] *þe*] So MS., *a.* *β.*, and Cx.; but the correction is certain.

[4] *and*] om. *a.* and Cx. (Interlineated in MS.)

[5] *now is*, *a.*

[6] Added from *a.* and Cx., who has a few deviations.

[7] *merkes*, Cx., which is better.

[8] *vicesimo*, Cx., wrongly.

[9] *they*, Cx.

[10] *Ebburcuring*, Cx.

[11] So *a.* and Cx.; *armes*, MS.

[12] Added from *a.* and Cx.

urbem minutissimam[1] Alcluid, quod lingua eorum sonat petram Cluit, et ponitur juxta flumen[2] nominis sui Cluit.[3] *Ranulphus.* Volunt tamen quidam Loegriam apud flumen Humbræ terminari, nec ulterius versus boream debere extendi.[4]

Albania sive Scotia. Secunda pars Britanniæ Albania sive Scotia dicitur, ab Albanacto Bruti filio sic denominata;[5] extendit se a duobus[6] marinis brachiis prædictis usque ad mare Norguegiæ[7] versus[8] aquilonem. Pars tamen austrina Albaniæ,[9] quæ est a fluvio Twydy[10] usque ad mare Scoticum, a Pictis quondam inhabitata, pertinuit aliquando ad regum Northimbrorum[11] Berniciorum;[12] a primis videlicet regum Angliæ[13] temporibus usque dum rex Scotorum Kynadius,[14] Alpini filius, Pictos deleret, et sic[15] partem illam regno Scotiæ annecteret.[16]

Wallia quæ et Cambria. Tertia pars Britanniæ dicitur Wallia, quæ et Cambria, a Cambro Bruti filio sic dicta,[17] quam ex parte orientali[18] flumen Sabrinæ[19] quondam sequestrabat a Loegria;[20] hodie tamen flumen Dee apud Cestriam in borea,

---

[1] *urbem minutissimam*] om. C.D.
[2] *flumen*] om. B., and space left before Cluit.
[3] *ponitur . . Cluit*] et fluit in illud flumen Sulwach, C.D.
[4] Slightly altered in C.D.
[5] *sic denominata*] nuncupata, C.D.
[6] *a duobus*] proprie a, C.D.
[7] *Norwegiæ*, C.D.
[8] *versus*] ad, C.D.
[9] *Albaniæ*] om. C.D.
[10] *Twydi*, B.; *Tvidi*, A.; *Twede*, D.
[11] *Northanhinbrorum*, B.; *Northamhymbrorum*, Gale; *Northimibrorum*, D.
[12] *Berniciorum*] om. B.
[13] *Anglorum*, C.D.; *regum Anglorum*, B., Gale.
[14] *Kynardus*, A.B.; *Kinadius*, D.
[15] *sic*] om. C.D.
[16] *sociaret*, C.D.
[17] *sic dicta*] nuncupatur, C.D.
[18] *hanc ex orientis parte*, C.D.
[19] *Sabrini*, A.
[20] *ab Anglia*, C.D.

TREVISA.

riȝt[1] side a strong citee þat hatte Alclud,[2] þat in hire longage hatte Cluitstoun, and stondeþ vppon a ryuere þat hatte Cluit also. [R.][3] Som men wolde mene þat Loegria endeþ at Homber, and streccheþ no ȝonder[4] northward. Þe secounde party of Bretayne hatte Albania, þat is Scotlond, and haþ þat name of Albanactus Brutis[5] sone, and streccheþ from þe tweye forsaide armes of þe see norþward anon to þe see of Norwey. Noþeles þe souþ partie of Albania þere[6] Pictes woned somtyme, and lith from þe water of Twyde anon to þe Scottische see; al þat longed somtyme to þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond Bremencorum,[7] þe north side of Norþhumberlond, from þe firste tyme of [Englisch kynges to þat tyme][8] whanne Kynadius, kyng of Scotlond, þat was Alpinus his sone, dede away þe Pictes, and so ioyned þe[9] contray to þe kyngdom of Scotlond. Þe þridde party of Bretayne is Wallia,[10] þat hat Cambria also, and hadde þat name Cambria of Camber, Brut his sone; for he was prince of Wales. In þe est side[11] Seuerne departed somtyme bytwene Engelond and Wales. [But now in þe north side þe ryuer Dee at Chestre, and in þe south þe ryuer þat

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

the ryȝhte parte of Alcluid, a cite whiche is putte nye to Cluid, a floode of that name. ℞. Some men wille Loegria, now callede Englonde, to haue an ende at the floode off Humbre, and not to be extended forther towarde the northe. The secunde principalle parte of Englonde was callede Albania, other Scottelande, takenge the name of hit off Albanactus the son of Brute, which extendethe hit from the seide ij. waters to the see of Norway towarde the northe. Neuerthelesse, the sowthe parte of Scotlande, whiche is from the water of Twide vn to the Scottes see, was inhabite somme tyme of the Pictes, whiche perteynede somme tyme to þe cuntre of Northumbrelonde in the firste tymes of kynges of Englonde, vn tylle that Kinadius, kynge of Scottes, son to Alpinus, destroyede the Pictes, and annecte that parte to the realme of Scottelande. The thrydde parte of Briteyne is callede Wales, callede Cambria of Camber the son of Brute, whom the water of Seuerne departede somme tyme from Englonde, where now the floode of Dee departethe hit in the northe at Chestre, and the water other floode callede

---

[1] *right*, α.
[2] *Alcluid*, α.; *Alcliud*, Cx., who has *Clintstone*, and *Clynt* below.
[3] Reference added from Cx.
[4] *ferther*, Cx.
[5] *Brut his*, α.; *Bruytes*, Cx.
[6] *where as*, Cx., who varies the construction.
[7] *Brennicorum*, α.; *Brenycorn*, Cx.
[8] Added from α. and Cx.; α. has *children* for *kynges*.
[9] *þat*, α., Cx.
[10] *Wales*, *Wallia*, α., Cx.
[11] *side of*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)

et flumen Vaga apud castrum Strigulense[1] in austro Walliam ab Anglia secernit. Insuper et rex Offa, ad perpetuam regnorum Angliæ et Walliæ distinctionem habendam, fecit fossam perlongam,[2] quæ ab austro juxta Bristolliam sub montibus Walliæ[3] jugiter se extendit in boream, fluminaque[4] Sabrinæ et Dee in eorum pene primordiis[5] transcindit,[6] et sic usque ad ostium fluminis Dee ultra Cestriam,[7] juxta castrum de Flynt,[8] inter collem[9] Carbonum et monasterium de Basingwerk,[10] in mare se protendit.[11] Hujus fossæ famosissimæ[12] extant adhuc vestigia, quam cum armis prætergredi[3] tempore Sancti Edwardi regis cunctis Cambrigenis pœnale fuit, procurante hoc comite Haraldo,[14] sicut[15] inferius dicitur;[16] sed hodie[15] hinc inde ultra citraque fossam illam[17] potissime in provinciis Cestriæ, Salopiæ, Herfordiæ, Wallici cum Anglis passim sunt permixti.

---

[1] *Trigulense*, D.
[2] *prolongam*, D.
[3] *Walle*, B.
[4] *fluviosque*, C.D.
[5] *primordiis pene*, B.
[6] *transcendit*, A.
[7] *Cestre*, E.
[8] *castra deflint*, D.
[9] *sub colle*, C.D.
[10] *et . . . Basingwerk*] om. C.D.; *Wasyngwerc*, B.; *Wasingwerc*, A.
[11] *extendit*, C.
[12] *famosæ*, C.D.
[13] *transgredi*, C.D.
[14] *Haroldo*, Gale.
[15] *sicut . . . hodie*] om. C. (not D.); *hodie*, om. B.
[16] *infra dicetur*, D.
[17] *prædictam*, C.D.

hatte Vaga, at þe castel of Strygeleum departeþ Engelond and Wales.][1] Also kyng Offa, forto haue a distinccioun for euermore bytwene þe kyngdoms of Engelond and of Wales, made a long deche[2] þat streccheþ forþ oute of þe souþ side by Bristowe vndir þe hilles of Wales norþward, and passeþ þe reuers Seuarne and Dee almost at[3] þe hedes, and anon to þe mouþ of þe ryuer Dee byȝonde Chestre faste by þe castle, and[4] renneþ forþ bytwene Colhille and þe ministre of Basyngwerc[5] in to þe see. Þis diche is ȝit in many places i-seyn. In Seint Edward his tyme Walsche men schulde not passe þat diche wiþ wepoun vppon a grete payne, and þat was at erle Harolde his procurynge, as hit is i-saide wiþ ynne.[6] Bot now in eiþer side boþe of[7] ȝond half and on[8] þis half þe diche, and specialliche in þe schires of Chestre, of Schrouysbury, and of Herford in meny places beeþ Englische men [and Walsche men][9] i-medled to gidres. TREVISA.

Vaga departethe Wales from Englonde in the sowthe at the castelle Strigulense. Also kynge Offa causede a longe diche to be made vn to a perpetualle distinccion of the realmes of Englonde and of Wales, whiche extendethe hit from the sowthe nye to Bristolle, vnder the hilles of Wales, in to the northe; whiche diuidethe as the begynnenges of the waters of Seuerne and of Dee, and protendethe hit vn̄ to the durre of the floode of Dee behynde Chestre nye to the castelle of Flynte, betwene Coolehille and the monastery of Basingwerc. As ȝitte the stappes of that famose dyche remayne, whiche diche to passe was a grete peyne to Walche men, beenge in armes in the tyme of kynge Edwarde, that erle Haraldus procurenge that, as hit schalle be expressede afterwarde, but now Walche men bene permixte with Englische men ouer either diche, and specially in the prouinces of Chestre, of Schroppeschyre, and of Hereforde. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 62. b

---

[1] Added from α. β. and Cx., who has *Strygelyn.*
[2] *diche*, α.
[3] *to*, Cx.
[4] *it*, Cx.
[5] *Basingwerke*, β., Cx.
[6] *as it shal be sayd here after*, Cx.
[7] *of*] *a*, α., Cx.
[8] *a*, Cx.
[9] Added from α. β. and Cx. (*Walsshmen.*)

CAP. XLIV.

De insulis Britanniæ adjacentibus.

Et[1] præter insulas Orcadas, quas Claudius Cæsar ad Britanniam pertinere fecerat, habet Britannia tres insulas sibi propinquas, quasi tribus Britanniæ partibus[2] principalibus correspondentes.[3] Nam Loegriæ ad austrum adjacet[4] insula Vecta; Walliæ ad boream insula Monia, quæ Angleseya dicitur;[5] Scotiæ ad occasum insula Eubonia, quæ Mevania[6] sive Man dicitur. Omnes pene[7] ejusdem sunt quantitatis, de quibus hic[8] per ordinem. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Insula Vecta, quam Vespasianus a Claudio missus subjugavit, protenditur ab ortu in[9] occasum xxx. milibus,[10] ab austro in boream xij. milibus,[11] et distat a meridiano Britanniæ littore sex milibus[12] in oriente sui parte, et tribus milibus[12] in occidentali. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quintodecimo.* Hujus insulæ mensura se-

De insula Vecta.

[1] *Et*] om. C.D.

[2] *quasi . . . partibus*] tribus partibus suis, B.

[3] Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

[4] *adjacet ad austrum*, B.

[5] *dicitur*] om. E.

[6] *Menevia*, B.,—*v* and *n* are so similar in the MSS. that it is hard to say what they read. I have followed Petrie's orthography in the text. See *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index. Gale has *Menania* here, but *Mevania* below.

[7] *fere*, C.D.

[8] *hic*] om. C.D.

[9] *usque ad*, C.; *ad*, D.

[10] *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

[11] *milibus*] om. C.D.; *miliaribus*, B.; *milia*, A.

[12] *miliaribus*, B.C.D. (twice.)

De insulis Britanniæ adjacentibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum. TREVISA.

BRETAYNE haþ þre ilondes þat beeþ nygh and longeþ þerto, alle wiþ oute þe ylondes Orcades, as hit were answeringe to þe þre cheef parties of Bretayne. For þe yle of Wight[1] longeþ and lieþ to Loegria, þat is Engelonde; þe ilond Mon, þat hatte Engleseie[2] also, longeþ to[3] Wales; and þe ilond[4] Eubonia, þat haþ tweie [oþere][5] names, and hatte Menania[6] and Man also, longeþ[7] to Scotlond. And alle þese þre ilondes, Mon, Wight,[8] and Man, beþ almest i-lich moche and of þe same quantitie; of þe which þre al arewe now foloweþ our speche. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Claudius sent Vespasianus, and Vespasianus wan Wighte,[8] and Wighte[8] strecccheþ oute of þe est in to þe west þritty myle long, and out of þe souþ in to þe norþ twelue myle, and is in þe est side sex[9] myle from þe souþ cleef[10] of Bretayne, and þre myle in þe west side. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto.*

Of yles adiacente and nye to Briteyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

AND the yles excepte whom Claudius Cesar causede to perteyne to Briteyne, that londe hathe iij. yles nye to hit as corespondente to thre principalle partes of Briteyne: for the yle of Wyȝhte lyethe nye to the sowthe parte of Englonde. And at the northe parte of Wales is an yle whiche is callede Monia other Anglesey, and also the yle of Man at the weste parte of Scotlande, whiche be allemoste of oon quantite, of whom hit schalle be seide by ordre. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* That yle of Wiȝhte, whom Vespasian sende[11] from Claudius did subiugate, is protended from the este in to the weste by xxx^{ti} myles, beenge from the sowthe in to the northe by xij. myles, and from the side of the sowthe see of Briteyne by vj. myles in the este parte of hit, and by thre myles in the weste. *Beda, libro quarto capitulo quinto decimo.* The measure of that

---

[1] *Wiȝt*, *a.*
[2] *Anglesia*, *a.*, Cx.
[3] MS. has *mon* before *Wales* (not *a.* or Cx.)
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *Engelond*, MS.
[5] *oþere*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[6] *Menauia*, Cx.; see above.
[7] *which longeth*, Cx.
[8] *Wiȝt*, *a.*
[9] *sixe*, *a.*
[10] *clyve*, *a.*
[11] So Harl. MS.

cundum æstimationem Anglorum est M.CC. familiarum.[1]

De insula Monia.

[2] *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.*[3] Insula Monia, quæ et Angleseya, brevi maris brachio quasi duobus miliaribus separatur a Northwallia[4] et continet ccclxiij. villas pro[5] tribus cantredis; computatur[6] quasi xxx. milia habens in longum[7] sed xij. in latum;[8] et dicitur cantredus, composito nomine tam[9] Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portio, quanta centum villas continet.[10] In hujus insulæ laudem proverbialiter[11] solet dici Cambrice sic:[12] *Mon Mam Kymry*, quod Latine sonat *Monia mater Cambriæ;* nam,[13] aliis terris victu deficientibus, hæc gleba præpollet adeo ut[14] hæc in annona,[15] [16] montes[17] Snawdoniæ[18] in pastura totius Cambriæ populo et armentis videatur[19] sufficere; unde et illud Virgilii aptari[20] sibi possit:

Et quantum[21] longis carpunt armenta diebus,
Exigua tantum gelidus ros[22] nocte reponit.[23]

---

[1] *miliarium*, B.

[2] C.D. add :—" Item *libro primo*, " *capitulo quintodecimo.* Itemque " sita est econtra [contra, D.] me- " dium Australium Saxonum et " Gwessiorum [Gewisseorum, D.] " interposito pelago latitudine trium " miliariorum, quod vocatur Solu- " ente, in quo bini æstus oceani " quotidie compugnantes sibi oc- " currunt ultro ostium fluminis IIo- " melea, quod per terras Jutarum, " quæ ad regiones Gowisiorum " [Gewiseorum, D.] pertinent, præ- " fatum pelagus intrat." See Bed. lib. iv. c. 16.

[3] *in Itinerario, libro secundo*] om. E.

[4] *Saxonice Angleseye dicta*, ins. C. D.

[5] *per*, E.

[6] *reputatur*, C.D.; *computantur*, B.

[7] *longitudine*, C. (not D.)

[8] *xiij. in latum*, D.; *latitudine*, C.

[9] *tam*] om. C. (not D.)

[10] *continere solet*, C.D.

[11] *probabiliter*, E.

[12] *sic*] om. C.D.

[13] *quia*, C.D.

[14] *adeo ut*] in tantum quod, C.D.

[15] *annonai*, B.

[16] *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

[17] *monte*, Gale.

[18] *Snaudoniæ*, E., Gale.

[19] *videntur*, C.; *videtur*, D. Probably we should read *videantur*.

[20] *apterai*, B.; *aptare*, E.

[21] *quamvis*, B.

[22] *legibus ros*, B.; *res*, E.; *ros*, Gale. See *Georg.* ii. 202.

[23] *unde . . . reponit*] om. C.D.

Þe met[1] of þis ilond, as Englische men gesseþ, is a þowsand housholdes and two hondred. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Mon, þat hatte Angleseia also, is departed from þe[2] Norþ Wales by a schort arme of þe see, as it were tweie myle broode. In Mon beeþ þre hondred townes þre score and þre, and beeþ acounted for þre candredes, þat beeþ þre hundredes. Þe ilond is, as it were, þritty myle longe and twelue myle brood.[3] Candredus[4] is so moche land as conteyneþ an hondred townes ; þat name Cantredus is i-made oon of tweie longages, of Brittische and of Irische. In preisynge of this ilond Walsche men beeþ i-woned to seie a prouerbe and an olde sawe, *Mon mam Kembry,* þat is to menynge in Englische *Mon moder of Wales.* For whan oþere londes lakkeþ mete, þat lond is so good þat hit semeþ þat it wolde fynde corn i-now for alle þe men of Wales. And so it semeþ þat þe hilles of Snowdonia[5] wolde fynde pasture i-now for al Wales to þe bestes þerof.[6] Þerfore Virgile is vers may be accordynge þereto : — TREVISA

As moche as gnawes
Bestes [longe][7] inneþ dawes,
So moche eft bringeþ
Dew cold[8] in a nyȝt.

---

yle after the estimacion of peple of Englonde is of m[l]cc. townes[9] other howseholdes. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* The yle of Monia, whiche otherwise callede Anglesey, is departede from Northe Wales by ij. myles, as by a lytelle arme of the see, whiche conteynethe ccc. lx. and iij. townes, and hit is acomptede as for thre cantredes, hauenge as xxx[ti] myles in longitude and xij. myles in latitude ; and a cantrede is callede as welle in the langage of Englonde, as in the langage of Irlonde, a porcion of erthe other grownde conteynenge an c. townes. In to the lawde of whom hit is wonte to be seide prouerbially in Walesche, *Monia mam*[10] *Kymry,* whiche sowndethe in Englische, *Anglesey is the moder of Wales;* for other londes wontenge vitelles that cuntre is habundante, in so moche that Angleseye in corne and Snawdon hilles in pasture scholde suffice as by estimacion alle the peple of Wales and alle the bestes of that — MS. HARL. 2261. — f. 63. a.

---

[1] *mesure,* Cx.
[2] *þe*] om. α. and Cx., probably rightly.
[3] *brood*] om. Cx. (typogr. error ?)
[4] *Cantredus,* ., Cx. (but *Candredes* above.)
[5] *Snawdonia,* α.
[6] *for alle the bestes of Wales,* α. The whole sentence is omitted in Cx.
[7] Added from α. β. and Cx.
[8] *old dewe,* Cx.
[9] *places,* MS. (first hand).
[10] *man,* Harl. MS.

In marino brachio, quod hanc insulam a Northwallia[1] secernit,[2] est vorago naves attrahens[3] et absorbens instar Scyllæ seu[4] Charybdis, nisi[5] pleno mari subtiliter transnavigetur.[6] *Ranulphus.* De mirabilibus hujus insulæ vide supra capitulo *Wallia.*[7] *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Tertia insula, quæ[8] Eubonia sive Mevania[9] dicitur,[10] inter Hibernicam[11] Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwodias,[12] quasi in umbilico maris, media jacet.[13] *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono.* Hæc duas continet partes, quasi[14] insulas; quarum prior ad austrum et situ amplior et ubertate felicior nongentarum sexaginta familiarum est juxta[15] Anglorum æstimationem; secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet.[16] *Giraldus in Topographia.* De qua quondam insula[17] cui regioni, Hiberniæ scilicet an[18] Angliæ, applicari deberet exorta contentione,[19] quia[20] venenosos vermes advectos admisit, eam Britanniæ applicandam

De insula Man.

---

[1] *Northwallia*, Gale.
[2] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[3] *trahens*, D.
[4] *et*, C.D.
[5] *nisi . . . transnavigetur*] om. C.
[6] *navigaretur*, A.
[7] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[8] *quæ*] om. C.D.
[9] *Manavia*, B.
[10] *sive Man*, ins. B.
[11] *Hiberniam*, E.
[12] *Galwedias*, D.
[13] *adjacet*, C.D.
[14] *partes quasi*] om. C.D.
[15] *est juxta*] secundum, C.D.
[16] *continet*, C. (not D.)
[17] *insula*] om. C.D.
[18] *vel*, C.
[19] *tentione*, A.
[20] *qui*, Gale.

TREVISA.

In þat arme of þe see, þat departeth bytwene þis ilond Mon and Norþ Wales,[1] is a swelowe[2] þat draweþ to schippes[3] þat seilleþ,[4] and swelloweþ hem yn, as dooþ Scylla and Charybdis,[5] þat beeþ tweie perilous places in þe see of myddel erþe; þerfore me may nouȝt seile by þis swolwe[6] but slily at þe ful see. ℞. Of þe meruailles and wondres of þis ilond Mon,[7] loke in þe chapitres[8] of Wales. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Þe þridde ilond þat hatte boþe Eubonia and Menania, þat is Man, stondeþ in þe myddes[9] bytwene þe Irische Hulster and þe Scottische Galewey,[10] as it were in þe nauel of þe see. *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono.* Þis ilond Man conteyneþ as hit were tweie ilondes; þe firste is souþward, þe more contray and better corn lond, and conteyneþ nyne hondred housholdes and þre score. Þe secounde conteyneþ þe space of þre hondred and moo, as Englische men telleþ.[11] *Giraldus in Topographia.* Som tyme was stryf wheþer þis ilond Man[12] schulde ligge[13] to Britayne oþer to Irlond, [and][14] for[15] venemous wormes[16] þat were i-brouȝt þider leued þere hit was i-demed[17] þat the ilond Man schulde longe to Bretayne. [℞.][18] And in þat ilond is

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

cuntre to theire pasture. Also there is a swalo in that arme of the see whiche dothe departe Northe Wales from that yle, drawenge schippes to hit, with owte that schippemen passe hit subtily at the fulle see. ℞. The reder of this processe may fynde of other mervayles of that cuntre in the chapitre of Wales. *Giraldus, in Itinerario.* That other yle whiche is callede Euvonia, other elles the yle of Man, is seide to be as in the mydde see betwene Vlster in Yrlonde, and the Scottes of Galaweye. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo nono.* Of whiche yle a contencion was made wheþer hit scholde perteyne to Englonde, other elles to Yrlonde, and men brouȝhte wormes and vermyn to hit, and for cause that londe suffrede the wormes to lyve, thei seide that grownde to longe to Englonde and not to Yrlonde.

---

[1] *that departeth this londe and North Wales*, Cx.
[2] *swolwȝ*, α.; *swolow*, Cx.
[3] *draweth shippes to it*, Cx.
[4] Cx. inserts *by*.
[5] *Cilla and Caribdis*, MS., α., and Cx.
[6] *swolouȝ*, α.
[7] So α. and Cx.; *Man*, MS.
[8] *chapitre*, α. Sentence varied in Cx.
[9] *myddel*, α., Cx.
[10] *Galway*, α.; *Gallewaye*, Cx.
[11] *gessiþ*, α.; *gesse*, Cx.
[12] *Mam*, MS. (clerical error.)
[13] *longe*, Cx.
[14] Added from α. and Cx.
[15] *for as moche as*, Cx.
[16] So α. and Cx.; *wordes*, MS.
[17] *iugged*, Cx.
[18] Reference added from Cx.

censuerunt. *Ranulphus.* In illa insula vigent[1] sortilegia,[2] superstitiones, atque præstigia; nam mulieres ibidem[3] navigaturis ventum vendunt, quasi sub tribus fili nodis inclusum; ita ut, sicut plus de vento habere voluerint, plures nodos evolvant.[4] Ibi frequenter ab indigenis videntur etiam[5] de die homines prius mortui, decapitati sive integri, juxta modum suæ mortis; ut autem alienigenæ et adventitii hoc videre possint, ponunt pedes[6] super pedes incolarum, et sic[7] videre[8] poterunt quod incolæ vident. *Beda, libro secundo.* Hæc insula ab initio fuit a Scotorum gente inhabitata. Thanatos[9] insula juxta Cantiam, a morte[10] serpentum sic dicta, quos dum ipsa nesciat, ejus tamen terra aliunde apportata angues interimit; cujus gleba plurimum ferax[11] uberem creditur benedictionem contraxisse[12] ab adventu[13] Augustini, prothodoctoris Anglorum, ibidem primum[14] applicantis.[15]

De insula Thanatos, sive Thanet.

Cap. XLV.

De plateis regalibus.

Gaufridus.[16] Statuit Molmutius[17] rex Britonum vicesimus tertius et primus eorum legifer,[18] ut aratra colonum,[19] templa deorum, viæque ad civitates ducentes,[20]

[1] *in en vigent,* D.
[2] *et,* ins. C.D.
[3] *ibi,* C.D.
[4] *ita . . . evolvant*] om. C.D.
[5] *etiam*] om. A., Gale.
[6] *pedem,* C.; *pedes suos,* B.
[7] *tunc,* C.D.
[8] *videre . . . incolæ*] om. C.D.
[9] *Thanates,* B.; *Thenetos,* D.
[10] *more,* E.
[11] *ferax,* B.; *ferax et,* A.
[12] *attraxisse,* A.
[13] *beati,* ins. B.
[14] So A.C.D.; *primo,* B.; *populum* (*pp*m), E.
[15] So B.; *applicante,* A.E., Gale. Sentence slightly abbreviated in C. D.
[16] *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.
[17] *Molincius,* B.
[18] *inter cætera splendoris sui monumenta,* added in C.D., which have other slight variations.
[19] So MSS. and Gale; and so also below.
[20] *civitatesque et viæ ducentes ad eas,* C.D.

TREVISA.

sortilege and wicchecraft i-vsed. For wommen þere selliþ schipmen wynde, as it were i-closed vnder þre knottes of þrede, so þat þe more wynd he wol[1] haue, he wil vnknette þe mo knottes.[2] Þere ofte by day men of þe lond seeþ men þat beeþ dede to forhonde, byheded oþer hole, and what[3] deeþ þei deide. Aliens setteþ here foot vppon feet of men of þe lond [for to see such sightes as the men of that lond don].[4] *Beda, libro secundo.* Scottes woned first in þis ilond. Thanatos,[5] þat is Tenet, and is an ilond bysides Kent, and haþ þat name Tanatos of deþ of serpentes, for þere beeþ none, and þe erþe þereof sleeþ serpentes i-bore[6] in to oþer londes. Þere is nobil corn lond and fruytful;[7] me troweþ þat[8] þat ilond was i-halowed and i-blessed of Seynt Austyn, þe firste doctour of Englische men; for þere he aryued first.

De plateis regalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molinicius, kyng of Britouns,[9] was þe þridde and twenty of hem, and þe firste þat ȝaf hem lawe. He ordeyned þat[10] plowȝmen solowes, goddes temples,[11] and

MS. HARL. 2261.

℞. In whiche yle wycchecrafte ys exercisede moche, for women þer be wonte to selle wynde to the schippemen commenge to that cuntre, as includede vnder thre knottes of threde, so that thei wylle vnloose the knottes lyke as thei wylle haue the wynde to blawe. *Beda, libro secundo.* That yle was inhabite firste of the Scottes. Also there is an yle nye to Kente callede Thanatos, namede so of the dethe of serpentes, the erthe of whiche yle brouȝhte in to other cuntres sleethe serpentes; whiche yle is plentuous; and mony men say that yle to haue bene blessede by Seynte Austyn, the firste doctor of Englonde londenge there firste.

Of the kynges hie weyes.

Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molimicius, the xxiiij^ti kynge of Briteyne, and the firste maker of lawe of theyme, ordeinede that the ploes of tillers, the temples of goddes, and the weies ledenge to cites f. 63. b.

[1] *wil*, α.; *wold*, Cx.
[2] *the mo knottes he must vndo*, Cx.
[3] *wat*, α.
[4] Added from Cx., who omits *lond* by typogr. error; β. has *lond*, but makes various blunders.
[5] So α. and Cx.; *Thanathos*, MS.
[6] *i-bodere*, α.
[7] *fruyȝtful*, α.
[8] *hit is supposed that*, Cx.: and similarly often.
[9] *Molimicius*, α.; and so below; *Moliuncius*, Cx., and *Molyuncius* below.
[10] *þat þat*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[11] MS. adds: *and hiȝe temples* (not α. or Cx.)

immunitate confugii gauderent, ita ut nullus reus ad aliquod istorum trium confugiens pro tuitione ab aliquo invaderetur.[1] Verum quia procedente tempore de viis, cum non essent certis limitibus distinctæ, orta esset[2] dissensio, Belinus rex,[3] filius Molmutii[4] prædicti, ad subducendum omne[5] ambiguum, quatuor regales vias omni privilegio munitas per insulam strui[6] fecit.

Fossa.

Quarum viarum prima et maxima Fossa dicitur, ab austro in boream extensa, quæ incipit ab angulo Cornubiæ apud Totenenesse,[7] et terminatur in fine Scotiæ apud Catenesse. *Ranulphus.* Verius tamen secundum alios incipit in Cornubia, tendensque[8] per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Tettesbury,[9] supra Coteswold,[10] juxta Conventry,[11] usque Leircestre[12] procedit; indeque per vasta plana versus Neuwerk[13] diutius progrediens apud Lincolniam terminatur.[14] Secunda via principalis dicitur

Watlingstrete.

Watlingstrete, tendens per transversum prioris viæ,

---

[1] Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

[2] *est,* D.

[3] *rex*] om. C.D.

[4] *Melimicii,* B.

[5] *ce* [*esse*], B.; *omnem,* E.

[6] *sterni,* A.C.D., Gale.

[7] *Cotenesse* B. C.D. add :—"tendensque per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Teokesbury, supra Coteswolde, juxta Coventriam, usque Leycestriam, per Lincolniam usque Berwicum, tandem,' &c.

[8] *que*] om. B.

[9] *Teukesbury,* B.; *Teokisbiri,* A.; *Tetteburium,* Gale.

[10] *Cotiswolde,* A.

[11] *Coventriam,* Gale.

[12] *Leycestre,* B.; *Leicestriam,* Gale.

[13] *Vulturnum,* A.B.; *Newark,* Gale.

[14] *Ranulphus . . . terminatur*] om. C.D.

hiȝe weies, þat ledeþ to citees and townes, schulde haue þe fredom of socour; so þat eueriche man þat fley[1] to eny of þe þre for socour for[2] trespas þat he hadde i-doo schulde be safe[3] for pursuyt of alle[4] his enemyes. But afterward, for þe weyes were not so sette wiþ certeyn markes, þe weies were vncerteyn and strif was bygonne.[5] Þerfore Belinus þe kyng, þat was þe forsaide Moluncius his sone, for to putte awey al doute and stryf, made foure hiȝe kyng[6] weies i-prieleged [wiþ al privilege][7] and fredom, and þe weies streccheþ þoruȝ out[8] þe ilond. Þe firste and þe grettest of þe foure weies hatte Fosse, and streccheþ out of þe south in to þe norþe, and bygynneþ from þe corner of Cornewayle at Totteneys[9] and endeþ in þe ende of Scotlond at Catenesse. ℞. Neuerþeles more verreyliche, as oþer men telleþ, Fosse bygynneþ in Cornewayle,[10] and passeþ forþ by Deuenschire and[11] by Somersete, and forþ bysides Tettebury vppon Codeswolde[12] bysides Couentre anon to Leycetre, and so forþ by wylde pleynes toward Newerk, and endeþ at Lyncolne. The secounde chief kynges hiȝe wey hatte Watlynge strete, and streccheþ þwart[13] ouer

TREVISA.

---

scholde ioye the immunite of confute, so that noo man giltty fleenge to eny of these thre scholde not be borowede of eny man for his defence. And within a litelle space folowenge there was movede a grete dissencion of the weies, in that there was noo certitude in theyme. Wherefore Belinus kynge, and son to Molimicius, causede iiij. hie weyes to be made thro Englonde, defendede and storede with grete priuilege to remove alle dubitacion. The firste of whom, and the moste, begynnethe in an angle in Cornewaile at Tottenesse, and is extendede in to the northe, and terminate in the ende of Scottelonde at Katenesse. ℞. Neuerthelesse that weye begynnethe more truly, after somme men, in Cornewayle, goenge by Deueschire and Somerseete, nye Tewkesbery on Cotteswolde, and from that coste to Couentre, and soe vn to Leirecestre, and so furthe thro a grete pleyne, is terminate at Lyncolne. The secunde principalle weye is callede Watlingestreete, goenge ouerthwarde the firste weye,

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *wente*, Cx.
[2] *or for*, Cx.
[3] *saaf*, α.
[4] *al*, α.
[5] *had*, Cx. (who has some omissions.)
[6] *kynges*, Cx. (not α.)
[7] Added from α. and Cx. (who has *priuelegys*.)
[8] *thurgh*, Cx.
[9] *Totenes*, α.
[10] *at Totteneys . . . in Cornewayle*] om. Cx.
[11] *and*] om. α. and Cx.
[12] *Coteswold*, α.
[13] *þwat*, α.; *thwert*, Cx.

viz.,[1] ab euro[2] austro in zephyrum septentrionalem. Incipit enim[3] a Dovoria,[4] transiens per medium Cantiæ[5] ultra Thamisiam[6] juxta Londoniam[7] ad occidentem Westmonasterii,[8] indeque procedit juxta[9] Sanctum Albanum ad occidentem per Dunstapulam,[10] per[11] Stretfordiam, per[11] Toucestre,[12] Wedunam[13] ad austrum Lilleburne,[14] per Atheristoun[15] usque ad montem Gilberti,[16] qui[17] modo Wreken dicitur; deinde transcindit Sabrinam juxta Wrokcestre,[19] tendit ad Strettoun,[20] et inde per medium Walliæ usque ad Cardigan in mari Hibernico terminatur.[21] Tertia via dicitur Ermingestrete,[22] tendens a zephyro in eurum;[23] et incipit a Menevia[24] in Westwallia, procedens usque[25] ad portum Hamonis,[26] quæ modo dicitur Southamptoun.[27] [28] Quarta via dicitur Rikenildstrete[29] tendens ab Africo[30] in boream vulturnalem, et incipit a Menevia prædicta, tenditque per[31] Wygorniam, per Wycum,[32] per Birmyncham,[33] Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfeld,[34] Eboracum, usque ad ostium Tynæ[35] fluminis quod Tynmutha[36] dicitur.[37]

Ermyngestrete.

Rykenyldstrete.

---

[1] *per . . . viz.*] om. C.D.
[2] *ab*, ins. A.
[3] *enim*] om. C.D.
[4] *sive Dorobernia*, ins. C.D., omitting *transiens*.
[5] *Cansiæ*, A.
[6] *Tamesium*, Gale; *ultra Thamisiam*] om. C.D.
[7] *Londonium*, Gale.
[8] *Westimonasterii*, E.
[9] *Westmonasterii . . . juxta*] per, C.D.
[10] *Donestaple*, B.
[11] *per*] om. B.D.; *et*, A.
[12] *Toucestriam*, Gale.
[13] *Wedman*, Gale; *Wedoun*, D.
[14] *Lilleburum*, Gale.
[15] *per Atheristoun*] om. C.D.; *Atherston*, B.; *Atherscotiam*, Gale.
[16] *Monsilberti*, B.
[17] *quæ*, A.
[18] *mons*, B.
[19] *Wrokcestriam*, Gale.
[20] *Strettoniam*, Gale.
[21] Sentence slightly altered and abbreviated in C.D
[22] *Emingestrete*, C. (not D.), *Erningistrete*, Gale.
[23] *austrum*, C.D.
[24] *Mavonia*, Gale, and so below.
[25] *usque*] om. B.
[26] *Amonis*, A.
[27] *South Hamptonia*, Gale.
[28] Sentence abbreviated in C.D.
[29] *Rikenyldestrete*, B.; *Hikenilstrete*, C. (not D.)
[30] *Affico*, B.
[31] *Herford*, ins. C.D.
[32] *Wicum*, B.D., Gale; *Wicum et Birmingcham*, A.
[33] *Wyrnyngham*, B.; *Birmyngham*, D., Gale.
[34] *Cestirfeld*, A.
[35] *Tyni*, B.
[36] *Tinemeta*, B.; *Tynmouthia*, A.; *Tynemutha*, D., Gale.
[37] Slightly altered in C.D. A few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are omitted.

TREVISA.

Fosse out of þe souþ est in to þe norþ west, and bygynneþ at Douere, and passeþ by þe middel of Kent ouer Themse bysides Londoun by West Westmynstre, and so forþ by Seint Albon in þe west side by Donstaple,[1] by Stretforde,[2] by Toucetre, by Wedoun, by Souþ Lilleburne, by Atherestoun,[3] anon to Gilbertys hill, þat now hatte Wrekene, and forþ by Seuarne, and passeþ by sides Wrokcestre, and þanne forþ to Strattoun, and forth by þe myddel of Wales anon to Cartigan,[4] and endeþ at þe Irische[5] see. Þe þridde way hatte Erimingestrete,[6] and streccheþ out of þe west northwest in to þe est souþest, and byginneþ in Meneuia þat is in Seint Deuys[7] lond in West Wales, and strecccheþ forþ anon to Souþ Hamptoun. Þe ferþe hatte Rykeneldes strete, and strecccheþ out of þe south west in to þe norþ est, and bygynneþ in Meneuia in West Wales, and strecccheþ forþ[8] by Worcestre, by Wycombe, by Birmingham,[9] by Lichefeld, by Derby, by Chesterfilde, by Ȝork, and so forþ anon to Tynemouþe.

MS. HARL. 2261.

that is to say, from the sowthe este in to the northeweste; begynnenge at Dover, and goenge thro the myddes of Kente vn to Temmyse, nye to London at the weste of Westmynster; goenge from thens to Seynte Albanes at the weste, by Dunstaple, thro Stratforde, Toucestre, Wedunam, at the sowthe of Lilleburne, thro Atheriston, to the hille of Gilberte, that is callede now Wrekene; and from that hit kyttethe ouer Seuerne nye to Worcestre, and so Stratton, and from thens thro the myddes of Wales, and is endede at Cardigan in the see of Yrlonde. The thridde principalle way is callede Emyngestrete, whiche begynnethe at Seynte Dauides in Westewales, goenge to Sowthe Hampton. The iiij^the^ principalle wey is callede Rikenilde[10] Strete, goenge from Seynte Davides þro Worcestre, thro Birmicham, Lichefelde, Derby, Chesterfelde, Yorke, and to the floode of Tyne that is callede Tynnemowthe.

---

[1] *Donsteble*, *a.*
[2] *Stredfore*, *a.*
[3] *Atherystoun*, *a.*
[4] *Cardigan*, *a.*; *Cardykan*, Cx.
[5] *Erisch*, *a.*
[6] *Erymingestrete*, *a.*; *Erimyngestrete*, Cx.
[7] *Dauyes*, *a.*; *Dauid*, Cx.
[8] So *a.*; *for*, MS.; Cx. has some omissions, and a few slight variations of orthography.
[9] *Birmingtham*, *a.*
[10] *Bikenilde*, Harl. MS.

Cap XLVI.

De famosis fluminibus.[1]

Alfridus. Tria per Britanniam fluunt famosa flumina,[2] per quæ ex universis pene nationibus transmarina per totam insulam navigio feruntur commercia; videlicet[3] Thamisia, Sabrina, et Humbra,[4] quorum alveis per ampla ostia oceani marinum fleuma influens[5] et refluens tres insulæ principales provincias, quasi tria regna, disterminat; id est, Loegriam, Cambriam, et[6] Northimbriam.[7] *Ranulphus.* Thamisia videtur componi a nominibus duorum fluminum, quæ[8] Thama et Isa.[9] Thama currens juxta Dorcestram[10] cadit in Isam; inde totus fluvius a suo exortu[11] usque ad mare orientale[12] dicitur Thamisia. [13]Nempe[14] juxta urbem Tettebury, quæ tribus milibus ad boream [Malmesburiæ ponitur, nascitur Thamisia ex fonticulo versus orientem decurrente][15] ac plateam Fossæ transcindente, provinciasque Gloverniæ et Wyltoniæ disterminante, qui secum alios fonticulos profluendo trahens apud Cirecestriam grandescit. Inde quoque versus Hamptonam tendens, per Oxoniam, per Walyngfordiam, per Radyngum, perque

Thamisia.

---

[1] A., in place of the heading, has only "Alfredus."

[2] *Fluunt per Britanniam multa et ingentia flumina*, C.D.

[3] *sed præ cæteris tria famosa præcellunt fluenta, videlicet*, C.D.

[4] *Humbria*, B.

[5] *fleuma influens*] fluens, B.; flumina, A.D.; flumen, Gale, which is probably right.

[6] *et*] om. C.D.

[7] *Humbriam*, B.

[8] *sunt*, A.C., Gale.

[9] *Ysa*, A.B.D., Gale; so throughout.

[10] *Dorcestriam*, A.B., Gale; *Dorcestre*, D.

[11] *ortu*, B.

[12] *orientale*] om. C.D.

[13] From *Nempe . . . Merciorum* is abbreviated in C.D. as follows:—"*Willelmus libro secundo Pontificum.* Thamisia citra Londoniam octoginta miliaribus nascens juxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam; per quadraginta miliaria nomen suum retinet, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum Est-Saxonum quoque et Merciorum."

[14] *Nempe . . . Londoniam*] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* Thamisia juxta Teukesbury [Tookisburi, A.] fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam, A.B.

[15] Added from Gale. See also various readings.

TREVISA.

De famosis fluminibus.

Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famous ryueres renneþ þoruȝ Britayne; by þe whiche þre ryueres marchaundis of byȝonde see comeþ in schippes into Bretayne wel nyh oute of alle manere naciouns and londes. Þe[1] þre ryueres beeþ Themse, Seuarne, and Humber. Þe see ebbeþ and floweþ at þe mouþes of þese[2] þre ryueres, and departeþ [þe][3] þre prouinces of þe ilondes, as hit were þre kyngdoms, for to wynne;[4] þe þre parties beeþ Loegria, Cambria, and Norþhumbria, þat beeþ Wales, Engelond,[5] and Northumberlond. R.[6] [Þis][7] name Temse[8] semeþ i-made oo name of tweye names of ryueres,[9] þat beeþ Tame and Ise. For þe ryuer Tame renneþ bysides Dorchestre, and falleþ in Ise; þerfore al þe ryuer from þe first heede anon to þe est see hatte Temse. Temse bygynneþ bysides Tettebury, þat is þre myle by norþ Malmesbury; þere Temse springeþ of a welle and renneþ estward, and passeþe þe Fosse, and departeþ Glowcetreschire and Wiltschire, and draweþ wiþ hym meny oþer welles stremes,[10] and wexeþ grete at Grecestre, and passeþ forþ þanne toward Bamptoun,[11] and so forþ by Oxenforde, by Walyngforde, by

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the famose floodes in hit.

Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famose floodes floo thro Briteyne, to whom and thro whom marchandise commethe allemoste from alle naciones and regiones by schippe, whiche be Thamys, Seuerne, and Humbre, whiche waters departe three principalle prouinces as thre realmes, that is to say, Englonde, Wales, and Northumbrelonde. R. Thamisia, whiche is callede Temmys, semethe to be compownde of ij. waters, whiche be callede Thamia and Isa. That streme callede Tame rennenge by Dorchestre fallethe in to Ise, þerfore alle that water rennenge soe togedre is called Tammyse.

---

[1] *These*, Cx.

[2] *the*, Cx.

[3] Added from *α.* and Cx.

[4] *a sondre*, Cx., who probably read *atwynne*; the text seems corrupt.

[5] *myddel Englond, Wales*, Cx.

[6] *α.* omits R.

[7] Added from *α.*; *these*, Cx.

[8] *Themse*, *α.*

[9] *two riuers*, Cx.

[10] *and stremes*, Cx.

[11] *Hampton*, Cx.

Londoniam. *Willelmus*[1] *de Pontificibus, libro secundo.*[2] Apud Sandicum portum labitur in mare orientale, nomenque suum retinet ultra Londoniam per xl. miliaria, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum[3] et Estsaxonum,[4] Westsaxonum,[5] et Merciorum. *Ranulphus.* Sabrina fluvius Britanniæ[6] dicitur Habren,[7] ab Abren, filia Estrildis, quam Guendolena regina submersit in ea, sed per corruptionem Latinæ linguæ[8] dicitur modo Sabrina. Oritur quoque in medio Walliæ, transitque[9] primo versus orientem usque[10] Salopiam; inde vergit ad austrum usque ad Brugges,[11] Wygorniam, Gloucestriam,[12] et apud Bristolliam labitur in mare occidentale, fuitque terminus aliquando[13] Cambriæ et Loegriæ. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.*[14] Sabrina est alveus gurgite rapax, arte[15] piscosus, in quo[16] furor[17] voraginis seu potius vertiginis ab imo verrens[18] arenas conglobat in cumulum, ripasque[19]

---

[1] A. adds generally *Malmesburiensis* in this and similar references.

[2] Extract transposed and altered in A.B.D.

[3] *Canteorum*, A.

[4] *etiam Saxonum*, B.

[5] *Westsaxonum*] om. B.

[6] *Britannice*, A., which is better.

[7] *Abren*, A.

[8] *linguæ*] om. C.D. (reading *Latine.*)

[9] *transit quoque*, C.D.

[10] *ad*, ins. A.

[11] *Brigges*, D.

[12] So written at length in A.; *Gloucestr*ᵒ, E. It is often difficult to say whether the Latin or English form is intended, when the word is contracted. The Latin form has been preferred in the Latin text, when sanctioned by MS. authority. *Glavernum*, C.; *Gloverniam*, D.

[13] *aliquando*] added from A.B., Gale.

[14] *libro quarto*] om. B.

[15] *fluvius*, B.

[16] *arte . . . quo*] in eo, B.

[17] *in quo furor*] in furor, C.D.

[18] *vergens*, C. (not D.)

[19] *que*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

Redynge, and by Londoun. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.*[1] At þe hauen of Sandwhiche it falleþ into þe est see, and holdeþ his name fourty myle byȝond Londoun, and departed somtyme[2] bytwene Kent and Essex, Westsex and Mercia ; þat is as hit were a greet deel of [myddel][3] Engelonde. Seuarn is a ryuer of Bretayne, and hatte Habren [in Britoun, and haþ þat name Habren of Habren],[4] þat was Estrildes douȝter. Guedolen þe quene drenched þis Habren þerynne ; þerfore þese[5] Bretouns cleped þe ryuer Habren after þe womman þat was adraynt [þerynne],[6] but by corupte Latyn tonge hit hatte Sabryna, Seuarne on Englische. Seuarne byginneþ in þe myddel of Wales, and passeþ first toward þe est anon to Schroesbury, and þan torneþ souþward anon to Brigge-norþ, Wircetre, and Gloucetre, and falleþ in to þe west see besides Brystowe, and departed somtyme[7] bytwene Engelond and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Seuarne is swift of streme, fische craft is þere ynne, woodnesse of swolwynge and of whirlynge water casteþ vp and gadereþ to hepe grete hepes of grauel. Seuarne is ofte vppe[8] and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. The water of Thammyse takenge the originalle of hit nye to Tewkesbury of a lytelle welle, floethe by Oxforde, London, vn to the haven of Sandewiche, goenge þer in to the este see, reteynenge the name of hit paste London by xl[ti] myles, whiche was somme tyme as a cause terminative of men of Kente, of Este Saxones, West Saxones, and of men of the Marches. Seuerne, a floode of Briteyne, is callede Habren, of Habren doȝhter of Estrilde, whom a qwene callede Guendolena drownede in hit, but now hit is callede Sabrina, by the corrupcion of the langage of Latyn. That water of Seuerne begynnethe in the myddes of Wales, and goethe firste towarde the este vn to Schrewisbury, after that hit turnethe in to the sowthe to Brugges, Worchestre, and to Glocestre, fallenge in to the see at Bristowe, whiche was somme tyme a terme of Englonde and of Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Seuerne is a perellous streme fulle of fische, in whom is such a movenge that hit turnethe vp the grauelle from the bothom of the water, and makethe theyme in a grete hepe

---

[1] Reference added from Cx., who has c. (i.e. *capitulo*) for *libro*.
[2] *in som place*, Cx.
[3] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[4] Added from *a*. and Cx., who has *Britons*.
[5] *the*, Cx.
[6] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[7] *departeth in somme place*, Cx.
[8] *ofte aryseth*, Cx.

suas frequenter transcendit. *Ranulphus.* Humbra[1] quoque ab Humbro, rege Hunorum, in ea[2] submerso nomen sortita est,[3] primo ab australi parte Eboracensium[4] arcualiter[5] decurrens,[6] inde provinciam Lindisiensem, quæ olim ad Mercios spectabat, a reliqua plaga Northimbrana disterminat; hanc autem[7] Humbram multum adaugent[8] flumen[9] Trent et Ouse[10] in eam cadens.

Cap. XLVII.

De antiquis urbibus.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Regio Britanniæ quondam erat civitatibus nobilissimis viginti octo[11] insignita,[12] præter castella innumera,[13] quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, et serris erant instructa firmissimis. *Alfridus.*[14] Civitatum nomina hæc erant: Caerlud, id est, Londonia;[15] Caerbranc,[16] id est, Eboracum; Caerkent, id est, Cantuaria; Caergorangon, id est, Wygornia; Caerlirion,[17] id est, Laircestria;[18] Caer-

[1] *Humbria*, B.D.
[2] *eo*, B.
[3] *arcutialiter sortita est nomen*, B.
[4] *Eboracencium*] Eboraci, B.; urbis Eboraci, C.D.
[5] *arcualiter*] om. B.
[6] *decurrit*, C.D.; with other slight alterations.
[7] *ante*, A.D.
[8] *auget*, C.D.; *adauget*, B.
[9] *fluvius*, C.D.
[10] *et Ouse*] om. A.B.C.D.
[11] *viginti octo* before *nobilissimis*, B.
[12] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[13] *innumerata*, B.
[14] *Alfridus*] om. C.D.
[15] *Londonium*, Gale; *Londoun*, D.
[16] *Caerebrac*, D.
[17] *Caerlion*, C.; *Caerleirion*, B.
[18] *Leyrecestria*, B.; *Leircestria*, A.; *Leicestria*, D., Gale.

passeþ þe brynkes.[1] R. Humber haþ þe name of Humber, kyng of Hunes, for he was adreynt [2] þerynne, and renneþ first a crook out of þe south side of York, and þanne departeþ þe prouince of Lyndeseye [3] þat longede somtyme to þe Merces from þe oþer contray Norþumberlond. Trent and Owse [4] renneþ [5] in to Humber, and makeþ the ryuer ful greet. *Treuisa.* Þe Merces were men as hit were of myddel Engelond, as it is i-seide wiþ ynne.[6] TREVISA.

De antiquis vrbibus. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The kyngdom of Bretayne [was] [7] somtyme i-hight [8] wiþ eiȝte and twenty noble citees, wiþ oute welle [9] many castelles þat were wiþ walles, wiþ toures, wiþ ȝates, wiþ barres, stalworþliche i-buld.[10] *Alfr.*[11] Þese were þe names of þe citees :—Caerlud,[12] þat is, Londoun ; Caerbrank, þat is, ȝork ; Caerkent, þat is, Caunterbury ; Caergorangon, þat is, Wircestre ; Caerlirion þat is, Leycestre ;

---

oftetymes goenge ouer the brynkes of hit. Also that water callede Humbre toke the name of Humber kynge of Hunes drownede in hit. Whiche rennethe[13] firste in the maner of a bawe from the sowthe parte of Yorke to the prouince Lindeseience, whiche longede somme tyme to the Marches, dothe diuide Northumbrelonde from that other plage ; whom the floodes of Trente and of Ouse fallenge in to hit [14] cause to be encreasede gretely thro them. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the olde Cites in hit. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The region of Briteyne was made nowble somme tyme with xxiij[ti] nowble cites, excepte castelles innumerable, whiche were made with sure walles, towres, ȝates, and lokkes. *Alfridus.* These were the names of the cites :—Caerlud, London ; Caerbranc, Yorke ; Caerkente, Caunterbery ; Caergorangon, Worcestre ; Caerlirion, Leircestre ;

---

[1] *brymmes*, *a.* ; *ouerfloweth the bankes*, Cx.
[2] *drowned*, Cx., and so often.
[3] *Lyndeceie*, *a.*
[4] *Ouse*, *a*
[5] *and renneþ*, MS. (not Cx.)
[6] *as it shal be sayd here after*, Cx.
[7] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *made fair*, Cx.
[9] *right*, Cx.
[10] *strongly buylded*, Cx.
[11] Reference added from Cx.
[12] *þat is Caerlud*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[13] Probably *rennenge* is the true reading.
[14] *cause hit* MS. (first hand.)

clau, id est, Gloucestria;[1] Caercolden,[2] id est, Colcestria; Caerircei,[3] id est, Chichestria, quæ olim apud Saxones vocabatur Cissancestria;[4] Caerceri,[5] id est, Cirencestria; Caerguent,[6] id est, Wyntonia; Caergrant,[7] id est, Cantebrugge;[8] Caerleil,[9] id est, Lugubalia;[10] Caerperis, id est, Porcestria;[11] Caerdorm,[12] id est, Dorcestria; Caerludcoit,[13] id est, Lincolnia,[14] sive Lindecolinum;[15] Caermerthyn,[16] id est, urbs Merlini; Caersegent, id est, Silcestria,[17] quæ super Thamisim non longe a Radingo[18] ponitur; Caerthleon,[19] sive Caerlegion,[20] id est, Urbs Legionum, quæ post Legecestria dicebatur, sed modo Cestria dicitur;[21] Caerbadun,[22] id est, Bathonia, quæ aliquando urbs Achamanni[23] vocabatur;[24] Caerpaladour,[25] id est, Septonia,[26] quæ hodie vocatur[27] Shaftesbury.[28] *Ranulphus.* Sunt et alia urbium nomina in chronicis reperta ad intelligendum obscuriora, de quibus omnibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt dicenda.[29]

De Londonia.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. Londonia[30] est civitas super Thamisim flumen[31] posita, opima civium divitiis,[32] negotiatorum commerciis; unde fit ut quando ubique[33] in Anglia sit victualium caristia,[34] ibi minus[35]

[1] *Glaucestria,* A.B.
[2] *Caergolden,* Gale.
[3] *Caerircey,* B.; *Caericei,* A.; *Caercri,* Gale.
[4] *Cesarschester,* B.; *Ciscancestria,* Gale.
[5] *Caercri,* Gale; *Caercerii,* D.
[6] *Caerwen,* C.; *Caergwent,* D.
[7] *Caertirant,* C.
[8] *Cantebrigge,* A.; *Cantebrigia,* D.
[9] *Caerleyli,* B.
[10] *Lugubralici,* B.
[11] *Portchestre,* B; *Porcestre,* D.
[12] *Caerdori* (sic), D.
[13] *Caerludcoy,* B.
[14] *Lidcolnum,* B.
[15] *sive L.*] om. B.; *Lindocolinum,* Gale.
[16] *Caermerlyn,* B.
[17] *Selecestria,* Gale; *Silcestre,* A., and so perhaps in the other MSS. (*Silcestr'*). Higden's MSS. more commonly have the Latin form in words of this termination.
[18] *Redyngo,* B.; *Redingo,* A.
[19] *Caerleon,* C.; *Caerleoun* D.; *Caerlyon,* B.
[20] *Caerthlegion,* A.
[21] *quæ . . . dicitur*] om. C.D.
[22] *Caerbadoun,* C.D.
[23] *Achamam,* B.
[24] *quæ . . . vocabatur*] om. C.D.
[25] *Caerpalodour,* Gale.
[26] *Septuna,* B.
[27] *vocatur* after *Shaftesbury,* B.
[28] *Shaftisburia,* Gale; *Schaftisburi,* A.
[29] This passage is as follows in C.D.:—"De istarum urbium majo-"ribus et quibusdam aliis ad cog-"noscendum obscurioribus hic per "ordinem est dicendum."
[30] *London,* Gale.
[31] *fluvium,* C.D.
[32] *divitiarumque,* C.D.
[33] *ubique*] added from A.B.C.D., Gale.
[34] *carestia,* B.
[35] *unus,* B.

TREVISA.

Caerclou,[1] þat is, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, þat is, Colchestre ; Caerrey, þat is, Chichestre (Saxons cleped hit somtyme Cissancestre) ; Caercery, þat is, Circetre ; Caerguent, þat is, Wynchestre ; Caergrant, þat is, Cantebrigge ; Caerlile,[2] þat is, Lugubalia and Carlile ; Caerperis, þat is, Porcetre ; Caerdrom, þat is, Dorchestre ; Caerludcoit, þat is, Lyncolne[3] and Lyncolyn ;[4] Caermerþyn, þat is, Merlyns citee ; Caersegent, þat is, Silecetre,[5] and is vppon Tempse nouȝt fer from Redynge ; Caerthleon, þat hiȝte Caerlegioun also, and hiȝt first Legecetre,[6] and now hatte Chestre ; Caerbadoun,[7] þat is, Baþe, and hiȝt somtyme Achamannus his citee ; Caerpaladour, þat is, Septoun, þat now hatte Schaftisbury.[8] ℞. Oþere citees names beeþ i-founde in cronicles;[9] for vnderstondynge of stories of al now arewe somwhat me schal telle.[10] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* Londoun is a real and a riche citee vppon Temse[11] of burgeys,[12] of richesse,[13] of marchaundis, and of chaffare, and of marchaundise ; þerfore it is þat somtyme whanne derþe of vitailles is in al Enge-

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Caerclaw, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, Colchestre ; Caerrece, Chichestre, whiche was callede somme tyme by the Saxones Cissanchestre ; Caerceri, Cirencestre, called now Ciciter, shortely; Caerwente, Wynchestre ; Caergraunte, Cambrige ; Ligubalia, Caerliel ; Caerperis, Portechestre ; Caerdrom, Dorchestre ; Caerludcoil, Lyncolne ; Caermerthyn, the cite of Merlyne ; Caersegen, Silchestre, whiche [is] on Thamys nye to Radynge ; Caerthleon, other Caerlegion, that is the cite of legiones, whiche was callede Legecestre, now callede Chestre ; Caerbadon, Bathe, whiche was callede somme tyme the city of Achamannus; Caerpaladin, whiche, callede somme tyme Septon, is callede now Shaftesbury. ℞. Also there be other names of cites founde in cronicles obscure to the intellecte, of whom we schalle say somme thynge by ordre. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* London is a nowble cite sette on Thamys, hauenge in it nowble marchauntes, wherefore when derthe off vitayles is in Englonde, there thei be moste dere;

---

[1] *Caerclon*, Cx.
[2] *Caerleyl*, Cx. ; *Carerlile*, MS.
[3] *Lyncolne and Lyncoln*, MS.
[4] *Lyndecolyn*, Cx., which is better.
[5] *Sisecetre*, Cx.
[6] *Ligecetre*, Cx.
[7] *Caerbathon*, Cx.
[8] *Chaftisbury*, α.
[9] *cronykes*, α., Cx.
[10] *of whom it shal folowe*, C.
[11] *Temyse*, α.
[12] *burgeyses*, Cx.
[13] *rychesses*, Cx

vendatur,[1] aut forsan[2] vendentium compendio, aut ementium dispendio. *Gaufridus.*[3] Hanc urbem Brutus primus rex Britonum construxit,[4] primam Britanniæ urbem in memoriam Trojæ amissæ, vocans eam Trinovantum,[5] id est, Trojam Novam.[6] Tandem rex Lud vocavit eam a[7] nomine suo[8] Caerlud. *Ranulphus.*[9] Quam ob causam indignati sunt Britones, sicut refert Gildas. Demum[10] Angli vocaverunt eam Lundene.[11] Postmodum Normanni[12] vocaverunt eam Loundres, quæ Latine dicitur[13] Londonia.[14]

De civitate Cantuariæ.

Cantuariam caput Cantiæ construxit rex Rudhudibras,[15] filius regis Leill,[16] octavus,[17] quam vocavit Caerkent,[18] quæ postmodum ab Anglis dicta est[19] Dorobernia, quæ alia est a Dorovernia sive Dovoria supra litus maris Gallicani situata, et distante ab ista duodecim miliaribus Anglicanis; tandem Dorobernia dicta est Cantuaria.[20]

De Wyntonia.[21]

Wyntoniam urbem[22] constituit[23] rex Rudhudibras[24] prædictus,[25] quam vocavit Caerguent,[26] quæ postmodum ab Anglis[27] dicta est[28] Wenta sive Wynecestria,[29] a

---

1 *venditur*, C.D.
2 *forsitan*, B.
3 *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.
4 *construxit*] added from A.B.C. D., Gale.
5 *Trenonatam*, B.; *Troinovantum*, Gale.
6 Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
7 *a*] om. A.C.D.
8 *Lud*, ins. C.D.
9 *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
10 *Tandem*, C.D.
11 *Londonie*, C.D.; *Lundine*, A.
12 *et Francigenæ*, ins. C.D.
13 *sonat*, B.
14 *quæ . . . Londonia*] om. C.D.
15 *Rudhudibrak*, B.; *Ruthudibras*, D., Gale.
16 *Lull*, B.
17 *regis Leill octavi*] Leil, Britonum rex octavus, C.D., which is better.
18 *Kaerkent*, A.
19 *est*] om. B.
20 *quæ alia—Cantuaria*]. Thus in C.D.: — "Quidam tamen adhuc "contendunt Doroberniam esse "proprium nomen urbis Dorover- "niæ seu Dovoriæ quæ super Gal- "licanum fretum situata est; ac- "commodum transfretandi portum "præbet, et distat a Cantuaria "duodecim miliaribus."—C.D.
21 In C.D. the order of the sections is changed.
22 *civitatem*, B.
23 *construxit*, A.B.C.D., Gale.
24 *Rudhudibrac*, B.
25 *prædictus*] om. B..
26 *Caerkent*, Gale; *Caeruent*, D.
27 *ab Anglis*] om. B.: Anglicis, A.
28 *est*] om. B.
29 *Wincestria*, B.

TREVISA.

lond [1] aboute, þere is þe lasse i-solde; vppon caas for avauntage of silleres, oþer for disauauntage of beggers. *Gaufridus.* Bruyt,[2] þe firste kyng of Bretouns, bulde and arerede [3] þis citee Londoun, þe firste citee of Bretayne, in mynde of þe citee of Troye, þat was lost; [4] and cleped hit Troynewiþ [5] and Trinouantum, þat is, Newe Troye. Afterward kyng Lud cleped hit Caerlud after his owne name; þerfore Bretouns hadde greet indignacioun, as Gildas telleþ. Afterward Englische men cleped þe citee Londoun, and ȝit after þat Normans cleped hit Loundres, and hatte in Latyn Londonia. Rudhudibras, kyng Leyl his sone, was þe eiȝtþe [kyng] [6] of Bretouns; he bulde Caunterbury þe chief citee of Kent, and cleped hit Caerkent. Afterward Englische men cleped hit Dorobernia, þat is oþer [7] þan þilke Douer þat is vppon þe clif of þe Frensche see, þat [8] is fro þis Douer xij.[9] Englische myle.[10] Afterward þis Dorobernia was and is i-cleped Cauntirbury. Þe same kyng Rudhudibras bulde Wynchestre and cleped hit [Caerguet, and afterward Englisch men cleped hit] [11] Went and Wynchestre after þe name of

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

and the cause is perauenture other thro the compendiousenes of sellers, other elles thro the dispendy of byers. *Gaufridus.* Brute, the firste kynge of Briteyne, made that cite of London as the firste and principalle cite of Briteyne in to the memorye of Troye y-loste, callenge hit Trinouantum, that is to saye Newe Troye. After that kynge Lud callede hit after his name, Kaerlud, wherefore the Britones hade indignacion, as Gildas rehersethe, and at the laste Englische men callede hit London. Kynge Ruthudibras, the son of kynge Leille, edifiede Cawnterbury, the principalle cite in Kente, whom he callede Caerkente, whiche was callede afterwarde of Englische men Dorobernia; for there is an other towne in that cuntre that is callede Dovernia, f. 65. a. other elles Douoria, whiche is Dover, sette on the brynke of the see of Fraunce; whiche be a sundre by xij. myles of Englische accomptenge, and Dorobernia was callede at the laste Cawnterbury. Kynge Ruthudibras aforeseide made the cite of Wynchestre, whom he callede Caerwente, whiche was callede afterwarde Wenta by Englische men,

---

[1] After *Englond* in Cx. thus:— *comynly at London it is best cheep by cause of the byars and sellars that ben at London.*

[2] *Bruyt is,* MS. (not *α.* or Cx.)

[3] *edefyed,* Cx.

[4] *destroyed,* Cx.

[5] *Troyeneweth,* Cx.

[6] Added from Cx.

[7] *ooþer, α.*

[8] *and, α.*

[9] *twelue, α.* (in letters).

[10] Sentence varied in Cx.

[11] Added from *α* and Cx., who has *Caerguent.*

quodam Wyne Anglo ibidem pontificante,[1] cui tota Westsaxonica plaga subjecta fuerat.[2] Idem quoque[3] rex fecit urbem Paladour, id est, Septoniam, ubi dicunt Britones aquilam quondam prophetasse.[4]

De Bathonia.

Bathoniam urbem sive Badonem construxit rex Britonum nonus, Bladud, nigromanticus, filius Leill;[5] quam ex nomine suo vocavit[6] Caerbadun,[7] quæ[8] post[9] ab Anglis vocata est Achamannia, id est, urbs Achamanni, et tandem dicta[10] Bathonia. *Willelmus de Pontificibus,[11] libro secundo.* In hac urbe calidarum balnearum[12] latex[13] emergens auctorem Julium Cæsarem habere[14] creditur. *Ranulphus.*[15] Sed Gaufridus[16] Monemutensis in suo Britannico libro asserit regem Bladud[17] hujus rei fuisse auctorem.[18] Forsan Willelmus,[19] qui Britannicum librum[20] non viderat, ista ex aliorum relatu aut ex propria[21] conjectura, sicut et quædam alia, minus scripsit exquisite. Proinde videtur magis verisimile quod licet rex Bladud hanc urbem construxerit,[22] non propter hoc[23] ipse aut Julius[24] hæc calida balnea construxerit; immo quod aqua originalis transiens per venas sulphureas, quibus natu-

---

[1] *pontifice*, B.
[2] Abbreviated in C.D.
[3] *quoque*] om. B.
[4] The paragraph ends thus in C.D.:—"quæ nunc Septonia sive "Schaftesbury nuncupatur, in pro- "vincia Dorsetensi in collis vertice "situata, ubi tradunt Britones aqui- "lam quondam vaticinia edidisse."
[5] *Beil*, B.
[6] *vocavit*] om. B.
[7] *Caerbadoun*, B.C.
[8] *hæc*, C.D.
[9] *postmodum*, A.D.
[10] *est*, added in A.B.D., Gale.
[11] *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.
[12] *calidorum balneorum*, Gale.
[13] *lacus*, C.
[14] *habuisse*, C.D.
[15] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[16] *Galfridus*, B.
[17] *nigromanticum*, ins. C.D.
[18] *artificem*, C.
[19] *Malmesburiensis*, ins. C.D.
[20] The remainder of this section is abbreviated in C.D., thus: "nusquam inspexerat, sed ex aliorum "relatu seu ex propria conjectura "nonnulla crediderat; in hac re, "sicut plerisque aliis, deceptus "fuerat." (D. omits *crediderat.*)
[21] *propria*] So A.B., Gale; *prima*, E.
[22] *construxit*, B.
[23] *hoc*] om. A.
[24] *Cæsar*, ins. B.

TREVISA.

oo Wyne[1] an Englische man,[2] þat was bisshop þere. Al West Saxon was soget to hym: þe same kyng bulde Paladour, þat is, Septoun, þat now hatte Chestesbury.[3] Britouns telleþ þat an egle[4] prophecied þere somtyme. Bladud, Leil his sone, a nygromanser, was þe nynþe kyng of Bretouns; he bulde Baþe, and cleped hit Caerbadoun. Englische men cleped hit afterward Achamannys[5] citee, but at þe laste he is i-cleped Bathonia, þat is, Baþe. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* In þis citee welleþ vp and springeþ hote baþes, and me weneþ þat Iulius Cesar made þere suche bathes. ℞. But Gaufre Monemutensis, in his Brittische[6] book, seiþ þat Bladud made þilke bathes. Vppon caas[7] William, þat[8] hadde nouȝt i-seie þat Brittisshe book, wroot so by tellynge of oþere men, oþer[9] by his owne gessynge, as he wroot oþer þinges somdel vnwiseliche.[10] Þerfore hit semeþ more soþeliche þat Bladud made[11] nouȝt þe hote bathes, noþer Iulius Cesar dede suche a dede, þey Bladud bulde and made þe citee; but hit accordeþ better to kyndeliche resoun, þat þe water renneþ vnder[12] erþe by

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

or Wynchestre, after an Englische man callede Wyne beenge bischoppe there, to whom alle the weste plage of Saxones was subiecte. Also the same kynge made that cite callede Paladur, and nowe Shaftesbury, where men of Briteyne say an egle to have propheciede somme tyme. Bladud, a nigromancier, and the ix[the] kynge of Briteyne, son of kynge Leille, made the cite of Bathe, whom he callede after his propre name Caerbadun, and afterwarde of Englische men Achamannia, and at laste Bathonia, other elles in Englische Bathe. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* In that cite be bathes, of whom Iulius Cesar was seide to be auctor. ℞. But Gaufridus Monemetensis seithe in his boke of Briteyne that kynge Bladud was the firste auctor of theyme; and perauenture William, that see not the boke of Briteyne, seide so by the rehersenge of other men, other elles of his propre coniecture, lyke as he did wryte mony other thinges. Neverthelesse, thauȝhe kynge Bladud made that cite of Bathe, the bathes scholde seme to be cause[13] that the water ren-

---

[1] *one Wyne*, Cx.
[2] MS. adds: *propheciede þere somtyme.* See below.
[3] *Shaftesbury*, Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *Englische man*, MS.
[5] *Athamannes*, Cx. (wrongly, but misled by the identity of *c* and *t* in MSS.)
[6] *Britons*, Cx.; and so below.
[7] *by cause that*, Cx.
[8] *þat*] om. Cx., who does not understand the sense of the sentence.
[9] *or*, *a.*
[10] *not best aduysedly*, Cx.
[11] *made hit*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[12] *in the*, Cx.
[13] *causede*, Harl. MS.

raliter calefacta[1] ebulliat, in urbe illa fervidas scaturigines per loca varia,[2] ubi scabredines[3] et putredines sæpe purgantur.

De Gloucestria. Gloucestriam, sive Gloverniam, seu Claudiocestriam[4] construxit Claudius Cæsar in nuptiis filiæ suæ, quam copulavit regi Britonum Arvirago. Hæc urbs dicta[5] est primo a Britonibus Caerclau a Claudio, sed[6] post[7] dicta est Gloucestria,[8] a Glora, duce regionis illius, et ponitur[9] supra Sabrinum mare[10] in confinio Loegriæ et Cambriæ.[11]

De Salopia. Salopia urbs est in confinio[12] Cambriæ et Angliæ, super Sabrinam in vertice collis posita, quæ Anglice vocatur Shrobbesbury[13] a dumis et fruticibus in illo colle aliquando[14] crescentibus sic dicta, Britannice vero vocabatur Penguern, quod sonat caput abietis; et fuit aliquando caput Powisiæ[15] terræ, quæ se extendit per transversum mediæ Walliæ usque ad mare Hibernicum.[16]

De Nothyngham. Nothyngham[17] ponitur super flumen Trent,[18] olim[19]

---

[1] So A.B.; *calescam* (for *calescens* ?), E.

[2] *effundat*, or some such word, is required to complete the sense.

[3] *scabedines*, B.

[4] *seu Claudiocestriam*] om. C.D.

[5] *vocata*, C.D.

[6] *scilicet*, C.

[7] *postea*, A.; *postmodum*, D.

[8] *Glaucestr̄*, A.; *Gloucestre*, D.

[9] *poniturque*, C.D.

[10] *mare*] om. B.

[11] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[12] *inter confinia*, C.D.

[13] *Schrobbisburi*, A.; *Schrovesbury*, C.; *Shrevesbury*, B.; *Schrobbesburia*, Gale; *Schrobbusbury*, D.

[14] *aliquando* before *in*, B.

[15] *Powise*, A.

[16] Abbreviated in C.D.

[17] *Notingham*, A., Gale.

[18] *Trente*, B.

[19] *olim*] om. B.; *sed olim*, C.D.

veynes of brymstone,[1] and so is i-hatte [2] kyndeliche in þat cours, and springeþ vp in dyuers places of þe citee. And so þere beeþ hoote bathes, þat wascheþ of teteres,[3] oþer sores and scabbes. *Treuisa.* Þey me myȝt by craft make hote bathes for to dure long i-now, þis accordeþ wel to resoun and to philosofie þat treteþ of hote welles and baþes, þat beeþ in dyuerse londes, þeiȝ þe water of þis bathe be more troubly and heuyere of smelle and of sauour þan oþere hote bathes þat I haue i-seie at Akene [4] in Almayne, and at Egges in Sauoy. [Þe baþes in Egges] [5] beeþ as feire and as clere as eny cold welle streem. I haue assaied, and i-bathed þerynne.[6] R. Claudius Cesar maried his douȝter to Aruiragus, kyng of Britouns. Þis Claudius Cesar bulde Gloucetre in þe weddynge of his douȝter; Britouns cleped þis citee first after Claudius his name, but afterward it was i-cleped Glowcetre, after oon Glora, þat was duke of þat contray, and stondeþ vppon Seuarn in þe marche of Engelond and of Wales. Schroysbury is a citee vppon Seuarn in þe marche of Engelond and of Wales, i-sette vppon þe coppe [7] of an hille, and hatte Schroisbury of schrobbes and fruyt þat grewe somtyme on þat hille. Britouns cleped hit somtyme Pengwern, þat is, þe heed of a faire tree. Schroysbury was somtyme þe hede of Powyse,[8] þat strecccheþ forþ thwart ouer þe myddel of Wales anon to þe [9] Irische see. Notyngham stondeþ vppon Trent, TREVISA.

---

nenge there thro the veynes of sulphur is made hoote naturally by that whiche causethe those bathes to be hoote, where scabbes and corrupcion be healede oftetymes. Claudius Cesar made that cite callede Gloucestre, other Claudiocestre, in the tyme of weddenge of his doȝhter, whom he mariede to Aruiragus kynge of Britones. That cite was callede firste of Britones Caerclau, by Claudius afterwarde callede Gloucestre, of Glora duke of that region, whiche is sette ouer the water of Seuerne in costes of Engelonde and of Wales. Shrewsbury is a cite sette in the toppe of an hille on Seuerne, in the costes of Englonde and of Wales, callede somme tyme Schrobbesbury, of busches and trees with frute groenge in that hille somme tyme, whiche is callede also Pengwern, whiche sowndethe as the hedde of a firre tre, whiche was also somme tyme the principalle place of Powiselonde, extendenge hit ouerthwarde the myddes of Wales vn to the see of Yrlonde. Notyngham MS. HARL. 2261. f. 65. b.

---

[1] Cx. adds, *and sulphure.*
[2] *made hoote*, Cx.
[3] *tetres*, α., Cx.
[4] *Okene*, α.; *Akon*, Cx.
[5] Added from α.; *whiche been*, Cx.
[6] Sentence varied in Cx.
[7] *toppe*, Cx.
[8] *Powisy*, α.
[9] þe] om. α.

vocabatur Snotingham, quod sonat mansio speluncarum; quas Dani, ut ferunt, ibidem perendinantes excavarunt desub saxo.[1]

De Lincolnia.

Lincolnia caput est provinciæ Lyndisiæ;[2] primo vocabatur Caerludcoit, deinde Lindecolinum.[3] A quo primo constructa fuerit incertum habetur, nisi forsan[4] rex Lud eam fundaverit; quod etiam nominis interpretatio videtur sonare, nam Britannice Caer sonat *civitatem*, Coit[5] *silvam;* inde[6] videtur dici Caerludcoit quasi urbs nemorosa[7] Lud.[8]

De Leyrcestria.

Leicestriam construxit rex Britonum decimus, Leir, filius Bladud, quasi in meditullio Loegriæ, super amnem Soram et super Fossam viam regalem.[9]

Cap. XLVIII.

De Eboraco.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Eboracum[10] urbs est ampla ex utraque parte amnis Ouse constructa, Romanæ elegantiæ præferens indicium,[11] quousque rex Angliæ Conquæstor Willelmus illam cum adjacente

---

[1] *quas . . . saxo*] om. C.D.

[2] *Lindisey*, A.; *Lindeseye*, B.; *Lindeseie*, D.

[3] *Lindcolun*, B.; *Lindecolnium*, Gale.

[4] *forsan*] forte, B.

[5] *Coith*, B.

[6] *inde*] om. A.

[7] *Lud*] om. A.

[8] *vel urbs nemoris Lud*, ins. C. Sentence otherwise slightly abbreviated in C.D.

[9] Slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

[10] *Eboracus*, B.D., Gale.

[11] *judicium*, Gale.

and somtyme heet Snotyngham, þat is, þe woning of dennes, for þe Danes dwelled þere somtyme, and were i-logged,[1] as me telleþ, and i-digged[2] dennes and caues vnder hard rokkes and stones.[3] ℞. Lyncolne is chief of þe prouince[4] of Lyndeseie, and heet somtyme Caerludcoit, and afterward Lyndecolyn. Hit is vncerteyn who bulde first þis citee, but ȝif it were kyng Lud. And so hit semeþ by menynge of þe name; for caer is Brittisshe, and is to menynge *a citee;* coit is *a wode.* And so hit semeþ þat Caerludcoit is to menynge Lud his wode toun.[5] Kyng Leyre was Bladud his sone, and bulde Leycestre, as it were in myddel Engelond, vppon þe ryuer [Sor][6] and vppon Fos þe kynges hiȝe weie.[7] TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. York is a grete citee in eiþer side of þe water of Ouse, þat semed as faire as Rome, forto þat[8] the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wiþ brennynge of[9] fuyre defouled it and þe contrey

---

is sette on the water of Trente, callede somme tyme Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes, whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is seide. Lincolne is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey, callede firste Caerludcoite, after that Lincolne; the edificacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude withowte that kynge Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage of Britones, sowndethe *a cite*, and coyte, *a woode*, wherefore Caerludcoit is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd. Leir, the x[the] kynge of Britones, son to kynge Bladud, made the cite of Leircestre as in the mydelle place of Englonde on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and diche of the kynge. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. The cite of Yorke is large, and edifiede on either side of Owse, as after the cite of Rome, vn tylle that William Conquerour deformede hit thro

---

[1] *i-longed, a.*; clause omitted in Cx.

[2] *i-digged*] digged, *a.*

[3] Cx. adds, *and dwellyd there.*

[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *prophecie*, MS.

[5] So *a.* and Cx.; *Lud is wolde his toun*, MS.

[6] Added from Cx., who however has *Sos* (typ. error ?).

[7] *hiȝ way, a.*

[8] *vnto the tyme that*, Cx.

[9] *and, a.*, Cx.

regione incendio deformaret; ita ut, si modo[1] eam viderit peregrinus, ingemiscat; si vetus incola, non agnoscat. *Gaufridus.* Hanc urbem construxit Ebrancus rex Britonum quintus, vocans eam ex[2] nomine suo Caerbrank.[3] Fecit quoque idem rex alias duas urbes insignes,[4] unam in Albania, quæ dicitur Edenburgh;[5] aliam versus Albaniam[6] in finibus Loegriæ, quæ dicitur Alcluid.[7] *Ranulphus.* Est autem Edenburghum,[8] urbs[9] in Pictorum terra inter flumen Twydi[10] et mare Scoticum posita,[11] quæ quondam vocabatur[12] castrum puellarum. Postea[13] tamen dicta est Edenburgh[14] ab Edan, rege Pictorum, qui ibidem[15] regnavit tempore Egfridi regis Northimbrorum.[16] [17]

Alcuit,[18] urbs quondam insignis, nunc cunctis Angligenis[19] pene est incognita;[20] nam[21] sub tempore Britonum, Pictorum, et Anglorum usque adventum Dacorum urbs erat celebris.[22] Tandem circa annum gratiæ DCCCLXX. vastantibus Danis[23] partes North-

---

[1] *nunc*, C. (not D.)

[2] *ex*] om. C.

[3] *Caerbranc*, A.B.; *Caerbrac*, D.

[4] *urbes insignes*] civitates, C.D.

[5] So E. apparently, which has *Edenburgh̃*; *Edenbrugh*, B.; *Endenburgh*, A.; *Endenburght*, D.

[6] *versus Albaniam*] in borealibus, C.D.

[7] *Alcluyt*, B.; *Alcluit*, A.

[8] *Ranulphus . . . Edenburghum*] om. B.

[9] *in Albania ad orientalem plagam*, C.D.

[10] *Twede*, C.D.; *Twidi*, A.

[11] *situata*, C.D.

[12] *dicebatur*, B.

[13] *Postmodum*, C.

[14] *Edenborwh*, A.

[15] *ibi*. B.

[16] *Northanhimbrorum*, B.

[17] C.D., which otherwise slightly vary the section, add: *sicut patet in Historia Bedæ.*

[18] *Alcluit*, B.; *Alcluid*, D, Gale.

[19] *exceptis paucis historicis*, ins. C.D.

[20] *ignota*, A.B., Gale.

[21] *erat enim*, C.D.

[22] *celebris et famosa*, C.D.

[23] So MSS. and Gale; though *Dacorum* precedes.

aboute ; so þat a pilgrym wolde now wepe, and he seigh [1] it, ȝif he knewe hit ar he wente out.[2] *Gaufridus.* Ebrankus, þe fifte kyng of Britouns, bulde York,[3] and cleped hit after his owne name Caerbrank.[4] He bulde also tweie oþere noble citees, [one][5] in Scotlond þat hatte Edynborgh ;[6] and anoþer toward Scotlond, in þe endes of Engelond, þat hatte Alclud.[7] R. Edyngboruȝ is a citee in þe lond of Pictes by-twene þe ryuere of Twyde and þe Scottische see, and heet somtyme þe Castelle of Maydens, and was i-cleped aftirward Edyngborgh,[8] of Edan, kyng of Pictes, þat regned þere ynne Egfrides tyme, kyng of Norþhumberlond. Alcluid was somtyme a noble citee, and is now wel nyh vnknowe to alle Englische men. [For under þe Britouns and Pictes and Englisshe men][9] it was a noble citee anon to þe comynge of þe Danes ; but afterward aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord eiȝte hondred þre score and ten it was destroyed, whan þe Danes destroyed þe cuntrees [10] of Norþhumberlond. But in what TREVISA.

---

brennenge ; and if a man scholde see hit now, considrenge what that cite was a fore tyme, hit scholde move hym to be soory. *Gaufridus.* Ebrancus, the v^{the} kynge of Briteyne, made that cite of Yorke, whom he namede Caerbranc. Also that same kynge made ij. other nowble cites ; oone was in Scottelande, whiche is callede Edengborouȝh, that other cite was in the costes of Englonde, towarde Scottelonde, whiche was callede Alcluid. R. Edengborouȝh is a cite in the londe of Pictes, betweene the water of Twide and the Scottes see, whiche was callede somme tyme the Castelle of Maidenes, after that it was callede Edyngborough, of Edan kynge of Pictes, whiche reignede there in the tyme of Egfride kynge of Northumbrelonde. Alcluid was somme tyme a nowble cite, now beenge vnknowen allemoste of alle Englische men, whiche was a nowble cite in the tyme of Britones, of Pictes, vn to the commenge of Danes in to this londe of Englonde ; and at the laste, abowte the yere of f. 66. a. grace ix^{c}. lxx^{ti} yere, the Danes, destroyenge the costes of Northumbrelonde, destroyed that cite of Alcluid. Of MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *sawe*, Cx., and so usually.
[2] *ar he wente out*] to fore, Cx.
[3] *ȝork*, *a.*
[4] *Caerebrank*, *a.*
[5] Added from Cx.
[6] *Edenburgh*, *a.* ; and so below.
[7] *Alcluid*, *a.* ; *Alcliud*, Cx.
[8] *Edynborugh*, *a.*
[9] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[10] *contrayes*, *a.*

imbranas destructa est et[1] illa.[2] Quo autem in loco Britanniæ illa fuerat constructa,[3] varii sunt auctores. Nam Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, dicit illam fuisse constructam ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii, quod olim separabat Pictos a Britannis; ubi vallum Severi, sive murus ille famosus, ad occidentem terminatur. Et sic videtur, secundum ipsum,[4] quod non multum distet[5] a Lugubalia,[6] id est, Caerliel;[7] quia et ipsa ad finem illius muri ponitur. Volunt alii historici quod urbs Alcluit[8] sit illa, quæ modo vocatur Aldeburgh,[9] quod sonat villam veterem, quæ ponitur juxta flumen Ouse, non longe a Burgebrigge,[10] quæ distat ab Eboraco xv. miliaribus ad occidentem; et hoc videtur probari[11] ex dictis Gaufridi de gestis Britonum, qui scribit[12] Elidurum regem Britonum, dum apud Alcluit[13] causa venatici solatii perendinaret, reperisse fratrem suum Archgallonem in vicino nemore Calaterio[14] aberrantem. Constat autem quod nemus Calaterium,[15] quod Anglice Caltrees[16] dicitur, attingit

---

[1] *urbs*, ins. C.

[2] C.D. add: *ut murorum reliquiæ vix patescant.* After this C.D. read as follows:—"*Beda, libro* "*primo, capitulo quadragesimo pri-* "*mo.* Sonat autem Alcluid Bri- "tannice idem quam *petra cluid;* "poniturque urbs illa juxta flumen "nominis illius quod dicitur Clud "ad occidentalem sinum illius ma- "rini brachii quod olim separa "bat Pictos a Britannis. Videtur "hodie quod fluvius ille dictus "olim Cluid modo vocetur Sul- "wach, qui fluit in illud marinum "brachium prædictum, quod ab "occidente distinguit hodie Scotos "ab Anglis. Habuitque urbs "Alcluid non longe a se nemus "Calatherium [Caletherum, D.], "sicut patet in vita Britannici "regis Eliduri. Quod quidem "nemus vocatur hodie Ingelwode, "quod sonant *silva Anglorum*; ne- "mus quidem prolixum incipiens "ad occidentem ab urbe Lugubaliæ, "quæ [quod, D.] est Caerleill, se "extendit in immensum versus "orientem, habens ab austro mu- "rum illum famosum Romani "operis quod Thurlewall dicitur, "ab aquilone vero marinum bra- "chium prædictum; et sic videtur "quod urbs illa Alclud posita "fuerat in borealibus finibus An- "glorum non longe ab urbe Lu- "gubaliæ. Inde decepti sunt multi; "putantes Alcluid, cum non appa- "ret, esse hodie urbem Lugubaliæ."

[3] *loco in Britannia sita fuerit*, B.

[4] *secundum ipse* (sic) *videtur*, B.

[5] *distat*, A.

[6] *Lugubralia*, B.

[7] *Carliel*, A.; *Kaerleil*, B.

[8] *Acluit*, B.

[9] *Aldburgh*, B.

[10] *Burghbrig*, B.; *Burghbrigge*, A., Gale.

[11] *pᵃre*, A.

[12] *scripsit*, A.

[13] *urbem Alcluid*, Gale.

[14] *Collaterio*, A. (which has *oberrantem*), B.

[15] *quod . . . Calaterium*] Collaterium nemus, B.

[16] So A.B., Gale; *Saltrees*, E.

TREVISA.

place of Britayne þat citee Alcluid was i-bulde, auctors telleþ dyuersliche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, seiþ þat it was i-buld by west þat arme of þe see þat departed[1] bytwene Pictes and Britouns somtyme. Þere Seuerus his famous [walle][2] endeþ westward: and so it semeþ by hym, þat [hit][3] is nouȝt fer from Caerlel, for þat cite is i-sette at þe ende of þe[4] wal. Oþere writers of stories writeþ þat þe citee Alcluid is þat citee þat now hatte A[l]deburghe,[5] þat is to menynge, an olde toun, and stondeþ vppon þe ryuer Ouse, nouȝt fer from Borgh-brigge, þat is fiftene myle westwarde out of York. And hit semeþ þat he preueþ þat by Gaufridus, in[6] his book of dedes of Britouns. He writeþ þat Elidurus, kyng of Britouns, was i-logged at þe citee Alcluid, bycause of solas of[7] huntynge, and fonde his broþer Archgalon[8] maskynge in a wode nyh þere beside, þat hatte Calatery, but þat wode Calaterye, þat hatte Caltres an[9] Englische,[10] recheþ almest to York, and streccheþ toward

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche cite be diuerse opiniones, after diuerse auctores, in what parte of Briteyne that cite was edifiede. For Bede seithe, libro primo, capitulo xij°, that cite to be edifiede at the weste parte of an arme of the see, whiche departede somme tyme the Pictes from Britones, where the famose walle was terminate at the weste; and so hit semethe after Bede that hit was not ferre from Caerliel, for hit is putte also at the ende of that walle. Also other writers of stories reherse and wille that the cite of Alcluid be that towne whiche is callede now Aldelburghe, whiche sownedethe an olde towne, whiche is sette nye to the floode of Ouse, not ferre from Burbrugge, whiche is from Yorke by xv. myles at the weste of hit. And this position semethe to be probable of the dictes of Gaufride in his boke of the gestes of Britones, whiche affermethe þat[11] Elidurus, kynge of Britones, taryenge at Alcluid for solace to hunte, founde his broder Archgallo errante in a woode callede Calaterium, whiche woode is callede in Englische Caltrees,

---

[1] *departeth*, Cx.
[2] Added from Cx., who has *walle*.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *that*, Cx.
[5] *Aldburgh*, Cx.
[6] So α. and Cx.; *and*, MS.
[7] *solace and*, Cx.
[8] *Agalon*, Cx.
[9] *in*, Cx.
[10] *Engelshe*, α.
[11] This word is interlineated in red.

pene Eboracum, et inde versus zephyrum extenditur juxta Aldeburgh[1] in longum spatio viginti miliarium. Cujus nemoris plurima pars hodie succisis arbusculis ad culturam redigitur.[2] Hic dijudicet prudens lector quid de Alcluit[3] sit tenendum.

De urbe Caerliel.

Caerliell[4] urbs est in finibus Anglorum borealium versus zephyrum septentrionalem, quæ alio nomine Lugubalia[5] dicitur, quam[6] condidit septimus rex Britonum Leill. *Ranulphus.*[7] Habetque hæc urbs[8] in se aliquam partem illius muri famosi, qui trans-

---

[1] So A., Gale; and probably also B.E., which may however intend a Latin form, using contractions.

[2] After *redigitur*, Gale adds: ' Volunt alii ut Alcluid sit urbs " illa, quæ modo vocatur Burgan, " in borealibus finibus Westmer- ' lond juxta Comberlond, super " flumen Edene sita, cujus adhuc " miranda apparent vestigia." See he versions.

[3] *Acluid*, B.

[4] So E. apparently (*Caerliell*) or perhaps *Caerliellia*; *Caerliel*, A; *Caerleil*, D.

[5] *Luguba*, A.; *Lugubralia*, B.

[6] *hanc*, C.D.

[7] *Ranulphus*] Added from A.B.C.D., Gale.

[8] *urbs hæc*, A.B., Gale.

þe north by Aldeburgh,[1] in lengþe þe space of twenty myle. Þe moste dele of þat wode is nowe i-þrowe adoun, and þe lond i-teled.[2] Oþere wol mene þat Alcluid was þat citee þat now hatte Burgham,[3] in þe norþ contray of Westmerland, faste by Comberlond, and stondeþ vppon þe ryuer Edene. Þe citee is þere ȝitt wonderliche i-sene. Here a wys redere demeþ, as hym semeþ, where Alcluid was i-buld.[4] *Treuisa.*[5] Þis semeþ nouȝt wel hard to assoille, ȝif me takeþ hede þat many townes bereþ oon name, as Carthago[6] in Affrica and Carthago[6] in Spayne; Newport in Wales and Newport in þe parsche[7] of Berkeley; Wottoun vndir Hegge[8] and Wottoun-basset; Wilke-warre and Wilke-spayne and Wilke[9] in þe parische of Berkeley. And tweie schire townes eiþer hatte Hamptoun; Souþhamptoun and Norþhamptoun. So it semeþ by þe stories, þat oon Alcluid was in Yorkschire, anoþer in Westmerlond, and oon faste by in þe riȝt side of þe west arme of þe see, þat departeþ Engelond and Scotlond; but þat Alcluid was a wel[10] stronge citee, as Beda seiþ; and þat citee stondeþ faste by a ryuer þat hatte Cluid;[11] and þere is non suche ryuer in Ȝorkschire, noþer in Westmorelond, as men of þe contray telleþ me. Som men telleþ þat þe ryuere Cluid hatte now Sulwache; [Sulwach][12] is but fyue myle fro Caerlile. R. Caerleel is a citee in þe contre of Norþ Engelond toward þe norþ west, and haþ anoþer name and hatte Lugubal. Leyle, þe seuenþe kyng of Britouns, bulde Caerleel. [In þis citee is somwhat of þat famous wal þat passeþ TREVISA.

---

nye to Yorke, and is extendede also nye to Aldelburgh, in longitude by the space of xx^ti myles, of whiche woode a grete parte is kytte downe to brenne, and for other thynges necessary. Other men wille that Alcluid be that cite whiche is callede now Burgham, in the northe partes of Westemerlonde, nye to Cumbirlonde, sette on the floode of Eden, of whom mervellous stappes appere ȝitte. Wherefore y cownselle that a prudente lector iuge what weye is to be holden of that cite off Alcluid. Caerliel is a cite in the northe partes of Englonde, towarde the northeweste, whiche was callede otherwise Ligubalia, whom Leil the vij^the kynge of Britones did make. R. That cite hathe parte of that famose walle MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] After *Aldeburgh*, MS. and α. (not Cx.) add, by a clerical error of repetition, *þat is to menynge.*

[2] *y-tylled*, Cx.

[3] *Burcham*, Cx.

[4] Cx. thus re-writes the sentence: *Dame ye now where it is bylded.*

[5] Reference added from Cx.

[6] *Cartago*, MSS. and Cx.; and so below.

[7] *parisshe*, Cx.

[8] *Egge*, Cx.

[9] *Wikwarre, Wykpayn, and Wik*, α. and Cx.

[10] *right*, Cx.; and so often.

[11] *Cliud*, Cx.

[12] Added from α. and Cx.

cindit Northimbriam.[1] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In qua[2] urbe manet adhuc ex lapideis fornicibus triclinium concameratum, quod nulla unquam tempestatum contumelia aut ignium flamma valuit labefactare. In vicina quoque plaga[3] apud Cumberlond[4] legitur adhuc in fronte triclinii sic inscriptum,[5] *Marii victoriæ.* Quod quid sit hæsito, nisi forsan pars Cumbrorum olim his locis insederit,[6] cum fuissent a Mario consule Italia pulsi.[7] *Ranulphus.*[8] Sed probabilius videtur, quod ibi fiatmentio de Mario rege Britonum filio Arviragi, qui illis in locis Rodricum[9] regem Pictorum devicerat, sicut testatur Gaufridus in suo Britannico libro, quem Willelmus Malmesburiensis nusquam viderat.[10]

De Hagustaldensi ecclesia.

Hagustaldensis[11] ecclesia est locus[12] lxxx. miliaribus[13] ab Eboraco ad zephyrum borealem[14] disparatus, ut vult Willelmus[15] libro tertio de Pontificibus. Locus ille ab olim ad episcopum Eboracensem pertinuit, ubi quondam fuerunt[16] artificiosa ædificia, Romano more cocleata,[17] qualia citra Alpes vix uspiam visebantur.[18] Et vocatur hodie locus ille Hestoldesham.[19] *Beda,*

1 *Northumbriam*, A.; *Angliam*, C.D.

2 *hac*, C.D.

3 *labefactare . . . plaga*, om. B.

4 *Cumbirlond*, A.

5 *sic inscriptum*] om. C.D.

6 *insederit*, A.C.; *insedisset*, B.

7 *expulsi*, B.

8 *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

9 *Rodericum*, B.; *Vodricum*, Gale.

10 *sicut . . . viderat*] om. C.

11 *Willielmus, libro tertio Pontificum*, prefixed in C.D., which omit *ut . . . Pontificibus.*

12 *Hagultaldensis* (*Hagrotaldensis*, B.) *etiam locus est*, A.B.

13 *miliariorum*, C.

14 *borealem*] om. D.

15 *Malmesburiensis*, ins. A.

16 *fuerant*, B.

17 *occeolata*, C. (not D.)

18 Slightly contracted in C.D.

19 *sive Hexilsham*, ins. B.; *sive Heghlisham*, D., Gale; *Estoldesham* (only), A.

Northumberlond. *Willelmus de Pontificibus.*][1] In þis citee is a þre chambred hous i-made of font[2] stoones, þat myȝt neuere[3] be destroyed wiþ tempest of wedir noþer wiþ brennynge of fuyre. Also in þe contray faste by in Westmerlond, in þe frount of a þre chambred place, is i-write in þis manere, *Marii victoriæ.* What þis writinge is to mene, som dele I doute; but it[4] were so þat som of þe Combres leie[5] þere somtyme, whan þe consul Marius hadde i-putte hem out of Itali. ℞.[6] But it semeþ more probable,[7] þat þat is i-write in mynde of Marius, kyng of Britouns, þat was Aruiragus his sone. Þis Marius ouercome in þat place Rodryk, kyng of Pictes,[8] so seiþ Gaufridus in his Brittische booke. William Malmesbury seih neuere þat book. At Hagustaldes chirche is a place foure score myle out of York norþwestward; þe place is, as it were, destroyed; so seiþ Willelmus, libro tertio de Pontificibus; þat place longede somtyme to þe bisshopriche of York. Þere were somtyme buldes[9] wiþ vice[10] arches and fontes[11] in þe manere of Rome. Suche buldynge was nowhere [i-seie][12] on þis half Alpes, but þere vnneþe. Now þat place hatte Hestoldesham and Heglisham

TREVISA.

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche diuidethe Northumbrelonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In whiche cite a threfolde chambre remaynethe ȝitte, that can not be defilede with fire, other elles with eny other tempeste, in whom a wrytenge is conteynede of the victory of Marius. ℞. Whiche semethe to be probably that theke mencion is made there of Marius kynge of Britones, son to Aruiragus, whiche overcome Roderike the kynge of Pictes in those costes, as Gaufride rehersethe in his boke of Briteyne, whom William Malmesbury hathe not seen. The chirche of Haugustaldens is a place beenge from Yorke by lxxx. myles, at the northe weste of hit, whiche place longede somme tyme to the bisshope of Yorke, where ryalle edifienges were some tyme, after the edifienge of Rome, whiche edifienges haue not be seen of eny man a this side Alpes, but in that place, whiche is callede nowe Estoldesham. *Beda, libro*

f. 66. b.

---

1 Added from *a.* and Cx.
2 *vawte*, Cx.
3 *neuere myzte*, *a.*, Cx.
4 *but yf it*, Cx.
5 *leyȝe*, *a.*
6 Reference added from *a.*
7 *better*, Cx.
8 So *a.* and Cx.; *Britouns*, MS.
9 *howses*, Cx.
10 *vys*, *a.*
11 *voutes*, Cx., who has large omissions here.
12 Added from *a.*

libro tertio, capitulo primo.[1] Et est locus ille juxta murum longum[2] Romani operis ad boream.[3] *Ranulphus.*[4] Est autem[5] differentia inter provinciam Lindisfarorum[6] et ecclesiam Lyndyfarnensem.[7] Nam provincia Lindisfarorum[8] est idem quod Lindeseya,[9] quæ jacet[10] ad orientem Lincolniæ, cujus ipsa caput est;[11] de qua dicit Beda, libro quarto, capitulo [undecimo, quod Sexvulphus erat ibidem primus episcopus; sed ecclesia Lindifarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio],[12] idem est quod illa insula quæ dicitur Halielond,[13] in[14] fluvio Twydi,[15] prope Berewycum.[16] Et sic colligitur ex dictis Bedæ, quod in illo famoso marino brachio,[17] in quod fluit amnis Tvidi,[18] quod hodie ab oriente separat Anglos a Scotis, sunt tres insulæ; scilicet, Mailros, quod modo[19] dicitur Meuros;[20] inde superius versus occidentem[21] est Lindifarnensis ecclesia, id est, Halielond.[22] [23] Inde[24] ascendendo ponitur insula Farnæ, quæ est Farnyelond.[25] Inde ascendendo per duo[26] miliaria ponitur[27] urbs regia super ripam Tvidi,[28] quondam dicta[29] Bebbanburgh, [30] id est, urbs Bebbæ;[31] hodie dicitur Bamburgh,[32] castrum habens fortissimum.

---

[1] C.D. omits reference to Bede.
[2] *longum*] om. C.D.
[3] *borealem*, E.
[4] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[5] *etiam*, C.D.
[6] *Lindisfororum*, A.
[7] *Lindefarnensem*, A.B.; *Lindisfarnensem*, Gale, D.
[8] *Lindesfororum*, A.; *Lindifarorum*, E.
[9] *Lindiseia*, A., Gale.
[10] *est*, C.D.
[11] *cujus . . . est*] om. C.D.; *est caput*, B.
[12] Added from A.B., but thus in C.D:—"undecimo ibidem fuerat "primus episcopus Sexwulfus. "Ecclesia autem Lindisfarnensis "secundum Bedam, libro quarto, "capitulo vicesimo tertio." The references are to lib. iv. c. 12 and c. 27.
[13] *Holielande*, D.
[14] *in . . . Berewycum*] om. C.D.
[15] *Twidi*, A.
[16] *Berwicum*, Gale.
[17] *brachio marino*, A.B.
[18] *Twede*, C.D.; *Twidi*, A.; *Twidy*; B.
[19] *hodie*, C.
[20] This passage is slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.; *Meawres*, B.
[21] *superius . . . occidentem*] ascendendo per miliarium, C.D.
[22] *quæ Halielond dicitur*, C.D.
[23] *Inde . . . Farnyelond*] om. B.C.D. (inserted in margin of A.)
[24] *vero*, B.
[25] *Farneylond*, A.
[26] *novem*, C.D.
[27] *proponitur*, B.
[28] *fluminis quæ*, ins. C.D.
[29] *dicebatur*, C.D.
[30] *id . . . Bamburgh*] quæ hodie vocatur Bamburgh, C.D.
[31] *quæ*, ins. B.
[32] *Baumburgh*, B.

TREVISA.

also. Beda, libro tertio, capitulo primo, seiþ þat þat place [is] [1] faste by þe long wal of þe work of Rome in þe norþ half. R.[2] Þere is difference bytwene þe prouince of Lyndefar and [and þe chirche of Lyndefarne; for þe prouynce of Lyndiffar and] [3] Lyndeseie is al oon, and lyeþ by est Lyncolne; and Lyncoln is þe heed þerof. Of þe whiche seiþ Beda, libro quarto, capitulo undecimo, þat Sexvulphus was first bisshop þere. Bote Beda seiþ, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio, þat Lyndefarn [4] chirche is an ilond, þat hatte Halyelond, in þe ryuer Twede,[5] nyh Berwyk. And so hit is i-gadered of Beda his sawes, [þat Twyde renneþ into the famous arm of] [6] þe see þat [7] departeþ Englische men and Scottes in þe est half. And in þe [8] arme beeþ þre ilondes, þat beeþ Mailros, þat now hatte Mewros;[9] þanne aboue toward þe west is Lyndefarnen chirche þat hatte Halielond;[10] þanne vpward aboue þat is þe ilond Farne, and hatte also Farnyelond; þanne vpward tweie myle aboue þat is a real citee vppon þe brynke of Twyde, þat somtyme hiȝt Bebanborgh, þat is, Bebbe is [11] cite, and now hatte

MS. HARL. 2261.

tertio, capitulo primo. And that place is nye to the famose walle at the northe parte. Also there is difference betwene the prouince of Lindesey and the chirche Lindisfarnens. For the prouince of Lyndesey liethe at the este of Lincolne, whiche is chiefe cite to that prouince, of whom Beda spekethe, libro iiij^to^, capitulo xi^o^, where Sexwulphus was firste bischoppe. But the chirche Lindifarnence, after Bede, libro iiij^to^ capitulo [x]xiij^o^, is an yle whiche is callede the Holylonde, in the water of Twide, nye to Berewike: wherefore hit may be collecte of the seyenge of Bede, that there be iij. yles in that famose arme of the see in whom the water of Twide floethe, whiche departethe now of the este parte Englische men from Scottes. The firste yle, somme tyme callede Maylros, is callede now Meuros. Then from that towarde the weste is the chirche of Lindisfarnence in Halielonde. Also there is an yle whiche is callede Farnelonde. Also there a cite longenge somme tyme to the kynge, sette on the brynke off Twide, within the space of ij. myles, callede somme tyme Bembanburgh, that is to say the cite of Bebbe, callede now Banburghe, hauenge a stronge castelle in hit.

[1] The verb is absent from MSS. and Cx.
[2] Reference added from Cx.
[3] Added from α. and Cx
[4] *Lyndiffern*, α.
[5] *Twyde*, α.; *Thwede*, Cx. (who has *next*).
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *that now*, Cx.
[8] *þat*, α., Cx.
[9] *Meuros*, α., Cx.
[10] *Haly ylond*, Cx.
[11] *Bobbes*, Cx.

De urbe Legionum.

Giraldus in Itinerario. Urbs[1] Legionum duplex est, quæ Britannice vocatur Caerlegion vel Caerleon;[2] una est in Demetia,[3] id est, Southwallia, quæ dicitur Caerusc,[4] ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorgantiam, a Belino rege Britonum quondam constructa; metropolis fuit Demetiæ.[5] Postmodum tempore Claudii Cæsaris dicta est Urbs Legionum,[6] quando ad instantiam Genuissæ[7] reginæ, Vespasiano et Arvirago concordatis, missæ sunt aliquæ legiones Romanæ in Hiberniam. Urbs hæc[8] authentica,[9] ac per Romanos muris coctilibus circumdata, ubi multa adhuc pristinæ nobilitatis apparent vestigia; palatia scilicet immensa, turris gigantea, thermæ insignes, templorum reliquiæ, et[10] loca theatralia egregiis muris partim extantibus pene clausa; et tam intra quam extra murorum ambitum ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus,[11] hypogæique[12] meatus; stuphas quoque videas ibidem miro artificio consertas, lateralibus[13] quibusdam angustiis spiraculi vice[14] occulte[15] calorem exhalantibus. In qua urbe tres olim egregiæ fuerant

---

[1] C.D. begins this section as follows:—" Caerleon, seu Caerlegion, " seu Caerusc, ubi Usca flumen ca- " dit in Sabrinum mare juxta Gla- " morgantiam, constituta est a " Belino rege Britonum, quæ multo " tempore Caerusc appellata, metro- " polis fuit Demetiæ in South " Wallia" (D., however, reading : " Caerlion, seu Caerthleon, seu " Caerlegion, seu Caerusc," &c.)

[2] *Caerlion*, B.

[3] *Domosia*, B.

[4] *Caerusk*, B.; *Caerult*, Gale.

[5] *Domotiæ*, B.

[6] Transposed in C.D.

[7] *Gemissæ*, Gale.

[8] *hæc*] antiqua et, ins. C.D.

[9] *autentica* or *auctentica*, MSS.

[10] *et*] om. C.D.

[11] *aquæductus*, B.

[12] *ipogeique*, A.B.; *hippogeique*. E.

[13] *lateribus*, A.

[14] So Gale; *viis*, MSS,

[15] So A.B.C.D.; *occulto*, E.

Bamborgh,[1] and hath a wel strong castel.[2] *Giraldus in Itinere.* Tweye citees þere beeþ, eiþer hatte Caerlegioun and Caerleoun also ; oon is Demecia in Souþ Wales, þat hatte Caerusk also ; þere þe ryuer Vsque[3] falleþ in to Seuarn see,[4] faste by Glammorgon. Bellinus, kyng of Britouns, somtyme bulde þat citee ; and somtyme was þe chief cite of Demecia[5] in Souþ Wales.[6] Afterward in Claudius Cesar his tyme hit was i-cleped þe Citee of Legiouns. Whan at þe prayer of Genuis þe queene, Vespasianus[7] and Aruiragus were accorded, and legiouns of Rome were i-sende in to Irlond, þo was Caerleon a noble citee and of grete auctorite, and by þe Romayns realliche i-walled aboute wiþ walles of brent[8] tile. Grete nobilite[9] þat was þere in olde tyme is þere ȝit in meny places i-sene, as þe grete palys,[10] geant[11] his tour, noble bathes, releef of þe temples, places of theatres, þat were places hiȝe and real to stonde and sytte ynne and byholde aboute. Þe places were realliche i-closed wiþ real walles þat ȝit somdel stondeþ wel nyh cloos. And wiþ ynne þe walles and wiþoute is greet buldynge vnder erþe, water condites and weies vnder erþe and stues also þou schalt see wonderliche i-made wiþ streite side weies of breþynge, þat wonderliche casteþ vp hete. In þis cite were somtyme þre noble chirches ; TREVISA.

Giraldus, in Itinerario. There be ij. cites of legiones, oon was callede Caerlegion or Caerlyon, oon is in Sowthe Wales, whiche is callede Caerhuth, whiche beenge at the water callede Usca, is so namede, fallenge into the water of Seuerne nye to Glomorgan, edifiede somme tyme of Belinus, kynge of Englonde, whiche was the chiefe cite off Sowthe Wales. After that hit was callede the Cite off Legiones, when legiones of the Romanes were sende to Yrlonde at the instance of a qwene, callede Genuissa,[12] a concorde made betwene Vespacian and Aruiragus. That was a nowble cite, and wallede welle, where nowble stappes appere ȝitte, grete palice, a gigantes towre, and mony edifienges vnder the erthe as welle withowte the walles as within. In whiche cite were thre ryalle chirches, oon was of Iulius the MS. HARL. 2261. f. 67. a.

---

[1] *Bamborw*, α.

[2] The previous sentence has several slight variations in Cx.

[3] *Usk*, α.

[4] *see*] om. Cx.

[5] *Domecia*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)

[6] MS. (not α. or Cx.) adds : *þat hatte Caerusk.*

[7] *Vaspasianus*, MSS. and Cx. (who has *Genyus.*)

[8] *brand*, α.

[9] *nobley*, Cx.

[10] *palayses*, Cx.

[11] *gyant*, α.

[12] *Gemissa*, Harl. MS.

ecclesiæ, una Julii Martyris, virginum choro venustata; alia[1] beati Aaron,[2] præclaro canonicorum ordine nobilitata; tertia vero metropolitana sede[3] totius Cambriæ fuit insignita, de[4] qua postmodum usque Meneviam sedes illa est translata. Hoc in loco Amphibalus[5] doctor[6] Albani extitit[7] oriundus. Hic magni Arthuri, si fas sit credere, magnam[8] curiam legati adiere[9] Romani. *Ranulphus*.[10] Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et præsens[11] chronica fuit[12] elaborata, sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius[13] patet.[14] Urbs quidem in

---

[1] *alia*] et altera, C.D.
[2] *Aaro*, B.
[3] *sede*] om. C. (not D.)
[4] *a*, B.D.
[5] *Ambhibalus*, E.
[6] *beati*, B.
[7] *fuerat*, B.
[8] Slightly transposed in C.D., which have *famosam*.
[9] *adyere*, B.
[10] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[11] *hic*, B.
[12] *fit*, B.
[13] *clarius*] om. B.
[14] *ubi...patet*] om. C. D. omits only *sicut ... patet*.

TREVISA.

oon was of Seynt Iulius þe martir, i-hiȝt wiþ a grete[1] companye of virgyns; þat oþer was of Seint Aaron, þat was of þe ordre of blak chanouns; þat chirche was wiþ hym[2] nobelie i-hiȝt;[3] þe pridde chirche was þe chief moderchirche of al Wales, and þe chief sete;[4] but aftirward þe chief see was i-torned out of þat citee in to Meneuia, þat is, Seint Dauyes lond in West Wales. In þis Caerleon [was][5] Amphibalus i-bore, þat tauȝt Seint Albon. Þere þe messangers of Rome come to þe grete Arthurus curt,[6] ȝif it is leeful for to trowe. *Treuisa.* ȝif Gerald[7] was in doute where[8] it were leful for to trowe þis[9] oþer noo, it was nouȝt ful greet reedynesse to write hit in his bookes; as som men wolde wene. For it is a wonder sweuene i-mette for to write a long storie, to haue euermore in mynde, and euere haue doute ȝif it be amys byleue. ȝif alle his bookes were suche, what lore were þeryune, and nameliche while hit makeþ non euidens for neiþer[10] side, noþer telleþ what hym[11] meueþ so[12] for to seie?[13] R.[14] Þere is anoþer Citee of Legiouns; þere þis cronicle was by[15]-trauailled, as it is cleerliche i-knowe by þe firste lettres of þe chapitres of þis first book.[16] *Treuisa.* Þis[17] is to vnderstondynge in þe Latyn writynge and nouȝt in þis Englische writynge; for it was nouȝt þe same þat made it in Latyn, and torned it into Englisshe in þe same place þat it was i-made first in Latyn. Þe heed lettres of þe chapitres of þis firste book i-write arewe as the chapitres stondeþ he speleþ þis Latyn resoun: Presentem cronicam compilauit frater Ranulphus Cestrensis monachus. Þis Latyn resoun is to menynge an Englische: Broþer Ranulf,[18] monk of Chestre, compiled and made þis present cronicle.[19] R. Þe

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Martir, made feire with a company of virgynes. An other was of blessede Aaron, made nowble with the clere ordre of canons. The thridde chirche was made nowble with the seete of the metropolitan of alle Wales, whiche was translate afterwarde to Meneuia, whiche is callede nowe Seynte Dauid. R. Also there is an other Cite of Legiones,

---

1 *and ther in a grete*, Cx.
2 *hem*, Cx.
3 *adourned*, Cx.
4 *see*, Cx.
5 Added from Cx.
6 *court*, *a.*, Cx.
7 *Giraldus*, Cx.
8 *wheþer*, *a.*
9 *þis*] hit, *a.*, Cx.
10 *neiþer*] noþer, *a.*
11 So *a.* and Cx.; *by*, MS.
12 *so*] soþ, MS. (not Cx.)
13 The extract from Trevisa is a good deal varied in Cx., where it makes but little sense.
14 Reference added from Cx.
15 *be*, *a.*
16 Sentence varied in Cx.
17 *That*, Cx.
18 *Ranulph*, *a.*; *Ranulphus*, Cx.
19 *cronyke*, *a.*, Cx. The extract from Trevisa is much varied in Cx.

confinio[1] Angliæ ad prospectum[2] Cambriæ, inter duo marina brachia,[3] Dee et Mercee,[4] situata; quæ tempore[5] Britonum caput fuit et metropolis Venedotiæ, id est, [6]Norwalliæ;[7] cujus[8] fundator ignoratur. Nam intuenti fundamenta lapidum[9] enormium videtur potius Romano seu giganteo labore, quam Britannico sudore fundata extitisse. Hæc aliquando vocata est[10] Britannice Caerthleon,[11] Latine Legecestria; nunc autem[12] dicta[13] est Cestria, sive[14] Urbs Legionum; eo quod ibidem hiemarent legiones militares, quas Julius Cæsar ad subjugandam Hiberniam,[15] et postmodum[16] Claudius Cæsar ad subigendas[17] Orcades insulas inde transmiserat. Urbs itaque ista, quicquid de ea Willelmus Malmesbury[18] ad aliorum relatum somniaverit, omni genere[19] victualium[20] abundat, farris, carnis,[21] piscis, potissime salmonis optimi[22] copiosa;[23] mercimonia varia recipit et refundit. Quippe quæ[24] in suis confiniis salinas habet mineras et metalla. In hac[25] urbe per Northimbros[26] et Danos vicissim conquassata,[27] sed tandem per Elfredam[28] Merciorum dominam egregie[29] reparata et adaucta,[30] sunt viæ subterraneæ, lapideo opere

---

1 *confinibus*, A.

2 *in prospectu*, C.

3 *brachia*] om. E.; *brachia sive duo flumina*, C.; *inter duo flumina*, D.

4 *Mersee*, B.D.

5 *partim*, B.

6 *Northwalliæ*, A.B.

7 *sicut alia urbs legionum quondam fuit Demetiæ. Urbs alia jacet desolata, ista substat reformata; illius conditor fuit Belinus*, ins. C.D.

8 *istius*, C.D.

9 *in muris*, ins. C.D.

10 *est*] om. B.D.

11 *Caerleon*, C.; *Caerlion*, B.; *Kaerleon*, D.

12 *vero*, C.D.

13 *dicta*] om. C. (not D.); *dicta est*, om. B.

14 *etiam*, C.D.

15 *miserat*, ins. C.D.

16 *etiam*, C.D.

17 *subjugandam*, A.

18 *de Malm[esbury]*, B.

19 *omnium generum*, C (not D.)

20 *copia*, ins. C. (not D.)

21 *carnium*, C.D.

22 *optimi*] om. B.

23 *copia*, B.

24 *et*, C. (not D.)

25 *quoque*, ins. C.D.

26 *Northumbros*, A.; *Northanhimbros*, B.

27 *quassata*, C.D.

28 *Olfledam*, C.; *Elfledam*, A.B.D.; *Elphedam*, Gale.

29 *nobiliter*, C.D.

30 *aucta*, C. (not D.)

TREVISA.

citee of legiouns, þat is, Chestre, stondeþ in þe marche of Engelond toward Wales, bytwene tweie armes of þe see þat hatte Dee and Merse. Þis citee in tyme of Britouns was heed and chief citee of al Venedocia, þat is, Norþ[1] Wales. Þe foundour of þis citee is vnknowe, for who þat seeþ þe foundementis of þe grete stones wolde raþer wene þat it were Romayns work, oþer work of geauntes, þan work[2] i-made by settynge of Bretouns. Þis citee somtyme in Brittische speche heet Caerleon,[3] Legecestria in[4] Latyn, and hatte now Cestria in Latyn, and Chestren in Englisshe, and þe Citee of Legiouns [also. For þere lay a wynter þe legiouns][5] of knyȝtes þat Iulius Cesar sente for to wynne Irlond; and afterward Clawdius Cesar sente legiouns out of þat citee ffor to wynne þe ilondes þat hatte Orcades. What euere William Malmesbury by tellynge of oþere men mette of þis citee, þis citee haþ plente of lyflode, of corn, of flesche, and of fische, and specialliche of pris salmoun.[6] Þat[7] citee fongeþ grete marchaundise, and sendeþ out also. Also nygh þis citee beeþ salt welles, metal, and oor. Norþhumbres destroyed þis citee somtyme; but afterward Elfleda, lady of Mercia, bulde it aȝe and made it wel[8] more. In þis citee beeþ weies vnder

MS. HARL. 2261.

callede Chestre, where this cronicle presente was laborede, in the coste of Wales betwene ij. armes of the see whiche be callede Dye and Meresie, whiche was the chiefe cite of Northe Wales in the tyme of Britones, the firste founder of whom is not knowen. For hit scholde seme to a man beholdenge the fundacion of hit that werke to be rather of the labor of gigantes, other Romanes, then of Britones. That cite was callede somme tyme in the langage of Britones, Caerelyon, in Latyn Legecestria, and hit is callede now Chestre, other the Cite of Legiones, in that the legiones of knyȝhtes tariede þer in wynter, whom Iulius Cesar sende to Yrlonde to subdue hit to hym. This cite habundethe in euery kynde of vitelles, thauȝhe William Malmesbury dreamede in other wise, as in corne, flesche, fische, and specially in salmones, whiche cite receyvethe and sendethe from it diuerse marchandise, whiche hathe nye to hit waters of salte and metalles. That cite, somme tyme destroyede by men of Northumbrelonde, but reedificate by Elfleda, lady of the marches. hathe vnder the erthe voltes to be meruailede thro the

[1] *in north*, Cx.
[2] *were*, Cx. (typ. error.)
[3] *Caerchleon*, α.
[4] *a*, Cx.
[5] Added from α. and Cx.
[6] *prise samoun*, α.; *pris of samon*, Cx.
[7] *This*, Cx.
[8] *moche*, Cx.

mirabiliter testudinatæ, triclinia concamerata, insculpti lapides pergrandes antiquorum nomina præferentes. Numismata quoque,[1] Julii Cæsaris aliorumque illustrium inscriptione insignita, aliquando[2] sunt effossa. Hæc[3] est urbs quam rex[4] Northimbrorum Ethelfridus[5] contrivit, occidens juxta eam duo pene milia monachorum Bangorensis monasterii.[6] Hæc est inquam urbs ad quam venit aliquando rex Edgarus cum septem subregulis;[7] in cujus urbis laudem metricus quidam sic prorupit:—

Versus de Cestria.

Cestria de castro nomen quasi Castria sumpsit,
Incertum cujus hanc manus ediderit.[8]
Hæc Legecestria tunc est dicta, vel[9] Urbs Legionum,
Anglis et Cambris nunc manet urbs celebris.
In muris pendent lapides[10] velut Herculis actus,
Agger et augetur tutior[11] ut maneat.

---

[1] *Numismata quoque*] So A. Gale; *Hic et numismata*, C.D.; *numisma*, E
[2] *quandoque*, C.D.
[3] *Ista*, C.D.
[4] *Northanhimbrorum Egfridus*, B.
[5] Transposed in C.D.
[6] *de monasterio Bangorensi*, C.D.
[7] Abbreviated in C.D.
[8] *ediderint*, C.
[9] *vel*] om. A.
[10] *lapide*, B.
[11] *tutior*] So A.B.C.D.; *tutius*, E.

erþe, wiþ vawtes of stoonwerk[1] wonderliche i-wrouȝt, þre chambres workes, greet stoones i-graued wiþ olde men[2] names þere ynne. Þere is also Iulius Cesar his money wonderliche in stones[3] i-graued,[4] and oþere noble mennes also wiþ þe writynge aboute. Þis is þe citee þat[5] Ethelfride, kyng of Norþhumber,[6] destroyed; and slogh þere faste by nygh two þowsand monkes of þe mynistre of Bangor. Þis is þe citee þat kyng Edgar com to som tyme wiþ seuene kynges þat were suget to hym. A metrere brekeþ out in þis manere in preisynge of þis citee :— TREVISA.

Chestre, Casteltoun as he[7] were,
Name takeþ of a castel :[8]
Hit is vnknowe
What man bulde[9] þis citee nowe ;
Tho Legecestrias þes[10]
Heet[11] now toun of legiones.
Now Walsche and Englische
Holdeþ þis toun of greet[12] prys.
Stones on þe walle
Semeþ work Hercules alle ;
Þere long wiþ myght
To dure þat hep is i-hiȝt.

---

werke of ston, and other grete stones conteynenge the names and pryntes of Iulius Cesar, and of other nowble men. That is the cite whom kynge Elfride contriuede, sleenge in hit allemoste ij^{m}. monkes of the famose monastery of Bangor. That is the cite also to whom kynge Edgare come somme tyme with other vij. litelle kynges ; in to the lawde of whom a metricion seythe in this wise. That cite of Chestre toke the name of hit of a castelle callede Cestria, as Castria, the firste founder of whom is not hade in certitude ; callede somme tyme Legecestria, other elles the cite of legiones ; whiche is now a nowble cite, bothe to Englische men and to Walsche men ; in the walles of whiche cite stones honge lyke to the actes f. 67. b. of Hercules ; where dowble voltes be vnder the erthe ; and MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *with vowtes and stonewerke*, Cx., who has *chambred* below.

[2] So also *a.* ; *mennes*, Cx.

[3] *in stones*] These words ought to be cancelled, but Trevisa perhaps misunderstood the Latin. Cx. changes *money* into *name*.

[4] MS. and *a.* (not Cx.) add by clerical error from above : *wiþ olde men names*.

[5] So *a.* and Cx. ; *of*, MS.

[6] *Northumberland*, Cx.

[7] *a*, *a.* ; *it*, Cx.

[8] We should probably add : *that is there ;* metri gratia.

[9] *bude*, *a.*

[10] *Legecestria chers*, Cx. (*quid* ?)

[11] *Hett*, *a.*

[12] *a greet*, *a.*

Saxula Saxonica superextant addita magnis,
  Concava testudo bina latet sub humo.
Mineras[1] profert salinas proxima tellus,
  Quas spargit multis gentibus occiduis.
Carnibus et farre, sic piscibus affluit urbs hæc;
  Merces et classes advehit[2] unda mare.[3]
Henrici quarti, Godescalli[4] Cæsaris olim,
  Regis et Haraldi[5] pulvis habetur ibi.
Mars et Mercurius, Bacchus,[6] Venus, atque Laverna,
  Proteus et Pluto regna tenent inibi.

---

[1] *Minetas*, D.
[2] *affluit*, E.
[3] Perhaps for *mare*, which the MSS. and Gale have, we should read *maris*. This indeed seems to be the reading of D., which has been corrected from *mar*. to *mare*.
[4] *Godescilli*, B.
[5] *Araldi*, A.
[6] *et*, B.

TREVISA.

Saxon smal[1] stones
Set vppon greet beeþ attones.[2]
There vnder grounde
Lotynge double vaut[3] is i-founde.
Þat helpeth wiþ sondes
Meny men of westene[4] londes.
Fisch, flesche, and corn low
Þis cite toun haþ i-now.
Schippes and chaffare
See water bringeþ i-now þare.
Godescalle þere is,
Þat was emperour or[5] þis,
And þe ferþe Henry kyng,
Þere is here riȝtene[6] dwellynge.
Of kyng Haralde
Poudre þere ȝit is halde,[7]
Bacchus[8] and Mercurius, Mars and Venus,
    also Lauerna,[9]
Proteus[10] and Pluto regneþ þere [in][11] þe towne.

Treuisa. God woot what þis is to mene, but poetes[12] in here[13] manere of speche feyneth as þey euerich kynde crafte and leuynge hadde a dyuersite[14] god, euerich from oþer; and so they feyneþ[15] a god of bataille and of fiȝtynge, and clepeþ hym Mars; also þey feyneþ a god of couetise of richesse and marchaundise, and clepeþ[16] hym Mercurius; and so Bacchus þei clepeþ god of wyn; Venus, god of fairnesse and of loue; Lauerna, god of þefte and of robberie; Proteus,[10] god of falshede and of gyle; and Pluto, god of helle. And so hit semeþ þat þis vers wolde mene þat þese feyned[17] goddes regneþ and beeþ i-serued in Chestre; Mars wiþ fiȝting and cokkynge; Mercurius wiþ couetise of richesse and of marchandyse; Bacchus wiþ grete drinkynge; Venus wiþ loue nouȝt ful wys;[18] Lauerna wiþ þefte and robberye; Proteus[10]

MS. HARL. 2261.

also kynge Henry the iiij^the, Godescallus somme tyme Cesar, and kynge Haralde were beryede. There Mars, Mercurius, Venus, Proteus,[9] and Pluto have gouernaile.

---

[1] *smale*, Cx.
[2] *at ones*, α.
[3] *vawt*, α.; *vout*, Cx.
[4] *westren*, Cx.
[5] *ar*, α.; *er*, Cx.
[6] *erthe is there righten*, Cx.
[7] *i-halde*, α., Cx.
[8] *Bacus*, MS.; *Bachus*, α., Cx.
[9] Possibly we should read *Laverne*; but even so, the metre limps.
[10] *Protheus*, MSS. and Cx.
[11] Added from Cx.
[12] So α.; *portes*, MS.
[13] So α.; *his*, MS.
[14] *diuerse*, Cx.; probably rightly.
[15] *feyned*, Cx.
[16] *called* Cx.
[17] *forsayd*, Cx.
[18] *nouȝht ful wys*] lewdly, Cx.

Ejus gens sequitur multum mores[1] Babylonis,
Quæ dum plus poterit, plus solet esse ferox.

Cap. XLIX.

De provinciis et comitatibus.[2]

Alfridus.[3] Notandum quod[4] Anglia continet triginta duas[5] shiras, id est, provincias, quæ hodie dicuntur comitatus, exceptis Cornubia et insulis. Nomina comitatuum sunt ista: Kent, Southsex, Southereie,[6] Hamptshire, Barrokshire,[7] quæ sic denominatur a quadam nuda quercu in foresta de Wyndesora,[8] ad quam solebant provinciales convenire in tractatibus habendis.[9] Item[10] Wyltshire,[11] quæ quondam dicebatur provincia Severiana,[12] Somersete, Dorset, Doevenshire, sive[13] Doonia.[14] Hæ novem provinciæ australes prædictæ, quatenus flumen Thamisiæ eas secernit a reliqua Anglia, judicabantur olim illa lege quæ vocatur[15] Westsaxenelaga.[16] Sed[17] Estsex,[18] Midelsex,[19]

Comitatus.

[1] *mores multum*, B.
[2] *Angliæ*, ins. A.
[3] *Alfridus*] Transposed in C. (not D.), Gale; om. B.
[4] *Notandum quod*] om. C.
[5] *duas*] om. B.
[6] So E. and Gale; *Sotherey*, C.B.; *Sowthirie*, A.; *Southerey*, D.
[7] *Barkschire*, A.B.; *Barocschire*, D.
[8] *Wyndisora*, A.
[9] *in tractatibus habendis*] Added in the margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.
[10] *Item*] In, E.; om. C.D.
[11] *Wilteschira*, A.
[12] *Somerana*, B.
[13] *sive*] Added from A.B.D. and Gale; *seu Devonia*, C.; *sive Devonia*, B.; *sive Dovania*, Gale.
[14] *Deevoneschire* (*Devenischire*, D.), *sive Dovonia*, A.D.
[15] *quæ vocatur*] om. B.
[16] *West Saxnelaga*, B.; *Westsaxenlaga*, D.
[17] *Sed*] om. C.D.
[18] *est Sex*, B.; *et*, ins. A
[19] *Middelsexe*, D.

wiþ falshede and gyle. Þan is Pluto not vnserued, god of helle. R. TREVISA.

Þere Babilon lore,
More myȝt haþ, truþe[1] þe more.

De schiris Angliæ, siue prouinciis. Capitulum quadragesimum nonum.

TAKE hede þat[2] Engelond conteyneþ two and þritti schires and prouinces, þat now beeþ i-cleped erldoms, outake Cornewayle and ilondes[3] *Alfridus.* These beeþ þe names of þe erldoms and schires: Kent, Souþsex, Souþeray, Hampschire, Barkschire, þat haþ þat name of a baar ook þat is in þe forest of Wyndesore; for at þat bare ook men of þat schire were i-wont come to gidres and make here tretys, and þere take hir counsail, and rede.[4] Also Wiltschire, þat hiȝte[5] somtyme þe prouince of Semeran, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire, þat hatte Deuonia in Latyn. Þese nyne south schires, as[6] Temse departeþ hem from þe oþer dele of Engelond, were[7] somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by þat lawe þat hatte Westsaxoun[8] lawe.[9] Estsex, Myddelsex,

---

The peple of whom folowe moche men of Babilon in condicion of maneres, whiche is moste cruelle where that hit may do moste. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the schires other prouinces of Englonde. Capitulum quadragesimum nonum.

HIT is to be attended that Englonde conteynethe xxxxij[ti] schires other provinces, Cornewaile excepte and other yles. *Alfridus.* These be the names of the schires, Kente, Southesex, Sutherey, Hampteschire, Barrokeschire, takenge that name of hit of a bare oke in the foreste of Wyndeshore, where men of that province were wonte to mete for a tretys to be made betwene partes; also Wildeschire, that was callede somme tyme the province of Seuerne, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire. These ix. sowthe prouinces aforeseide, thauȝhe Thamys departethe theyme, thei were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of the Weste Saxones, whiche is callede Westesaxenelaga. But Estesex,

---

[1] *trouthe*, Cx. The text seems corrupt; possibly *crouþe* (*i.e. crowcth*) may be the true reading.

[2] So *a.*; *þan*, MS.

[3] *the ilondes*, Cx.

[4] *reed*, *a.*; *aduys*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

[5] *heet*, Cx.

[6] So *a*; *nyne schires be souþ, as*, MS.

[7] *which were*, Cx., who omits *as* above.

[8] *Westsaxene*, *a*.

[9] *by the West Saxon lawe*, Cx.

Southfolk, Northfolk, Herfortshire,[1] Huntyndonshire, Northamptounshire,[2] Cantebruggeshire,[3] Bedfordshire, Bukkinghamshire,[4] Leicestreshire,[5] Derbyshire, Nothinghamshire, Lincolnshire, ʒorkshire,[6] Duremshire,[7] Northumberlond, Caerlielshire cum Cumberlond,[8] Appelbyshire cum Westmerlond, Lancastreshire, quæ continet quinque modicas shiras; istæ quindecim provinciæ prædictæ orientales et boreales judicabantur olim lege illa, quæ vocabatur Denelaga. Sed Oxenfortshire,[9] Warewykshire,[10] Gloucestreshire, Wyrcestreshire, Herefordshire, Salopshire, Staffordshire, Chestershire,[11] istæ octo shiræ mediterraneæ et occidentales judicabantur olim lege Marcia, quæ Anglice Merchenelaga[12] vocabatur. Est ergo sciendum quod provincia Eboraci solummodo[13] se extendit hodie ab arcu Humbræ[14] fluminis usque ad flumen Teyse.[15] Et tamen sunt in ea viginti duo hundredi, id est, wapentakes.[16] Hundredus autem[17] Latine, sive cantredus Wallice et Hibernice, continet centum villas. Wapentak[18] Anglice idem[19] est quod[20] *arma capere*, eo quod in primo adventu novi domini sole-

---

[1] *Herfortshire*] om. B.; *Hertfordschire*, D.

[2] *Norhamtounschire*, D. In this MS. the order of the counties is different.

[3] *Cantbrigschire*, B.

[4] *Bukynghamschire*, B.; *Bokinhamschire*, D.

[5] *Leycestreschire*, B.; *Laicestreschire*, D.

[6] *ʒhorkschire*, A.B.; *Eboracschire*, D.

[7] *Duremshire*] The rest of this chapter varies much in C.D. The paragraphs and sentences are so much transposed and altered, that it is almost impossible to collate it.

[8] *Northumberlond... Cumberlond*] om. B.

[9] *Oxenfordschire*, A.B.

[10] *Warwikschire*, B.

[11] *Cestreschire*, B.

[12] *Marchenelaga*, A.B.

[13] *solomodo*, E.

[14] *Humbriæ*, B.

[15] *Tese*, B.

[16] *wapintakes*, A.

[17] *enim*, B.

[18] *vero*, C.D.

[19] *id*, B.

[20] *quod*] om. B.

Southfolk, Norþfolk, Hertfordschire, Huntyngdounschire, Norþhamptounschire, Cantebryggeschire,[1] [Bedefordschire][2] Bokynghamschire, Leycestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lyncolneschire, ȝorkschire, Duramschire, Norhumberlond, Carlelschire wiþ Comberlond, Appelbyschire wiþ Westmerlond, Lancastreschire, þat conteyneþ fyue litel schires; þese fiftene norþ and est schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by þat lawe, þat hatte Denelawe. But Oxenfordeschire, Warwykschire, Glowcetreschire, Worcestreschire, Herfordschire,[3] Schropschire, Staffordschire, Chestreschire, þese eiȝte myddel and west schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by þat lawe þat hatte Mercia in Latyn, and Mercheyne lawe in Englisshe. It is to wetynge[4] þat ȝorkschire now streccheþ onlich from þe bowe of the ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuer of[5] Teyse; and ȝit in ȝorkschire beeþ two and twenty hondredes. Hundred and candred is al oon; candred is oo word i-made of Walsche and of Irische, and is to menynge, a contray þat conteyneþ an hondred townes, and is also in Englische i-cleped wepentake; for somtyme in þe comynge of a newe lorde tenauntes were i-wont to ȝilde TREVISA.

Middelsex, Sowthefolke, Northefolke, Herteferdeschire, Huntyngdonschire, Northehamptonschire, Cambriggeschire, Bedfordeschire, Bukkynghamschire, Leicestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lincolneschire, Yorkeschire, Diremschire, Northumbrelande, Caerlielschire, Cumbirlande, Appelbischire, with Westmerlande, Lancastreschire, whiche conteinethe in hit v. other schires. These xv. schires afore seide of the este and of the northe were iuggede somme tyme by a lawe whiche was callede Danelaga. But Oxfordeschire, Warwickeschire, Gloucestreschire, Wircestreschire, Herdefordeschire, Shropschire, Stafordeschire, and Chestreschire,—these viij. mydelleschires and weste were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of marches, whiche was callede in Englische Merchenelaga. Also hit is to be attendede that the prouince of Yorke extendethe hit oonly now from the arche of the floode of Humbre vn to the floode of Teyse; neuerthelesse there be in hit xxij^ti hundredes, whiche be callede wapentakes, for a hundrede in Latyn, other elles a tancrede in Walesche other Yrische, conteynethe a c. townes. A wapentake in Englische is seide to take wepens; for tenauntes were wonte to yelde MS. HARL. 2261. f. 68. a.

---

[1] *Cambryggeshyre,* Cx.
[2] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] *Herefordschire,* α; *Herdfordshire,* Cx.
[4] *wete,* Cx., and so often.
[5] *of*] om. α.; clause varied in Cx.

bant tenentes reddere arma sua pro homagio. Duremshire[1] se extendit a fluvio[2] These[3] usque ad flumen Tyne. Northumberlond proprie sumendo, se extendit a flumine Tyne[4] usque ad flumen Twyde,[5] quod est principium Scotiæ. Si igitur plaga Northimbrana, quæ fuit olim ab Humbra usque ad Twedam, hodie pro[6] unica provincia seu comitatu,[7] sicut antiquitus computetur, tunc sunt in Anglia solummodo viginti duo shiræ. Si autem plaga Northimbrana dividatur in sex provincias prædictas, quæ sunt Everkshire,[8] Duremshire,[9] Northumberlond, Caerlielshire, Appelbyshire,[10] Lancastreshire,[11] tunc sunt in Anglia præter Cornubiam et insulas triginta sex shiræ,[12] provinciæ, sive comitatus. Quas omnes fecit Willelmus[13] Conquæstor

[1] *Duresmeschire*, B.
[2] *flumine*, A.
[3] *Tese*, B.; *Thes*, A.
[4] *Tyri*, B.
[5] *Twede*, B.; *Twide*, A.
[6] *pro*] om. B.
[7] *comitatus*, B.
[8] *Everwikshire* altered to *Werwickschire*, A.; *Everwikshire*, B., Gale.
[9] *Duresmeschire*, B.
[10] *Appelbischire*, A.B.
[11] *Loncastreschire*, B.
[12] *shires*, E., and so above (once)
[13] *rex*, B.

TREVISA.

vp hire wepene instede of homage. Duramschire strecchеþ from þe ryuer Teyse[1] anon to þe ryuere Tyne. And for to speke propurliche of Norþhumberlond, Norþhumberlond strecchеþ from þe ryuere of Tyne anon to þe ryuere of Twede, þat is þe[2] bygynnynge of Scotlond. Þan ȝif the contrey of Norþhomberlond, þat was somtyme from Humber anon to Twede, be now acounted for oon schire and oon erldom, as it was somtyme, þan beeþ in Engelond but two and þritty schires, but ȝif þe contray of Norþhumberlond be[3] departed in þe sixe forsaide[4] schires, þat beeþ Euerwykschire, Duramschire, Norþhumberlond, Carlelschire, Appelbyschire, Lancastreschire, þanne beeþ in Engelond sixe and þritty schires wiþoute Cornewayle and also wiþoute þe ilondes. Kyng William þe Conquerour made alle þis prouince and schires be descryved[5] and i-mete. Þan were i-founde sixe and þritty schires[6] and an half,[7] and townes[8] two and fifty þowsand and foure score; parische chirches fyue and fourty þowsand and tweyne; knyȝtes fees sixty þowsand and fiftene. Þerof[9] men of religioun haþ eiȝte and twenty þowsand and fiftene knyȝtes fees.[10] But now wodes [beþ][11] i-hewe adoun and newe telynge[12] lond i-made moche more þan was þoo, and meny townes i-bulde, and so þere beeþ now in Engelond meny moo hides[13] and townes þan were in þat

MS. HARL. 2261.

theire wepens for an homage in the firste commenge of newe lordes. Duremschire extendethe hit from the floode of Teyse to the floode of Tyne. Northumbrelonde proprely extendethe hit from the floode of Tyne to the floode of Twide, whiche is the begynnenge of Scotlonde. And if the plage of Northumbrelonde, which was somme tyme from Humbre vn to Twide, be accomptede as for oon prouince other schire, as hit was wonte, then there be in Englonde oonly xxxij^ti schires. And if that plage of Northumbrelonde be diuidede into vj. provinces, whiche be Euerwikschire, Duremschire, Northumbrelonde, Carlielschire, Appelbeschire, Lancastreschire, then there be in Englonde xxxvj^ti schires, except yles perteynenge to that londe, and also Cornewaile. Whiche alle William Conque-

[1] *Theyse*, α.

[2] *in the*, Cx.

[3] *is*, α. (not Cx.)

[4] *forsaide*] om. Cx., probably rightly.

[5] So α. and Cx. (who has *these prouynces*); *destroyed*, MS.

[6] Text of the following clauses as in α; more than thirty words are repeated without sense in MS. in various places.

[7] *and half a schire*, α. and Cx.

[8] *and schire townes*, MS.

[9] *Wherof*, Cx.

[10] Some words repeated in MS.

[11] Added from α. and Cx.

[12] *tyliengе*, α.

[13] *vyllages*, Cx., who varies the sentence considerably.

describi, et per hydas[1] seu carucatas dimetiri, et inventi sunt comitatus triginta sex et dimidium; villæ vero quinquaginta duo milia et octoginta,[2] ecclesiæ parochiales quadraginta quinque milia duo, feoda militum 60,015, de quibus religiosi habent 28,015[3] feoda;[4] sed, hodie, nemoribus succisis novalibusque procisis,[5] multo plures sunt hidæ et villæ quam tunc erant.

CAP. L.

De legibus legumque vocabulis.[6]

SANCIVIT[7] primum[8] leges in Britannia Dunwallo Molmutius, cujus leges Molmutinæ[9] dicebantur, usque

[1] *hidas*, A.

[2] 62080, D.

[3] So A.B., Gale, and the versions; 19,015, E.

[4] *de . . . feoda*] om. C.D.

[5] *novalibusque procisis*] pascuisque ædificatis, C.; pascuisque præcisis, B.D.

[6] *De legum conditoribus*, C.; *De legibus et earum interpretationibus*, D. This chapter, for which Higden gives no authorities, is almost entirely taken from the *Chronicon* of John Brompton (pp. 956, 957, in Twysden's *Hist. Angl. Script.* x. Lond. 1652), whose readings are sometimes quoted. As usual the readings of C.D. agree better with the original.

[7] *Sanciit*, A.; *Edidit*, C.D., after *Britannia*.

[8] *primo*, A.B.

[9] *Molmutianæ*, C. (not D.); *Molmitinæ*, B.

tyme. *Treuisa.*[1] Hit is wondre why Alfred summeth the schires of Engelond somdel as a man þat mette; for Alfrede telleþ þe som of schires in þis manere: Þere beeþ in Engelond sixe and þritty schires wiþoute Conewayle and wiþoute þe ylondes. Why seiþ he nouȝt in þis manere: Þere beeþ in Engelond sixe schires wiþ Cornwayle, and þritty oþer schires wiþoute þe ilondes? Eyþer manere summynge is as vnredy as oþer. For to make a redy somme it schulde be i-write in þis manere: In Engelond beeþ seuen and þritty schires, and so is Cornewayle acounted wiþ þe oþere schires; and þat is skilful. For Cornewayle is a schere of Engelond; for, as he seiþ, Cornwaile is in þis Bretayne hym self, as it is aleide[2] in þe fourþe chapitre of þis firste book. Þan hit is in oon of þe chief parties of þis Bretayne, þat beeþ Engelond, Wales, and Scotlond. But Cornewayle is nouȝt in Wales, for þere is a grete see bytwene; noþer in Scotlonde, for þere beeþ many hondred myle bytwene. Þan Cornwayle is in Engelond, and is departed in hundredes, and is i-ruled by þe lawe of Engelond, and holdeþ schire and schire dayes, as oþere schires dooþ. Ȝif Alfrede seiþ nay in þat, he wot nouȝt what he maffleþ. TREVISA.

De legibus legumque vocabulis. Capitulum quinquagesimum.

DUNWALLO, þat hete Moluntius[3] also, made þe[4] firste lawes in Bretayne, the whiche lawes were i-cleped Moluntius his lawes,

---

rour, kynge of Englonde, causede to be describede, and the hides and carucates of londes to be measurede; in which londe xxxvj^ti schires were founde and dimid., lij^ti m. and lxxx. townes, and xl^ti and v. m. peresche chirches and tweyne, lx. m. fees of knyȝhtes and xv., of whom religious men have xxviij^ti m. and xv. fees; but now, woodes kytte downe and made arable londe, there be mony moo townes and hides of londe then were in that tyme. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of lawes and the wordes of lawes. Capitulum quinquagesimum.

Dunwallo Molimicius ordeynede firste lawes in Briteyne, the lawes of whom were callede Molimitine, obseruede and

---

[1] The remainder of the chapter appears thus in Cx., who omits Trevisa's name:—" *And whereas a* " *fore is wreton that Cornuayll is* " *not sette amonge the shires of* " *Englond, it may stonde amonge* " *them wel ynowgh. For it is neyther* " *in Wales ne in Scotland, but is* " *in Englond, and ioyneth to Deuens-* " *shire. And so may ther ben* " *acompted in Englond xxxvij. shires* " *and a half with the other shires.*"

[2] *aleyd*, α.

[3] *Moliuncius*, Cx., and so below.

[4] þe] om. α., Cx.

ad tempora Willelmi Conquæstoris satis celebres. Inter quæ[1] statuit, ut civitates et templa deorum, viæque ad illa ducentes, ac[2] aratra colonum[3] immunitate confugii gauderent. Deinde Marcia regina Britonum, uxor Gwitelini[4] regis, a qua provincia Merciorum putatur denominata, legem edidit discretione et justitia[5] plenam, quæ lex Marcia vocabatur.[6] Has duas leges Gildas historicus transtulit de Britannico in Latinum, et rex Aluredus postmodum de Latino[7] in Saxonicum, quæ Merchenelaga[8] dicebatur.[9] Ipse quoque Aluredus legem Anglice conscriptam superadjecit, quæ Westsexenelaga[10] vocabatur.[11] Tandem Danis in hac[12] terra dominantibus, tertia lex emanavit, quæ Danelaga[13] dicebatur. Ex his tribus legibus Sanctus Edwardus tertius unam legem communem edidit, quæ leges Edwardi usque hodie vocantur.[14] De quibus nonnulla vocabula adhuc frequentata cum eorum a

[1] *quas*, C. (not D.)

[2] *et*, C.D.

[3] *colonum*] So all the MSS. and Gale; also Brompton. So also above, p. 42, but the reading has probably sprung from a compendious mode of writing.

[4] So D. distinctly (omitting *regis*); *Guentilini*, C.; *Gintelini*, Gale.

[5] *legem*, B.

[6] *vocatur*, C.D.; *dicebatur*, B.

[7] *de Latino*] om. C.D.

[8] *Merchenlaga*, B.C.D.

[9] *vocabatur*, B.

[10] *Westsaxonelaga*, A.

[11] *Ipse . . . vocabatur*] om. B.; *vocatur*, C. (not D.)

[12] *hac*] om. C.D.

[13] *Denelaga*, A.

[14] *usque hodie* before *leges* in B.

and were solempne [1] anon to William Conquerour his tyme. Moluntius ordeynede among his lawes, þat citees, temples, and weies þat ledeþ þerto, and plowh men solowes schulde haue priuelege and fredom forto saue alle men þat wolde flee þerto for socour and refute.[2] Þan aftirward Marcia, queene of Bretouns, þat was Guytelynus þe kynges wyf, of hire þe prouince hadde þe name Mercia, as som men troweþ. Sche [3] made a lawe ful of riȝt and [4] of wit and resoun, and was i-cleped Merchene lawe. Gildas, þat wroot stories of Bretouns, turnede þese tweie lawes out of Bretoun speche in to Latyn, and afterward kyng Alredes [5] turned alle in fere [6] out of Latyn in to Saxon speche, and [7] was i-cleped alle in fere Merchene lawe. Also the same kyng Alredus wroot in Englische, and putte to anoþer lawe, þat heet West Sexene lawe. Þanne afterward Danes were lordes in þis lond, and so com [9] forþ the þridde lawe þat heet Dane lawe. Of þese þre lawes Seynt Edward þe þridde [10] made oon comyn lawe, þat ȝit hatte [11] Seint Edwardes lawe. I [12] holde hit be worthy [13] TREVISA.

---

kepede welle vn to the tyme of William Conquerour. Amonge whom he made a statute that cites, temples of goddes, weies ledenge to theyme, and the ploes of tillers of londe, scholde ioy imunite of confute. After that Marcia, qwene of Britones, wife to kynge Gvitelyne, of whom the prouince of the marches be trawede to have taken theire name, made a law full of ryȝhtenousenes and of descrecion, whiche was callede the lawe of the Marches. Gildas, the writer of storyes, did translate those ij. lawes from the langage of Britones in to Latyne. And kynge Alurede did translate hit from Latyn in to the speche of Saxones, whiche lawe was callede Merchenelaga. Also kynge Alurede caste to that lawe writen in Englische whiche was callede Weste Saxon lawe. Then after that, the Danes reignenge in that londe, the thridde lawe began, whiche was callede Danelaga. Kynge Edwarde the thridde made oon commune lawe of those three lawes, whiche be callede vn to this tyme presente the lawes of Seynte Ed- MS. HARL. 2261. f. 68. b.

---

[1] *were solompnly* (sic) *obserued vnto*, Cx.
[2] *refuge*, Cx.
[3] *He*, α.
[4] *and*] om. α. and Cx.
[5] *Aluredus*, α. and Cx.
[6] *in fere*] om. Cx., and also below.
[7] *and*]. Here and above the sense requires *þat*.
[8] *Aluredus*, α. and Cx.
[9] *cam*, Cx.
[10] *the confessour*, Cx.
[11] So α. ; *hadde*, MS.
[12] *I*] *Iche*, α.
[13] *it wel don*, Cx.

explicationibus[1] hic[2] inserere dignum duxi: Mundbriche[3] id est, læsio majestatis; Gallice, blemur de honur.[4] Burgbriche,[5] id est, læsio libertatis aut septi; Gallice, blemure de court ou de clos. Grithbruche,[6] id est, fractio pacis. Miskennigh,[7] id est, variatio loquelæ in curia. Sheauwyngh,[8] propositio mercimonii; Gallice, despleyure[9] de marchaundise. Hamsoken[10] vel Hamfare,[11] id est, insultus factus in domo. Forstalling,[12] id est, coactio vel obsistentia facta in[13] strata regia. Frithsoken,[14] id est, tutatio[15] in jurisdictione; Gallice, seurte[16] en defence. Infangthef[17] pelfinde inward,[18] id est, infra suum[19] capere reum; Gallice, dedeinz[20] le soen[21] attachement de laroun.[22] Saka,[23] id est, jurisdictio; Gallice, courte justice, forfet ou achesoun.[24] Soka, id est, secta curiæ. Ex inde[25] dicitur Sokne;[26] sed sokne aliquando dicitur interpellatio majoris audientiæ. Wergelthef, id est, solte[27] de laroun eschape.[28] Theam,[29] id est, laudare auctorem; Gallice, reuoucher[30] garaunt. Et quandoque dicitur sequela nativorum. Fihtwite,[31] id est, ferir[32] per melle.[33] Wardwyte, id est, sursise[34] de garde. Blodwyte,[35] id est, amerciamentum pro effusione san-

---

[1] *expositionibus*, B., Gale.

[2] *hic*] om. C.

[3] All these words are written in large characters and underlined with red in B.

[4] *blesmure de honure*, A.B.

[5] *Burbriche*, D., Brompton.

[6] *Grythbriche*, A., Gale, Br.

[7] So E. apparently; *Mixkennyng*, B.; *Miskenning*, A., Gale, Br.; *Miskerming*, D.

[8] *Sheaweng*, B.; *Scheawing*, Gale; *Seauwyng*, A.; *Schewing*, D.; *Scheavwyng*, Br.

[9] *depleyuer de marchandis*, A.; *displegure*, Gale.; *despleier*, D.; *despliaunce*, Br.

[10] *Hamsokne*, A., Gale; *Hamsokin*, D.

[11] *Hemfare*, A.

[12] *Forstawing*, Gale; *Foristalle*, D.; *Forstall*, Br.

[13] *in*] om. B.

[14] *Frithsokne*, A., Gale.

[15] *facta*, B.

[16] *surte en defens*, A.; *suet on defense*, B.

[17] *Infangithef*, A.

[18] *pelffindinward*, B.; *pelfande in warde*, D.; *thelfind*, Br. The true reading is probably *Infangenþeof self finde in warde*. See *Introduction*.

[19] *attachiamentum* should be added from Brompton.

[20] So A.B.D., Gale; *deinz*, E.

[21] *soun*, B.; *seon*, Gale.

[22] *laron*, A., Gale; *larron*, D.

[23] *Sake*, B.

[24] *acheson*, A.; *achesun*, Gale; *jurisdictum de court ou achesun*, D.

[25] *Et deinde*, A.; *Et inde*, Gale.

[26] *Soken*, A. Sentence altered in D.

[27] *solte*] om. B.

[28] *escape*, B.

[29] *Them*, B.

[30] So B.C.D.; *reuoch garant*, A.; *revocher garant*, Gale.; *reueche*, E.

[31] *Frithwite*, B.; *Fightwit*, D.; *Fyghtwyt*, A., Gale.; *Flitwithe*, Br., which is probably right.

[32] *ferer*, A.

[33] *molle*, C. (not D.); *medlie*, Br.

[34] *fursis*, B.

[35] *Blodwite*, B.; *Blodwit*, Gale.

to write here and expowne meny termes of þese lawes. Mundbreche,[1] hertynge of honour and of worschepe ;[2] a[3] Frensche, blesmure[4] de honoure. Burghbreche ;[5] a Frensche, blesmure de court, ou de cloys. Grythbruche, [brekynge][6] of pees. Miskenynge, chaunginge of speche in court. Schewynge, settynge forþ of marchaundise ; a Frensche, despleure[7] de marchaundise. Hamsokene oþer Hamfare, a rese i-made in hous. Forstallynge, wrong oþer let i-doo in þe kynges hiȝe weie. Fryth sokene ; in Frensche, suerte[8] in diffens. Infantif[9] pelfynde inward; a Frensche, dedeyns le soen atachement de laroun.[10] Sake; [a Frensche, court justice forfet ou achesoun. Soka],[11] sute of court, and þerof comeþ Sokene,[12] but Sokene oþerwhile is forto aske lawe in þe gretter court. Wergiltif,[13] solte de laroun[14] eschape. Theam, Frensche, reuoche garant ; and somtyme Theam is i-cleped þe sewte of bonde men. Fightynge wyte, amersement for fightynge, ferir melle. Wardwhite, forfise de garde. Blodwyte, mersement for schedynge of blood. Cultwyte,[15] amendes for TREVISA.

warde, mony wordes of whiche lawe nede an exposicion, as Mundebriche, hurte of maieste, in Frenche, Blesmur de honour ; Burbriche, a hurte of liberte, in Frenche, Blesmur de court, ou de clos ; Grithbriche, a brekenge of peace ; Muskenning, diuersite other chaungenge of speche in courte ; Scheauwynge, sette furthe of marchandise, in Frenche, displevir de marchandise ; Hamsokne or Hamfare, þat is, a fray made in an howse; Forstallynge, constreynenge made in the kynges strete. Frith sokne, suerte in a iurisdiccion, in Frenche, surte en defence. Infanthef pelfynde inwarde, that is to say, to take a gilty man within his lordeschippe, in Frenche, dedeins le soen atachemente de laron. Saca, a iurisdiccion, in Frenche, court iustice. Soka, a sute of the courte, where of Sokne is seyde. But Sokne is seide otherwhile an interpellacion of a moore grete audience. Werkelthef, that is to say, solte de laron eschamp. Thean, that is, to lawde the auctor, in Frenche, reuouche graunte ; whiche is callede otherwhile a sequele of natife men. Blodewitte, a merciamente for effusion of bloode. Hittewite, amendes MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Myndebruche*, Cx.
[2] *of worschippe and of honour*, *a*.
[3] *in*, Cx., everywhere.
[4] *bleschur*, Cx., and so below.
[5] *Burchbruch*, Cx.
[6] *brekynge*] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[7] *displeix*, Cx.
[8] *surte*, *a*.
[9] *Infangthef*, *a*. ; which is the more usual form. Cx. has some omissions here, and further on.
[10] *laroun eschape*, MS. (not *a*.)
[11] Added from *a*.
[12] *Sokne*, *a*.
[13] *Wergelthef*, *a*.
[14] *laron*, *a*.
[15] *Gultwite*, Cx.

guinis. Flitwite,[1] id est, emenda proveniens pro[2] contentione. Leyrwyte,[3] id est[4] emenda[5] pro corruptione nativæ.[6] Gultwyte,[7] id est, emenda pro transgressione Scot, id est, symbolum ad opus ballivorum domini.[8] Hidage vel[9] Taillage,[10] id est, tallagium[11] de hidis terrarum. Danegelt,[12] id est, tallagium datum Danis, id est iij. denarios[13] de qualibet bovata terræ. Wapentak et hundrede[14] idem sunt, quia[15] procinctus centum villarum solebat reddere arma in adventu domini. Lestage, id est, consuetudo exacta in nundinis et mercatis. Stalage, id est, exactio pro statione in plateis tempore nundinarum.[16]

Cap. LI.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

Alfridus.[17] Inconcussa stetit apud Britones insulæ monarchia, a primo scilicet Bruto usque ad Julium Cæsarem;[18] a quo[19] Julio usque ad Severum hæc insula Romanis fuit[20] vectigalis et subacta. Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque[21] usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum; deficiente Britonum successione, Romani in ea regnaverunt.[22] Romanis tandem[23] propter itineris

---

[1] *Fihtwite*, Br., which is probably right; *Fightwit*, D., which has *Fightwit* however under the other head.

[2] *ex*, D.

[3] *Lethirwite*, B.; *Letherwithe*, Br.

[4] *id est*] Added from B., Gale.

[5] *proveniens*, ins. A.

[6] *nativo*, C.

[7] *Giltwite*, D.; *Giltwithe*, Br.

[8] *regis*, B.

[9] *vel Taillage*] om. B.

[10] *talage*, D.

[11] *taillagium*, Gale, *talliagium*, D.; and so below.

[12] *Danegeld*, A.

[13] *iij. denarios* after *terræ* in B.

[14] *hundred*, A.; *hundredus*, C.D., Gale.

[15] *quasi*, C.D.

[16] The latter part of this chapter varies verbally, but is the same in substance in C.D.; a few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are not noticed.

[17] B. omits reference.

[18] Transposed and altered in C.D.

[19] *quidem*, add. C.D.

[20] *fuit Romanis*, B.

[21] *quoque*] om. C.D.

[22] Gale adds: *viz., a tempore Julii Cæsaris per cccclxx. annos ferme.*

[23] *tamen*, C. (not D.)

trespas. Scot, a gaderynge in work of baylifes. Flittwyte, amendes i-doo for chydynge. Leyrewite,[1] amendes for liggynge by a bond womman. Hydage, taylage of hydes of lond. Danegeld,[2] taylage i-ȝeue to þe Danes, þat was þre pans of eueriche[3] bouata terræ, þat is, of eueriche oxeland. A wepentake and an hondred is al oon, for þe contray of an hondred townes were i-woned to ȝilde vppe wepene[4] in þe comynge of þe lord. Lastage,[5] custom i-chalanged in chepynges and in feyres. Stalage, custom for stondynge in stretes in feyre tyme. TREVISA.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

The kyngdom of Bretayne stood wiþoute departynge hool and alle oon kyngdom to þe Britouns fram þe firste Bruyt anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme ; [and fro Iulius Cesar his tyme][6] to Seuerus his tyme þis lond was vnder tribute to þe Romayns. Neuerþeles kynges þey hadde of þe same ilond. From Seuerus anon to þe laste[7] prince Gratian, successoures of Bretouns faillede, and Romaynes reignede in Bretayne. [Afterward þe Romanys lefte of þe regnynge in Britayne],[8]

---

commenge for stryvenge. Leirwite, that is to say, amendes commenge for the corrupcion of a woman natife. Gultewite, an amendes for a transgression. Scot, that is the paymente of a certeyne money to the vtilite of the lorde. Hidage other talage, that is to say, tallage of the hides of the londe. Danegelde, a tallage ȝiffen to the Danes of iij^d^. Wapentake and hundrede be the same as the precincte of an c. townes, whiche were wonte to yelde there weppens in the firste commenge of theire lorde. Lestage, that is a thynge required in feires. Stallage, an exaccion for stondenge in the hie weies in tyme of feires. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of realmes and of the merkes of theyme. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum. f. 69. a.

The monarchy of the yle of Briteyne stode inconcussede from the firste Brute to Iulius Cesar ; whiche yle paiede a tribute to the Romanes from the tyme of Iulius vn to the tyme of Seuerus ; the succession of Britones faylenge Romanes reignede in hit. At the laste, the Romanes

---

[1] So α. ; *Leyrwe*, MS.
[2] So α. ; *Danagild*, MS. ; *Danegheld*, Cx.
[3] *euericha*, MS.
[4] *towneswepene*, MS.
[5] *Lestage*, α., Cx.
[6] Added from Cx.
[7] So α. and Cx. ; *same*, MS.
[8] Added from α. and Cx.

longitudinem seu propter inevitabiles aliunde occupationes [1] regnare desistentibus, Scoti [2] et Picti Britanniam, omni armato milite per abductionem Maximi tyranni [3] vacuatam,[4] diutius afflixerunt; quousque Saxones a Britonibus invitati contra Pictos regem Hibernicum Gurmundum cum Pictis suis et [5] ipsos Britones cum Caretico rege suo de Loegria expulsos usque ad [6] Cambriam profugassent.[7] Sicque Saxones [9] victores effecti, prout quæque provincia potentior erat, reges proprios sibi [10] constituentes, terram Angliæ [11] in septem regna [12] diviserunt; quæ tamen postmodum successive in unam monarchiam sub principe Adelstano[13] coierunt.[14] Dani tamen a diebus Adelwolfi,[15] patris Aluredi, usque ad tempora Sancti [16] Edwardi tertii per centum septuaginta circiter annos, terram hanc jugiter infestaverunt, sed [17] per triginta annos in ea continue regnaverunt. Post Danos [18] vero Sanctus Edwardus tertius viginti tribus [19] annis et paulo plus,[20] et post eum Haroldus [21] novem mensibus regnum tenuit. Post quos Normanni in ea usque hodie præsederunt. Quod [22] quamdiu tenebunt in posterum, novit ille qui nihil ignorat. *Ranulphus.*[23] De septem vero regnis prædictis eorumque limitibus quando incepe-

[1] *tandem,* add. C. (not D.)

[2] Here and elsewhere the MSS. vary between *Scoti* and *Scotti.*

[3] *abductionem . . . tyranni*] Maximum tyrannum, C.D.

[4] *evacuatam,* A.B.

[5] *regem . . . et*] auxilio eorundem Pictorum regisque Gurmundi Hibernici, C.D.

[6] *in,* B., Gale.

[7] *Loegria . . . profugassent*] Northimbria et in mediterranea Anglia expulsos usque in Walliam detrusissent, C.D.

[8] *Sique,* B.; *Sic,* Gale.

[9] *Angli,* C.D.

[10] *sibi*] om. B.C.D.

[11] *Angliam,* A.

[12] *successive,* ins. C.D.

[13] *Athelstano,* B.

[14] *postmodum . . . coierunt*] paulatim defecerunt donec rex Saxonum Adelstanus, cæteris particulis in unum contractis, unica gauderet monarchia, C.D.

[15] *Athelwulfi,* Gale; *Ethelwlfi,* D.

[16] *regis,* Gale.

[17] *et,* add. C. (not D.)

[18] *Post Danos*] postmodum, C.D.

[19] 30, C.D.

[20] *et paulo plus*] om. C.D.

[21] *Haraldus,* B.D.

[22] *Quam,* C. (not D.)

[23] C.D. omit reference.

TREVISA.

for it was fer from [Rome],[1] oþer for greet besynesse þat þey hadde in oþer side. Þanne Scottes and Pictes by mysledynge of Maximus þe tyraunt pursued Bretayne, and werred þerynne wiþ greet strengþe of men of armes longe tyme, for to þe Saxones come at þe prayenge of [þe][1] Britouns aȝenst þe Pictes, and putte out Gurmund the Irische kyng wiþ his Pictes, and þe Britouns also wiþ here kyng, þat heet Careticus,[2] and drof hem out of Engelond in to Wales. And so þe Saxons were victors, and eueriche prouince, as he was strengere, made hem kynges; and so þey deled Engelond in seuene kyngdoms.[3] Neuerþeles afterward þese seuene kyngdoms eueriche after oþer come alle in to oon kyngdom al hool vnder þe prince Adelstone. Neuerþeles þe Danes pursewed þis lond from Athelwolf his tyme, þat was Alrudes[4] fader, to the þridde Seint Edwardes[5] tyme, aboute an hundred ȝere þre score and ten; but he reigned þerynne continualliche þritty ȝere. After þe Danes þe þridde Seynt Edward regned þere ynne þre and twenty ȝere and a litelwhat[6] more. And after hym Harald helde þe kyngdom nyne monþes. And after hem Normans haueþ i-regned þerynne anon to þis tyme; but how longe they scholde holde he woot [þat][7] no þing vnknoweþ. ℞. Of þe forsaide kyngdoms seuene, of here merkes, meres, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

levenge to reigne in hit, what for the longitude of trauaile and what for other occupaciones ineuitable, Scottes and Pictes wastede that londe of Briteyne with a grete hoste, tylle that the Saxones beenge victores chasede the Pictes and Scottes in to Wales. And then euery prouince after theire powere made to theyme kynges, diuidenge the grownde of Englonde in to vij. realmes, whiche come alle afterwarde by succession in to oon monarchye in the tyme of kynge Athelstan. The Danes trowblede that londe gretely from the tyme of Athelwulphus, fader to kynge Alurede, vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde the thrydde, by a c. lx. and x. yeres, reignenge by xxx^ti yeres continually in hit. Seynte Edwarde the thrydde regnede after the Danes xxiij^ti yere and more, and Haralde after hym by ix. monethes. After whom Normannes regnede in hit vn to oure tymes, God knowethe how longe that schalle continue. ℞. Of whiche vij. realmes aforeseide, and of the merkes of theyme,

---

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[2] *Carecticus*, Cx.
[3] Sentence varied in Cx.
[4] *Aluredes*, *a.*
[5] *Edward his*, *a.*
[6] *what*] om. Cx.
[7] Added from *a.*; construction varied in Cx., who has a few trivial alterations in some of the following sentences.

rint,[1] quantumve [2] duraverint [3] aliqua breviter hic perstringam. *Alfridus.*[4] Primum regnum fuit Cantuariorum, ab australi oceano usque ad flumen [5] Thamisiæ protensum. In quo primus Hengistus [6] sub anno Domini secundum Dionysium CCCCLV°.[7] regnare cœpit, et duravit regnum illud per annos [8] ccclxviii.[9] sub regulis quindecim; donec, Baldredo [10] expulso, Egbertus [11] rex Westsaxonum illud regnum suo annecteret imperio.[12] Secundum regnum fuit Southsaxoniæ, habens ab oriente Cantiam,[13] ab austro mare et [14] Vectam insulam, ab occidente Hampteshire,[15] ab aquilone Southreyam;[16] in quo primus Elle, cum tribus filiis suis, tricesimo [17] ab adventu Anglorum anno cœpit regnare. Quod quidem regnum cito post in aliorum jura [18] transivit. Tertium regnum fuit Estsaxoniæ, habens ab oriente mare,[19] ab occidente pagum Londoniæ, ab austro Thamisiam, ab aquilone Southfolk;[20] cujus loci [21] reges a primo Sabberto [22] usque ad tempora Dacorum per decem reges [23] fere sub [24] aliis regibu parebant; frequentius tamen et diutius regibus Merciorum [25] subjacebant; donec rex Westsaxonum Egbertus regnum illud suo annecteret imperio. Quartum

---

1 *inceperunt*, B.D., Gale.
2 *quantumque*, C.D.
3 *duraverunt*, B.D., Gale.
4 *Alfridus*] om. C.D.; *Alfredus*, B.
5 *finem*, B.
6 *primum Engistus*, B.
7 *lv.*, B. (error of scribe.)
8 *per annos*] om. E.
9 *ccclviii.*, Gale.
10 *Bladredo*, C. (not D.)
11 *Eggebertus*, B.
12 *regno*, C.D.
13 *Ousiam*, B.
14 *ad*, D.
15 *Hamptunschire*, D.
16 *Southiam*, B.; *Southeram*, Gale.
17 *xxx.* after *Anglorum*, B.
18 So A.B.C.D.; *cito post* after *jura*, B.; *regna*, E.
19 *Gallicum mare*, Gale.
20 *Sowtfolk*, B.
21 *loci*] om. C.D.
22 *Saberto*, A.B.C.D., Gale.
23 *regulos*, C.D.
24 *semper*, C.D.
25 *Marceorum*, A.

bondes, whan þey bygonne and how longe þey durede here I schal somwhat schortliche telle. *Alfridus.* Þe firste kyngdom was þe kyngdom of Kent, þat strecceþ from þe est occean anoon to þe ryuer of Temse. Þere reigned þe firste Hengistus, and bygan to reigne by Denys acountes þe ȝere of oure Lord foure hondred and fife and fifty. Þat kyngdom durede þre hondred ȝere þre score and eiȝte vnder fiftene kynges, for to þat Baldred was i-putte out. And[1] Eggebert, kyng of Westsaxons, ioyned þat kyngdom to his owne. Þe secounde kyngdom was of Souþsaxon, þat hadde in þe est side Kent, in þe souþ þe see and þe yle of Wiȝt, in þe west Hampschire, and in þe norþ Souþeray. Þere Ella regnede first wiþ his þre sones, and bygan to reigne þe ȝere after þe comynge of Angles euen þritty; but þat kyngdom wiþynne a schort tyme passede into oþere kyngdoms. Þe þridde kyngdom was of Estsaxon, and hadde in þe est side þe see, and in þe west þe contray of Londoun, in þe souþ Temse, in þe north Soþfolk. Þe kynges of this contray Estsaxon from þe firste Sabertes tyme anon to þe tyme of Danes, ten kynges, were somdel sugette to oþere kynges; noþeles ofteste and lengeste þey were vnder þe kynges of Mercia forto þat tyme whan Egebert kyng, kyng of Wessaxoun, ioyned TREVISA.

---

when thei began, and how longe thei haue indurede, y schalle towche in parte. *Alfridus.* The firste realme was of men of Cawnturbery, protendede from the sowthe occean vn to the floode of Thamys, in whom Hengiste roignede firste in the yere of oure Lorde God, after Dionysius, cccc. lv. yere, and that realme durede by ccc. lxviij. yere vnder xv. lytelle kynges, vntil, Baldredus[2] expulsede, Egbertus kynge of Westesaxones added that realme to his impire. The secunde realme was of Sowthesex, hauenge on the este to hit Kente, of the sowthe the see and the yle of Wiȝhte, at the weste Hampteschire, at the northe Southerey, in whom Elle with his thre childer began to reigne firste in the xxx^{ti} yere from the commenge of Englische men, whiche realme wente soone after in to other realmes. The thrydde realme was of Estesex, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Fraunce, on the weste the cite of London, on the sowthe Thamys, on the northe to hit, Southefolke. The kynges of whiche place from the firste Seberte vn to the tyme of Danes, by x. kynges, were obediente to other kynges, moste specially to the kynges of þe Marches, vn til that Egberte, kynge of Westesaxones, subduede hit to his impyre. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 69 b.

---

[1] *And*] So α. and Cx.; *of*, MS. | [2] *Haldredus*, Harl. MS.

regnum fuit Estanglorum, comprehendens[1] Northfolk et Southfolk, habens[2] ad orientem et aquilonem mare,[3] ad circium[4] Cantebruggeshire,[5] ad occidentem Fossam Sancti Edmundi et Hertefordshire,[6] ad austrum Essex.[7] Et duravit[8] hoc regnum sub duodecim regulis donec, occiso rege Edmundo, Dani utrumque regnum Estangliæ[9] et Estsaxonum sibi usurparent.[10] Quibus postmodum[11] Danis[12] aut fugatis[13] aut subactis, rex Edwardus senior ambo illa regna suo annexuit[14] imperio. Quintum regnum fuit Westsaxonum, omnium regnorum durabilius, habens ab oriente Southsaxoniam, ab aquilone Thamisiam,[15] ab austro et occidente[16] oceanum. In quo cœpit regnare Cerdicus[17] cum filio suo[18] Kynrico,[19] anno Domini secundum Dionysium DXIX°., ab adventu[20] Anglorum lxxj°.; in quod[21] regnum cætera[22] regna transierunt.[23] Sextum regnum fuit Merciorum cæteris regnis[24] magis spatiosum, cujus limites fuerunt ad occasum flumen[25] Dee, juxta Cestriam,[26] et flumen Sabrinæ juxta Salopiam usque[27] Bristolliam; ad ortum vero[28] mare orientale;[29] ad

---

[1] *continens*, C.D.; *apprehendens*, B.
[2] *habensque*, C.D.
[3] *mare*] oceanum, C.D.
[4] *circuitum*, Gale.
[5] *Canthrigschire*, B.
[6] *Herthfordschire*, B.
[7] *Estsex*, B.; *Estsaxoniam*, C.D.
[8] *cucurritque*, C.; *curritque*, D.
[9] *Est Anglorum*, Gale, C.D.; *Est Angł*, A.B.
[10] *usurparunt*, C.D.
[11] *tamen*, C.D.
[12] *Danis postmodum*, B.
[13] *aut fugatis*] affugatis, B.
[14] *subjunxit*, C.; *adjunxit*, D.; *annexit*, B.
[15] *flumen Thamisiæ*, C.D.
[16] *mare oceanum*, C.D. After *oceanum* Gale adds, *viz.*, *usque ad ultimum finem Cornubiæ.*
[17] *Cordicus*, Gale.
[18] *quo . . . suo*] om. B.
[19] *Henrico*, C. (not D.)
[20] *vero*, add. C.D.
[21] *quod quidem*, D.
[22] *certa*, B.
[23] *paulative* (sic) *coierunt*, C.D. (with other slight variations.)
[24] *regnis*] om. C.D.
[25] *flumen*] om. C.D.
[26] *Legecestriam*, C.D.
[27] *usque ad*, A.
[28] *vero*] om. C.D.
[29] *occidentale*, C. (not D.)

þat kyngdom to his owne. Þe fourþe kyngdom was of Est Angles, and conteynede Norþfolk and Souþfolk, and haþ[1] in þe est side[2] and in þe norþ þe see, in þe norþ-west Cantebriggeschire,[3] in þe west Seynt Edmond his diche, and Hertfordschire, and in þe souþ Essex. Þis kyngdom durede vnder twelue kynges,[4] forto that tyme whan kyng Edmond was i-slawe, and þe Danes wrongfulliche took boþe the kyngdoms of Est Angles and of Est Saxon. Afterward þe Danes were i-putte and i-dryue away, oþer i-made sogett. And þe elder kyng Edward ioynede boþe þese kyngdoms to his owne. Þe fifte kyngdom was of Westsaxon, and durede lengeste of alle þese kyngdoms, and hadde in þe est[5] side Souþsaxon, in þe norþ Temse, in þe souþ and west þe see of occean. In þat kyngdom reigned Cerdik wiþ his sone Kenrik, and bygan to regne þe ȝere of oure Lord fife hondred and nyntene, and after þe comynge of Angles þre score ȝere and enleuene,[6] so seiþ Denys. Þe oþere kyngdoms passede into þis kyngdom. Þe sixte kyngdom was of Mercia, and was grettest of al. Þe merkes and þe meres þerof were in þe west side þe ryuer Dee faste by Chestre, and Seuarne faste by Schroisbury[7] and anon to Brestowe ; in TREVISA.

The iiij^the realme was of Este Englische men, comprehendenge Northefolke and Southefolke, hauenge at the este to hit and on the northe the see, at the weste the dyche of Seynte Edmunde and Hertefordschire, at the sowthe Estesex ; and this realme durede vnder xij. kynges, vn tyl Seynte Edmunde sleyne, the Danes vsurpede the realme of Estenglonde, and also of Estesex ; whom kynge Edwarde the senior put to his realme, the Danes other put to fliȝhte other subacte. The v^the realme was of Westesaxones, moste durable of alle realmes, hauenge on the este to hit Sowthesex, on the northe Thamys, on the sowthe and weste the occean. In whom Cerdicus began to reigne with Kymricus his son, after Dionysius, the yere of oure Lorde God v^c. xix. yere, from the commenge of Englische men lxxj. yere. In to whom oþer realmes wente. The sexte realme was of the Marches, more large then other realmes. The merkes of whom were, at the weste, the floode of Dee nye to Chestre, and the floode of Seuerne nye to Shrewesbury vn to Bristowe, at the este the MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *had*, α.
2 So α. ; *in west side*, MS. (*w* being erased.)
3 *Cambrygeshire*, Cx.
4 So Cx. ; *kyngdoms*, MS.
5 So Cx. ; *west*, MS. (first hand).
6 *eleaene*, α.
7 *Schrouesbury*, α.

austrum flumen Thamisiæ usque Londoniam; ab aquilone[1] flumen Humbræ, descendendo occidentaliter[2] usque ad flumen Merse,[3] quousque juxta[4] cornu Wyralliæ[5] descendat in mare occidentale. In hoc pago regnavit[6] primo Penda, filius Wybbæ,[7] anno Domini secundum Dionysium DCXXVI^{o}., ab adventu Anglorum clxxv^{o}.,[8] stetitque hoc regnum sub regibus xviij. per annos circiter cclxiij. usque ad ultimum Colwolfum;[9] cui Dani, expulso Burdredo rege, regnum illud[10] tradiderant custodiendum. Verum[11] rex Westsaxonum Edwardus senior, expulsis Danis, regnum Merciorum suo annexuit imperio. Erat tamen hoc regnum in sui primordio in tres partes divisum; scilicet in Occidentales Mercios, in[12] Mediterraneos, et in[13] Orientales Mercios. Septimum regnum fuit Northimbrorum;[14] cujus limites fuerunt ab ortu et occasu oceanus; ab austro flumen Humbræ,[15] descendendo versus occidentem,[16] per fines comitatuum Nothingham[17] et Derbeye[18] usque ad flumen de[19] Mersee; ab[20]

[1] *ad aquilonem vero*, C.D.

[2] *discendendo occidentaliter*] om. C.D.

[3] *Mersee*, B., Gale.

[4] *quousque ad*, B.; *juxta*, om. C.D.

[5] *Wiralliæ*, A.B.D,; *Wirhalliæ*, Gale.

[6] *regnavit*] regnare cepit, C.D.

[7] *Wible*, A.B.D.

[8] 185, B.

[9] *Colwlfum*, A.; *Colvulfum*, D.; *Colwulfum*, Gale.

[10] *illud*] om. C.D.; *illum*, A.

[11] *Iterum*, C.

[12] *in*] om. B.C.

[13] *in*] om. C.D.

[14] *Northamhimbrorum*, B.

[15] *Humbriæ*, B.

[16] *versus occidentem*] om. A.

[17] *Notyngham*, B.

[18] *Derbeie*, B.; *Derbi*, A.; *Derbie*, D.

[19] *de*] om. C.D.

[20] *ad*, D.

þe est þe est see, in þe souþ Temse anon to Londoun; in þe norþ þe ryuer of[1] Humber. And so westward and dounward anon to þe ryuer Mersee anon to þe[2] corner[3] of Wyreale;[4] þere Humber falleþ in to þe west see. Penda, Wibbes sone, regned first in þis kyngdom þe ȝere of oure Lorde sexe hondred and sixe and twenty, so seiþ Denys, and from þe comynge of Angles an hondred ȝere þre score and fiftene. Þis kyngdom durede vnder eiȝtene kynges aboute a two hondred ȝere, þre score and fiftene,[5] anon to þe laste Colwulf; [to þe whiche Colwulf][6] þe Danes bytook þat kyngdom to kepe, whan Burdred þe kyng was i-putte out. But[7] þe elder Edward þe kyng putte out Danes and ioynede þe kyngdom[8] of Mercia to his owne kyngdom; noþeles at þe bygynnynge þis[9] kyngdom of Mercia was i-deled aþre, in West Mercia, in Myddel Mercia, and Est Mercia. Þe seuenþe kyngdom was Norþhamhymbrorum, þat is, þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond. Þe meres and þe[10] merkes þerof[11] were by west and by est þe see of occean, by souþ þe ryuer of Humber, and so downward toward þe west by þe endes of þe schires of Notyngham and of Derby TREVISA.

---

este[12] see, at the sowthe the floode of Thamys vn to London, on the northe the water of Humbre, goenge after the weste vn to the water of Mercie vn to the ende of Wirhalle, where hit descendethe in to the Weste see. Penda, the son of Wibbe, reignede firste in those costes, after Dionysius, in the yere off oure Lorde vj$^{c.}$ xvj., and from the commenge of Englische men a c. yere lxxv., whiche realme contynuede vnder xviij. kynges abowte ij$^{c.}$ yere lx. and iij., vn to the laste Colwulphus; whiche expulsede, the Danes made Burdredus kynge of hit. That realme was diuidede in to thre partes in the firste begynnenge, that is to say, in to the Weste Marches, in to the Myddelle Marches, and in to the Este Marches. The vij^{the} realme was of Northumbrelonde, the merkes of whom were, on the este and on the weste, the occean; on the sowthe, the water of Humbre; descendenge towarde the weste by the costes of the schires of Notyngham and of Derbye vn to the water MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *of*] om. α. and Cx.
2 *þe*] om. α.
3 So Cx.; *ryuer*, MS.
4 *Wirhal*, Cx.
5 *about two clxiij.*, Cx.
6 Added from α. and Cx.
7 So α. and Cx.; *by*, MS.
8 MS. (not α. or Cx.) adds *to kepe.*
9 *þis*] MS. (not α. or Cx.)
10 *þe*] om. α.
11 So α. and Cx.; *of þe*, MS.
12 *weste*, Harl. MS.

aquilone autem [1] mare Scoticum, quod Scotice dicitur Forth, Britannice Werid,[2] Anglice Scottisshsee.[3] Hoc autem regnum Northimbrorum [4] primitus [5] divisum fuit in duas provincias; in Deiram [6] ad austrum, et in [7] Berniciam ad aquilonem; quæ duo regna flumen [8] Tyne [9] tunc temporis diviserat.[10] Nam regnum Deirorum a fluvio [11] Humbriæ usque ad flumen Tyne [12] extendebatur; regnum vero Berniciorum a flumine Tyne usque ad mare Scoticum prædictum [13] porrigebatur, etiam quando Picti ibidem morabantur, sicut patet [14] per Bedam, libro tertio, capitulo secundo,[15] ubi dicit quod [16] Ninian [17] vir sanctus convertit australes.[18] In Bernicia cœpit primus [19] regnare Ida, anno gratiæ,[20] secundum Dionysium, DXLVII°. In Deira vero [21] rex Elle, anno gratiæ [22] DXLIX°. Quæ [23] duo regna sub duobus regibus, ut præmittitur, interdum divisa quandoque sub uno rege redintegrata cucurrerunt [24] sub Anglis regibus [25] quasi [26] viginti per annos cccxxj. Demum,[27] Osbricto [28] et Elle [29] nono anno regni sui per

---

[1] *vero,* C.D.; the latter has *ad aquilonem.*

[2] *Werith,* C.D.

[3] *Scotischsee,* A.B.; *Scottisse,* D.; *sicud Scotice,* C.

[4] *Northanhimbrorum,* B.; om. D

[5] *Northimbrorum primitus*] primo, C. (not D., but omits *North.*)

[6] *in Deiram*] Deiram scilicet, C.D.

[7] *in*] om. C.D.

[8] *flumen*] om. C. (not D.)

[9] *Tine,* A.

[10] *dividebat,* C.D.

[11] *flumine,* B.

[12] *Tine,* A.

[13] *prædictum*] ubi nunc est villa Sancti Johannis, C.D.

[14] *etiam...patet*] C.D. thus: Quod autem austrina pars Albaniæ, quæ est infra Twedam et mare Scoticum prædictum, continens Galwediam et Lodoveiam, tunc pertinuit ad regnum Berniciorum et Pictis ibidem commorantibus patet, &c.

[15] *primo,* C.D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 4.

[16] *ubi dicit quod*] primo; sic scribentem, C.D.

[17] *Ninianus,* A.

[18] *Pictos,* &c., ins. C.D.; *australes,* &c., A., Gale.

[19] *primo,* A.; *primum,* Gale.

[20] *gratiæ*] om. B.

[21] *vero*] om. C.D.

[22] *gratiæ*] om. B.

[23] *Hæc,* C.D.

[24] *concurrerent,* B.

[25] *regibus Anglis,* B.

[26] *circiter,* C.D.

[27] *Dehinc,* C.D.

[28] *Esbricto,* B.

[29] So A.D., Gale; *Ello,* E.

TREVISA.

anon to þe ryuere of Merce,[1] and by norþe þe Scottische see, þat hatte Forþe in Scotisshe, Wered [2] in Brittisshe, þe Scottische see in Engelische. Þis kyngdom of Norþhumberlond was first i-deled in tweie prouinces; þat oon was þe souþ side, and hete Deira; and þat oþer was þe norþ side, and hete Brenicia, as it were tweyne kyngdoms. And þe ryuer Tyne departed þese tweyne kyngdoms þat tyme. For þe kyngdom of Deyra tillede [3] and streiȝte from þe ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuere of Tyne. Þe kyngdom of Brenicia tillede from Tyne [4] to þe Scottisshe see. And whan Pictes wonede þerynne, as Beda seiþ, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, þat Ninian, þat holy man, conuertede men of þe souþ side. Ida þe kyng reigned [þere first and began to reigne] [5] þe [ȝ]ere [6] of oure Lord fyue hondred and seuen and fourty, so seiþ Dyones. [7] In Deyra reignede kyng [8] Elle, þe ȝere of oure Lord fyue hondred and nyne and fourty. Þese tweie kyngdoms were oþer while, as hit is i-seide, y-deled bytwene tweye kynges, and somtym al hool vnder oo kyng, and durede as it were vnder twenty Englische kynges þre hondred ȝe[re] [9] and oon and twenty. At þe laste Osbrutus and Elle were i-slawe in þe nynþe ȝere of here

MS. HARL. 2261.

of Mersee; of the northe, the Scottes see, callede by the langage of theyme Forth, in Briteyne langage Werid, in Englische Scothisse. That realme of Northehumbrelonde was diuidede at the firste tyme in to ij. prouinces, in to Deira at the sowthe, and in to Bernicia at the northe; whiche ij. realmes the water of Tyne diuidede in that tyme. For that realme callede Deira was extendede from the floode of Humbre vn to the water of Tyne. That other parte callede Bernicia was extendede from the water of Tyne to the Scottes see when the Pictes dwellede there, as hit is schewede by Bede, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, where he seithe that Ninian the holy man conuertede the sowtherne Pictes. Hida began to reigne firste in Bernicia, after Dionysius, the yere of grace v$^{c.}$ xlvij^{ti}; and kynge Elle began to reigne in Deira, after Dionysius, in the yere of grace v$^{c.}$ xlix.: whiche realmes continuede otherwhile vnder oon kynge, otherwhile vnder tweyne, as vnder xx^{ti} kynges as by ccc. yere xxj^{ti}. At the laste, Osbrutus and Elle sleyne

[1] *Mersee, α.*, Cx.
[2] *Weryd, α.*; *Werid*, Cx.
[3] *and tillede*, MS. Sentence varied in Cx.
[4] So *α.* and Cx.; *Tyme*, MS.
[5] Added from *α.* and Cx.
[6] *ȝere, α.*
[7] *Dionys, α.*
[8] *þe kyng, α.*, Cx.
[9] *ȝere, α.*

Danos occisis, Northumbria[1] vacavit sine rege octo annis. Extunc[2] Dani regnaverunt in ea triginta sex[3] annis, usque ad monarchiam regis Adelstani,[4] qui sub anno Domini DCCCXXVII°., subactis Danis, Wallanis[5] et Scotis[6] regibus, solus et primus[7] monarchiam Angliæ tenuit. Quod autem fluvius[8] de Mersee fuerat[9] aliquotiens[10] terminus et limes Merciorum et Northimbrorum[11] patet dupliciter;[12] primo per significationem[13] vocabuli, nam[14] Meresee[15] Anglice sonat terminans mare, quia[16] disterminabat unum regnum ab alio.[17] Item in chronicis Henrici[18] et Alfridi habetur, quod rex Edwardus senior firmavit castrum apud Mamcestre in terra[19] Northimbrorum;[20] sed constat quod urbs Mamcestre[21] vix distat tribus miliaribus a fluvio[22] de Mersee.[23]

---

1 *terra*, C.D
2 *Et tunc*, Gale.
3 *septem*, B.
4 *Athelstani*, B.; *Ethelstani*, D.
5 *Wallis*, Gale.
6 *Danis . . . Scotis*] Scotorum et Wallanorum, C.D.
7 *omnium*, add. C.D. (with slight variations.)
8 *a fluvio*, B.
9 *fuit*, Gale.
10 *fuerat aliquotiens*] fuit, C.D.
11 *Northanhumbrorum*, B.
12 *dupliciter*] om. D.
13 *interpretationem*, C.D.
14 *nam*] om. C D.
15 *Mersee*, B.
16 *quod*, E.
17 *quia . . . alio*] Latine, C.D.
18 *Henrici de Huntyngdon*, C.D.; *Henre et Alfre*, A.
19 *in terra*] om. B.
20 *Northanhumbrorum*, B.
21 *Mamcestriæ*, B., Gale; *Mancestre*, D.
22 *flumine*, A.B.
23 The latter part of the sentence slightly altered in C.D., which add *cujus castri vestigia adhuc exstant*.

kyngdom ; þe Danes slowh hem ; and Norþhumberlonde was voyde wiþoute kyng ei3te 3ere. Þanne afterward þe Danes reigned in Norþhumberlond sixe and þritty 3ere anoon to þe oonynge[1] of þe kyngdome of Athelstone ; he made sugett þe[2] kynges Danys and Scottische and Walsche, and regned first al on in Engelond, and helde þe kyngdom of Engelond hool and al oon kyngdom. Þat was þe 3ere of oure Lorde ey3te hondred and seuene and twenty. Þat ryuer of Mercie[3] was somtyme þe marke and mere bytwene þe kyngdom of Mercia and þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond. Þat may be i-schewed in tweie maneres ; first by þe propurte of þis word Mersee, þat is as moche to mene, as a se[4] þat is a bound and a mere ; for he departeþ oon kyngdom from anoþer. Also it is i-write in cronikes of Henry and of Alfrede, þat kyng Edward þe Eldere fastened a castel at Mamcestre[5] in Norþhumberlond ; but þat citee Mamcestre is from þe ryuer of Mersee scarsliche þre myle. TREVISA.

---

by Danes in the ixthe year of theire reigne, Northumbrelonde was vacante of a kynge viijthe yeres. And from that tyme the Danes reignede in hit xxxvjti yeres, vn to the monarchy off kynge Athelstan, whiche obteynede the monarchye of all Englonde in the yere of oure Lorde viijc. xxvij., subduenge the kynges of Danes, of Wales, and of Scottes. That the water of Mersee was somme tyme the terme other the merke of the marches of Northumbrelonde, hit may be schewede by ij. maneres ; firste by the significacion of the name, for Mersee in Englische sowndethe as a see terminatiue, for hit disterminate oon realme from an other. Also hit is hade in the cronicles of Henricus and Alfride, that kynge Edwarde the senior sette the castelle at Mamcestre in the londe of Northumbrelonde, whiche cite is from the water of Mersee but by iij. myles. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *to onynge*, *a.*
2 So *a.* and Cx. ; *to þe*, MS.
3 *Merse*, *a.*
4 *ase*, *a.* ; *a see*, Cx. ; *asse*, MS.
5 *Mauncestre*, Cx.

Cap. LII.

De episcopatibus et sedibus.

Alfridus.[1] Sedes archiepiscoporum in Britannia[2] tres fuerunt tempore Lucii, regis Britonum Christiani primi; videlicet apud Londoniam; apud[3] Eboracum; apud Caerusc, Urbem Legionum in Glamorgantia;[4] quibus tunc subjecti fuerant[5] xxviij. episcopi, flamines tunc vocati; videlicet Londoniensi metropolitano Cornubia et tota Loegria usque ad flumen Humbræ; Eboracensi vero tota terra Northimbrana ab arcu Humbræ fluminis cum tota[6] Albania; Urbi Legionum subjacuit tota Cambria, septem tunc episcopis, nunc vero[7] quatuor suffraganeis insignita, quam flumen Sabrinæ tunc[8] secernebat a Loegria. *Willelmus de Pontificibus,*[9] *libro primo.* Sed temporibus[10] Saxonum,[11] quamvis[12] beatus Gregorius privilegium archiepiscopale Londoniæ[13] concesserit,[14] Augustinus tamen ab eo missus,[15] sedulitate hospitis sui regis

---

[1] *Alfridus*] om. B.
[2] *in Britannica* after *fuerunt* in B.
[3] *apud*] om. B.
[4] Sentence altered and transposed in C.D.
[5] *erant*, C.D.
[6] *reliqua parte Albaniæ*, C.D. (with other slighter variations.)
[7] *autem*, C.; an erasure in D.
[8] *tunc*] om. C.D.
[9] *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.
[10] *tempore*, C.D.
[11] *temporibus Saxonum*] om. B.
[12] *licet*, C.D.
[13] *Londonio*, Gale.
[14] *concesserat*, C.D.
[15] *ab eo missus*] om. C.D.

De episcopatibus et sedibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum secundum. TREVISA.

Alfridus. Lucius was þe first Cristene kyng of Britons.[1] In his tyme were þre archebisshoppes sees in Bretayne; oon was at Londoun; anoþer at York; and þe þridde at Caerrusk,[2] þe Cite of Legiouns in Glomorgan.[3] Þat citee hatte now Caerleon. To þese þre archebisshoppes sees were suget eyȝte and twenti bisshoppis, and were i-cleped flamynes. To þe archebisshoppes see of Londoun was sugett Cornwaile and al myddel Engelond anon to Humber; to ȝork al Norþhumberlond from þe bowe of Humber wiþ all Scotlond; to Caerleon all Wales. Þere were in Wales seuene bisshoppes, and now beeþ but foure. Þo Seuarne departe[4] Engelond and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.*[5] But in Saxones tyme, þey Seint Gregorie hadde i-graunted Londoun þe priuilege of þe archebisshoppes see, neuerþeles Seynt Austyn þat was i-sent in to Engelond by Seint Gregorie torned þe archebisshoppes see out of Londoun vnto[6] Caunterbury, after Seint Gregories day

---

Of the byschoperyches and seetes. Capitulum quinquagesimum secundum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Alfridus. There were thre seetes of archebyschoppes in Englonde in the tyme of Lucius, kynge of Briteyne, firste kynge y-baptizede, that is to say, at London, at Yorke, and at Caerhurrt,[7] the Cite of Legiones in Glomorgan; to whom xxviij[ti] bischoppes were subiecte, callede flamines. And to the metropolitan of London alle the cuntre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was subiecte vn to the floode of Humbre. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humbre, with alle Scottelande, was subiecte to tharchebischop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byschoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bischoppes, and now Wales is made nowble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Seuerne dividede that tyme from Englonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.* But thawȝhe blessede Gregory grawntede thro his priuilege the seete of tharchebisschoppe to be at London; neuertheles Seynte Austyn, sende from hym in to Englond, after the dethe of Blessede Gregory caused tharchebischoppe seete to be removede from London to Canterbery, thro helpe of f. 70. b.

---

[1] *the first kynge cristend of the Brytons*, Cx.; who has a few other trivial alterations below..

[2] *Caerusk*, a.

[3] *Glamorgan*, a., Cx.

[4] *departed*, Cx.

[5] Added from a.

[6] *into*, a.

[7] Doubtless an error for *Caerhusc*.

Ethelberti, civiumque Cantuariensium caritate captus, metropolitanam[1] sedem[2] post mortem Gregorii ad Cantuariam transtulit, ubi usque hodie permansit; nisi quod medio tempore Offa rex Merciorum, Cantuaritis[3] infensus,[4] honorem primatus ab eis tulit, et Lichefeldensem episcopum Aldulphum, annuente Adriano papa muneribus fortassis inclinato, archiepiscopali pallio pro tempore suo insignivit.[5] Quod tamen[6] sub Kenulpho rege restitutum est.[7] Eboracensis honor[8] ab initio usque hodie ibidem duravit, quamvis Albania processu temporis ab ejus subjectione se subtraxerit.[9] *Giraldus, in*[10] *Itinerario, libro secundo.*[11] Ab Urbe autem Legionum usque ad Meneviam, quæ est ad occidentem Demetiæ supra Hibernicum[12] mare sita, translata est sedes metropolitana, tempore[13] Sancti David sub[14] Arthuro rege; a cujus tempore usque ad Sampsonem archiepiscopum, sederunt xxiij. archiepiscopi. Tandem ingruente per Cambriam flava peste, quam ictericiam vocant, Sampson episcopus[15]

---

[1] *metropolitanatum*, B.
[2] *sedem*] om. B.; *tamen*, A.
[3] *Cantuar̃*, B.
[4] *infestus*, C.D.; *offensus*, B.
[5] So A.B.D.; *insignit*, E.; *decoravit*, Gale.
[6] *tandem*, C.D.
[7] *Cantuariæ*, add. C.D.
[8] *vero honor*, D.
[9] *subtraxit*, Gale.
[10] *in*] Added from B. and Gale. The reference is to lib. ii. c. 1. Trevisa's reference is incorrect.
[11] C.D. omit reference, and *autem*.
[12] *Hiberniæ*, C.D.
[13] *sub tempore*, A.
[14] *ab*, D.
[15] *archiepiscopus*, C. (not D.)

TREVISA.

at þe prayer of kyng Athelberd and þe[1] citezeins and burgeys[2] of Caunterbury. Þere þe erchebisshoppes see haþ endured[3] forto[4] now. Saue þat in þe mene tyme Offa, kyng of Mercia, was wrooþ wiþ men of Caunterbury, and byname hem þat worschippe, and worschipped Aldulf, bisshop of Lichefeld, wiþ þe archebisshoppes pal by assent of Adrian þe pope vppon caas by ȝiftes i-sent. Neuerþeles vnder Kenulph þe kyng it was restored to Caunterbury aȝen. Þe worschippe of þe see of ȝork haþ i-dured þere alwey and dureth ȝit; þey Scotlond be wiþdrawe from his subiection[5] by passynge of tyme. *Giraldus in Itin., libro primo.* Þe archebisshoppis see was i-torned out of Caerleoun in to Meneuia, þat is in þe west side of Demecia, vppon þe Irische see, in Seint Dauyes[6] tyme vnder kyng Arthur.[7] From[8] Seint Dauyes[6] tyme to Sampson þe archebisshoppes tyme were in Meneuia archebisshoppis þre and twenty. Afterward fel a pestilence in to al Wales of þe ȝelowe yuel[9] þat is i-cleped þe iaundys, and þan Sampson þe archebisshop took wiþ hym þe palle, and wente

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

kynge Ethelberte and of the citesynnes of Canterbury, where hit remanethe to this tyme presente. But that a certeyn season folowenge, kynge Offa, contrarius to men of Canterbury, removede the honor of the primate from theym, thro the priuilege graunted by Adrian the pope, vn to the chirche of Lichefelde, as for his tyme; whiche honor was restorede ageyne in the tyme of kynge Kenulphus. The honor of the chirche off Yorke hathe contynuede there from the begynnenge of hit vn to this tyme presente; thauȝhe Scottelonde withdrawede hit from the subieccion of hit in processe of tyme. *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.* The seete of the metropolitan was translate from the Cite of Legiones vn to Meneuia, at the weste of Sowthe Wales, sette on the see of Yrlonde, in the tyme of Seynte Dauid, vnder kynge Arthure; from the tyme of whom vn to the tyme of Sampson the bischop xiij^ti archebischoppes were þer. At the laste an infirmitie reignenge in Wales, whiche was callede the iawndres, Sampson the bischoppe, takenge with hym the palle, wente

---

[1] *þe*] om. *a.*, Cx.
[2] *burgesyes*, Cx.
[3] *i-dured*, *a.*; *dured*, Cx.
[4] *vnto*, Cx.
[5] So Cx; *suggestioun*, MS.
[6] *Dauids*, Cx. (twice).
[7] MS. (not Cx.) adds by a clerical error (see below), *Meneuia now hatte*, and no more.
[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *form*, MS.
[9] *evel*, *a.*

sumpto secum[1] pallio Armoricam Britanniam adiit, ac sedi[2] Dolensi præsedit; a quo tempore[3] usque ad dies[4] Henrici primi Angliæ[5] regis sederunt apud Meneviam, quæ Sancti David dicitur, xxi. episcopi vel propter ignaviam vel propter[6] paupertatem pallio carentes; semper tamen usque tunc episcopi Walliæ a Menevensi fuerunt consecrati, et ipse similiter ab aliis Walliæ episcopis tanquam a suffraganeis fuerat consecratus, nulla penitus[7] alteri ecclesiæ facta professione vel subjectione. Cæteri vero succedentes episcopi, regio urgente mandato, Cantuariæ consecrationem accipiunt;[8] in cujus investituræ et subjectionis signum Bonefacius archiepiscopus[9] Cantuariensis, tempore Henrici secundi[10] crucis legatione fungens, in singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus Cambriæ primus omnium Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum[11] missam solemniter celebravit. *Ranulphus.*[12] Sed[13] hodie in tota Anglia solummodo duo sunt primates Cantuariensis et Eboracensis; Cantuariensi[14] tredecim in Anglia et quatuor in Wallia episcopi sunt subjecti; Eboracensis vero duos duntaxat habet[15] suffraganeos,

---

[1] *secum*] om. C.D.
[2] *sede*, C.D.
[3] *tempore*] om. A.
[4] *tempora*, C.D.
[5] *Anglorum*, C.D.
[6] *ignaviam vel propter*] om. C.D.
[7] *nulla penitus*] om. C. (not D.)
[8] *suscipiunt*, C.D.; *recipiunt*, A.B., Gale.
[9] *archiepiscopus*] om. C.D.
[10] *sanctæ*, add. A.
[11] *episcoporum*, C.D
[12] *Ranulphus*] om. B.D.
[13] *Sed*] Ita igitur, C.D.
[14] *Cantuariensi*] om. C. (not D.)
[15] *habet hodie*, C.D.; E. omits *habet*.

TREVISA.

in to Bretayne Armorica,[1] þe oþer Bretayne, and was bisshop of Dolensis. From þat tyme to þe firste kynge Henries tyme kyng of Engelond were at Meneuia, þat hatte Seint Dauyes, oon and twenty bisshoppes alle wiþ oute palle, wheþer it were for vnkunnynge oþer for pouert. Neuerþeles[2] alwey forto þat tyme þe bisshoppes of Wales were i-sacred of þe bisshop of Meneuia of Seint Dauyes; and þe bisshop of Meneuia was i-sacred of þe bisshoppes of Wales[3] as of his owne suffragans,[4] and made non professioun noþer subiection[5] to non oþer chirche. Oþer bisshoppes þat come afterward were i-sacred at Caunterbury by compellynge of þe kynges heste. In tokenynge[6] of þat sacrynge and subiection Bonefas, archebisshop of Caunterbury, þat was legat of þe croys, song in euery cathedral cherche of Wales, solempneliche a masse. He was þe firste archebisshop of Caunterbury þat so dede in Wales, and þat was i-do in þe secounde kyng Henries tyme. ℞. But now beeþ but tweie primates in al Engelond, of Caunterbury, and of ȝork. To þat[7] primat of Caunterbury beeþ sugette þrittene bisshoppes in Engelond, and foure in Wales. Þe primat of ȝork haþ but tweie suffragans in

MS. HARL. 2261.

to Briteyne Armorike, from whiche tyme vn to the daies of kynge Henry the first, kynge of Englonde of that name, xxj[ti] bischoppes kepede residence at Meneuia, wontenge a palle, other for slawethe, other for pouerte. Neuertheles vn to that tyme the byschopes of Wales were wonte to be consecrate of the bischop of Meneuia, whiche is callede Seynte David, and that bischop of other suffraganes of Wales, noo profession other subieccion made to eny other chirche. But other bischoppes succedenge receyvede consecracion of the bischop of Canterbery, thro the commaundemente of the kynge. In the inuestiture of whom, in a signe of subieccion, Bonefacius, archebischop of Canterbery, in the tyme of kynge Henrye secunde, firste of alle byschoppes of Caunterbery songe masse solenly in euery cathedralle chirche of Wales. ℞. But now in this tyme there be only ij. primates in Englonde, whiche be of Caunterbery and of Yorke. Caunterbery hathe xiij. bischopes in Englonde subiecte to hit, and iiij. bischoppes in Wales. And Yorke hathe but ij. suffraganes subiecte to f. 71. a.

[1] *Armonica*, MS.; *Armonyca*, Cx.
[2] *Notheles*, *a.*; *Netheles*, Cx.
[3] *Wales were*, MS. (not Cx.)
[4] *suffrigans*, Cx.; *suffrages*, MS.
[5] So Cx.; *suggestioun*, MS., and so below (not Cx.)
[6] *tokyn*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *þe*, *a.*, Cx.

scilicet Caerduliensem[1] et Dunelmensem. De quorum omnium successivis sedium[2] institutionibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda; ubi est advertendum[3] quod in primitiva Anglorum ecclesia præsules in locis humilibus, tanquam[4] contemplationi et devotioni[5] aptis,[6] sedes suas statuerunt. Sed tempore Willelmi Conquæstoris[7] ex canonum decreto edictum est, ut episcopi[8] de villulis ad urbes transirent.[9] Unde factum est ut Dorcestrensis sedes[10] ad Lincolniam migraret, Lichefeldensis[11] ad Cestriam, Thedfordensis[12] ad Northwycum,[13] Shireburnensis[14] ad Sarum,[15] Wellensis ad Bathoniam,[16] Cornubiensis ad Excestriam,[17] Selesiensis[18] ad Cicestriam.

De episcopis australibus.

Roffensis itaque præsul, qui parochiam non habet, sed capellanus est archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, ab initio suæ institutionis per Cantuariensem Augustinum[19] factæ usque ad dies nostros nusquam sedem mutavit; Cicestrensis vero, qui solis Southsaxonibus et[20] Vectæ

---

[1] *Cardiliensem*, Gale.

[2] Slightly altered in C.D.

[3] *ubi . . . advertendum*] Advertendum est tamen ad notitiam dicendorum, C.D.

[4] *utpote*, C.D.

[5] *et devotioni*] om. C.D.; transposed in B.

[6] *aptis*] congruis, C.D.

[7] *Willelmi Conquæstoris*] regis Willelmi primi, C.D.

[8] *episcopi*] sedes episcoporum, C.D.

[9] *migrarent*, C.D.

[10] *sedes*] om. C.D., having *Dorcestre.*

[11] *Lichefelde*, D.

[12] *Thetford*, A.; *Thedeforde*, D.

[13] *Norwicum*, B., Gale.; *Norwicum, Remesburiensis et*, C.D.

[14] *Shirburne*, A.; *Remesburiensis et Schireburn*, C.D.

[15] *Salesburiam*, C.D.

[16] *Cridiensis et*, add. C.D.

[17] So A.B.D., Gale; *Excestram*, E.

[18] *Celesiensis*, B.; *Silesiensis*, D.

[19] *Aug. Cant.*, B.

[20] *et*] om. B.

Engelond, þat beeþ þe bisshoppis of Caerlile and of Duram. TREVISA.
Of alle þe[se] [1] sees and of chaungynge of here places now arewe schal somwhat [2] be schewed : here take hede, þat in þe bygynnynge of holy chirche in Engelond bisshoppes ordeyned hire sees in lowe places and symple, þat were couenable for contemplacioun, for bedes, [3] and deuocioun, but in William Conquerours tyme by dome of lawe canoun it was i-ordeyned þat bisshoppes schulde come out of smal townes in to grete citees. Þerfore it was þat þe see of Dorchestre was i-chaunged to Lyncolne, Lichefeld to Chestre, Thedford to Norþwhiche, Schirborne to Salisbury, Welles to Bathe, Cornwayle to Excetre, and Selesey to Chychestre. *De episcopis australibus.* Þe bisshopp [of Rouchestre] [4] haþ non persche [5] chirche, but he is þe archebisshoppes chapeleyn of Canterbury. Seþþe þat [6] þe [7] see was first i-ordeyned by Seint Austyn, archebisshop of Canterbury, ȝit hiderto hit chaungeþ neuere his place.[8] Chichestre haþ vnder hym onliche Souþsex and the Ile of Wight, and

---

it oonly, whiche be suffraganes of Carduliense and of Durem, MS. HARL. 2261.
of the successiue institucions of whom somme thynges ar to be seide here by ordre. Where fore hit is to be aduertede that bischoppes, in the primitiue chirche of Englonde, were wonte to haue theire seetes in meke places, apte to contemplacion and deuocion, but hit was commaundede by a decrete of canon, in the tyme of William Conquerour, that the seetes of bischoppes scholde be translate from townes to cites. Where hit was hade that the sete of Dorchestre was chaungede to Lyncoln, and of Lichefelde to Chestre, of Tedforde to Norwiche, of Shirburne to Excestre, of Seliense to Chichestre. *Of the bischoppes of the Sowthe.*[9] The bischoppe of Rochestre, whiche hathe noo peresche, but [is] chapelayn of tharchebischop of Caunterbury, from the begynenge of the institucion made by Seynte Austyn bishop of Canterbery, chaungede not the seete of hit vn to oure daies. The bischop of Chicestre, whiche hathe gouenaile oonly of the Sowthe Saxones and the yle of Wiȝhte, f. 71. b.

---

[1] *þese*, *a.*; *thyse*, Cx.

[2] *sumwhat schal*, *a.*

[3] *prayers*, Cx., who varies the sentence.

[4] Added from *a.* and Cx.

[5] *parysche*, *a.* and Cx., who omits *chirche.*

[6] *þat*] om. Cx.

[7] *þe*] om. *a.*

[8] Sentence varied in Cx.

[9] This is wrongly numbered Cap. 52 in Harl. MS.; the division of the chapter having been already made conformably to the Latin text.

insulæ præsidet, primo apud Selysei,[1] quod sonat[2] insula vituli marini, tempore Theodori archiepiscopi sedem habuit, et a primo Wylfrido[3] usque ad ultimum Stigandum trecentis triginta tribus annis sub viginti episcopis ibidem duravit. Tandem Stigandus, edicto regis Willelmi[4] Conquæstoris, sedem[5] Seleise[6] transtulit ad Cicestriam.[7]

Cap. LIII.

De episcopis occidentalibus.

Willelmus.[8] Memorandum est quod tota[9] Westsaxonica provincia unicum ab initio usque adventum[10] Theodori habuit episcopum.[11] Primus autem Birinus, largiente rege Westsaxonum Kyngislo[12] sedem statuit apud Dorcestriam,[13] villam[14] humilem, ad austrum Oxoniæ juxta Walingford,[15] inter collapsus[16] duorum fluminum Thamisiæ et Thamæ[17] sitam. Byrino autem defuncto, Kenwalcus[18] rex[19] statuit sedem[20] apud Wyntoniam; sicut et pater suus[21] aliquando[22] proposuerat, ubi Agilbertus[23] natione Gallus[24] præsedit primus toti provinciæ Westsaxonicæ.[25] Ex quo tempore urbs et sedes Dor-

---

[1] *Silesey*, B.; *Seilse*, A.; *Celeseie*, D.

[2] *interpretatur*, C.D.

[3] *Wilfrido*, B., Gale.

[4] *Willelmi regis*, B.

[5] Added from A.C.D., Gale.

[6] *Seleyse*, B.

[7] So D., Gale; *Cicestram*, A.E.

[8] *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

[9] *Memorandum .... tota*] Tota autem, C.D.

[10] *ad adventum*, B., Gale.

[11] *antistitem*, C.D.

[12] *Kingiffo*, A.B.; *Kingislo*, Gale; *Kingulfo*, D.

[13] So Gale; *Dorcestram*, A.E.; *Dorcestr9*, D.

[14] *villam quidem*, D.

[15] *juxta Walingford*] om. C.D.; *Walingforth*, A.

[16] *statuit . . . collapsus*] lapsus, B.

[17] *Ysæ*, Gale.

[18] *Kenwalkus*, B.; *Kenewalcus*, D.

[19] *rex*] om. B.; *Westsaxonum*, ins. D.

[20] *sedem statuit*, B.

[21] *pater suus Kingulfus*, D.

[22] *aliquando fecisse*, B., Gale.

[23] *Gilbertus*, Gale.

[24] *Gallicus*, B.

[25] Sentence altered and slightly abbreviated in C.D.

hadde his see first in Seleseie in Theodor þe archebisshoppes tyme. And þe see[1] durede þere þre hondred ȝere and þre and þritty vnder tweynty bisshoppes from þe firste Wilfrede to þe laste Stigande; [but at þe laste Stygand][2] at þe heste of kyng William Conquerour chaunged þe se from Seleseye to Chichestre. TREVISA.

De episcopis occidentalibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

Willelmus. Haue mynde þat alle þe prouince of West-saxon hadde alwey oon bisshop from þe bygynnynge anoon to Theodores comynge.[3] By graunt of Kingislus,[4] kyng of West Saxon, þe firste Birinus ordeyned a cee at Dorchestre, þat is a symple toun by souþ Oxenforde by sides Walyngforde, bytwene þe fallynge to gidres of Temse and of Tame. Whan Birinus was deed, Kenwalkus þe kyng ordeyned a see at Wynchestre, as his fader hadde i-þoȝt.[5] Þere Gilbert,[6] a Frensche man, was first bisshop of al þe prouince of West-saxon. From þat tyme þe[7] citee and þe see of Dorchestre

---

kepede somme tyme residence at Selesey, in the tyme of Theodorus tharchebischop, where hit contynuede vnder xx[ti] bischoppes from the firste, Wilfridus, vn to the laste, Stigandus, by ccc.xxxiij[ti] yere. At the laste Stigandus, thro the commaundement of William Conqueroure, did translate that seete of Selesey to Chichestre. MS. HARL 2261.

Of the bischoppes of the weste. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

HIT is to be hade in memory that alle the prouince of Weste Saxones had oon bischop from þe begynnenge vn to the tyme of Theodorus. Birinus, the firste bischop in that prouince, sette the seete at Dorchestre, a meke place, thro the graunte of Kyngelfus, kynge of Weste Saxones; whiche seete was at the sowthe of Oxforde, nye to Walyngeforde, betwene the metenge of ij. floodes, Tham and Yce. That byschop Byryne dedde, Kewacus kynge ordeynede that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede to have doen somme tyme, where Agilbertus, borne in Fraunce, hadde gouernaile firste on alle the province of Weste Saxones. From whiche tyme the cite and seete of Dor-

---

1 *cee, a.*
2 Added from *a.* (not in Cx.); but *þat* has been changed to *at.*
3 *time,* Cx.
4 *kyng Islo,* MS., Cx.
5 *purposed,* Cx.
6 *Agilbert,* Cx.
7 *þat þe,* MS.; not *a.* or Cx.

cestriensis pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, eo quod urbs illa[1] sita sit infra Thamisiam, qui fluvius disterminat Mercios a Westsaxonibus.[2] Post Agilbertum de Wyntonia expulsum præsedit Wyne, natione Anglus; a quo putant quidam urbem Wyntoniæ denominatam fore Wynecestria,[3] quasi [4] Cestria, id est, urbs [5] Wynæ.[6] Ipso tandem expulso, successit Leutherius[7] nepos Agilberti prædicti; post quem Hedda [8] aliquandiu sedem [9] tenuit. Quo defuncto, Theodorus archiepiscopus duos præsules ad provinciam Westsaxonum ordinavit;[10] Danielem[11] apud Wentam,[12] cui [13] subjecti fuerant duo pagi Southrey[14] et Southampshire;[15] Aldelmum quoque ad sedem Shireburne ordinavit, cui tunc subjacuerunt sex pagi,[17] Barrocensis, Wyltonensis, Somersetensis, Dorsetensis, Dovoniensis et Cornubiensis. Deinde, tempore Edwardi senioris ad has duas[18] additæ

---

[1] *hæc*, C.D.

[2] *quæ ex parte austrina Merciam disterminat a West Saxonibus*, C.D.

[3] *Wincheschestre*, D.

[4] *quia*, E.

[5] So MSS. distinctly, and Gale. The construction requires accusatives.

[6] Abbreviated in C.D.

[7] *Eleutherius*, C. (not D.)

[8] *Edda*, C.; *Eata*, D.; *aliquamdiu Hedda*, B.; *Hedda*, om. E.

[9] *locum*, C.D.

[10] *ordinavit*] eo quod ampla esset deputavit, C.D.

[11] *videlicet*, add. C.D.

[12] *Wyntoniam*, C.D.

[13] *cui tunc*, C.D,

[14] *Sowthereie et Southanteschire*, A.

[15] *Hampton*, C.; *Hamptoniæ*, D.

[16] *Chern*, B.

[17] *scilicet*, ins. C.D.

[18] *sedes*, add. C.D.; *sedes* after *tres*, A., Gale.

perteyned and longede to þe prouince of Mercia; for þat citee stondeþ wiþ ynne Temse; and Temse departeþ bytwene Mercia and Westsaxoun. After þat Agelberd [1] was i-putte out of Wynchestre, þat þo heet Wyntoun. Wyn [2] of Englische nacioun was bisshop þere;[3] som [4] men weneþ þat þat [5] citee haþ þe name of þis Wyn, and hatte Wynechestre, as it were Wyne is citee. At þe laste he was putte [6] out and after hym come Leutherius, þe forseide Agilbertus neuewe. After Leutherius Hedda a while was bisshop þere. Whan he was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned tweye bisshoppes to þe prouince of Westsaxon; Danyel at Wynchestre, to hym were sugettes [7] tweie contrees Souþerey and Souþhampschire; Aldelyn [8] at Schireborne, to hym were sugettes sixe contrayes, Barrokschire,[9] Wiltschire, Somersete, Dorchestreschire, Deuenschire, and Cornewayle. *Trevisa.*[10] Afterward me [11] semeþ by þis lawe [12] þat Westsaxon conteyned Souþeray, Souþhampschire, Barrokschire, Wiltschire, Somersede, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornwayle.[13] *Willelmus.* Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to þe[se][14] tweye TREVISA.

---

chestre pertenede to the prouince of the Marches, in so moche that cite was sette within Thamys, whiche floode departede the Marches from the Weste Saxones. And after Agilberte expulsede from Wynchestre, Wyne, a Englysche man, was byschop þer, of whom somme men ťrawe that cite to have taken name, for Wynechestre sowndethe as the cite of Wyne. Whiche expulsed at the laste, Leutherius, nevewe to the forseide Agilberte, succedede þer, after whom Hedea succedede. Whiche dedde, Theodorus archebischop ordeynede to that prouince of Weste Saxones ij. byschoppes, ordeynenge Daniel, byschop at Wynchestre, to whom ij. cuntrees were subiecte, Sowtherey and Sowthehampteschire. And Aldelme at the seete of Schirbourn, to whom vj. cuntrees were subiecte, Barokschire, Wiltonschire, Somerset, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewaile. Vn to whiche ij. seetes other iij. seetes were addede in the tyme [of] Edwarde the senior, kynge of Englonde, MS. HARL. 2261. f. 72. a.

---

[1] *Agilbert*, Cx.
[2] *Wyne*, *a.*
[3] Sentence varied in Cx.
[4] *whan som*, MS. (first hand.)
[5] *þe*, *a.*, Cx.
[6] *i-put*, *a.*
[7] *sugett*, *a.*
[8] *Adelin*, Cx.
[9] *Barkshire*, Cx.
[10] Reference added from Cx.
[11] *it*, *a.*
[12] *sawe*, *a.*; *it seemeth by this that*, &c., Cx.
[13] Names slightly varied in Cx.
[14] *þese*, *a.*, Cx.

sunt aliæ tres edicto Formosi papæ; videlicet Wellensis, cui subjacuit Someresete; Cridiensis, cui subjacuit Dovonia;[1] et Cornubiensis, apud Sanctum Petroclum[2] seu Sanctum Germanum, cui subjacuit Cornubia. Nec multo post sexta sedes posita[3] apud Ramysbury,[4] cui subjacuit pagus Wiltonensis. Postremo edicto Willelmi regis Conquæstoris,[5] omnes hæ sedes, excepta Wyntonia,[6] de viculis[7] ad urbes sunt translatæ; nam Shireburne et Ramesbury[8] transierunt ad Saresbury,[9] cui usque hodie subjacent pagus[10] Barrocensis,[11] Wyltonensis et Dorsetensis[12] provinciæ;[13] Wellensis quoque sedes transiit ad Bathoniam, cui usque hodie[14] pagus subjacet[15] de[16] Somersete;[17] Cridiensis, et[18] Cornubiensis migraverunt[19] ad Excestriam;[20] cui[21] subjacent[22] Dovonia et Cornubia.

Cap. LIV.

De orientalibus episcopis.[23]

Willelmus.[24] Observatum est quod[25] Estsaxones[26] ab initio usque modo semper[27] paruerunt[28] Londoniensi præsuli;[29] sed provinciæ Estanglorum, quæ continet

---

[1] So A.E.; *Devonia*, D. Gale; and so below.

[2] So A.B.E., Gale; *Patroclum*, D., which is probably right.

[3] *est*] So A.B.C.D., Gale; om. E.

[4] *Rammisbury*, A.

[5] *Conquæstoris*] om. C.D.

[6] *Wintonia*, D.

[7] *villulis*, C. (not D.); *villis*, Gale.

[8] *Rammisburi*, A.

[9] *Salz*, B.; *Salesburi*, D.; *Sarum*, Gale.

[10] *pagi*, B., Gale.

[11] *et*, add. A.B.

[12] *subjacent...Dorsetensis*] subjacet Barocensis et Wiltonensis provincia, C.D.

[13] *et Dorsetensis provinciæ*] om. A.B. (E. has *Dosetensis*, but *Dorsetensis* above.

[14] *hodie*] added from C.D., Gale.

[15] *subjacent*, A.B.

[16] *de*] om. A.B.

[17] *pagus...Somersete*] *hodie subjacent duo pagi Somersete et Dorsete*, A.C.D.

[18] *et*] om. B.

[19] *transierunt*, C.D.

[20] So D. Gale; *Excestram*, A.E.

[21] *usque hodie*, add. C.D.

[22] *subjacet*, B.D.

[23] *episcopis orientalibus*, B.

[24] *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

[25] *Observatum...quod*] om. C.D.

[26] *West Saxones*, B.

[27] *semper*] om. A.

[28] *pervenerunt*, B.

[29] *episcopo*, C.D.

sees þre[1] oþere sees were i-ordeyned by heste[2] of Formosus þe pope. Þe[3] cees were i-ordeyned at Welles for Somersete, at Crittoun[4] for Deuenschire, and at Seint German for Cornewayle. Noȝt ful longe afterward þe sixte see was i-sette at Ramysbury for Wiltschire. At þe laste by heste[5] of kyng William Conquerour alle þese sees saue Wynchestre were[6] i-torned and i-chaunged out of smal townes in to grete citees. For Schirborne and Ramysbury were i-torned to Salisbury. Now to þat see is sugett Barokschire, Wiltschire, and Dorsett. Þe see of Welles was i-torned to Baþe. Þerto is now sugett al Somersete. Þe sees of Critton[7] and of Cornewayle were i-chaunged to Excetre. Þerto is suget Deuenschire and Cornwayle. TREVISA.

De orientalibus episcopis. Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

Willelmus.[8] Hit is i-knowe þat þe Estsaxons alwey from þe bygynnynge for to now were sogettis[9] to þe bisshop of Londoun. But þe prouince of Est Angles, þat conteyneþ

---

thro the precepte of Formosus the pope, that is to say, at Welles, to whom Somersete was subiecte; of Cridense, to whom Deuenschire was subiecte; and of Cornubience, at Seynte Patroclus other Germanus, to whom alle Cornewaile was subiecte. And within a shorte space folowenge the vi^the^ seete was at Ramisbury, to whom Willeschire was subiecte. At the laste alle these seetes were remouede from townes to cites, thro commaundemente of William Conqueroure, the seete of Wynchestre excepte. For the seetes of Shirborne and of Ramisbery were chaungede to Salisbery, to whom Barokshire, Willeschire, and the prouinces of Dorsette be subiecte. And the seete of Welles was chaungede vn to Bathe, to whom Somerset is subiecte. The seetes of Cridence and of Cornubiense were remouede to Excestre, to whom Deuenschire and Cornewaile be subiecte. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

HIT is to be attended that the Este Saxones were obediente from the begynnenge vn to this tyme presente to the bishop of London. But a byschop, Felix by name,

---

[1] oþer þre oþere, MS.; *thre other*, Cx.
[2] *commaundment*, Cx.
[3] *þre*, Cx.
[4] *Crettoun*, α.; *Kryton*, Cx.
[5] So α.; *beheste*, MS.
[6] *was*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[7] *Cryttoun*, α.; *Kyrton*, Cx.
[8] Reference added from Cx.
[9] *subget*, Cx.

Northfolk et Southfolc,[1] præfuit primo [2] apud urbem Domik [3] unicus episcopus Felix quidam Burgundus septendecim annis. Post quem Thomas quinque annis. Post quem Bonefacius septendecim [4] annis. Deinde Bisi per Theodorum institutus,[5] quousque prospera [6] valetudo permitteret, provinciam solus rexit. Post quem duo episcopi, per centum quadraginta tres annos, usque ad tempora Egberti, regis Westsaxonum,[7] provinciam illam rexerunt; unus apud Domuc,[8] alter apud [9] Elmham.[10] Post dies [11] tamen Ludcani regis Merciorum mansit tantum una sedes apud Elmham,[12] usque ad quintum annum Willelmi Conquæstoris; quando Herfastus vicesimus tertius orientalium episcopus sedem suam Helmhamensem [13] transtulit ad Thedfordiam.[14] At successor ejus Herebertus Losinga,[15] licentia regis Willelmi [16] Rufi, sedem Thedfordensem transtulit ad [17] Norwicum; sedem autem Heliensem,[18] quæ huic de prope [19] est, rex Henricus primus nono regni sui anno instituit, subjecta ad hoc [20] provincia Cantebrugge,[21] quæ prius fuerat pars episcopatus Lincolniensis; in cujus rei compensationem dedit Henricus rex [22] episcopo Lincolniensi regiam urbem suam [23] de Spaldyng.[24]

---

1 *Northfolchiam et Southfolch in m* D.

2 *primus*, C. (not D.)

3 *Donmic*, A.C.; *Donwic*, B.; *Donwik*, D.; *Dommic*, Gale.

4 *quindecim*, C. (not D.)

5 *instructus*, C.D.

6 *valitudo prospera*, B.

7 *Estsaxonum*, Gale.

8 *Dommuc*, A.C., Gale; *Donwic*, B.; *Donwik*, D.

9 *apud*, added from D., Gale.

10 *Elingham*, B.D.

11 *Postea*, B.

12 *Elingham*, B.D.

13 *Elmamhensem*, A.B., Gale; *Elinghammensem*, D.

14 *Tedford*, Gale.

15 *Losinga*] om. C.D.

16 *Willelmi regis*, B.

17 *ad*] om. B.

18 *Eliensem*, A.B.

19 *hinc de prope*] Lincolniensi, B.; huic prope, A.

20 *hæc*, D.

21 *Cantebrigiæ*, D.

22 *rex*] om. C. (not D.)

23 *suam*] om. C D.

24 *Spaldwik*, B.D.

TREVISA.

Norþfolk and Souþfolk, hadde oon bisshop at Denwiche.[1] Þe bisshop heet Felix, and was of Burgoyne ; and was bisshop seuentene ȝere. After hym Thomas was bisshop fyue ȝere. After hym Bonafas[2] seuentene[3] ȝere. Þanne Besy afterward was i-ordeyned by Theodorus, and rulede þe prouince, while he myȝte endure by hym selue allone. After hym anon to Egebertus tyme, kyng of Westsaxons, an hondred and þre and fourty [ȝere],[4] tweie bisshoppes rulede þat prouince, oon at Donwyk and anoþer at Elyngham.[5] Noþeles after Ludecans tyme, kyng of Mercia, lefte and was onliche[6] oon see at Elyngham anon to þe fifte ȝere of William Conquerour, whan Herfastus þe þridde and twenty bisshop of Esterne[7] chaungede þe[8] see from [Elingham to][9] Theteford, [and his successor Herebetus Losinga chaungede þe see from Thetford][10] into Norþwhiche, by leue of kyng William þe Rede. [Þe][10] see of Ely, þat is nygh þerto, þe firste kyng Henry ordeyned þe nynþe ȝere of his reignynge, and made suget þerto Cantebriggeschire, þat was raþer[11] a party of þe bisshopriche of Lyncolne. And for quytynge þerof he ȝaf to þe bisshop of Lyncolne a real citee þat hatte[12] Spaldynge.

MS. HARL. 2261.

borne in Burguyn, was firste bischop ad Dommic, a cite of the prouince of Este Englische men by xvij. yere ; after whom Thomas was v. yere, after hym Bonefacius xvij. yere ; after whom Besy, institute by Theodorus, gouernede that prouince allon while he was in heale. After whom ij. byschopes reignede c.xliij yere, gouernenge the prouince vn to the tymes of Egberte, kynge of Weste Saxones, oon of theym at Dommic, that other at Elyngham, vn to the v^the^ yere of William Conquerour, when Herfastus, the xxiij^ti^ bischop of the este, did translate the seete of Hely to Tedforde. And Herebertus Losinga, his successor, remouede that seete from Tedforde to Norwiche, thro licence of William Rufus. Kynge Henry the firste ordeynede that seete of Hely the ix^the^ yere of his reigne, subduede to hit the prouince of Cantebrigge, whiche pertenede a fore that tyme to the byschopryche of Lincolne ; in a recompensacion þer of he ȝafe to the bischop of Lincolne the towne of Spaldenge.

---

[1] *Donwyk*, *a.*, Cx.
[2] *Boneface*, Cx.
[3] So *a.* ; *xvij.*, MS.
[4] Added from the Latin text ; absent also in Cx.
[5] The last clause as in Cx. ; MS. and *a.* have repetitions by clerical error from above.
[6] Probably we should read : *was left onliche*. Cx. agrees with text.
[7] þe *Estrene*, *a.*, Cx.
[8] *his*, *a.*
[9] Added from *a.* (not in Cx.)
[10] *þe*] added from *a.* and Cx.
[11] *to fore*, Cx.
[12] *a good toun callyd*. Cx.

Cap. LV.

De episcopis Merciorum.[1]

Willelmus.[2] Notandum est hic[3] solerter, quod[4] sicut Merciorum imperium pro tempore fuerat semper amplissimum, ita et in plures episcopatus divisum; præsertim animositate regis Offæ, qui quadraginta annis imperans Merciis, transtulit ad Lichefeldiam honorem Cantuariæ[5] metropolitanum, annuente ad hoc[6] papa Adriano.[7] Igitur provinciæ Merciorum et Lindisfarorum primis annis Christianitatis, tempore regis Wolfarii,[8] unicus fuit episcopus apud Lichefeldiam; Duyna[9] primus, Celath secundus, ambo Scoti.[10] Post quos tertius Trunhere,[11] quartus Jarumannus,[12] quintus Cedda. Sed tempore[13] Etheldredi[14] fratris Wolferi,[15] Cedda mortuo, substituit Theodorus archiepiscopus[16] Wynfridum diaconum[17] Ceddæ; quem tamen postmodum ratione cujusdam inobedientiæ deposuit, substituens[18] Sexwolfum[19] abbatem de Medehamstede,[20] quod nunc de Burgo dicitur.[21] Sed post quartum[22] Sexwolfi annum ordinavit Theodorus provinciæ Merciorum

---

1 *seu Mediterraneorum*, add. C.D.

2 *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

3 *hic*] quod, A.

4 *Notandum...quod*] om. C.D.

5 *Cantuariæ*] om. C.D.

6 *ad hoc*] om. C.D.

7 C.D. add—"eo quod Cantuaritis "infestus fuerat quos et vastaverat." The whole passage is slightly transposed in these MSS.

8 *Wlferi*, B.; *Wlfarii*, A.D.

9 *Duina*, A.B.D., Gale.

10 *ambo Scoti*] Arabo Scottus, C. (not D.); ambo Scottici, A.

11 *Trumhere*, A.D., Gale.

12 *Jarimannus*, B.

13 *regis*, add. C.D.

14 *Ethelredi*, B.D., Gale.

15 *Wlferi*, B.D., Gale; *Wulferi*, A.

16 *archipræsul*, C.D.

17 *diaconum*] qui quondam diaconus fuerat, C.D.

18 *substituens*] eoque deposito substituit Theodorus, C.D.

19 *Sexwlfi*, D. (which has also *Modehamstede*), and so below.

20 *Modehamstede*, D.

21 *quod est de burgo*, C.D.

22 *Post quartum vero*, C.D.

TREVISA.

De episcopis Merciorum. Capitulum quinquagesimum quintum.

Willelmus. Here take hede þat as þe kyngdom of Mercia was alwey grettest for þe tyme, so it was i-deled in mo bisshopriches, and[1] specialliche by grete herte of kyng Offa, þat[2] was fourty ȝere kyng of Mercia. He chaunged þe archebisshoppes see from Caunterbury to Lychfelde[3] by assent of Adrian þe pope. Þan þe prouince of Mercia and of Lindiffare[4] in þe firste bygynnynge of here Cristendom in kyng Wulfrans tyme hadde oon bisshop atte Lichefelde. Þe firste bisshoppe þat was þere heet Dwyna; þe secounde heet Celath; and were boþe Scottes. After hem þe þridde Trumphere; þe ferþe heet Iarminannus;[5] þe fifte Chedde. But in Ethelfredes[6] tyme, þat was Wolfer his broþer, whanne Chedde was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned [Wynfrede, Cheddes dekene. Neuerþeles he put hym doun[7] after þat, for he was vnbuxum in som poynt, and[8] ordeynede þere Sexwulf abbot of Medhamstede, þat hatte Burgh. But after Sexwulf his ferþe ȝere Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned][9] fyue bisshoppes in þe prouince of

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the bischoppes of the Marches. Willelmus.

HIT is to be attendede, that like as the impire of the Marches was moste large, so hit was diuided in to moste bischopes. And specially in the tyme of kynge Offa,[11] whiche reignenge in the Marches by xl. yere, transferrede the honor from Caunterbery to the chirche of Lyncolne, Adrian the pope grawntenge that priuilege. Where there was oon bischop oonly, at Lichefelde, to the prouince of Marches and of Lyndesfarne,[10] in the firste yeres of Cristianite, in the tyme of kynge Wulfarius; Duina was firste, Celat the secunde, bothe Scottes, Trunhere the thrydde, Iarumannus the iiij^the^, Cedda the v^the^. But Theodorus archebischop, after the deathe of Seynte Chadde, ordeynede Wynfrede, dekyn of Seynte Chadde, in the tyme of Ethelrede, brother of Wulferus, whiche was deposede for cause of a certeyne inobediency, makenge Sexwulphus byschop þer, abbot of Medehamstede, whiche is callede now Petrusborough. But after the iiij^the^ yere of Sexwulphus, Theodorus, tharchebischop, ordeinede v. byschoppes to

f. 72. b.

---

[1] *and of*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[2] *whiche*, Cx.
[3] *Liȝchefeld*, *a.*
[4] *Lydefar*, Cx.
[5] So MS. corruptly; *Germuannus*, Cx.
[6] *Edelfredes*, Cx.
[7] *apud Hymdoun*, *a.*; *apud Hyndon*, Cx.
[8] So *a*; *he*, Cx.
[9] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[10] *Lindeseye*, MS. (first hand.)
[11] *of Offa*, Harl. MS., by a clerical error, it is to be hoped.

quinque episcopos; scilicet[1] Bosel ad Wygorniam,[2] Cadwynum ad Lichefeldiam, Sexwolfum[3] prædictum ad Legecestriam,[4] quæ nunc Cestria[5] dicitur; Ethelwynum ad Lindeseyam apud urbem Sedeneyam;[6] Eatam[7] quoque monachum de monasterio Hildæ apud Whiteby[8] sumptum,[9] ordinavit ad Dorcestriam[10] juxta Oxoniam, quæ et[11] Dorkinga tunc dicebatur.[12] Et sic sedes[13] Dorcestrensis, quæ tempore Sancti Birini[14] spectabat ad Westsaxonicos, a tempore Theodori archiepiscopi spectabat ad Mercios.[15] Ipse quoque Sexwolfus episcopus,[16] Cantia per regem Merciorum Etheldredum[17] vastata, Puctam Roffensem episcopum de Cantia venientem ordinavit primum Herfordiæ episcopum.[18] Sexwolfo tandem defuncto, successit Hedda apud Lichefeld,[19] et[20] Wylfridus de Northimbria diu profugatus successit apud Legecestriam,[21] quæ modo Cestria dicitur. Post duos tamen annos, defuncto rege Northumbrorum[22] Alfrido, Wylfridus[23] ad propriam sedem Hagustaldensem rediit; et sic Hedda ambas parochias, scilicet Legecestriam et Lichefeld, tenuit.[24] Post quem[25] Albinus[26] et Wor.[27] Post quem tres successerunt; scilicet,[28] Totta apud Legecestriam; Wytta[29]

---

[1] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[2] *Wigorniam*, B.

[3] *Sexwlfum*, B.D.

[4] So E., at length; *Legecestre*, A.; *Logecestre*, B.

[5] So D., at length; *Cestre*, A.; *Cestr*ᵒ, E.; but *Cestria* at length just below.

[6] *Sideniam*, B.; *Sideneiam*, A.D., Gale.

[7] *Ethlam*, A.B.C.D.

[8] *Witebi*, A.

[9] *pud. . . sumptum*] om. C.D.

[10] So A., Gale; *Dorcestram*, E.

[11] *tunc Dorkinga*, B.; *etiam et*, A.

[12] *tunc dicebatur*] dicitur, C.D.

[13] *sedes*] om. B.

[14] *Sancti Birini*] om. C.D.

[15] *spectabat ad Mercios*] pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, C.D.

[16] *episcopus*] om. C.D.

[17] *Ethelredum*, D.

[18] *ordinavit . . . episcopum*] Herefordensem episcopum fecit, B.

[19] So E. and A. (*Lichefelde*), though they have the Latin form elsewhere; this inconstancy often renders the contractions ambiguous; *Lich*ᵒ. D.

[20] "et apud Legecestriam Wilfridus, de Northimbria recenter expulsus; sed vi hostilitatis ingruente ejectus, Wilfridus ad priorem sedem suam Hagustaldensem, Alfrido rege jam defuncto, reversus est." C. (and D. nearly.)

[21] *Logecestriam*, B.

[22] So A., at length; *Northimbr̄*, E. (which is ambiguous); *Northanhumbrorum*, B.; *Northumbriæ*, Gale.

[23] *Wlfridus*, B.

[24] *rexit*, C.D.

[25] *Et post eum*, C.D.

[26] *Alwinus*, C.D.

[27] *et Wor*] qui et Wor, Gale; qui et Wor vocabatur, C.D.

[28] *Post. . . scilicet*] Eoque defuncto, tres facti sunt episcopi, C.D.

[29] *Witta*, C.D.

Mercia. And so he ordeyned Bosel at Wircetre, Cudwyn at Lichefelde, þe forseide Sexwulf at Chestre, Ethelwyn[1] at Lyndeseie at þe citee Sidenia. And he took Eata, monk of þe abbay of Hilde at Whitby, and made hym bisshop of Dorchestre þat longed to Mercia[2] bysides Oxenforde. Þo þis Dorchestre heet Dorkynge, and so þe see of Dorchestre þat [longed to West Saxon in Seynt Byrynes time],[3] longed to Mercia from Þeodorus[4] þe archebisshoppes tyme. Also when Ethelberd,[5] kyng of Mercia, hadde destroyed Kent, þe[6] bisshop Sexwulf took Pictas, bisshop of Rouchestre, þat come out of Kent, and made hym first bisshop of Herforde.[7] At þe laste, whan Sexwulf was dede, Hedda was bisshop of Lichefelde after hym; and Wilfrede flemede oute of Northumberlonde was bisshop at[8] Chestre. Noþeles after two ȝere Alfred kyng of Norþhumberlond deide, and Wilfrede tornede aȝen[9] to his owne see of Haugustalden. And so Hedda hylde[10] boþe bisshopriches of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After him[11] come Albyne, þat heet Wor also. And TREVISA.

the prouince of the Marches, that is to say, Bosel at Wircestre, Cudwyne at Lichefelde, Sexwulphus at Chestre, Ethelwyne at Lindesey, at a cite callede Sedeneia. Takenge also Eata, monke of the monastery of Seynte Hilda at Whitby, made hym byschop at Dorchestre, nye to Oxforde, whiche was callede that tyme Dorkynga. And so the seete of Dorchestre, whiche pertenede to the Weste Saxones in the tyme of Seynte Biryne, longede to the Marches from the tyme of Theodorus tharchebischop. Sexvulphus dedde, Hedda succeded at Lychefelde; and Wilfride, chasede from Northumbrelonde, succedede at Legecestre, now namede Chestre; neuerthelesse Alfride, the kynge of Northumbrelonde, dedde within the space of ij. yere foloenge, Wilfride returnede to his propre seete Haugustaldense; and so Hedda was bischop bothe of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After whom Albinus other Wor. After whom thre succeded, that MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Edelwyn*, Cx.

[2] *þat longed to Mercia*] om. α. and Cx.

[3] Added from Cx.

[4] *Thedorus*, α.

[5] *Ethelred*, α., Cx.

[6] *this*, β., Cx.

[7] *Rouchestre Herforde*, MS. The former word is *very slightly* expuncted in α., which would lead us to suspect, as do many other things, that the standard MS. may have been copied from α., or that both are copies of the same MS. The text of β. and Cx. is correct.

[8] *of*, β., Cx.

[9] *aȝe*, α.

[10] *hulde*, α.

[11] *hem*, MS. (not α., β. or Cx.)

apud Lichefeld; Eata[1] adhuc in Dorcestria[2] remanente, cujus sedem eo defuncto præsules Lindisienses[3] per trecentos quinquaginta quatuor annos tenuerunt; donec Remigius, licentia regis Willelmi primi, sedem transferret ad Lincolniam.[4] Sed[5] tempore regis Edgari Leofwynus præsul[6] conjunxit ambas parochias Cestrensium et Lindisfarorum,[7] quoad ipse viveret.

Cap. LVI.

De episcopis Northimbranis.[8]

Willelmus, libro quarto de Pontificibus, capitulo undecimo.[9] Apud Eboracum unica sedes primo fuit pro tota[10] provincia Northimbrana,[11] quam Paulinus primus a Dorobernensi[12] Justo ordinatus septem annis tenuit. Deinde, occiso rege Northimbranorum[13] Edwyno, turbatisque rebus,[14] recessit Paulinus navigio ad partes Cantiæ unde primo venerat,[15] sumpto secum pallio. *Willelmus, libro tertio.*[16] Sicque cessavit præ-

---

[1] *Eatta*, B.

[2] *apud Dorcestriam*, B.; *in Dorcestre*, D.

[3] *Lindeyenses*, B.

[4] C.D. add :—" quæ tunc caput " erat Lindeseie."

[5] *Tamen*, C.D.

[6] *Legecestriæ*, add. C.D.

[7] The passage is slightly altered in C.D.

[8] *Northanhumbranis*, B.; *Northumbrensibus*, D.

[9] *libro . . . undecimo*] om. B., Gale.

[10] *per totam*, Gale.

[11] *Genti Northimbranæ unica sedes primitus fuit apud Eboracum*, C.D.

[12] *episcopo*, add. C.D.

[13] *Northimbranorum*] om. C.D. Northanhumbrorum, B.; Northumbriæ, Gale; North̃, A.E.

[14] *publicis*, add. C. (not D.)

[15] *unde primo venerat*] om. C.D.

[16] C.D. omit reference.

after hym come the[1] bisshoppis Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, and Eata was ȝit at Dorchestre. After his deth bisshoppes of Lyndeseye helde his[2] see þre hondred ȝere and foure and fifty, for to Remigius chaungede þe see to Lyncolne by leue of þe firste kyng William: but in kyng Edgar his tyme bisshop[3] Leofwynus ioynede boþe bisshopriches [to gideres][4] of Chestre and of[5] Lyndeseie,[6] while his lif durede. TREVISA.

De episcopis Norþhumbranis, Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo. At York was oon see for alle þe prouince of Norþhumberlond. Paulinus hulde first þat see, and was i-ordeyned of þe bisshop[7] of Caunterbury, and hylde þat see of ȝork seuene ȝere. Afterward whan kyng Edwyn was i-slawe, and þinges were destourbed, Paulynus wente þennes by water wey in to Kent, whennes he com first, and toke wiþ hym þe[8] palle. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so þe bisshopriche of ȝork[9] cesede

---

is to say, Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, Eata remaynenge at Dorchestre; the seete of whom bischoppes of Lindeseye occupiede by ccc.liiij[ti] yere, vn tylle that Remigius transferrede that seete to Lincolne, in the tyme of kynge William the firste. But Leofwinus byschop, conioinede bothe the chirches of Chestre and Lindesey to gedre in the tyme of kynge Edgare, while he lyvede. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 73. a.

Of the Bischopes of Northumberlonde. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo. Oon seete was firste at Yorke, for alle the prouince off Northumbrelonde, whom Paulinus occupiede firste by the space of vij. yere. After that Edwinus, kynge of Northumbrelonde, sleyne, Paulinus toke schippe and saylede to Kente, from whens he come, takenge the palle with hym. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so the bischoppériche of

---

[1] *þre*, α.
[2] *the*, Cx.
[3] *bishop of*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *of*] om. α.
[6] *Lyndefare*, α.
[7] So MSS. and Cx.
[8] So α. and Cx.; *þat*, MS.
[9] So α. and Cx.; *York the bisshopriche*, MS.

sulatus Eboracensis xxx. annis, usus vero pallii cessavit[1] ibidem cxxv. annis, donec Egbertus episcopus et frater regis terræ[2] auctoritate papali pallium recuperaret.[3] *Ranulphus.*[4] Regnante interim Sancto Oswaldo præfuit Aidanus Scoticus[5] apud Bernicios;[6] post quem Finanus; post quem Colmannus. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.*[7] Quo tandem ad Scotiam indignanter[8] recedente, eo quod[9] illegitima Paschæ observatione per Wylfridum fuerat redargutus,[4] tricesimo[10] post recessum Paulini anno Wilfridus ad sedem Eboracensem institutus est.[11] *Beda, libro quarto.*[12] Sed[13] ipso circa suam consecrationem[14] apud Gallias diutius demorante,[15] ad instigationem quartadecimanorum[16] Cedda de monasterio suo Lestingensi sumptus, annuente rege Oswy, subintrusus est. Quo tandem post triennium per Theodorum archipræsulem amoto, et[17] ad provinciam Merciorum assignato, Wilfridus per Theodorum restitutus est; sed et ipse[18] tandem propter quasdam simultates inter ipsum et regem Oswy[19] exortas, post decimum officii sui annum, cooperante et corrupto Theodoro, a sede sua expulsus est; ordina-

---

[1] *vacavit*, C.D., slightly transposed.

[2] *terræ*] om. C.D.

[3] *recuperavit*, C.D.

[4] *Ranulphus . . . redargutus*] om. C.D.

[5] *Scottis*, B.; *Scotus*, Gale.

[6] *Berwicios*, B.

[7] B. omits reference.

[8] *indignante*, A.

[9] *quod de*, Gale.

[10] *igitur*, add. C.D.

[11] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[12] C.D. omit reference.

[13] This passage, as far as *Tunbertum apud Hagustaldensem*, is contracted in C.D. to "Sed ipso post "decimum officii sui annum ex- "pulso, Theodorus Dorobernensis "episcopus ex regis Oswy con- "niventia ordinavit Bosam apud "Eboracum."

[14] *consecrationem suam*, B.

[15] *immorante*, B.

[16] *quandam dessimanorum*, B.

[17] *et*] om. B.

[18] *ipso*, B.

[19] *discordias*, ins. B.

þritty ȝere, and þe vse of þe palle secede[1] þere an hondred and fyue and fifty[2] ȝere, for to þat Egbert the bisshop, þat was þe kynges broþer of þe lond, recouered it by auctorite of þe pope. ℞. So among,[3] whan Seint Oswolde regnede, Aidanus,[4] a Scot, was bisshop in Brenicia, þat is þe norþside of Norþhumberlond; after hym Fynanus;[5] after hym Salmannus. *Willelmus, ubi supra.* At þe laste he wente to Scotlonde wiþ grete indingnacioun, for Wilfrede vndertook hym for he hylde vnlawfulliche Esterday; þritty ȝere after þat Paulinus was agoo[6] from Wilfrede was i-made bisshop of York. *Beda, libro quarto.* But [while][7] he dwellede longe in Fraunce aboute his sacrynge, at exitynge of quartadecimanorum, þat were þey þat helde Esterday þe xiiij^{e}[8] day of þe mone, Chedde was i-take out of his abbay of Lestynge, and wrongfulliche i-put to[9] þe see of York by assent of kyng Oswy. But þre ȝere afterward Theodorus the archebisshop dede hym away, and assignede hym to þe prouince of Mercia, and restored Wilfrede to þe see of York. But afterwarde Wilfrede, bycause of wrethe þat was arered[10] bytwene hym and kyng Egfred, was i-putte oute of his see by help of Theodorus[11] þe archebisshop þat was corupt wiþ som manere mede; TREVISA.

Yorke seasede xxx^{ti} yere, and the vse of the palle seasede there by a c. xxv^{ti} yere vn tyl þat bischoppe Egberte, brother to the kynge of that londe, recurede the palle thro auctorite of the pope. ℞. After that, Seynte Oswalde reignenge, Aidanus, a Scotte, hade gouernaile in Bernicia, after whom Finanus,[12] and after hym Colmannus. *Willelmus ubi supra.* Whiche goenge in to Scotlonde, as for indignacion, in that he was reprovede by Wilfride of vnlawefulle kepenge of Estur, Wilfride was restorede to the seete of Yorke after the departenge of Paulinus, in the xxx^{ti} yere. *Beda, libro quarto.* But Wilfride taryenge in Fraunce abowte his consecracion, Seynte Chadde was taken and made bischoppe þer, thro helpe of kynge Oswy; whiche, remouede with in the space of thre yere by Theodorus tharchebischop, was made bischop of the Marches, and Wilfride was restorede to hit ageyne. Whiche Wilfride was expulsede with in the space of x. yere foloenge, Theodorus tharchebischoppe cooperante and corrupte, for cause of conten- MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *cesede*, α.
[2] *cxxv. yere*, Cx.
[3] *So among*] om. Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *Adrianus*, MS.; *Aidanus*, α.
[5] *Finianus*, Cx.
[6] *goon*, Cx.; *ago*, β. The text is a little corrupt, probably *ȝork* should be added after *from*, or *from* cancelled.
[7] Added from α.
[8] So Cx.; *fourþe*, MS. and α.
[9] *in to*, Cx.
[10] *arered*] om., Cx.
[11] So α. and Cx.; *Odorus*, MS.
[12] *Sinanus*, Harl. MS.

vitque tunc Theodorus ad regis instantiam Bosam apud Eboracum, Tunbertum[1] apud Hagustaldensem ecclesiam, Eatam[2] ad[3] Lindisfarnensem ecclesiam,[4] quæ est Halyelond,[5] in flumine[6] Twydi;[7] quam sedem [8]Aidanus post[9] fundaverat, Eadhedum[10] vero de Lyndesy[11] reversum præfecit[12] Ripensi[13] ecclesiæ, ubi[14] Wyldfridus quondam abbas fuerat. Trunwynum[15] autem[16] destinavit ad terram Pictorum in finibus Anglorum juxta Scotiam, in loco qui Candida Casa,[17] seu Whiterne,[18] dicitur; ubi[19] Sanctus Ninianus Brito[20] primus fundator et doctor extiterat. Sed hæ[21] omnes sedes, excepta Eboracensi, paulatim defecerunt. Nam sedes Candidæ Casæ, quæ tunc ad Anglos spectabat, aliquot annis sub decem episcopis durabat;[22] donec depopulatione Pictorum[23] a ditione Anglorum omnino deficeret. Hagustaldensis vero et Lyndisfarnensis[24] sedes, quæ vicissim unica erat sub novem episcopis, nonaginta ferme annis usque adventum Dacorum duravit. Quo in tempore sub Hyngwar[25] et Hubba Ardulphus episcopus diu cum corpore Cuthberti[26] vagabatur, usque ad dies Aluredi regis Westsaxonum,

Sedes Candidæ Casæ, Hagustaldensis, et Lisfarnensis demum extinctæ.

[1] *Thunbertum*, B.
[2] *Eatan*, B.
[3] *apud*, Gale.
[4] *ecclesiam*] om. C.D.
[5] *Haly Eland*, A.
[6] *fluvio*, C.D.
[7] *Twydæ*, B.; *Tridi*, A.; *Twede*, D.
[8] *Sanctus*, ins. C.D.; adding *Scotus*.
[9] *primo*, C.D., Gale; *primus*, B.
[10] *Eathedum*, B.
[11] *Lindesey*, B.; *ad Lindeseiam*, D.
[12] *Theodorus*, ins. C.D.
[13] *Riponensi*, B.
[14] *ubi*] in qua, C.D.
[15] *Trumwinum*, A.
[16] *vero*, C.D.
[17] *Canditasa*, B.
[18] *Hwytherne*, C.; *Witerne*, A.; *Witherne*, D.
[19] *ubi*] om. C.D.
[20] *Brito*] om. B.; *natione Brito*, D.
[21] *hæ*] om. C.D.
[22] *duravit*, B.C.D.
[23] *depulsatis Pictis*, C.D.
[24] *Lindefarnensis*, B.
[25] *Hungar*, B.; *Hingar*, A., Gale (who omits *sub.*)
[26] *diu* after *Cuthberti* in A.

TREVISA.

þat was i-doo after þat Wilfrede hadde i-be bisshop of York ten ȝere; þan at þe instaunce of þe kyng Theodorus made Bosam bisshop of York and Cuthbert[1] at Hagustalde chirche, and Eata at Lyndefar chirche þat hatte Haly Eland[2] in þe ryuer of Twede. Aydanus foundede first þat see, and Theodorus made Eadhedus[3] bisshop of Rypoun þat was i-come aȝen out of Lyndeseie; Wilfrede[4] hadde be abbot of Ripoun. Theodorus sende Trunwynus to þe lond of Pictes in þe endes of Engelond faste by Scotlond in a place þat hatte Candida Casa and Whyterne[5] also. Þere Seint Ninian, a Bretoun, was first foundour and doctour; but alle þese sees outake York faillede litell and litel; for þe see of Candida Casa, and þat is Galeway, þat longede þoo to Engelond, durede meny ȝeres vnder ten bisshoppes for to þat he was oute of power [by destroyenge of þe Pictes. Þe sees of Hagustald and of Lyndefare was bytymes al oon under nyne bisshopis][6] aboute a foure score ȝere and ten, and durede anon to þe comynge of þe Danes. In þat tym vnder Hungar and Hubba, Ardulf þe bisshop ȝede longe aboute wiþ Seynt Cuthberd his body anon to kyng Alured his tyme, kyng of West Saxon, whan[7] þe see of Lyndefare was i-sette at Kun-

MS. HARL. 2261.

cion movede betwene hym and kynge Egfride; and then Theodorus ordeinede, at the instance of the kynge, Bosa at Yorke, Tunbertus[8] at the chirche Haugustaldense, Eata at the chirche Lindisfarn, whiche is in the Holielŏnde, in the floode of Twide; whiche sete Aidanus the bischop foundede firste, sendenge Trumwyne to the londe of Pictes, in the costes of Englonde nye to Scotlonde, in to a place whiche is callede Witerne, where Seynte Ninian otherwise callede of commune peple Seynt Ronyon, was firste founder and doctor; but alle these seetes, Yorke excepte, faylede by succession. For the seete of Witerne, whiche longede þat tyme f. 73 b. to Englische men [indurede] by certeyne yeres, vnder x. bischoppes, vn tille that [by] the depopulacion of the Pictes [hit] failede vtterly from the lordeschippe of Englische men; and the seetes of Haugustaldens and Lindisfarne, whiche beenge otherwhile oon indurede allemoste xc. yere, vnder ix. bischoppes, vnder the commenge of Danes. But in the tyme of Hinguar and Hubba, Ardulphus the bischop was vagante longe with þe body of Seynte Cuthberte, vn to the tyme of Aluredus, kynge of Weste Saxones, when the seete of

[1] *Cumbert*, Cx.
[2] *Holy Ylond*, Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *Etheldredus*, MS.
[4] Probably we should read *where Wilfrede.*
[5] So α., Cx.; *Whitne*, MS.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *and*, Cx.
[8] So Harl. MS.

quando sedes Lindisfarnensis [1] apud Kunegestriam,[2] sive Cuningesburgham [3] ponebatur;[4] qui locus [5] hodie dicitur [6] Ubbeford [7] super Twedam. Tandem septimodecimo anno regis Egelredi,[8] filii Edgari, sedes illa usque Dunelmiam [9] translata [10] est, et [11] corpus Cudberti [12] ibidem reconditum [13] per Edmundum episcopum.[14] Ex tunc omnino defecit [15] sedes Hagustaldensis et Lindisfarnensis.[16] Henricus [17] autem primus nono regni sui anno instituit novam sedem apud [18] Caerliel.[19]

Cap. LVII.

De numero sedium episcopalium.[20]

[21] Cantuariensis metropolis habet sub se tredecim episcopos in Anglia, et quatuor in Wallia, videlicet,[22] Roffensem soli Cantiæ præsidentem; item Londoniensem, qui præest Estsaxonibus,[23] Midelsex, et medietati [24] Hertfortshire;[25] item Cicestrensem soli Southsaxiæ [26] et Vectæ insulæ præsidentem; Wyntoniensem, qui præest Hampteshire et Southreye; Salesburiensem,[27] qui præest Dorsetensibus,[28] Barrocshire, et Wylteshire;[29]

[1] *Lindefarnensis*, B.
[2] *Koningcestriam*, B.; *Kunegescestre*, D.
[3] *Cunningesburgh*, A.; *Coyngesburgh*, B.; *Cunnigisburgh*, Gale.
[4] *Kumbreborg* (*Cumbreburgh*, D.) *locabatur*, C.D.
[5] *qui locus*] locus ille, C.D.
[6] *dicitur hodie*, B.
[7] *Ubbesforð*, B.; *Ubleford*, A.; *Hubbeford*, D.
[8] *Egberedi*, B.
[9] *Dunolmiam*, B.; *Dunelium*, Gale.
[10] *translatum*, B.
[11] *et*] om. B.
[12] *Cuthberti*, B., Gale.
[13] Gale adds *est*.
[14] Slightly tranposed in C.D.
[15] *defecit omnino*, B., Gale.
[16] *Lindefarnensis*, B.
[17] *Post hoc autem Henricus primus*, C.D., with other slight variations below.
[18] *apud*] om. C.D.; *Karliolum*, B.
[19] C.D. add: — "quæ quondam "Lugubalia dicebatur."
[20] *episcopatium*] om. C.D.
[21] *Sic igitur in præsenti*, ins. C.D.
[22] *et . . . videlicet*] om. C.D.
[23] *Estsaxoniæ*, Gale; *Estsexiæ*, D.
[24] *medietatem habet Hertfordschiræ*, A.
[25] *Hertfordschiriæ*, B.; *Herfordshiriæ*, Gale.
[26] *Sussex*, B.; *Southsaxonibus*, D.
[27] *Sarisburiensem*, B.; *Saresburiensem*, Gale.
[28] *et*, ins. A.
[29] *Wyntonschire*, B.; *Dorcestre, Barrocensibus, et Wiltoniensibus*, D.

negester,[1] þat hatte Kunnyngesburgh also; þat place hatte now Vbbeford vppon Twede. At þe laste þe seuenþe ȝere of kyng Egbert, kyng Edgarus sone, þat [see] [2] was i-chaunged to Durem, and Seint Cuthbertus body was i-doo þere [3] by þe doynge of Edmond the bisshop; and from þat tyme forward þe see þat hatte Haugustald and Lyndefare fayled alle oute.[4] Þe firste kyng Henry þe nynþe ȝere of his regnynge [5] made þe newe see at Carlille.[6] TREVISA.

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

THE archebisshop of Canterbury haþ vnder hym þrittene bischoppes in Engelond, and foure in Wales. Þat beeþ Rouchestre, he haþ vnder hym Kent allone; [7] Londoun, he haþ vnder hym Essex and Middelsex and half Hertfordschire; Chichestre, he haþ vnder hym Souþsex and þe Ile of Wiȝt; Wynchestre, he haþ under hym Hampschire and Sowþereie; Salysbury haþ vnder hym Barrokschire,[8] Wilteschire, and Dorsete; Excetre haþ vnder hym

---

Lindisfarne was sette at Cungestre or Kunnengesburghe, whiche place is callede now Hubeforde on Twede. And at the laste that sete was removede to Durem, in the xvj. yere of Egelrede kynge, son of kynge Edgare; and the body of Seynte Cuthberte the bischop was buriede there by Edmunde the bischop. From whiche tyme the seetes of the chirches of Haugustaldense failede vtterly; and kynge Henry the firste, in the ix[the] yere of his reigne, ordeynede a newe seete, Caerlielle. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

THE metropolitan of Caunterbury hathe vnder hym xiij. bischoppes in Englond, and iiij. in Wales, that is to say:— the bischop of Rochestre, whiche hathe gouernayle oonly in Kente. Also of London whiche hathe rewle in Estesex, Midelsex, and of the halfe of Hertefordeschire. Also the bischop of Chichestre whiche is presidente oonly of Southesex and of the yle of Wyȝhte. The bischop of Wynchestre, whiche is presidente in Hampteschire and Surry. And of Salisbury þat is presidente of Dorset, Barrokschire,

---

[1] *Kunegestre*, α. and Cx.
[2] Added from Cx.
[3] *brought thyder*, Cx.
[4] *alle oute*] *vtterly*, Cx.
[5] *regne*, Cx.
[6] So α.; *Caerleyl*, Cx.; *Cornwayle*, MS.
[7] *aloon*, α. Sentence varied in Cx.
[8] *Barkshire*, Cx.; who has other slight variations of orthography and expression.

Excestrensem, qui præest Devoniæ [1] et Cornubiæ; Bathoniensem, qui præest Somersetensibus; Wygorniensem, qui præest Glovernensibus, Wygornensibus, et dimidiis [2] Warwycensibus; Herfordensem, qui præest Herefordensibus et parti [3] Salopshire; [4] Cestrensem, sive Conventrensem et Lichfeldensem,[5] qui præest Cestriæ,[6] Staffordiæ, Derbey, dimidiæ Warewiciæ,[7] parti Salopiæ,[8] parti [9] Lancastreshire, [10] videlicet a flumine de Mersee [11] usque [12] flumen de Rippel; [13] Lincolniensem, qui præest provinciis, quæ sunt inter Thamisiam et Humbram, videlicet, Lincolniæ, Leycestriæ, Northamtoniæ, Huntyntoniæ, Bedfordiæ, Bokyngham,[14] Oxoniæ, et dimidiæ [15] Hertfortshire; [16] Heliensem,[17] qui præest Cantebruggeshire, præter Merlond; [18] Norwicensem, qui præest Merlond,[19] Norforchiæ,[20] et Southforchiæ.[21] Item Cantuarensis habet in Wallia quatuor suffraganeos, scilicet Landavensem, Menevensem,[22] Bangoriensem,[23] et Sancti Asaph. Eboracum [24] autem metropolis hodie tantum duos habet sub se [25] episcopos, Dunelmensem scilicet [26] et Carduliensem. *Ranulphus.*[27] Cum igitur duo in Anglia solummodo [28]

---

[1] *Devoniæ*, Gale.

[2] *dimidie*, Gale. (The MSS. have contractions here and below.)

[3] *parti*] om. C.D.

[4] *de Salopeschire*, B.

[5] *Coventre et Lichfeld*, A.D.

[6] *Cestriæ*] om. B.

[7] *et*, ins. A.; *dimidium Warwicensem*, Gale.

[8] *parti Salopiæ*] om. B.

[9] *parti*] et dimidiæ, C.D.; partim, Gale (twice).

[10] *Lancastre*, A.

[11] *Meerse*, B.; D. omits this and the four preceding words.

[12] *ad*, ins. A.D.

[13] *Ryppell*, B.; *Rupill*, A.; *Rippul*, Gale; *Ribbil*, D.

[14] *Bukyngham*, *Bedford*, B.

[15] *habet*, ins. A.

[16] *altera dimidia pertinet Londoniensi*, ins. C.D.

[17] *Eliensem*, B.

[18] *Merslond*, B.; *Mershlond*, C. (not D.)

[19] *Merslond*, B.

[20] *Norfolchiæ*, Gale.

[21] *Sowtfolchiæ*, A. (and Gale, nearly.) There are a few very trivial orthographical and other variations in this part of the chapter in C.D., which have not been noticed.

[22] *Minevensem*, Gale.

[23] *Bangor.*, *Menev.*, B.

[24] *Eboracensis*, B.; *Eboraci*, Gale.

[25] *sub se habet*, B.

[26] *scilicet*] added from B., Gale.

[27] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

[28] *tantummodo*, C.D.; *solomodo*, E.

TREVISA.

Deuenschire and Cornwayle ; Baþe haþ vndre hym Somersete-[schire][1] allone ; Wircestre hathe vnder hym Glowcetre-[schire],[2] Wircestreschire, and half Warwykschire ; Herforde haþ vnder hym Herfordschire and som of Schropschire. Chestre is bisshop of Couentre [and][3] of Lichfield, and haþ vnder hym Chestreschire, Staffordschire, Derbyschire, half Warwikschire, som of Schropschire, and som of Lancastre-schire from þe ryuer of Merce[4] anon to þe ryuer of Rypel.[5] Lyncolne haþ vnder hym þe prouince þat beeþ bytwene Temse and Humber, þat beeþ þe schires of Lyncolne,[6] of Leycetre, of Northamptoun, of Huntyngdoun, of Bedeford, of Bukyng-ham,[7] of Oxenforde, and half Hertfordschire. Hely haþ vnder hym Cantebriggeschire outake Merslond.[8] Norþ-whiche haþ vnder hym Merslond, Norþfolk, and Souþfolk.[9] Also þe archebisshop of Caunterbury haþ foure suffragans in Wales, þat beeþ Landaf, Seint Dauyes, Bangor, and Seint Assaph. Þe archebisshop of ȝork haþ now but tweie bis-shoppes vnder hym, þat beeþ Durem and Carlille. R.[10] And

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

and Wilteschire. Of Excestre, that is presidente of Deuon-schire and of Cornewaile. And of Bathe, þat is presidente in Somerseteschire. Of Wirchestre, whiche is presidente in Glouchestreschire and Wirchestre, and in the halfe of Warwikeschire. And of Herdeforde, whiche is presidente in that schire, and in parte of Shropschire. The bishop of Chestre of Couentre and of Lichefelde, whiche is presidente in Staffordeschire, in Derby, and in the halfe of Warwike-schire, and in parte of Shroppeschire, and in parte of f. 74. a. Lancastreschire that is from the water of Mersee vn to the floode of Rippelle. And of Lyncolne, whiche is presidente of the prouinces whiche be betwene Thamys and Humbre, as Lincolne, Leircestre, Northampton, Huntyngdon, Beddeforde, Bukkyngham, Oxon, and halfe of Hertefordeschire. And of Hely, that is presidente in Cantebriggeschire, Merlonde excepte. Of Norwiche, that is presidente in Merlonde, Northefolke, and Sowthefolke. Also the metropolitan of Caunterbery hathe iiij. suffraganes in Wales ; that is to say, of Landauense, of Bangor, of Meneuia, and Assaph. The archebischop of Yorke hathe ij. bischoppes vnder hym oonly, of Durem and Caerliel. Then sithe þer be ij.

---

[1] Added from Cx. (not in α.)
[2] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *Mersee*, Cx.
[5] *Rypyl*, α.
[6] *of Engelonde, Lyncolne*, MS.
[7] *Buggyngham*, α.; *Bokyngham*, Cx.
[8] *Merlond*, α. and Cx. ; and so below.
[9] *Norfolk and Suffolk*, Cx.
[10] Reference added from Cx. ; who omits the latter part of the sentence.

De duobus Angliæ primatibus.

sunt primates, Cantuariensis, qui dicitur[1] primas totius Angliæ, et[2] Eboracensis, qui primas Angliæ dicitur;[3] quid unus alteri debeat, et[4] in quibus eis[5] subjacere teneatur,[6] in subsequentibus circa annum Domini[7] millesimum septuagesimum secundum plenius continetur, ubi coram rege[8] Willelmo primo et Angliæ[9] præsulibus, ex mandato Papæ inter præfatos primates causa ventilata,[10] decretum est ut Eboracensis in his quæ ad cultum catholicum pertinent Cantuariensi subjaceat;[11] ita, videlicet, ut ubicumque[12] in Anglia Cantuariensis concilium cogere[13] voluerit, Eboracensis cum suis suffraganeis adesse teneatur, et ejus[14] canonicis decretis obedire.[15] Obeunte autem Cantuariensi, Eboracensis Doroberniam veniet, electum cum cæteris episcopis in primatem proprium consecrabit. Quod si Eboracensis obierit, successor ejus ad Cantuariensem accedet, et ordinationem ab eo accipiet,[16] faciendo juramentum cum professione de

[1] *qui dicitur*] quidem, C. (not D.)
[2] *et*] om. C. (not D.)
[3] *dicitur primas Angliæ*, B.D.
[4] *et*] om. B.
[5] *ei*, B.; om. Gale.
[6] *eis . . . teneatur*] ve subjaceat, C.D.
[7] *gratiæ*, C.D.
[8] *Angliæ*, ins. B.
[9] *Angliæ*] om. C.D.
[10] *sic*, ins. B.
[11] Slightly transposed in C.D.
[12] *locorum*, ins. C.D.
[13] *vocare*, B.
[14] *ejus*] om. A.B., Gale.
[15] *suffraganeis . . . obedire*] sibi subjectis episcopis aderit, canonicis ejus præceptis obediens erit, C.D.
[16] *recipiet*, Gale.

TREVISA.

so beeþ but tweie primates in Engelond, Canturbury, þat is i-cleped primate of al Engelond, and ȝork primate of Engelond. What oon of hem schal doo to þat oþer, and in what poynt he schal be obedient and vnder hym, it is fully conteyned wiþ ynne aboute þe ȝere of our Lord a þowsand þre skore and twelue. Þere to fore þe firste kyng William and þe bisshoppes of Engelond, by maundement of þe pope þe cause was i-handled and i-treted bytwene þe forsaide primates and ordeyned, and i-demed þat þe primat of ȝork schal be [sugett to þe] [1] primat of Canterbury in þinges þat longeþ to þe worschippe of God and to þe bileue of holy chirche, so þat in what place euere it [2] be in Engelond þat þe primate of Caunterbury [3] wil hote and constreyne and gadre [4] a counsail of clergie, þe primat of York is i-holde wiþ his suffragans forto be þere, and forto be obedient to þe ordenaunce þat þere is lawefulliche i-ordeyned. Whan þe primat of Caunterbury is deed, þe primat of ȝork schal come to Cauntyrbury, and wiþ oþere bisshoppes he schal sacre hym þat is i-chose, and so wiþ oþere bisshoppes he schal sacre his owne primat. ȝif þe primat of ȝork is deed his successour schal come to þe primat [5] of Caunterbury, and he schal take his ordynaunce of hym, and do his ooþ wiþ professioun of lawe-

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

primates in Englonde, oon of Caunterbury, that is callede the primate of alle Englonde, that other of Yorke, whiche is callede the primate of Englonde, in what thynges oon of theym awe to be subiecte to that other, hit schalle be expressede in this processe folowenge, abowte the yere of oure Lorde God a m. lx. and xij. yere, more plenerly. Wherefore a cause was ventilate and movede thro the commaundemente of the pope, afore William firste kinge of Englonde, and diuerse other bischoppes of that londe; where hit was decrete that tharchebischop of Yorke scholde be subiecte to þe primate of Caunterbury in those thynges whiche perteyne to the honor of God; in so moche that tharchebischop of Yorke with his suffraganes scholde be at the cownselle where hit pleasede the primate of Caunterbury to assigne hit, and to obey the decretes of canon. And the archebischop of Caunterbury dedde, the archebischop of Yorke schalle come to Caunterbury, and consecrate the man electe in to the primate. And if the archebischop of Yorke dee, his successor shalle comme to Caunterbury to receyve his ordinacion, makenge an othe

---

[1] Added from α. and Cx.

[2] *euer hit*, α. and Cx.; *it euere*, MS.

[3] *Engelond*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)

[4] *constrayne to gadre*, Cx.

[5] *bisshop*, Cx.

obedientia canonica. Inferius autem, circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum nonagesimum quintum, sub tempore regis Ricardi, ponuntur rationes pro parte et[1] jure utriusque primatis facientes. Necnon et[2] a tempore Conquæstus usque ad tempora ultimi Henrici regis,[3] sub diebus Thurstini,[4] Thomæ, et[5] aliorum[6] Eboracensium pontificum,[7] quid alter primas alteri fecerit, quomodo quoque[8] alter alterius manum subterfugerit,[9] plenius edocetur; præsentem vero[10] locum, cum prologi magis quam pleni tractatus[11] vicem gerat, præfatis rationibus[12] onerare nimis foret tædiosum.

Cap. LVIII.

A quot[13] *et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus.*[14]

Britones. Hæc insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui[15] anno Hely sacerdotis xviij°., tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliij°.,[16] ante urbem Romam conditam quadringentesimo xxxij°, (*Beda, libro primo,*[17]) de tractu Armorico advecti[18] australes insulæ partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum

[1] *parte et*] om. B.

[2] *Necnon et*] Sparsim quoque per cronicam istam, C.D.

[3] *tempora .... regis*] novissimum Henricum regem, C.D.

[4] *Thurstani*, B.

[5] *quorundam*, ins. C.D.

[6] *aliorum*] om. A.

[7] *episcoporum*, C.D.

[8] *quomodo quoque*] quomodoque, C.D.; *quoque*, om. A.B.

[9] *subterfugit*, B.

[10] *tamen*, C. (not D.)

[11] *magis . . . tractatus*] om. C.D.

[12] *amplius*, ins. C.D., Gale.

[13] *quot*, *quando*, Gale.

[14] *Quando et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus*, A.; *Quibus hæc terra inhabitata sit gentibus*, B.; *De incolis Angliæ*, C.; *De incolis prioribus*, D.

[15] *quo*, B.

[16] *anno xlij°.*] ccccciii., Gale.

[17] C.D. omit reference.

[18] *advenientes*, B.

ful obediens. Wiþ ynne, aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord elleune hundred foure score and fiftene, vnder þe tyme of kyng Richard, beeþ resouns i-sette þat makeþ for þe party and for þe riȝt of eyþer primate.[1] Also what oone primat dede to þat oþer in tyme of Thurstinus, of Thomas, and of oþere bisshoppes of Ȝork from þe Conquest anon to þe laste kyng Henry his[2] tyme. Also þere it is i-tauȝt how eiþer of hem asterte[3] from oþer. Þis place is but a forspekynge, and nouȝt a ful tretis þerof. Þerfore hit were noyefulle[4] to charge þis place wiþ alle þilke resouns þat þere beeþ i-made. TREVISA

A quot, quando, et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

BRETOUNS wonede first in þis ilond þe ȝere of Hely þe preost eiȝtetene; of Siluius Posthumnus, kyng of Latyns, eleuene; after þe takynge of Troye, þre and fourty ȝere; to fore þe byldynge of Rome, foure hundred and two and þritty.[5] *Beda, libro primo.* Þei come hider and took hir cours from Armorik, þat now is þe oþer Bretayne; þey helde long tyme

---

with profession off obedience canonicalle. But in this processe foloenge, abowte the yere of God m[1] c. xcv.,[6] vnder the tyme of kynge Richarde the firste, reasones were allegate for either parte of bothe primates: and also from the tyme of the Conqueste vn to the tymes of the laste Henry kynge, in the daies of Thurstyn, Thomas, and of other bischoppes of Yorke, what that oon primate did to that other, and how oon of theyme fledde the powere of that other, for to reherse the reasones of theyme and allegacion, hit were onerable to vs in this tyme. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 74 b.

Of what Peple, how mony, and when, this Yle of Briteyne was inhabite.—Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

THIS yle callede Englonde now hade Britones the firste inhabitatores of hit, in þe xviij[the] yere of Hely preste, in the tyme of Siluius Posthumus kynge of Latines, þe xliij[ti] yere after the destruccion of Troye, by cccc. yere and xxxij[ti] afore the cite of Rome was edifiede. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche commenge from Armorike occupiede a longe season the sowthe partes of the yle of Briteyne. Hyt

---

[1] Sentence varied in Cx.
[2] *Henries*, α.
[3] *starte*, Cx.
[4] *noyeful*, α., Cx.
[5] Sentence varied in Cx
[6] m[l]. c. 95, Harl. MS. The Roman and Arabic numerals are used promiscuously elsewhere.

Picti. tempore Vespasiani ducis Romani,[1] gentem Pictorum de[2] Scythia[3] longis navibus oceanum ingressam, circumagente flatu ventorum,[4] oras boreales Hiberniæ intrasse, atque inventa ibi Scotorum gente sedes sibi[5] petivisse, nec impetrare potuisse.[6] [7] Nam cum Hibernia, ut Scoti asserebant, ambas gentas capere non posset, Scoti remiserunt Pictos ad septentrionales partes[8] Britanniæ, opem contra Britones adversantes,[9] si insurgerent, promittentes. Uxoresque illis[10] de filiabus suis ea conditione tradiderunt, ut ubi res veniret[11] in dubium, magis de fœminea[12] prosapia quam de masculina regem sibi eligerent. *Gaufridus.*[13] Tempore autem[14] Vespasiani Cæsaris, regnante apud Britannos Mario filio Arviragi, Rodricus quidam rex Pictorum de Scythia veniens cœpit Albaniam devastare; quem Marius interficiens dedit devicto populo, qui cum Rodrico venerat, borealem partem Albaniæ, quæ Cathenesia[15] dicitur, ad inhabitandum. Illi vero uxoribus carentes, cum de natione Britonum uxores[16] habere non possent,[17]

---

[1] *ducis Romani*] om. C.D.

[2] *de*] om. C.

[3] *Scicia* or *Schicia*, MSS. and Gale, and so below.

[4] *mentuorum*, C.

[5] *ibi*, C.D.

[6] *nec . . . potuisse*] om. C.D.

[7] *atque . . . potuisse*] om. B.

[8] *partes*] om. B.

[9] *Britones adversantes*] adversarios, C.D.

[10] *eis*, C.D. ; om. B.

[11] *veniebat*, D.

[12] *fœminina*, B.

[13] *Galfridus*, B.

[14] *autem*] om. C.D.

[15] *Catanesia*, Gale.

[16] *uxores*] om. C.

[17] *possunt*, B.

þe souþ contrayes of þe ilond. Hit byfelle afterwarde in Vespasi[a]nus tyme, duke of Rome, þatt þe Pictes out of Scythia [1] schipped into occean, and were i-dryue aboute wiþ þe wynde, and entrede in to þe norþ costes of Irlond, and founde þere Scottes, and prayed for to haue a place to wonye inne, and myȝte none gete. For Irlond, as Scottes seide, myȝt nouȝt susteyne boþe peple. Scottes sente þe Pictes to the norþ side of Bretayne, and behiȝte [2] hem [3] help aȝenst þe Bretouns þat were enemyes, yf þey wolde arise, and took hem to wyfes of here douȝtres vppon suche a condicioun; ȝif doute fel who schulde haue ryȝt for to be kyng, he [4] schulde raþer chese hem a kyng of þe moder side þan of þe fader side, of þe wommen kyn raþer [þan] [5] of þe men kyn. *Gaufridus.* In Vaspacian þe emperour his tyme, whan Marius Aruiragus his sone was kyng of Bretouns, on [6] Rodrik kyng of Pictes come out of Scythia [1] and gan to destroye Scotlonde. Þan Marius þe kyng slowe þis Rodorik kyng of Pictes, and ȝaf þe norþ party of [7] Scotlond, þat hatte Cathenesia, to þe men þat were i-come wiþ Roderik and were ouercome wiþ [8] hem, for to wone ynne. But þese men hadde non wifes, ne none myȝte haue of þe naciouns of Bretouns; þerfore þey TREVISA.

---

happede afterwarde in the tyme of Vespasian duke of Rome, the peple of Pictes to haue commen from Scythia,[1] and to haue intrede the occean, the wynde helpenge theyme, and so to haue intrede the northe costes of Yrlonde; whiche fyndenge þer Scottes desirede a place in that londe whom thei myȝhte inhabite, but thei kouthe not obteyne that desire. For the Scottes seide Yrlonde wolde not suffice bothe peple. Wherefore thei sende the Pictes to the northe partes of Briteyne, promysenge helpe to theyme, if that the Britones made eny insurreccion ageyne theym; ȝiffenge to theyme theire doȝhters to be mariede, in that condicion, that if there were any dowte thei scholde elect in to theire kynge oon of the female kynde rather then of the male kynde and bloode. *Gaufridus.* In the tyme of Vespasian emperoure, Marius son of Aruiragus reignenge at Britones, Rodricus a kynge of Pictes, commenge from Scythia,[1] began to waste Albania, whom Marius did slee, ȝiffenge to the peple deuicte whiche come with Rodricus the northe parte of Albania to inhabite, whiche is called Cateneyse. Whiche wontenge wifes, and the Britones not MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Scicia* or *Scitia*, MSS., as usual; and so below.
[2] So Cx.; *and hiȝt*, α.; *and he hiȝte*, MS.
[3] So Cx.; *hymself*, MS.
[4] *they*, Cx.
[5] Added from α. and Cx.
[6] *one*, Cx.
[7] So Cx; *to*, MS.
[8] *by*, Cx.

transfretantes Hiberniam Hiberniensium filias sibi copularunt;[1] eo tamen pacto, ut sanguis maternus in successionibus præferretur.[2] *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septimo decimo.*[3] Servius tamen[4] super Virgilium dicit Pictos esse Agathyrsos, sedesque quondam circa paludes Scythicas habuisse. Et dicuntur Picti quasi stigmatizati seu[5] cauteriati, propter abundantiam fleugmatis,[6] quia[7] ubi ex crebris stigmatibus cicatrices obducuntur, corpora quasi picta redduntur. Suntque isti populi idem quod Gothi; nam cum Maximus tyrannus de Britannia in Galliam[8] cum omni armato terræ[9] milite ad occupandum imperium transvectus fuisset, Gratianus et Valentinianus, fratres imperiique consortes, gentem hanc Gothicam, in rebus bellicis fortem et strenuam, beneficiis et blanditiis allectam, a Scythiæ finibus in boreales Britanniæ partes ad infestandum[10] Britones, omni armato milite tunc nudatos, navigio transmiserunt. Sicque de prædonibus accolæ effecti,[11] usurpatas[12] sedes aquilonales[13] tenuerunt.[14] *Gaufridus.* Carausius

---

[1] *copulaverunt*, B.

[2] *præferatur*, C.D.

[3] C.D. omit the reference. The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.* lib. 1. c. 6. (p. 188, Brewer). The Harl. MS. is wrong.

[4] *tamen*] om. C.D.

[5] *vel*, B.

[6] *fleumatis*, A.B.D., Gale.

[7] *qui*, E.

[8] *Franciam*, C.D.

[9] *terra*, B.

[10] *infestandos*, Gale.

[11] *facti*, D.

[12] *voluptates*, E.

[13] *aquilonares*, B.

[14] *effecti . . . tenuerunt*] facti usurpatas ad sedes aquilonares pervenerunt, C. (not D.)

seillede into Irlond, and toke hem to wyfes Irischemen douȝters, at [1] þat couenaunt, þat the moder blood schulde be putt to fore in successioun of heritage. *Giraldus, capitulo septimodecimo.* Noþeles Seruius [2] super Virgilium seiþ þat Pictes beeþ Agatirsis,[3] þat hadde som wonynge places aboute þe wateres of Scythia, and þei beeþ i-cleped Pictes by cause of peyntynge [and snittynge] [4] of woundes þat beeþ i-sene on hire bodies, for þey hadde moche fleem,[5] and were ofte boistousliche i-lete blood,[6] and hadde many woundes i-sene on hire bodies,[7] so þat þey semede as it were men i-peynt wiþ woundes; þerfore þey were i-cleped Pictus, as it were peynted men. Þese men and the Gotes ben al oon peple: for whan Maximus þe tyraunt was i-went [8] out of Britayne in to Fraunce for to occupie þe empere; þanne Gratianus and Valentinianus, þat were breþren and felawes of þe empere, broȝte þese Gothes out of Scythia wiþ greet ȝiftes, wiþ flaterynge and false [9] byhestes, in to þe north contray of Britayne; for þey were stalworþe and strong men of armes. And so þese briboures were i-made men of þe [10] lond and of þe [11] contray, and wonede in þe northe contraies, and hilde þere citees and townes. *Gaufridus.*[12] Carausius [13] þe tyraunt slow [14] TREVISA.

---

willenge to mary with theyme, saylede in to Yrlonde in maryenge to theyme the doȝhters of men of Yrlonde, in this condicion, that the bloode female scholde be preferrede in succession. *Giraldus De Papa, capitulo septimo.* Neuerthelesse Seruius on Virgille callethe the Pictes Agathyrsi,[15] and to haue hade theire habitaciones somme tyme abowte the marras of Scythia whiche were callede Pictes, for the habundance of fleume in theyme. These peple be callede also Gothi, for when Maximus the tyrante wente from Englonde in to Fraunce with a grete multitude of armede men to occupy the empyre, Gratian and Valentinian, breder and felowes of thempire, toke to theyme the peple callede Gothi, nowble and stronge in batelle, thro rewarde and feire speche, from the costes of Scythia in to the northe partes of Briteyne, with a grete multitude of peple, to vexe the Britones; and so that peple, of robbers made inhabitatores, occupiede the northe partes of Briteyne thro presumpcion. *Gaufridus.* MS. HARL. 2261. f. 72. a.

---

[1] *by*, Cx.
[2] *Sirinus*, MS. and Cx.
[3] *Agartirses*, *α*.
[4] Added from *α*. and Cx.
[5] *flewme*, Cx.
[6] *ofte boxed and lete blood*, Cx.
[7] *body*, *α*., Cx.
[8] *wente*, Cx.
[9] *fayre*, Cx.
[10] *þe*] om. *α*., Cx.
[11] *þe*] om. *α*., Cx.
[12] Added from *α*. and Cx.
[13] So *α*.; *Caraucius*, MS. (which has *Careucius* below), and Harl. MS.
[14] *slouȝ*, *α*.
[15] *Agatirsi*, Harl. MS.

tyrannus dolo Pictorum, qui in auxilium Bassiani venerant,[1] ipsum[2] Bassianum interfecit, deditque Pictis locum mansionis in Albania; ubi permixti cum Britonibus per subsequens ævum permanserunt. *Ranulphus.*[3] At[4] cum Picti boreales[5] prius Albaniæ partes occupassent, videtur quod locus mansionis, quam Carausius iste[6] dedit Pictis, sit pars[7] austrina Albaniæ, a muro scilicet Romani operis transverso[8] usque ad mare Scoticum protensa; in quo[9] continetur Galwodia et Lodoneya, de quo Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, sic loquitur: "Ninianus,[10] vir sanctus, convertit australes "Pictos,"[11] et cætera. Hunc tandem pagum Saxones supervenientes fecerunt pertinere ad provinciam Northimbrorum Berniciorum,[12] donec Kynadius Alpini filius, rex Scotorum, deletis[13] Pictis, illud territorium quod est inter Twedam et mare Scoticum, fecerat suo regno pertinere.[14] *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Processu vero temporis Scoti, duce Reuda de Hibernia, quæ proprie Scotorum[15] patria[16] est, egressi,[17] vel amicitia vel ferro sibimet juxta Pictos[18] sedes statue-

Scoti.

[1] *venerant*] om. E.
[2] *ipsum*] om. D.
[3] *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.
[4] *Et*, C.D.
[5] *boreas*, B.
[6] *iste*] om. C.D.
[7] *pars*] om. B.
[8] *transversa*, Gale.
[9] *qua*, C.D.
[10] *Ninian*, A.B.
[11] *Pictos australes*, B.
[12] *Berniciorum*] om. C. (not D.)
[13] *delectis*, E.
[14] Sentence varied in C.D.
[15] *Scotticorum*, A. Here (and sometimes elsewhere) E. has the double *t*.
[16] *propria*, C., Gale (not D.)
[17] *egressi*] progressi, C.D.
[18] *Pictos*] om. E.

Bassianus by help and tresoun of þe Pictes þat come in help and socour of Bassianus, and ȝaf þe Pictes a wonynge place in Albania, þat is Scotland. Þere þey wonede long tyme afterwarde i-medled[1] wiþ Britouns. ℞. Þanne siþþe þe Pikkes[2] occupied raþer[3] þe norþside of Scotlond,[4] it semeþ þat þe wonyng place þat þis Carausius ȝaf hem is þe souþside of Scotlonde þat strecche þ [from þe][5] þwart ouer wal of Romayn werk to þe Scottische see, and conteyneþ Galewey and Lodouia [þat is][6] Lodway. Þerof Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, spekeþ in þis manere: Nynyan þe holy man converted þe souþ Pictes. Afterward þe Saxons come and made þat contray longe to Brenicia, þe norþ partie of Norþhumberlond, for to[7] Kynadyus, Alpynus his sone, kyng of Scotlond, put out [þe Pictes][8] and made þat contrey þat is bytwene Twede and þe Scottisshe see longe to his kyngdom. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Afterward longe tyme the Scottes were i-lad by duke Reuda, and com out of Irlond, þat is þe propre contray of Scottes, and wiþ loue oþer wiþ strengþe made hem a place faste by þe Pictes in þe norþ TREVISA.

Carausius the tyraunte did sle Bassian thro the decepcion of the Pictes, whiche come to haue schewede helpe to þe seide Bassian, whiche ȝafe to the Pictes a place to inhabite in Albania, where thei did abyde afterwarde by continuacion permixte with Britones. R. And when the Pictes hade occupiede afore tyme the northe partes of Albania, hit semethe that the place of inhabitacion whom Carausius grauntede to theym was the sowthe parte of Albania, protendede from the famose walle of Roman werke ouertwarde[9] to the Scottissee, in whom Galoway is conteynede; of whom Beda spekethe, libro iij°, capitulo 2°, seyenge, Seynte Ronyon conuertede þe sowthe Pictes. And at the laste the Saxones causede that coste to perteyne to the prouince of Northumbrelonde, vn til Kinadius the son of Alpinus, kynge of Scottes, destroyenge the Pictes, made that territory whiche is betwene Twede and the Scottissee to longe to his realme. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* And in processe of tyme the Scottes, takenge to theyme Reuda of Yrlonde to theire gouernoure, whiche londe is nye to the Scottes, wente furthe and toke to theyme seetes, what thro marte other fauor, nye to the Pictes, at the northe parte of an arme of the see, MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *i-melled, α.*

2 *seþþe þat Pictes, α.*, Cx.

3 *firste*, Cx.

4 *þere þey wonede* added in MS. (not in α. or Cx.)

5 Added from α. and Cx.

6 Added from Cx.

7 *vnto the tyme that*, Cx.

8 Added from α. and Cx.

9 So Harl. MS.

runt, ad septentrionalem scilicet[1] partem sinus maris, qui ab occidente in terram longo spatio[2] irrumpens[3] Britones antiquitus secernebat a Pictis.[4] A quo duce Reuda Scoti vocabantur Dalreudini;[5] nam lingua eorum *dal* partem significat.[6] *Giraldus, distinctione prima.* Picti, quia uxores quas de Britonibus habere non poterant de Scotis[7] Hiberniensibus obtinuerant,[8] eos[9] ad cohabitandum allexerunt; terramque maritimam, ubi mare angustum est, quæ nunc Galwodia dicitur, eis[10] concesserunt. *Marianus.*[11] Apud Argayl[12] applicuerunt Scoti,[13] qui et Hibernienses, quod sonat Latine margo Scotorum,[14] eo quod Scoti ibidem[15] applicarent[16] ad faciendum damna Britannis; vel quia locus ille proximior est[17] Hibernicis ad applicandum.[18][19] *Beda, libro primo.*[20] Et sic Scoti tertiam in Britannia[21] post Britones et Pictos gentem addiderunt. *Ranulphus.*[22]

Saxones. Tandem Saxones contra[23] Scotos et Pictos a Britonibus invitati, expulsis Britonibus usque in Cambriam,[24] terram paulatim occupantes, et usque ad mare Scoticum fines suos dilatantes,[25] quartam in insula gentem fecerunt.

---

1 *scilicet*] om. Gale.
2 *spatio*] om. C. (not D.)
3 *irrumpentis*, C.; *irrumpentes*, Gale; *erumpens*, D.
4 C.D. add: *ubi erat et civitas Britonum Alcluid.*
5 *Daroudini*, A.; *Dareudini*, B.
6 *A . . . significat*] om. C.D.; signet, B.
7 *Scoticis*, A.
8 *obtinuerunt*, C.D.
9 *eos*] om. E.
10 *eisdem*, C. (not D.)
11 *Martinus*, E.
12 *Argail*, B., Gale.
13 *Scotici*, A.
14 *Scoticorum*, A.
15 *ibi*, C.D.
16 *applicarunt*, C. (not D.)
17 *est*] om. A.B.
18 *est . . . applicandum*] et affinis est Hiberniæ, C.D.
19 C.D. insert here the following passage: "*Ranulfus.* Seu quia "Scoti super Pictos locum illum "occupavere sicut jam dicetur. "Extenditur autem Galwedia ab "illo famoso maris sinu ubi quon- "dam urbs Alcluid fuerat, ubi et "Severus vallum fecerat, qui etiam "solebat secernere Britones a Pictis "[usque ad mare Scoticum, quod "Scotice Forth dicitur, currens- "que juxta oppidum de Scrivelyn], "usque ad flumen Tae regna Sco- "torum et Anglorum solebat divi- "dere." The words in brackets added from D.
20 *Alfridus*, C.D.
21 *in Brit. tertiam*, B.
22 *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.
23 *contra*] quasi ad expugnandum, B.
24 *Wallias*, C.D.
25 *et . . . dilatantes*] om. A.B.

TREVISA.

side of þat arme of þe see þat brekeþ in to the ilond in þe west side, þat departed in olde tyme bytwene Britouns and Pictes. Of þis duke Reuda þe Scottes hadde þe name, and were[1] i-cleped Dalreudynes, as it were Reda[2] his part, for in here speche a part is i-cleped *dal.* *Giraldus, distinctione prima.* Þe Pictes myȝte haue noon[3] wyfes of Bretouns, but þey toke hem wifes of Irisch Scottes, and byhete hem faire forto wonye wiþ hem, and graunted hem a lond by þe see side; þere þe see is narwe;[4] þat lond now hatte Galewey. *Marianus.* Irisch Scottes londede at Argoyl,[5] þat is Scottene Clyf, for Scottes londede þere forto harmye[6] þe Britouns, oþer for þat place is next to Irlond forto come in[7] to Britayne. *Beda.* And so the Scottes after Bretouns and Pictes made þe þridde manere of[8] peple wonynge in Bretayne. R. Þanne after þat come[9] Saxouns at þe prayenge of þe Britouns, to helpe[10] aȝenst þe Scottes and þe Pictes; and þe Britouns were i-putte out anoon to Wales, and Saxons occupied þe lond litel and litel and efte more and more, and[11] straiȝt[12] anon to þe Scottische see; and so Saxons made þe

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche, brekenge vp in to the londe from the weste in a grete space, departede in olde tymes the Britones from the Pictes: of whiche duke, Reuda by name, the Scottes were callede Dalreudini; for *dal* in the langage of theyme signifiethe parte. *Gaufridus,*[13] *distinctione prima.* The Pictes, hauenge not licence to marye with the doȝhters of Britones, mariede with the Scottes of Yrlonde, movenge theym to inhabite that londe with theyme, [and] grauntede to theyme the londe in the costes nye to the see, where the see is not brode and large, callede now Galaway. *Marianus.* The Scottes londed, otherwise callede men of Yrlonde, at a place callede Argail, whiche sowndethe in Englische, the brynke of Scottes, in that the Scottes did londe þer to do harme to the Britones, other elles for cause that place was most nye to men of Yrlonde to londe at. *Beda.* And so the Scottes brouȝhte to Englonde the thridde peple, after Britones and Pictes. R. And at the laste the Saxones desirede to inhabite that londe of the Britones ageyne the Scottes and Pictes, the Britones expulsede in to Wales, occupiede that londe to the f. 76. b.

---

[1] *weþe,* MS.
[2] *Reuda, α.*
[3] *no, α.*
[4] *narowe, α.,* Cx.
[5] *Argayl, α.,* Cx.
[6] *doo harme to,* Cx.
[7] *alonde in Britayne, α.*
[8] *of*] om., *α.*
[9] *comeþe, α.*; *come the,* Cx.
[10] *helpe hem,* Cx.
[11] *and*] om., *α.* and Cx. (the latter has other omissions.)
[12] *streiȝt, α.*
[13] The true reference is to Girald. *De Inst. Princ.* lib. 1. c. 6.

Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.[1] Quia Angli seu Saxones a Germania originem duxerunt, hactenus a vicina gente Britonum corrupte Germanni[2] nuncupantur. *Ranulphus.*[3] Veruntamen circa annum Domini octingentesimum Egbertus rex Westsaxonum jussit omnes indigenas vocari Anglos. *Alfridus.* Dani denuo ducentis ferme annis, a tempore scilicet[4] Egberti usque ad tempora Sancti Edwardi, terram conterentes, quintam in insula gentem fecerunt; sed et[5] illi postmodum defecerunt.[6] Postremo Normanni sub duce Willelmo, subjugatis Anglis, terram usque hodie possidentes, sextam in insula gentem fecerunt. Sed et Flandrenses,[7] tempore regis Henrici,[8] in magna copia juxta[9] Mailros ad orientalem Angliæ plagam habitationem pro tempore accipientes, septimam in insula gentem fecerunt.[10] Jubente tamen eodem rege[11] ad occidentalem Walliæ partem apud Haverford[12] sunt translati. *Ranulphus.*[13] Sicque[14] Britannia, modo[15] deficientibus omnino Danis et Pictis, his quinque[16] nationibus habitatur in præsenti, videlicet,[17] Scotis in Albania, Britonibus in Cam-

Dani.

Normanni.

Flandrenses.

[1] Reference omitted in D.
[2] *Garmanni*, Gale; *Germani*, D.
[3] Reference added from B , Gale.
[4] *scilicet*, om. C.D.
[5] *et*] om. C.D.
[6] *evanuerunt*, C.D.
[7] *Flandres*, A.
[8] *Henriciregisprimi*, A.B.D., Gale.
[9] *juxta*] om. E.
[10] *Sed . . . fecerunt*] om. C. (not D.)
[11] *idem Flandrenses*, add. C.D.
[12] *Haverforth*, A.
[13] *Ranulphus* om. C.D.
[14] *Itaque*, C.D.
[15] *modo*] om. C.D.
[16] *Danis Pictis hisque*, B.
[17] Added from A., Gale.

TREVISA.

fourþe manere men[1] in þe ilonde of Bretayne. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo quinto.*[2] For Saxons and Anglis come out of Germania, ȝet som Bretouns þat woneþ nygh clepeþ hem schortly[3] Germans. ℞. Notheles aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord eyȝte hondred, Egbertus, kyng of West Saxon, commandede and het clepe[4] alle manere men of þe londe[5] Englische men. *Alfridus.* Þanne after þat þe Danes pursued þe lond, aboute a two hondred ȝere, þat is to menynge from þe forseide Egbertes tyme anon to Seint Edwardes tyme, and made þe fifte manere peple in þe ilond, bot þey faillede afterward. At þe laste come Normans vnder duke William his tyme,[6] and suduwede Englische men, and ȝit holdeþ[7] þe londe; and þey made þe sixte peple in þe ilonde. But in þe firste kyng Henries[8] tymes come many Flemmynges and fenge a wonyng place for a tyme bysides Mailros in þe west side of Engelond, and made þe seuenþe peple in þe ilond. Noþeles by heste of þe same kyng, þey were i-houe þennes and i-putte[9] to Hauerforde his side, [in þe west side][10] of Wales. [℞.][11] And so now in Brytayne, Danes and Pictes failleþ al out, and fyue naciouns woneþ þerynne; þat beeþ Scottes in Albania, þat is Scotlond, Britouns in Cambria, þat is Wales, but þat Flemmynges woneþ ynne is in[12] West Wales, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Scottisse costes and see, so they brouȝhte in to that londe the iiij^the nacion. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.* And for cause Englische men other Saxones toke theire originalle of Germanye, ȝitte thei be callede schortely Germanni of the nye peple of Britones. ℞. And abowte the viij^c. yere of grace Egbertus kynge of Weste Saxones commaundede alle the inhabitatores of that londe to be callede Englische men. *Alfridus.* After the tymes of Egberte by ij^c. yere foloenge allemoste, the Danes entrenge in to that yle brouȝhte the v^the peple in to hit vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde, but thei failede afterwarde. After that the Normannes with William Conqueroure subduenge Englische men to theyme, hauenge that londe in possession vn to this tyme, brouȝhte the vj^the peple to that yle. But after that men of Flaundres toke to theyme an inhabitacion at Mailros, the este plage of Englonde, with a grete multitude, in the tyme of kynge Henry the firste, and brouȝhte the vij^the peple in to Englonde as for a season and tyme. But after that thei were removede

---

1 *of men*, α., Cx.
2 *nono*, Cx.
3 So α. and Cx.; *clepeþ schortly þe*, MS.
4 *badde men to calle*, Cx.
5 So α.; *londe of*, MS.
6 *his tyme*] om. α. and Cx., probably rightly.
7 *kepe they*, Cx.
8 *Henry his tyme*, α.
9 *put thens and dryuen*, Cx.
10 Added from α. and Cx.
11 Reference added from Cx.
12 *is in*] *that is*, Cx.

bria, Flandrensibus in Westwallia, Normannis et Anglis permixtim in tota insula.[1] Cum igitur de subtractione Danorum quoad modum et eventum[2] apud historicos nulla sit hæsitatio, qualiter Picti defecerint[3] modo sit agendum.[4] *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septuagesimo quinto.*[5] Occupata aliquando[6] a Saxonibus Britannia,[7] stabilique cum Pictis pace firmata, Scoti, qui Pictis adjuncti supervenerant, videntes Pictos quamquam pauciores, tamen armis et animi[8] præstantiores, ad solitas tanquam sibi innatas[9] proditiones, quibus cæteris præminent gentibus, recurrerunt.[10] Convocatos[11] namque[12] tanquam ad convivium Pictorum magnates, captata crapulæ opportunitate, extractione clavorum qui tabulata tenebant, (in bancorum concavitate sedebant,)[13] mira decipula poplite tenus communiter[14] et improvise lapsos statim trucidarunt. Sicque ex[15] duobus populis gens bellicosior totaliter evanuit.

Pictorum dolosa extinctio.

---

[1] Slightly altered and transposed in C.D.

[2] *quoad . . . eventum*] om. C.D.

[3] *defecerunt*, B.

[4] *modo sit agendum*] videndum est, C.D.

[5] C.D. omits reference; *cap.* 17°, A. B., Gale. The true reference is to c. 6, as before; C. and D. agree best with Giraldus.

[6] *aliquando*] om. C.D.

[7] *insula*, C.D.

[8] *omnino*, B.; *animo*, A., Gale.

[9] *innatas sibi*, B.

[10] Slightly altered in C.D.; *recurrerunt* before *quibus* in B.

[11] *Convocatosque*, E.

[12] *itaque*, C.D.

[13] *sedebant*] sederunt, B.; quibus insidebant, C. (not D.)

[14] *similiter*, C. (not D.) The sentence is slightly varied in these MSS.

[15] *de*, C.D.

Normans and Englischemen [ben] i-medled[1] in alle þe ilond. For it is no doute in stories how and in what manere þe Danes were i-putte away and destroyed out of Bretayne; now it is [to][2] declarynge how þe Pictes were destroyed and failled. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo* 17. Bretayne was somtyme occupied wiþ Saxons, and pees was i-made and i-stabled[3] wiþ the Pictes; þanne Scottes[4] þat come wiþ the Pictes syhe[5] þat þe Pictes were lasse þan þe Scottes, and[6] were nobler of dedes and better men of armes þanne were þe Scottes; þanne þe Scottes[7] turnede to hir kynde[8] tresouns þat þey vseþ ofte, for in tresoun þey passeþ[9] oþer men, and beeþ tretours as hit were by kynde. For þey preyed to a feste al þe grete of þe Pictes, and wayted her tyme when þe Pictes were at ese and mery, and hadde wel i-dronke, and drewe vp nayles þat helde vp þe holow benches vnder þe Pictes, and þe Pictes sodenliche an vnware fel ouer þe hammes into a wonder putfalle.[10] Þanne þe Scottes fille on þe Pictes and slowh hem, and lefte noon onlyue;[11] and so of þe tweye TREVISA.

---

to Hauerforde, at the weste parte of Wales, thro commaundemente of þe the same kynge. ℞. And so by succession of tymes, the Danes failenge in Englonde, and Pictes, now Albania is inhabite with Scottes, Wales with Britones, and men of Flaundres in Weste Wales, Normannes and Englische men mixte in alle the yle of Briteyne. As in the subtraccion of Danes as vn to the maner and chaunce þer of croniclers make noo mencion, but hit schal be determinate consequentely how the Pictes failede. *Giraldus, distinctione prima.* Briteyne occupiede some tyme with the Saxones, and a stable fidelite made with the Pictes, the Scottes whiche were ioynede to the Pictes seenge the Pictes thauȝhe fewe in nowmbre, neuertheles thei were myȝhty men of armes and bolde of herte, desirede the capiteynes of the Pictes and mony other to the feste, whiche vsenge a cautele made the seetes in theire festes to be movable with pynnes of woode; and when the Pictes ȝafe attendaunce to surfette and ryette, the Scottes toke aweye the nailes other pynnes, and so the Pictes felle bakwarde, the legges of theyme beenge vpwarde, in to holoo places vnder the seetes, and so thei were alle sleyne. And so of ij. bolde peple, the more bolde MS. HARL. 2261. f. 76. a.

---

[1] *i-melled*, *a.*; *ben men medled*, Cx.
[2] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] *stablysshyd*, Cx.
[4] *the* (*sic*) *Scottes*, *a.*, Cx.
[5] *siȝe*, *a.*; *sawe*, Cx., who varies the sentence.
[6] *and*] om., *a.*
[7] Cx. adds, *hauyng therof enuye.*
[8] *naturel*, Cx.
[9] *tresoun ... apasseþ*, *a.*
[10] Sentence varied in Cx.
[11] *only*, *a.*; *alyue*, Cx.

Altera vero gens Scotorum longe[1] impar, ex tali[2] proditione emolumentum[3] quodammodo consecuta, totam[4] terram illam, quam a nomine suo Scotiam vocaverunt,[5] usque hodie possident.[6] Quibus eo tempore, diebus videlicet Edgari regis,[7] Kynadius[8] Alpini filius præsidens[9] Pictaviam invasit, Pictos delevit, sexies Saxoniam debellavit, et terram omnem[10] a mari Scotico usque ad flumen Twedæ[11] usurpavit.

Cap. LIX.

De incolarum linguis.[12]

Ranulphus.[13] Ut patet ad sensum,[14] quot in hac insula[15] sunt gentes, tot gentium sunt linguæ; Scoti tamen et Wallani,[16] uptote cum aliis nationibus impermixti, ad purum pæne pristinum retinent idioma; nisi forsan[17] Scoti ex[18] convictu Pictorum, cum quibus olim confœderati cohabitabant,[19] quippiam contraxerint

---

[1] *modis omnibus*, add. C.D.
[2] *tali*] om. C.D.
[3] *emolumenta*, C. (not D.)
[4] *a mari usque ad mare*, add. C.D.
[5] *dixerunt*, C.D.
[6] *in hodiernum diem obtinent*, C.D.
[7] *diebus . . . regis*] om. C.D.
[8] *Linaldus*, B.; *Kinaldus*, A.
[9] *possidens*, Gale, absurdly.
[10] *omnem*] dudum Saxonibus subactam, quæ est, C.D.
[11] *flumen Twedæ*] Mailros, quæ est in ripa Twedæ fluminis, C.D.
[12] So Gale; *moribus*, E.
[13] *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.D.
[14] *Ut . . . sensum*] om. C.D.
[15] *in . . . insula*] incolarum, B.
[16] So E., Gale; *Wallici*, B.
[17] *forte*, B.
[18] *a*, C.D.
[19] *habitabant*, B.

peple þe better werryour was [1] hollyche destroyed. Bote þe oþere, þat beeþ þe Scottes, þat beeþ traytours, wel [2] vnliche to þe Pictes, took profiȝt by þat false tresoun; for þei took al þat lond, and holdeþ it ȝit hider to, and clepeþ hit Scotlond after here [3] owne name. Þat tyme, þat was in kyng Edgar his tyme, Kynadyus Alpynus his sone was ledere of Scottes, and werred in Picten londe,[4] and destroyed þe Pictes; he werred sixe siþes in Saxon, and took al þat [5] lond þat is bitwene Twede and þe Scottische see, wiþ wrong and wiþ strengþe. TREVISA.

De incolarum linguis. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

As it is i-knowe how meny manere peple beeþ in þis ilond, þere beeþ also so many dyuers [6] longages and tonges; noþeles Walsche men and Scottes, þat beeþ nouȝt i-medled [7] wiþ oþer naciouns, holdeþ wel nyh [8] hir firste longage and speche; but ȝif the [9] Scottes þat were somtyme confederat and wonede wiþ

---

peple was vtterly destroyede. That other peple of Scottes hauenge a grete avayle by the dethe of theyme, haue that londe in possession whom thei calle Scotlande vn to this tyme. And also Kinadius, the son of Alpinus, entrede in to the cuntre of the Pictes in the tyme of kynge Edgare, and destroyede theyme, [and] fiȝhtenge soore vj. tymes ageyne the Saxones, presumede alle the grownde from the Scottisse vn to the water of Twide departenge now Englonde from Scottelonde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the langage of the inhabitatores of Englonde. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

HIT may be schewede clerely to the wytte that there were so mony diuersites of langages in that londe as were diuersites of nacions. But Scottes and men of Wales kepe theire propre langage, as men inpermixte with other naciones; but perauenture Scottes haue taken somme parte

---

[1] *werriours were*, Cx.
[2] So Cx.; *were wel*, MS.
[3] So α. β.; *theyr*, Cx.; *his*, MS. There is much confusion of numbers generally, and of the pronouns especially, in the MSS. of Trevisa's text.
[4] *Pictelond*, α., Cx.
[5] *þe*, α., Cx.
[6] *dyuers*] om. α. and Cx.
[7] *melled beþ*, α.
[8] *kepe neygh yet*, Cx.
[9] *yet tho*, Cx.

in sermone.[1] Flandrenses vero, qui occidua Walliæ incolunt, dimissa jam barbarie,[2] Saxonice satis proloquuntur. Angli quoque, quamquam ab initio tripartitam sortirentur linguam, austrinam scilicet, mediterraneam, et borealem, veluti ex tribus Germaniæ populis procedentes, ex commixtione tamen primo cum Danis, deinde cum Normannis,[3] corrupta in multis patria[4] lingua peregrinos jam captant boatus[5] et garritus. Hæc quidem nativæ linguæ corruptio provenit hodie multum[6] ex duobus; quod videlicet pueri in scholis contra morem cæterarum nationum a primo[7] Normannorum adventu, derelicto proprio vulgari, construere Gallice compelluntur;[8] item quod filii nobilium ab ipsis cunabulorum crepundiis ad Gallicum idioma[9] informantur. Quibus[10] profecto[11]

Linguæ nativæ corruptionis causæ.

---

[1] *in sermone*] in verbo, B., apparently.
[2] *barbare*, B.; *barbaria*, E., Gale.
[3] *quorum juga pertulerunt*, add. C.D.
[4] *propria* Gale.
[5] *balatus*, C.D.
[6] *potissime*, C.D.
[7] *post*, B.
[8] *compellantur*, B.
[9] *idioma*] om. C.D.
[10] *Quos*, C.D.
[11] *agrestes et*, add. C.D.

þe Pictes drawe somwhat after hir speche; but þe Flemmynges þat woneþ in þe weste side of Wales haueþ i-left her straunge speche and spekeþ Saxonliche i-now.[1] Also Englische men, þey [þei][2] hadde from the bygynnynge þre manere speche, norþerne,[3] sowþerne, and middel speche in þe myddel of þe lond, as þey come of þre manere peple of Germania. noþeles by comyxtioun and mellynge firste wiþ Danes and afterward wiþ Normans, in meny[4] þe contray longage is apayred, and som vseþ straunge[5] wlafferynge,[6] chiterynge, harrynge, and garrynge grisbayting.[7] This apayrynge of þe burþe of þe[8] tunge is bycause of tweie þinges; oon is for children in scole aȝenst þe vsage and manere of alle oþere naciouns beeþ compelled for to leue hire owne langage, and for to construe hir lessouns and here þynges in Frensche, and so þey haueþ seþ[9] þe Normans come first in to Engelond.[10] Also gentil men children beeþ i-tauȝt to[11] speke Frensche from þe tyme þat þey beeþ i-rokked in here cradel, and kunneþ speke and playe wiþ a childes broche; and vplondisshe men wil likne hym self to gentil men, and fondeþ wiþ greet besynesse for to speke Frensce, for to be i-tolde of.[12] *Treuisa.* Þis manere was moche i-vsed to for firste TREVISA.

---

in theire communicacion of the langage of Pictes, with whom thei dwellede somme tyme, and were confederate with theyme. Men of Flaundres that inhabite the weste partes of Wales levenge the speche of barbre speke after the Saxones. And thauȝhe men of Englonde hade in the begynnenge a langage tripartite, as of the sowthe parte of Englond, of the myddelle parte of Englonde, and of the northe parte of Englonde, procedenge as of thre peple of Germanye, borowe moche in theire speche now, as of[13] thro the commixtion with the Danes and after that with the Normannes. The corrupcion of that natife langage is causede moche of ij. thynges, that is to say, childer sette to schole after the commenge of Normannes in to Englonde were compellede to constru in Frenche ageyne the consuetude of oþer naciones. In so moche that the childer of nowble men, after that thei were taken from the cradelle, were sette to lerne the speche of Frenche men. Wherefore churles seenge that, willenge to be like to theyme, laborede to speke Frenche with alle theire myȝhte. Where hit is to be hade MS. HARL. 2261. f. 79 b.

---

[1] *speken lyke to Saxons*, Cx.
[2] *þei*] added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] *souþorn, norþorn, a.*
[4] *many thynges*, Cx.
[5] So *a.* and Cx.; *strong*, MS.
[6] *wlaffyng*, Cx.
[7] *grysbitynge, a.*, Cx.
[8] *of þe*] om. *a.*; *appayrynge of the langage*, Cx.
[9] *seþþe þe, a.*
[10] Sentence much varied in Cx
[11] *forto, a.*
[12] Sentence abbreviated and much varied in Cx.
[13] So Harl. MS., but perhaps *as of* should be cancelled.

rurales homines assimilari volentes,[1] ut per hoc spectabiliores videantur, francigenare[2] satagunt[3] omni nisu.[4] Ubi nempe[5] mirandum videtur,[6] quomodo[7] nativa et[8] propria Anglorum lingua,[9] in unica insula coartata, pronunciatione ipsa[10] sit tam diversa; cum tamen Normannica lingua,[11] quæ adventitia est, univoca maneat[12] penes[13] cunctos. De prædicta quoque lingua Saxonica tripartita, quæ in paucis adhuc agrestibus[14] vix remansit, orientales cum occiduis[15] tanquam sub eodem cœli climate lineati[16] plus consonant in sermone quam boreales cum austrinis. Inde est quod Mercii sive Mediterranei Angli, tanquam participantes natu-

---

[1] *in quibus merito genialis lingua remaneret, pro posse zelantes,* C.D.
[2] *francigenari,* Gale.
[3] *satagunt*] om. B.
[4] Slightly varied in C.D.
[5] *nempe*] om. B.
[6] *est,* B.D,
[7] *quod,* C.D.
[8] *et*] om. Gale.
[9] Transposed in C.
[10] *ipsa*] om. C.D.
[11] *lingua*] om. C.D.
[12] *manet,* A.
[13] *pene penes,* E. (not A.B.C.D., Gale.)
[14] *silvestribus,* C.D.
[15] *cum occiduis*] om. B.
[16] *limitati,* C. (not D.)

TREVISA.

deth[1] and is siþþe sumdel i-chaunged; for Iohn[2] Cornwaile, a maister of grammer,[3] chaunged þe lore in gramer scole and construccioun of Frensche in to Englische; and Richard Pencriche lerned þe[4] manere techynge of hym and of[5] oþere men of Pencrich; so þat now, þe ȝere of oure Lorde a þowsand þre hundred and foure score and fyue, and of þe secounde kyng Richard after þe conquest nyne, in alle[6] þe gramere scoles of Engelond, children leueþ Frensche and construeþ and lerneþ an Englische, and haueþ þerby auauntage in oon side and disauauntage in anoþer side; here auauntage is, þat þey lerneþ her gramer in lasse tyme þan children were i-woned to doo; disauauntage is þat now children of gramer scole conneþ[7] na more Frensche þan can hir lift heele, and þat is harme for hem and þey schulle passe þe see and trauaille in straunge landes and in many oþer places. Also gentil men haueþ now moche i-left for to teche here children Frensche. ℞. Hit semeþ a greet wonder how Englische, [þat is þe burþe tonge of Englisshe][8] men and her owne langage and tonge, is so dyuerse of sown[9] in þis oon ilond, and þe langage of Normandie is comlynge of anoþer londe, and hath oon manere soun among alle men þat spekeþ hit ariȝt in Engelond.[10] *Treuisa.* Neuerþeles þere is as many dyuers manere Frensche in þe reem of Fraunce as is dyuers manere Englische in þe reem of Engelond. ℞. Also of þe forsaide Saxon tonge þat is i-deled aþre, and is abide scarsliche wiþ fewe vplondisshe

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

in meruayle that the propur langage of Englische men scholde be made so diuerse in oon lytelle yle in pronunciacion, sythe the langage of Normannes is oon and vniuocate allemoste amonge theyme alle. But as of the tripartite langage of Saxones, whiche remaynethe now but amonge fewe men, the[11] weste men of Englonde sownde and acorde more with the men of the este of that londe as vnder the same clyme of heuyn, then the men of the northe with men of the sowthe. Wherefore hit is that Englische men of þe Marches of the mydelle partes of Englonde, takenge as by

---

1 *to fore þe firste moreyn, α.*

2 *Sir Iohan*, Cx.; who greatly varies the remainder of the extract from Trevisa.

3 *gramyre, α.*

4 *þat, α.*

5 *of*] om. *α.*

6 *in al, α.*; *and alle*, MS.

7 So *α.*; *comeþ*, MS.

8 Added from *α.*

9 *soun, α.*

10 Cx. amplifies the sentence thus: "*And the langage of Normandye is* "*comen oute of another lond, and* "*hath one maner soune among al* "*men that speketh it in Englond;* "*for a man of Kente, southern,* "*western, and northern men speken* "*Frensshe al lyke in sowne and* "*speche; but they can not speke* "*theyr Englyssh so.*"

11 *the the*, Harl. MS.

ram[1] extremorum, collaterales linguas[2] arcticam et antarcticam melius intelligant quam adinvicem se intelligunt[3] jam[4] extremi. [5]*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* Tota[6] lingua Northimbrorum,[7] maxime[8] in Eboraco, ita stridet incondita,[9] quod nos australes eam vix intelligere possumus; quod puto propter viciniam[10] barbarorum contigisse, et etiam proper jugem remotionem regum[11] Anglorum[12] ab illis partibus, qui magis ad austrum diversati,[13][14] si quando boreales partes adeunt,[15] non nisi magno auxiliatorum manu pergunt.[16] *Ranulphus.*[17] Frequentioris autem moræ in austrinis partibus[18] quam in borealibus causa potest esse gleba feracior,[19] plebs numerosior, urbes[20] insigniores, portus accommodatiores.

Lingua Anglorum borealium ab australibus vix intelligi potest.

---

[1] *naturam*] om. E.

[2] *linguas*] om. C. (not D.)

[3] So D.; *intelligant*, A.E., which, as well as Gale, have *intelligunt* above.

[4] *nam*, B.

[5] *Quod testatur*, add. C.D.

[6] *inquit*, add. C.D.

[7] *Northanhumbrorum*, B.; *Northumbriæ*, D.

[8] *et maxime*, C.D.

[9] *incognita*, B.

[10] *vicinitatem*, C. (not D.); *vicinam*, A.

[11] *quondam*, add. C.D.

[12] *modo Normannorum*, add. C.D.

[13] *sunt versati*, B.; *conversati*, C. (not D.)

[14] *domestico militum contenti numero*, add. C.D.

[15] *adierunt*, D.

[16] *manu pergunt*] comitatu vadunt, C.D.

[17] *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.C. The latter part is as follows in C.D.: "Cujus quidem demorationis regum in austrinis partibus causa solet esse quod ad austrum gleba sit feracior, plebs numerosior, aer temperatior, urbes insigniores, et plures portus ad necessaria aliunde convehendo accomodatiores, utensilia denique, suppellectilia, et quicquid humano usui congruit præstantius ministrantur."

[18] *partibus austrinis*, B.

[19] *ferocior*, A.

[20] *et urbes*, A.

TREVISA.

men is greet wonder; for men of þe est wiþ men of þe west,[1] as it were vndir þe same partie of heuene, acordeþ more in sownynge of speche þan men of þe norþ wiþ men of þe souþ; þerfore it is þat Mercii, þat beeþ men of myddel Engelond, as it were parteners of þe endes, vnderstondeþ bettre þe side langages, norþerne and souþerne, þan norþerne and souþerne vnderstondeþ eiþer oþer.[2] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, and specialliche at ȝork, is so scharp, slitting, and frotynge and vnschape, þat we souþerne men may þat longage vnneþe vnderstonde. I trowe þat þat is bycause þat þey beeþ nyh to straunge men and naciouns [3] þat spekeþ strongliche,[4] and also bycause þat þe kynges of Engelond woneþ alwey fer from þat cuntrey; for þey beeþ more i-torned to þe souþ contray, and ȝif þey[5] gooþ to þe norþ contray þey gooþ wiþ greet [help][6] and strengþe. Þe cause why þey beeþ more in þe souþ contrey þan in þe norþ, [is] for hit[7] may be better corne londe, more peple, more noble citees, and more profitable hauenes.

MS. HARL. 2261.

participacion the nature of bothe extremities, vnderstonde the langages collateralle arthike and anthartike better then the extremites vnderstonde theyme selfe to geder. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* Alle the langage of men of Northumbrelonde, and specially in Yorke, sowndethe so that men of the sowthe cuntre may vnnethe vnderstonde the langage of theyme, whiche thynge may be causede for the nye langage of men of barbre to theyme, and also for the grete distaunce of kynges of Englonde from hyt, whiche vse moste the southe partes of that londe, returnenge not in to the costes of the northe but with a grete multitude. Also an other cause may be assignede, for the sowthe partes be more habundante in fertilite then the northe partes, moo peple in nowmbre, hauenge also more plesaunte portes.

---

[1] *west is*, MS. (not *α*.).

[2] Sentence slightly varied in Cx.

[3] *aliens*, *α*. *β*.

[4] *straungleliche*, *β*. and Cx.; which seems right, but the extract from William is so altered, that Caxton's critical authority is here very slight.

[5] *he*, *α*. *β*.

[6] Added from *α*.

[7] *for hit*] om. *α*. *β*.; *is by cause that ther is*, Cx.

Cap. LX.

De incolarum moribus.[1]

Gentis Flandrensis mores et vaticinationes.

Giraldus. Significatis superius[2] utcunque Wallanorum et Scotorum moribus, jam de ritibus permixti Anglorum populi erit perorandum. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Et quidem gens illa Flandrensis[3] ad occidentem Walliæ, quasi Anglica jam convictu[4] est effecta; fortis[5] est et robusta, bellico conflictu[6] Cambrensibus infestissima, lanificiis et[7] mercimoniis usitatissima,[8] ad subeundum terræ marisque pericula pro lucro captando promptissima, vicissim pro loco et tempore nunc ad arma nunc ad aratra accommoda. De qua[9] gente mirandum[10] videtur, quod in armis arietum dextris carne nudatis non assis sed elixis[11] futura prospiciunt,[12] præterita, et[13] præsentia; sed[14] loco absentia, quasi quodam spiritu fatidico[15] et arte miranda, pacis et guerræ signa, regni statum, cædes[16] et adulteria, rimularum[17] et notularum indiciis certissime[18] declarat.[19] *Ranulphus.* Reliqua vero gens Anglorum Loegriam

[1] *De gentis hujus moribus*, A.; *De gestis et moribus*, C.; *De gentis hujus terræ moribus*, D.; B. omits title.

[2] *Digestis in superioribus*, C.D.

[3] *Flandrensis*] added in margin in C. in another ink; omitted in D.

[4] *conventu*, B.

[5] *quasi . . . fortis*] apud Roos et Haverford dudum transmissa origine Flandrensis, convictu jam Anglica est effecta gens fortis, &c., C.D.

[6] *belli conflictu assiduo*, C.D.

[7] *et*] om. A.E.

[8] *lanificiis . . . usitatissima*] om. C.

[9] *De qua*] Hac autem de, C.D.

[10] *mirandum*] notabile mihi, C.D.

[11] *ulixis*, A.; *elexis*, B.; *tam*, ins. C.D.

[12] *quam*, ins. C.D.; *præsentia et præterita*, A.B.

[13] *etiam*, ins. C.

[14] *sed*] om. A.

[15] *prophetico*, C.; *vaticido*, MSS. and Gale.

[16] *sedes*, A.B.

[17] *rimularum*] rumularum (rimarũm, D.) quarundam, C.D.

[18] *certissime*] om. Gale.

[19] *declarant*, C. (not D.)

De gentibus hujus moribus. Capitulum sexagesimum. TREVISA.

Giraldus in Itinerario. For þe maneres and þe doynge of Walsche men and of Scottes beeþ to fore honde somdel declared, now of þe maneres and of þe doynges of þe medled[1] peple of Engelond nedeþ forto telle. But þe Flemynges þat beeþ in þe westside of Wales beeþ now by torned as þough þey were Englische by cause of companye wiþ Englische men, and þey beeþ stalworþe[2] and stronge to fiȝte, and beeþ þe moste enemyes þat Walsche men haþ,[3] and vseþ marchaundyse and cloþynge, and beeþ ful redy to putte hem self to auentures and to peril in þe see and in þe[4] lond, by cause[5] of greet wynnynge, and beeþ redy for to goo somtyme to þe plowȝ and somtyme to dedes of armes whan tyme and place axeþ. Hit semeþ of þis[6] men a grete wonder[7] þat in a boon of a wethres riȝt schuldre, whan þe flesche is aweye i-sode[8] and nouȝt i-rosted, þey knoweþ what haþ be do, is i-doo, and schal be doo, and as hit were by a spirit of prophecie and a wonderful craft þey telleþ what me doþ in fer contrayes, tokens of pees and of werre, þe staat of þe reeme,[9] sleynge of men, and spousebreche; soche þey declareþ certeynliche by schewynge of tokenes and of synnes[10] þat beeþ in suche a schulder boon. R. But þe Englische men þat woneþ in Engelond, þat beeþ i-

Of the maneres of the peple of hit. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum sexagesimum.

A DECLARACION hade in processe precedenge as of þe maneres of men of Wales and of Scottes, we schalle determinate of the rites of the permixte peple of Englonde. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* And that peple of Flaundres f. 77. a.
whiche inhabite the weste partes of Wales is made now in disposicion like to the peple of Englonde, beenge myȝhty and stronge in conflictes and in batelle, contrarious to Walsche men, vsenge moche wolle and marchaundise, prompte to take on theim perelle of the see either of the londe for lucre, nowe applienge theyme to labour, as for the place and tyme, and soone to batelle. R. That other peple of Englische men inhabitenge Loegria, as of yles permixte,

[1] *melled*, α.

[2] *myghty*, Cx., who has also many slight variations.

[3] *haueþ*, α.

[4] þe] om. α.

[5] *and by cause*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)

[6] *these*, Cx.

[7] *þis crafte ys nat usyd þer now as y trow.* Note in MS.

[8] *i-sode*] So α.; *is sode*, MS.

[9] *reame*, α.; *royamme*, Cx.

[10] *synes*, α.

Reliquarum gentium virtutes et vitia.

inhabitans, utpote[1] insulana,[2] permixta, et a primitivis scatebris longius derivata, proprio motu etiam sine alieno hortatu facile flectitur ad opposita; adeo quoque quietis impatiens, [3] curæ æmula,[4] otium[5] nauseat; (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio;*) ut[6] cum hostes externos funditus depresserit, ipsa[7] mutuo se[8] conterat, et more vacui stomachi agat in seipsam. *Ranulphus.*[9] Gens tamen australis quietior et mitior, borealis vero mobilior et ferocior, gens media participii[10] vicem tenet.[11] Item[12] gens Angligena præ cæteris gulæ[13] dedita, in victu[14] et vestitu multum[15] sumptuosa; quod quidem vitium a diebus Hardekanuti[16] regis Danici, qui bina bis fercula etiam[17] in cœnis jusserat apponi, creditur contraxisse. Gens hæc equo et pede[18] expedita; ad omne genus armorum accommoda;[19] in bellicis congressibus,[20] ubi fraus abfuerit,

[1] *ut puta*, B.
[2] *Loegriam . . . insulana*] per Loegriam, C. (not D.)
[3] *ut*, ins. B.
[4] *quæ*, ins. C. (not D.)
[5] *socium*, B.
[6] *Et*, B.
[7] *ipsam*, B.
[8] *mutuo se*] se mutuo, C. (D. omits *se*; *de*, E.
[9] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[10] *participia*, E.
[11] *Ranulphus*, ins. C.D.
[12] *Item*] om. C.D.
[13] *gulæ*] nationibus cibis et potibus, C.D.
[14] *in victu*] om. B.
[15] *nimium*, C D.
[16] *Hardecnuti*, A.; *Hardeknuti*, B.
[17] *etiam*] om. B.
[18] *tam pede quam equo*, C.D.
[19] *ad omnem militiæ conflictum apta*, add. C.D.
[20] *conflictibus*, C. (not D.)

medled[1] in þe ilond, þat [beþ][2] fer i-spronge from þe welles[3] þat þey spronge of first, wel liȝtliche wiþ oute entisynge of eny oþer men, by here owne assent tornen[4] to contrary dedes. And so[5] vnesy, also ful vnpacient of pees, enemy of besynesse, and wlatful of[6] sleuþe, (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio,*) þat whan þey haueþ destroyed here enemyes al to þe grounde, þanne þey fiȝteþ wiþ hem self, and sleeþ eueriche oþer, as a voyde stomak and a clene worcheþ in hit self. [℞.][7] Noþeles men of þe souþ beeþ esier and more mylde; and men of þe north be[8] more vnstable, more cruel, and more vnesy; þe myddel men beeþ somdele partyners wiþ boþe: also þey woneþ[9] hem to glotonye more þan oþer men, and beeþ more costlewe in mete and in drynke[10] and in cloþynge. Me troweþ[11] þat þey took þat vyce[12] of kyng Hardeknute þat was a Dane, for he sette twyes double messe and also at soper.[13] Þese men been speedful boþe on hors and on foote, able and redy to alle manere dedes of armes, and beeþ i-woned[14] to haue the victorie and þe maistrie in euerich TREVISA.

---

be liȝhtely declynede thro theire awne mocion vn to thynges contrarious, whiche be soe impaciente, as Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio, rehersethe, that when that peple hathe depressede theire enmyes then thei fiȝhte amonge theyme selfe, and laboure ageyne nature in the maner of a voide stomake. ℞. Neuerthelesse, the peple of the sowthe is meke and quiete, the peple of þe northe is more moveable and cruelle, the peple of the myddelle partes be in maner as a participulle. Also the peple of Englonde is ȝiffen more to glotony and to surfettes a fore other peple, takenge grete coste in meite and clothes, whiche is seide to haue bene taken in the tyme of Hardeknutus kynge, a Dane,[15] whiche vse mony diversities of meites at a meite. That peple is apte to alle kyndes of armes, bothe on foote and on horse, wonte to haue a crowne off a lauref[16] tre for the MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *i-medled* or *medled* is generally *melled* in *α*.

[2] Added from *α*.

[3] *places*, Cx., who has a few other slight variations.

[4] *torne*, *α*.

[5] So *α*. and Cx.; *Also*, MS.

[6] *on*, *α*.; *ful of*, Cx.

[7] Reference added from Cx.

[8] *beþ*, *α*.

[9] *vse*, Cx.; who has also various slight deviations throughout the extract.

[10] *and in drynk*] om. *α*. and Cx.

[11] *Me supposeth*, Cx.

[12] *vse*, MS. (not *α*. or Cx.)

[13] *souper*, *α*.; *at dyner and at soper also*, Cx. (but the improvement seems to be his own. See the text.)

[14] *wonte*, Cx.

[15] So Harl. MS., but the sentence seems a little corrupt.

[16] So Harl. MS.

solet lauream reportare. Gens ista[1] curiosa satis, ut noscat et narret[2] mirabilia quæ viderit; regiones collustrat;[3] in solo proprio vix locupletior, in longinquis magis felix. Nova nancisci melius novit, quam hæreditaria conservare. Hinc est quod late per orbem dispergitur, putans sibi patriam omne solum. Gens denique[4] ad omnem idonea industriam; sed ante factum importuna et præceps, post factum sagacior, facile deserit quod incepit. *Pol., libro sexto.*[5] Proinde est quod Eugenius papa dixit, gentem Anglicam[6] ad quæcunque vellet fore idoneam, et cæteris gentibus præferendam,[7] nisi levitas animi impediret. Et sicut Hannibal negabat posse vinci Romanos nisi in patria propria, ita et[8] gens Anglica[9] dum peregrinatur invincibilis est, in sedibus propriis facilius[10] expugnatur. *Ranulphus.*[11] Gens[12] ista[13] quæ sua sunt fastidiens vituperat propria, commendat aliena; de status sui

---

[1] *itaque ista*, C.D.
[2] *narrat*, A.B.; *aut narret*, D.
[3] *rimatur*, C.D.
[4] *quoque*, A.B.; *itaque*, D.
[5] C.D. omit reference.
[6] *Angligenam*, D.
[7] *et . . . præferendam*] om. C.D.
[8] *et*] om. B.
[9] *Anglicana*, B.
[10] *facilius*] om. E.
[11] Reference added from B. and Gale.
[12] *etiam*, add. C.D.
[13] *ad aliena noscenda sive experienda valde curiosa*, add. C.D. See Harleian translation.

TREVISA.

fiȝt wher no treson is walkynge; and [beþ][1] curious, and kunneþ wel i-now telle dedes and wondres þat þei haueth i-seie. Also þey gooþ in dyuers londes, vnneþe beeþ eny men richere in her owne londe oþere more gracious in fer and in straunge[2] londe. Þey[3] konneþ betre wynne and gete newe þan kepe her owne heritage; þerfore it is þat þey[4] beeþ i-spred so wyde and weneþ þat euerich oþer[5] londe is hir owne heritage.[6] Þe men beeþ able to al manere sleiþe and witte, but to fore þe dede blondrynge and hasty, and more wys after þe dede, and leueþ ofte[7] liȝtliche what þey haueþ bygonne. *Polycraticon, libro sexto.* Þerfore Eugenius þe pope seide þat Englisshe men were able to do what euere þey wolde, and to be sette and putte to fore alle oþere, nere[8] þat liȝt wiþ letteþ. And as Hannibal[9] saide þat þe Romayns myȝte nouȝt be ouercome but in hir owne cuntray: so Englische men mowe not be ouercome in straunge londes, but in hir own cuntray þey beeþ liȝtliche ouercome. R. Þese men despiseþ hir owne, and preiseþ oþer menis, and vnneþe beeþ apaide wiþ hir owne estate; what byfalleþ and semeþ oþer men, þey wolleþ glad-

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

victory in batelles, if treason reigne not amonge theyme. That peple is curious ynowe that hit may knowe, and telle meruellous thynges goenge to oþer regiones, vnnethe ryche and fortunate in theire awne londe, but fortunate specially in ferre costes. For hit can purchase better then kepe the propur inheritaunce of theyme, wherefore the peple of that londe is dispersede a brode thro alle the worlde, trawenge alle the worlde to be a cuntre to theyme; a peple apte moche to wylenes and decepcion, but importune a fore the dede, levenge liȝhtly a thynge y-begunne. *Policronicon*,[10] *libro vj^to^*. Wherefore hit is that Eugenius the pope seide the peple of Englonde apte to euery thynge, and to be preferrede a fore peple of other naciones but for inconstance of theyme; and like as Hannibal denyede the Romanes to be ouercome but in theire propre cuntre, soe in lyke wise the peple of Englonde is invincible in other cuntres, and soone deuicte in theire awne cuntre. R. The peple of Englonde is fulle curious to knowe straunge thynges by experience, deprauenge theire awne thynges [thei] commende other straunge, f. 77. b.

---

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[2] So Cx.; *strounge*, MS.
[3] *þy*, *a.*
[4] *þeyȝ*, *a.*
[5] *oþer*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[6] *heritage*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[7] *of*, *a.*, Cx.
[8] *ne were that light wytte*, Cx., just after.
[9] *Hanyba*, MS.
[10] So Harl. MS. at length.

gradu[1] vix unquam contenta, quod alteri congruit libenter in se transfigurat; unde fit ut vernaculus quod armigeri est,[2] armiger quod militis, miles quod ducis, dux quod regis est in se repræsentat.[3] Immo nonnulli[4] omne genus circueuntes in nullo[5] genere sunt, omnem ordinem attemptantes[6] nullius ordinis sunt.[7] Nam in gestu[8] sunt histriones, in affatu Cicerones,[9] in convictu nebulones, in quæstu caupones, in apparatu sunt tirones, in lucris Argi, in laboribus Tantali, in curis

[1] *de . . . gradu*] om. B.

[2] *est*] om. A.,

[3] *representent*, B.

[4] *Unde nonnulli*, A.; Gale, A., and E. omit *omne*.

[5] *novo*, Gale, badly.

[6] *acceptantes*, Gale, badly.

[7] *omnem . . . sunt*] added in margin of C.—(D. has them in text).

[8] *gestis*, B.

[9] *Cicherones* or *Citherones*, MSS.: *Citherones*, Gale (for Cithærones ?) which however brings out little or no sense.

TREVISA.

lyche take to hem self; þerfore hit is þat a ȝeman [1] arraieþ hym as a squyer, a squyer as a knyȝt, a kniȝt as a duke [and] [2] a duke as a kyng. ȝit som gooþ a boute to alle manere staate and beeþ in noon astaat,[3] for þey þat wole take eueriche degree beeþ of non degre, for in berynge [4] þey beeþ menstralles and heraudes,[5] in talkynge grete spekeres, in etynge and in drynkynge glotouns, in gaderynge of catel hoksters [6] and tauerners, in aray tormentoures, in wynnynges Argi, in trauaile Tantaly, in takynge hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally, in chirches mamettes, in courtes þonder, onliche in privelege of clergie and in prouendres [7] þey knowlecheþ hem silf clerkes. *Trevisa.* In wynnynge þey beeþ Argy, in trauaile Tantaly, in takynge hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally. For to vnderstonde þis reson ariȝt foure wordes [þerof] [8] moste be declared, þat beeþ þese foure, Argi, Tantaly, Dedaly, and Sardanapally; þerfore take hede that Argus in an herde, Argus a schippe, a schipman, and a chapman. But here it is more to purpos þat poetes feyneþ oon þat was somtyme al ful of eyȝen in eueriche side [9] and heet Argus, so þat this Argus myȝte see [10] to fore and byhynde, vpwarde and dounward, and al aboute in eueriche side, and by a manere likenesse of þis Argus, he þat is war and wys, and kan see and be war in eueriche side is i-cleped Argus, and ful of yȝen as Argus was. Þan forto speke to meny such he moste be i-cleped Argi in þe plural nombre. Þan in þat cronyke he seiþ þat þey beeþ Argy in wynnynge, hit is to mene þat þey beeþ ware and seeþ aboute in euery side where wynnynge may arise. Þat oþer word is Tantaly; þerfore take hede þat þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus was a man and slowh [11] his owne sonne, þerfore he was i-dampned to perpetual penaunce, as þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus stondeþ [12] alway in a water vp anon to þe [13] ouer

MS. HARL. 2261.

vnnethe other neuer contente of the state of theire degre, transfigurenge to theyme that is congruente to an other man. Wherefore hit is seen oftetymes þat a yoman dothe represente as the state of a es[q]wier, an esqwier of a knyȝhte, a knyȝhte of a lorde, a lorde of a duke, a duke off a kynge. There fore mony men goenge abowte euery degre be founde in noo degre, attemptenge euery ordre be not of eny ordre; for thei be as ioculers in behauor, glotones in meite, tauerners in expense, myȝhty men or frauncleones in apparelle, Argi in lucre, like to Tantalus in

[1] *ȝymman*, α.
[2] Added from α.
[3] *no stat*, α.
[4] *beryng outward*, Cx.
[5] *herowdes*, Cx.
[6] *hucksters*, Cx.
[7] *prebendis*, Cx.
[8] Added from α.
[9] So α ; *a side*, MS.
[10] So Cx. ; *i-see*, MS.
[11] *slow*, α.
[12] *stondes*, α.
[13] þe] om. α.

Dædali, in cubilibus Sardanapali, in templis simulacra, in curiis tonitrua, solis[1] privilegiis et præbendis clericos se fatentur. Sed et[2] in cunctis passim Angligenis[3] tanta vestium varietas et apparatus[4] multiformitas inolevit, ut neutri jam generis quilibet pæne censeatur.[5] De qua re prophetavit quidam sanctus anachorita temporibus[6] regis Egelfredi[7] in hunc modum. *Henricus, libro sexto.*[8] Angli quia proditioni, ebrietati, et negligentiæ domus Dei dediti sunt, primo per Danos, deinde[9] per Normannos, tertio per Scotos, quos vilis-

---

1 *solis*] om. Gale.
2 *etiam*, C.D.
3 *Angligenis*] om. Gale.
4 *multiplicitas ac*, ins. B.
5 *censeat*, E.
6 *tempore*, C.
7 *Egeldredi*, B. ; *Egelredi*, D., Gale.
8 Added in margin of C.
9 *secundo*, C.D.

brerde [1] of þe neþer lippe, and haþ all way euene at his mouþ [2] ripe apples and noble fruyt, ne water comeþ wiþ ynne his mouþ, he is so i-holde vp ; and so he stondeþ in þat array bytwene mete and drynke, and may noþer ete ne drynke, and is an hongred and aþirst þat woo is hym on lyue. By a manere likeness of þis Tantalus þey þat dooþ riȝt nouȝt, þere [3] moche þing is to doo in euery side, beeþ i-cleped Tantaly. Hit semeþ þat þis sawe is to mene, in trauaille þey beeþ Tantaly, for þey dooþ riȝt nouȝt þerto. Þe þridde word is Dedaly; take hede þat Dedalus was a wel sligh [4] man, and by likness of hym men þat beeþ sliȝe beeþ i-cleped Dedaly in þe plurel noumbre, so it is to mene as hit semeþ in þis sawe, in takynge hede and in cry [5] þey beeþ Dedaly, þat is fel and sly. The ferþe word is [Sardanapalli ; þerfore take hede þat],[6] Sardanapallus was a kyng, rex Assyriorum, and was ful vnchast, and by a manere liknesse of hym þey þat beeþ swiþe vnchast beeþ i-cleped Sardanapally. R. But among alle Englische i-medled to giders is so grete chaungynge and diuersite [of cloþinge and] [7] of array [and so many manere and dyuerse shappes, that wel nyghe is there ony man knowen by his clothynge and his arraye] [8] of what degre he is. Þerof prophecied an holy anker to kyng Egilred his tyme in þis manere. *Henricus, libro sexto.* Englisshe men for þey woneþ hem to dronkelewnesse, to tresoun, and to rechelesnesse of Goddes hous, first by Danes and þanne by Normans, and at þe þridde tyme by Scottes, þat þey holdeþ most wrecches and leste worþ of alle, þey schulleþ be

TREVISA.

---

laboure, and as Dedalus in cure, lyke to Sardanapallus in beddes, similacres in temples, thundres in courtes, knowleggenge theym to be clerkes thro oonly priuileges and benefices other prebendes. But now in these daies suche diuersites of vesture and apparelle be vsede alle moste amonge alle men of Englonde, that thei seme to be as of noo gendre or kynde ; of whom an holy heremite did prophecy in the tyme of knyge Egelredus in thys maner. *Henricus, libro sexto.* For cause that Englische men be ȝiffen to treason, drunkenesse, and to the negligence of þe howse of God, thei schalle be punyschede sore, firste by Danes, in the secunde tyme by Normannes, in the thrydde tyme by the Scottes, whom thei acompte as a peple moste

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *brered*, α.

[2] *mouþ*] om. α.

[3] So MS. α. and β.; but *where* seems to be required. See p. 187.

[4] *subtyl and a slye*, Cx.; who has very much re-cast the whole extract from Trevisa.

[5] *kuyre*, α.

[6] Added from α.

[7] Added from α.

[8] Added from Cx., who may have somewhat amplified his text.

simos reputant, erunt conterendi; adeoque[1] tunc varium erit sæculum, ut varietas mentium multimoda vestium variatione[2] designetur.[3] *Explicit Liber Primus.*

Liber Secundus.

Prologus Libri Secundi.

Cap. I.

Major mundus propter minorem mundum (*i.e.* hominem) est creatus.

Ordo narrationis historicæ hoc expostulat, ut post descripta mundi[4] loca etiam orbis gesta describantur. Sed si unumquodque propter quid et illud magis, cum propter minorem mundum factus sit major, juxta illud, "Major" inquit[5] "serviet minori," non ab re erit, descripto in præcedentibus majori mundo,[6] ipsum quoque minorem mundum[7] in principio actuum suorum parumper discribere; ut qualis quantusve sit agnos-

---

[1] *adeo*, B.; *adeo quia*, Gale.
[2] *varietate*, C. (not D.)
[3] *designabitur*, D. (on an erasure).
[4] *orbis*, C.D.
[5] *inquit Scriptura*, B.
[6] *mundo*] om. C.D.
[7] *mundum*] om. C.D.

ouercome ; þan þe worlde schal be so vnstable and so dyuers and variable þat þe vnstabilnesse of þouȝtes schal [be][1] bytokened by many manere dyuersite of cloþinge. *Explicit Liber Primus.* TREVISA.

Incipit Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.

AFTER þat places and contrees beeþ [rekened and][2] discryued of þe worlde wyde, þe ordre of þe tale of þe story axeþ þat berynge and dedes of þe worlde be also discreued. But ȝif[3] every þing is for somwhat and þat is more, (*Trevisa.* Here is[4] auctorite of philosophre, and[5] is to mene þat al þing þat is resonabliche[6] and kyndeliche i-ordeyned for anoþer þing as a mene forto come þerto [and forto][7] save it, is i-ordeyned for bettre þing and more noble þan is þat þing þat is i-ordeyned[8] þerfore : ensaumple,[9] erynge and sowynge and dongynge of lond is ordeyned for to haue good corne, [and good corne][10] is better þan al þe oþer deel ; also medecyne is i-ordeyned for hele, and hele is better þan þe medecyne ; also

---

vile, in so moche that the worlde schalle be then so variable, that the diuersite of myndes schalle be designate in the mony folde diuersite of vesture and of apparelle. *Explicit Liber Primus.* MS. HARL. 2261.

INCIPIT LIBER SECUNDUS.

Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum. f. 78. a.

THE ordre of the narracion of stories requirethe that the gestes of the worlde scholde be describede also after the places of the worlde schewede and expressede ; then, sythe the gretter worlde was made for the lesse worlde, as hit is seide, "The gretter worlde schalle serue the lesse," then the descripcion in the precedenge processe of the grete worlde schalle not be with owte a cause and vtilite. Wyllenge now to describe the lesse worlde in the begynnenge of his actes, that the qualite or quantite of hit may

---

[1] Added from *α.*

[2] Added from *α.* and Cx.

[3] *ȝif*] om. Cx. ; badly, not perceiving the extract from Trevisa to be parenthetical.

[4] *þis*, *α.*, Cx.

[5] *and*] om. Cx.

[6] *resonable*, Cx.

[7] Added from *α.* and Cx.

[8] *so ordeyned*, *α.* ; *soordeyning*, Cx.

[9] *ensaumple*] om. Cx.

[10] Added from *α.* and Cx.

catur qui tam pusillus in tam magno tam magnifica operatur. Et quidem cunctorum entium opifex, apud quem ideales rerum rationes sunt reconditæ,[1] post peractam majoris mundi machinam minorem mundum condidit, quem licet majori mundo prætulerit,[2] in eo tamen majoris mundi similitudinem impressit.[3] In tribus namque[4] assimulantur mundus et homo,[5] in dimensione diametrali, in dispositione naturali, in operatione virtuali. Et primo quidem quamvis[6] humani corporis longitudo quæ est a planta pedis usque[7] ad verticem capitis[8] sexies sit major ejus latitudine quæ est a crate lateris ad cratem, et etiam[9] decies major ejus altitudine quæ est a dorso usque ad ventrem: veruntamen[10] secundum Plinium, libro septimo, capitulo octavodecimo, quanta est distantia inter cenit[11] capitis

Homo et mundus inter se comparantur.

---

[1] *conditæ*, B.
[2] So A.B.; *pertulerit*, E.
[3] So A.E.; *expressit*, B.C.D.
[4] *autem*, B.
[5] *et homo*, om. E.
[6] *licet*, C.D.
[7] *pedis usque*] om. C.D.
[8] *capitis*] om. C.D.
[9] *etiam*] om. B.
[10] *veruntamen*] om. C.D.; adding *tamen* after *Plinium*.
[11] *cenum* corrected to *cenit* in C.; *chenit*, B., see Ducange, s.v. *cenith*.

TREVISA.

mete and drynke and oþer þynges beeþ i-ordeyned[1] for þe lyf, and þe lyf is better and more noble þan mete and drynke and alle oþere[2] þinges þat beeþ so i-ordeyned for þe lyf.) R.—þanne, seþþe þat þe more worlde is i-made for þe lasse, as holy writte seiþ, "þe more schal serue þe lasse," and now þe more world is discreued in oure foure sawes in þe firste book, þan it is skilful somdel to descryue þe lasse world also from þe bygynnynge of his forme[3] dedes, þat[4] hit myȝte be knowe what manere þing hit is and how grete, þat is so litel and dooþ so grete dedes in þe more worlde, þat is so grete and so huge. And also þe worchere and þe[5] makere of alle þinges þat haþ wiþ him schapliche resouns of al manere resouns and[6] þinges, whanne he hadde i-made þe more worlde, þan he made þe lasse; and þey he made him lord of þe grete world, ȝit he prynted on hym þe likenesse of þe greet[7] world. For a man and þe world beþ liche in þre þynges: in lengþe, in brede, and in dipnesse;[8] in kyndely disposicioun; and vertues worchynge.[9] And firste þeiȝ þe lengþe of a manis body, þat is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of þe heed, be[10] suche sixe as þe brede, þat is from þe oon side of þe ribbes to þat oþer side, and ten so moche as þe depnesse þat is from þe rugge[11] to þe wombe; noþeles Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 18°, seiþ þat as moche space as is bytwene cinit,

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

be knowen, whiche beenge so litelle worchethe so grete thynges in so grete a thynge. The maker of alle thynges, anendes whom the ydealle reasones of thynges be hidde, made the lesse worlde after the grete engyne of the worlde made, in whom he impressede the similitude of the grete worlde. For a man and the worlde be assimilate in iij. thynges, in dimension diametralle or dimetralle, in disposicion naturalle, and in operation virtualle. And thauȝhe þe longitude of the body of man, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to the toppe of the hedde, be vj. tymes more then the latitude of hym whiche is from side to side, and x. tymes more then þe altitude of hyt, whiche is from the backe to the bely; for[12] after the grete clerk Plinius, libro quinto, capitulo decimo octavo, what distaunce is betwene

---

[1] So Cx. (but with *be* for *beeþ*); *þat beeþ so i-ordeyned*, MS. and α.
[2] *þe oþere*, α.
[3] *forne*, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *þan*, MS.
[5] *þe*] om. α.
[6] *and*] om. α.; *al maner thynges*, Cx.
[7] So α. and Cx.; *lasse*, MS.
[8] *and in dipnesse*] om. α.
[9] *Here ys þe proporcyon of mannys body.* Note in MS.
[10] *So* α; *ben*, MS.
[11] *rygge*, α.; *rigge*, Cx.
[12] The translator should have written *yet*.

nostri ad oppositum punctum in cœlo, tanta est ab oriente in occidentem, sic fit in corpore humano ; quod quantum est homini[1] spatium a vestigio ad verticem, tantum est homini[2] spatium extensis[3] manibus inter extrema longissimorum digitorum. Tradit etiam[4] Plinius ibidem capitulo septimodecimo, quod in trimatu ætatis cujuslibet mensura erit futuræ staturæ dimidia, si vixerit. *Ranulphus.*[5] Secundo, sicut videmus[6] in mundo, ita in homine, quod partes et membra mutuo sibi correspondent, compatiuntur, et vicem supplent ; nam superiora regunt et influunt, inferiora supportant et serviunt, media recipiunt et refundunt. Et in utroque mundo dum membrum fuerit extra locum suum et intraverit alienum, fit statim perturbatio ; sicut quando aër includitur[7] in terræ visceribus, fit terræ motus ; quando vero[8] in nubibus, fit tonitrus ; sic quoque[9] in cor-

---

[1] *hominis*, C. (not D.)
[2] *hominis*, C. (not D.) ; *ei*, B.
[3] *expansis sive extensis*, C. (not D.)
[4] *enim*, B.
[5] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[6] *vidimus*, B.
[7] *includerit*, E.
[8] *vero*] om. C.D.
[9] *quoque*] om. C.D.

þat is þe point þat is in þe welken[1] euen aȝenst hem[2] in þe oþer side of þe erþe, so moche is out of þe est in to þe weste; and so hit is in þe body of a man þat as moche as is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of þe hede,[3] so moche is bytwene his tweie lengest fyngres endes, and he strecche out his armes and hondes abrood. Also Plinius þere[4] riȝt, capitulo 7°,[5] seiþ þat þe stature and þe mesure of a childe whan he is þre ȝere olde is euen half mesure of[6] his stature þat he schal haue whan he is of age, and he lyue[7] so longe. Þe secounde as we seeþ in þe world so we seeþ in a man, þat þe membres and þe parties helpeþ and stondeþ euerich oþer in stede, and byneneþ[8] his woo. For þe ouer lymes gouerneþ and ȝeueþ; þe neþer lymmes bereþ and serueþ; þe myddel fongeþ and deleþ aboute to[9] oþer lymes. And in eiþer[10] world ȝif a lyme is oute of his owne place, and i-entred in to anoþer place þan his[11] owne, anon is grete distourbaunce i-made, as whan þe ayer[12] is closed[13] wiþ ynne þe erþe, þan þe erþe schakeþ,[14] and whan with ynne þe cloudes þan is greet þondrynge; also in þe body of a man TREVISA.

MS. HARL. 2261.

cenit of oure hedde and a poynte contradictorious to hit in heuyn, soe moche distaunce is from the este in to the weste; soe in lyke wyse hit is in the body of man, that as moche distaunce is betwene the soole of his foote to the toppe of the hedde, so moche distaunce is betwene the extremites of the longeste fyngers, his armes extente. Also Plinius dothe reherse in the same boke, capitulo 17°, þat in euery thrydde age the measure of the peple schalle be but halfe of the firste age precedente in stature, if hit lyve. For lyke as we see in the worlde so hit is in man, that the partes and membres be corespondente to gedre and supplyenge the place of that other. For the bodies above gouerne and ȝiffe influence, the membres inferialle supporte and do seruyce, the meane other membres mediate, receyve, and refunde. And if a member of either worlde be owte of his place naturalle, and a straunge thynge haue introite f. 78. b. in to hit, the body is troublede anoon. As when the wynde is includede in the wombe of the erthe, a movenge of the erthe is made, and when hit is in the clowdes a thundre is

---

[1] *wolkyn*, *a.*; *firmament*, Cx.
[2] *hym*, Cx., more correctly.
[3] *heued*, *a.*
[4] *the*, Cx.
[5] 17, Cx.
[6] *and*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *alyue*, *a.*
[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *bymeneþ*, MS.
[9] *about the*, Cx.
[10] *the eyther*, Cx.
[11] *in his*, Cx.
[12] *eyer*, *a.*
[13] *enclosed*, Cx.
[14] *quaketh*, Cx.

pore humano quando [1] membra dislocantur aut humores corrumpuntur, fit dolor et morbus. Insuper cum [2] membra bene fuerint proportionata quoad figuram, colorem, qualitatem,[3] quantitatem, situm, et motum, denotatur [4] bona mentis habitudo. Econtra [5] fit cum membra male [6] fuerint proportionata; [7] inde [8] sententiavit Plato quod qualis animalis effigiem gestat homo, talis animalis sequitur [9] mores et affectus. Præterea sicut in rerum ordine mundanarum supremum inferioris generis tangit infimum superioris; [10] utpote ostria, quæ quasi infimum tenent locum in genere animalium, parum excedunt vitam plantarum, eo quod immobilia sint [11] terræ [12] hærentia et solum habeant [13] tactum; et ultimum terræ tangit infimum aquæ, et supremum

---

[1] *cum*, A.
[2] *etiam cum*, C.; *et cum*, D.
[3] *qualitatem*] om. C.D.
[4] *denotat*, E.
[5] *E contrario*, D.
[6] *male*] om. B.
[7] *proportionantur*, D.
[8] *inde et*, C. (not D.)
[9] *gestat*, C.D.
[10] *generis*, ins. C.D.
[11] *sunt*, B.C.
[12] *terræ*] om. E.
[13] *habent*, B.

Trevisa.

whan þe lymes beeþ awreiȝt [1] out of her [2] owne places, oþer ȝif þe humours beeþ apaired, þanne is ache, sicknesse, and sorwe. Also whan þe lymes beeþ wel arayed, and as they schulde be in schappe, colour and hewe, manere, quantite, and gretnesse and smalnesse, meuynge and place, þan haþ þe man good þees and quiete, and is in good heele and reste. Þe contrary falleþ,[3] and þe lemes [4] be euel and nouȝt riȝtly [and richeliche] [5] arrayed; þerfore Plato ȝaf his doom, and seide suche ordenaunce, disposicioun, and schap as a man haþ in his kyndeliche [membres and lymes, suche kyndeliche] [6] maneres þey foloweþ in [7] dedes. Also as it is in þe parties of þe grete world þat þey beeþ so i-ordeyned and i-sette þat þe ouermeste [8] of þe neþer kynde touche þe neþermeste [9] of þe ouer [10] kynde, as oistres and schelle fische, þat beeþ as it were lowest in bestene [11] kynde, passeþ but litel þe perfeccioun of lyf of treen and of herbes, for þey mowe not meue hem but as culpes of þe see waggeþ wiþ þe water, elles þey cleueþ to þe erthe and mowe noþer [see] [12] ne hire, ne taste, ne smelle, but onliche fele whan þey beeþ i-touched; and þe [13] laste [of] [14] þe erþe toucheþ þe lowest of þe water, and þe ouermeste [15] of þe

---

MS. Harl. 2261.

causede and made by hyt, in lyke wise in the body of man; sorowe and sekenesse be causede when membres be owte of theire places naturalle, auther humores be corrupte. And also lyke as a goode habitude of the mynde is signifiede when the membres be welle proporcionate as vn to figure, coloure, qualite, quantite, place, and movenge, and in sentence contrarious when the membres be inproporcionate to gedre; wherefore Plato ȝafe sentence that man folowethe the maneres and affectes of that beste, of whom he hathe similitude. And lyke as the hieste thynge of a thynge inferialle towchethe the laweste place of his superior, in the ordre of worldely thynges; as oestres, whiche holde as the laweste place in the kynde of bestes, excede but a litelle the life of plantes in that thei be immoveable and drawenge to the erthe, hauenge oonly the witte of towchenge. And the hieste parte of the erthe towchethe the loweste parte of the water, and so ascendenge by degrees

---

[1] *writhed*, Cx.
[2] *here*, α.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *contray failleþ*, MS.
[4] *lymes*, α.
[5] Added from α. Not in Cx.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *and*, α., Cx. The latter varies the sentence.
[8] *highest*, Cx.
[9] *lowest*, Cx.
[10] *high*, Cx.
[11] *beestes*, Cx.
[12] Added from α. and Cx.
[13] *at þe*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[14] Added from α. and Cx.
[15] So Cx. (Words are repeated without sense in MS.)

aquæ tangit primum aeris, et sic gradatim ascendendo usque ad ultimum orbem: sic quoque supremum in genere corporum quod potest dici, corpus humanum, æqualiter complexionatum attingit infimum proximi generis superioris, quod[1] est anima humana, quæ quasi tenet ultimum gradum in genere intellectualium substantiarum. Atque ideo horizon dicitur et confinium corporeorum et incorporeorum, in qua gradatim ascenditur ab infima potentia usque ad supremam intellectivam,[2] quæ quando a terrenis affectibus fuerit depurata, attingit quandoque[3] substantias separatas. Insuper et homo habet aliquid commune cum[4] partialibus mundi rebus, quia, secundum Gregorium in homilia[5] de Ascensione, homo[6] habet esse cum lapidibus, vivere cum arboribus, sentire cum animalibus, intelligere cum angelis. Quinetiam in humano corpore apparet terra in carne et ossibus, aqua in sanguine et[7] humoribus, aer in pulmone, ignis in corde. Sed et *homo* Latine[8] dicitur *antropos* Græce, quasi arbor

---

[1] *qñd*, A.

[2] So A.D.E.; *intelligentiam*, B.

[3] *quandoque*] added in margin of C.

[4] *cum*] om. E.

[5] *Omelia*, MSS., and so below.

[6] *in . . . homo*] om. C.D.

[7] *sanguine et*] om. C.D.

[8] *antropos dicitur*, B.; *Sed et homo Græce dicitur antropos, Latine, quasi arbor eversa*, D. This seems to be right, but was manifestly not Trevisa's text.

water toucheþ þe loweste of þe ayer, and so vpward by degrees anon to þe ouermeste hevene: also [1] þe hiȝeste in bodiliche kynde, þat may skilfulliche be i-cleped manis body, kyndeliche and perfitliche disposed arecheþ to þe lowest of þe nexte ouer-kynde; þat is manis soule, þat holdeþ þe lowest degre of spiritis and of gostes þat haueþ knowleche and vnderstondinge, and þerfore he is i-cleped orisoun, as it were þe next marche in kynde bytwene bodily and goostly þinges. By þe soule me goþ vp from [2] þe lowest kynde by degrees of knoweleche and of konnynge anon to þe ouermeste knowleche and vnderstondynge, and whan þe soule is al clene wiþ oute erþeliche likynge he recheþ oþerwhile to holy [spirites] [3] þat beeþ no þyng bodilich. Also man [4] haþ somwhat comyn wiþ þynges þat beeþ parties of þe grete world. For Gregorie in an omelye seiþ þat man haþ beynge wiþ stones, lyuynge wiþ trees and herbes, felynge [5] wiþ bestes, knowleche and vnderstondynge wiþ aungels. Also in manis body semeþ erþe in flesche and bones, water in blood and in oþer humours, ayer in þe longen, [6] fuyre in þe herte; and hatte ***homo*** in Latyn and *antropos* [7] in Grewe, þat is as hit were a tree

TREVISA.

---

vn to the laste worlde: so in lyke wise the hieste thynge in the kynde of bodies, that may be seide, the body of man egally complexionate, atteynethe the laweste thynge of the kynde superialle other generalite, whiche is the sawle of man, whiche holdethe as the laweste place in the kynde or generalite of substaunces intellectualle. Wherefore hit is callede orizon, and as the coste of thynges corporealle and incorporealle, in whom hit is ascended by degres from the laweste power to the hieste powere intellectiue; whiche, separate somme tyme from substaunces terrestrialle, as in affecte atteynethe otherwhile substaunce separate. Also a man hathe somme thynges commune with parcialle thynges of þe worlde. For after Seynte Gregory, in an omely in the Ascencion of oure Lorde God, "A man hathe beenge with stones, "lyvenge with trees, felenge with bestes, vnderstondenge with "angelles." Also erthe apperethe in the body of a man in the flesche and in the boones, water in the bloode and humores, aier in þe longes, and fire in the herte. But a man in Grewe is callede *antropos*, as a tre euertede; for a

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So MS. *α.β.*; but probably we should read *so.*

[2] *and from*, MS. (not *α.* or Cx.)

[3] Added from *α.* and Cx.

[4] So *α.* and Cx.; *men*, MS.

[5] So *α.* and Cx.; *felynges*, MS. (first hand.)

[6] *lungen*, *α.*

[7] *antrapos*, *α.*

eversa. Habet enim caput cum comis instar radicis, et quasi ramos habet brachia cum cruribus. Quoad tertium simile, quod est[1] virtualis operatio,[2] videmus, [3] sicut dicit Gregorius in homilia de Adventu, quod mundus in annis prioribus velut in juventute viguit; ad propagandam prolem robustus fuit, utpote[4] salute corporum[5] viridis, opulentia rerum pinguis; at nunc ipsa[6] senectute sua deprimitur, et quasi ad vicinam mortem crebris molestiis urgetur. Ita et[7] homini in juventute viget corpus, roboratur pectus, torosa est cervix,[8] plena sunt brachia; in annis autem senilibus statura curvatur, cervix deprimitur, crebris suspiriis pectus urgetur, anhelitus succiditur,[9] virtus per totum deficit; et etiam, si languor defuerit, plerumque ipsa salus in senibus est ægritudo. Præterea[3] sicut videmus quod[10] in majori mundo duo sunt[11] motus, unus naturalis, quo moventur orbes[12] inferiores ab occidente in orientem, et alius violentus, quo rapiuntur econtra raptu primi mobilis[13] ab oriente in occidentem;[14]

---

[1] *est quod*, E. (first hand.)

[2] *quod . . . . operatio*] om. D.

[3] *sicut dicit . . . Præterea*] added in margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.

[4] *ut*, B.

[5] cōp*m*, A.

[6] *ac ipsa nunc*, B.

[7] *ut*, E.; *et homini*, A.B.

[8] *thorax et cervix*, B.

[9] *succeditur*, A.

[10] *quod*] om. E.

[11] *sunt*] om. B.

[12] *urbes*, B.

[13] *violentus . . . mobilis*] quo moventur orbes inferiores, B.

[14] *et . . . occidentem*] om. A.; *ad modum primi orbis* after *occidentem*, B.

i-torned vp so doun, and haþ an heed[1] wiþ heer as it were[2] a roote, and haþ armes and þyghes as it were bowes. Touchynge þe þridde liknesse, þat is vertuous worchynge, we seeþ, as Gregory seiþ in an omelie of þe Aduent, þat þe world was at þe begynnynge þryuynge and strong for to brynge forþ children as it were in ȝowþe, and was ful of hele, and so fresche and grene, and by greet richesse it was fatte. But now it[3] is abated, wiþelde, and ait[4] were i-dryue toward þe deth wiþ ofte and meny diseses. So in a mannys ȝowþe þe body is þryuynge, þe brest is strong, the nolle is bolde, þe armes beeþ fulle. But in his elde þe stature boweþ and crokeþ and stoupeþ adoun, þe bolde nolle abateþ, þe brest is i-dryue ofte wiþ many sighes and soore, þe breþ schorteþ, in to alle[5] þe body myȝt and strengþe abateþ, and ȝif þey[6] þere were noon oþer siknesse in olde men, for þe more deel hele is sikenesse. Also as we seeþ þat in þe more worlde beeþ tweie contrary meuynges; oon is kyndeliche, by þe whiche þe planetes and þe neyþer wolkons moeueþ out of þe west in to þe est; þat oþer is violent, by þe whiche þey beeþ i-rauisched aȝenward wiþ the meouynge[7] of þe ouermeste wolken out of þe est in to þe west: so it fareþ in a man þat the flesche

TREVISA.

---

man hathe an hedde with heire, in the maner of a rote of a tre, and armes as bowȝes. As vnto the thridde similitude, whiche is virtualle operacion, we see, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an omely of Aduente, that the worlde hathe thryvede in yeres afore as in yowthe to the multiplicacion of peple, for hit was myȝhty as for healethe of bodies, grene and fatte as in plente of thynges. But hit is now as depressede with age, and is constreynede as with ryfe greuaunces to a nye dethe. Also in lyke wise the body of man encreasethe in youthe, the breste is stronge, the armes be fulle; but the stature is boede downe in age, the coppe is depressede, the breste is constreynede with mony sighes, the brethe is succidede, and vertu failethe thro alle the body. Also like as we see that þer be ij. movenges in the greater worlde, oon naturalle, thro whom the worldes inferialle be movede from the weste in to the este, that other is a movenge violente, by whom the worldes be rapte thro the rape of the firste mover from the este in to þe weste: soe hit is in like wise in man, that the flesche

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *heued*, α.

[2] Several words are erroneously repeated in MS., but omitted in α. and Cx.

[3] *he*, α.

[4] *as hit*, α., Cx.

[5] *in al*, Cx.

[6] *and ȝif þeiȝ*, α.; *and though*, Cx. Probably *ȝif* should be cancelled.

[7] *meuynge*, α.

sic fit in homine, quod caro concupiscit adversus spiritum et[1] spiritus adversus carnem, et inferiores potentiæ militant contra rationem. Ad hæc[2] homo cum rebus sæculi nonnullis quasi communia operatur seu patitur;[3] nam torpet quandoque[4] ut terra, fluit ut aqua, cedit ut aer, furit ut ignis, mutatur ut luna, mactat ut Mars, ambit ut Mercurius, degenerat ut Jupiter, sævit ut Saturnus. Cæterum, teste Plinio, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, sicut extrema orbis loca potissime scatent miraculis,[5] sicut patet in India, Æthiopia,[6] Africa, ita et in ipso hominum genere ingeniosa natura fecit sibi miraculosa ludibria. Nam primum in ipsa humana facie, ubi decem aut[7] paulo plura sunt membra, tanta est diversitas, ut in tot hominum milibus una alteri vix conveniat. In Africa[8] sunt familiæ quædam habentes linguas fascinantes, adeo ut earum laudatione intereant commendata,[9] arescant arbores,[10] moriantur inpuberes.

---

[1] *et*] om. C.D.
[2] *huc*, B.
[3] *seu patitur*] om. D.
[4] *nam torpet quandoque*] denique vicissim torpet, C.D.
[5] *miraculis*] om. E.
[6] *et*, C.D.
[7] *vel*, A.D.
[8] *quoque sunt*, C.D.
[9] *probata*, C.D.
[10] *earum . . . arbores*] om. B.

TREVISA.

coueyteþ aȝenst þe spirit, and þe spirit aȝenst þe flesche; for þe neþere knoweleches and wittes fiȝteþ aȝenst [þe][1] resoun. And ȝit a man haþ comoun worchynge and suffrynge leche[2] to many oþere parties of þe more[3] world; for he is slow and heuy as þe erþe, and fleteþ away as þe water, and wiþdraweþ sodeynliche as þe ayer, and heteþ as þe fuyre, chaungeþ as the mone, fiȝteþ and sleeþ[4] as Mars, coueyteþ as Mercurius, gooþ oute of kynde as Iupiter,[5] and is cruel as Saturnus. Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 3°, seieþ þat as þe vtter parties of þe grete worlde welleþ and springeþ ful of myracles, wondres, and meruailles, as in Ynde, in Ethiopia, Blomen[6] londe, and in Affrica; so in mankynde, kynde haþ slilyche and craftiliche i-made wonderful werkes and merþe. For first in a mannys face þere[7] beeþ ten lymes oþer fewe moo, þer[8] is so grete diuersite, þat among meny þowsand men vnneþe is oon i-founde in face i-liche to anoþer. In Affrica beeþ meyneys[9] þat haueþ wycchen[10] tonges, so þat þinges þat þey preiseþ þey schendeþ and sleeþ wiþ hire preisynge. So þat trees þat þey preiseþ waxen drie[11] and children

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the sawle ageyne the flesche, and þe powers inferialle laboure and stryve ageyne reason. Also a man is comparate with mony thynges in the worlde, and suffrethe as thynges commune with theyme, for he is slawe otherwhile as the erthe, floenge like to the water, ȝiffenge place like to the aier, brennenge as fire, chaungenge like to the moone, sleenge as Mars, goenge abowte other couetenge like to Mercurius, goenge owte of kynde like Iupiter, beenge woode or cruelle like to Saturnus. Also, after Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, lyke as the extremalle places of the worlde be moste habundante in miracles, as in Ynde, Ethioppe, and Affrike, soe in like wise nature hathe made moste meruellous disportes in that kynde of men. For now there is suche diuersite in the face of man, where x. members were firste, or fewe moo, that vnnethe ij. men be lyke amonge mony mt. Also there be men in Affrike, thro the lawde of whom thynges commended dye, trees do wedre, and wexe drye: also in Tri-

---

[1] Added from *a*.

[2] *soffrynge liche*, *a*.

[3] *the body more*, MS.

[4] So *a*. and Cx.; *fleeþ*, MS.

[5] So *a*.; *Jubiter*, MS.

[6] *blew men*, *a*.

[7] Perhaps we should read *where*. See p. 173.

[8] So Cx.; *þat*, MS.

[9] *many*, Cx.

[10] *wicching*, *a*.; *wirchyng*, Cx.

[11] So Cx. Various words erroneously repeated in MS. (not *a*.)

Ita[1] et in Triballis[2] et in Illyricis sunt homines[3] qui solo visu interimant diutius[4] conspecta, præsertim si intuentes sunt[5] irati; et hi quidem binas pupillas habent in singulis oculis. Sic enim[6] testatur Varro, quod in quorumdam hominum oculis peperit natura venenum; ne quid uspiam mali sit, quod in homine non reperiatur. Sic etiam aliquæ corporum partes nascuntur ad aliqua mirabilia ostendenda, sicut Pyrrho regi Epirotarum pollex in dextro pede, cujus tactus contra venenum valuit; quem[7] cum reliquo corpore cremari non posse tradiderunt[8] auctores.[9] Ita[10] Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo, testatur quod quidam gignuntur[11] concreto genitali; aliqui vice dentium concreto osse generantur, sicut patuit in filio Prusiæ, regis Bithyniæ; cujus superior pars dentium[12] sic concreta fuit, ut reliquo corpore combusto illa pars cremari non potuit. *Item ibidem,*[13] *capitulo octavo decimo.* Aliqui vivunt concretis toto corpore ossibus et sine medullis; et hi nec sitim sentiunt

---

[1] *Ita*] om. B.

[2] *Trivallis*, MSS. (Latin and English), *b* and *v* being often interchanged.

[3] *hominibus*, B.

[4] *diutius*] om. B.

[5] *fuerint*, and slightly transposed in C.D.

[6] After *enim* apud nos, C.D. ; *nos*, A.

[7] *quem*] hinc (hunc, D., by cler. error) etiam, C.D.

[8] *tradunt*, B.

[9] *posse ... auctores*] potuit, C.D.

[10] *At*, C.D. ; *Item*, B.

[11] *nascuntur*, B.

[12] *dentium*] om. C.D.

[13] *ibidem*] eodem libro, C.D.

deyeþ.[1] So in Triballis and in Illyricis[2] beeþ men þat sleeþ wiþ hir si3t what þey beholdeþ and lokeþ on longe, nameliche and þey be greued and wroþ while þey lokeþ so and byholdeþ, and þese hauen[3] in eueriche y3e[4] tweie blakkes. Also among vs, Varro seiþ, kynde haþ i-gendred and i-brou3t forþ venym in som mennys ey3en, so þat non euel is y-founde þat þere nys somwhat i-liche and i-founde in mankynde. So som parties of a manis body beeþ forseynge[5] and bodynge of wondres. So Pyrrhus,[6] kyng of Epirotes, hadde a greet too in his ri3t foot, þe touchynge of þat too was a good medicyne a3enst venym ; and þat too my3te no3t be brent [wiþ þe oþer body][7] whan þe oþer bodyes was i-brent,[8] so auctors telleþ. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 17°,[9] seiþ þat som men beeþ i-gete and i-bore wiþ gendrynge stones cleuynge to gidres as it were al oon ; som beeþ i-bore wiþ oon boon al[10] in stede of teeþ, and þat boon is hardere and scharpere þan any mannys tooþ. So Prusy, kyng of Bithynia, hade a sone þat hadde a bone in his mouþ instede of his ouer[11] teeþ, oon bone al hool, and þat boon was so harde, þat whan þe oþer deel of þe body was i-brend þat bone my3te nou3t brenne also. *Ibidem, capitulo* 18°. Som men lyueþ þat[12] eueriche of hem haþ þe bones of his body cleuynge to gidres as hit were al oon boon, al hool and wiþ oute marwe ;[13] þese men been neuere aferst,[14] also þey sweteþ neuere more. *Trevisa.* Som men telleþ þat som man

TREVISA.

---

ballis and in Illyricis be men whiche cause thynges beholden longe to peresche, and specially if the men beholdenge be wrothe, whiche haue ij. apples in either eie. So in lyke wise the poete Varro rehersethe that nature hathe infuded in to the eien of somme men venom, so that þer is noone ylle thynge but hit is reperible in man. Also somme partes off men be causede for somme meruellous thynges, to be schewede, as a thowmbe in the ry3hte foote of Pyrrhus[6] kynge, the towchenge of whom 3afe subsidy ageyne venom, whom auctores say not to haue be brente when the body of the kynge was brente. Also Plinius seithe, libro 7°, capitulo 17°, that somme men lyve alle the body concrete and compacte with boones, with owte eny maro, and these men do not thurste, neithe[15] swete. Also in the same boke,

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *dreyeþ, a.*
[2] *Trivallis and in Iliricis,* MS.
[3] *haueþ, a.*
[4] *ye, a.*
[5] *forbuson, a.* ; *forbyson,* Cx.
[6] *Pirus* or *Pirrus,* MS.
[7] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *whan the other partyes of his bodye was* (sic) *brente,* Cx.
[9] 27, Cx.
[10] *al hool,* Cx
[11] *oþere, a.,* Cx.
[12] *and, a.,* Cx.
[13] *marou3, a.* ; *mary,* Cx.
[14] So also *a.* ; *a thirst,* Cx.
[15] So Harl. MS.

nec sudorem emittunt. *Item capitulo vicesimo primo.* Aliqui[1] etiam rectos et transversos cancellatim toto corpore nervos habentes prodigiosa virium elatione micuerunt.[2] Aliqui indefesso cursu prævalent, quidam visu præpollent, ut Strabo miles, qui per centum triginta quinque passuum milia[3] classem Punicam vidit e specula.[4] Item, secundum Plinium, libro undecimo, capitulo quadragesimo nono,[5] Tiberius Cæsar clarius vidit in tenebris quam in luce, ita ut de nocte expergefactus perspicue cuncta videret. *Item libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Nonnulli etiam memoria viguerunt, ut Cyrus, rex Persarum; qui cunctis in exercitu suo militibus nomina reddidit. *Ranulphus.*[6] Et Seneca in primo prologo declamationum testatur de seipso,[7] quod tanta memoria viguit, ut duo milia nominum[8] eo quo erant ordine dicta recitasse[9] ex corde, et etiam plusquam ducentos versus ab aliis

---

[1] *Alii*, C.D.

[2] *interierunt*, B.

[3] *milia passuum*, B.; *miliaria*, A. E.

[4] Sentence slightly varied in D.

[5] The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 54.

[6] *Ranulphus . . . composuit.* This is placed after the next sentence in C., and is there added in the margin; it is absent from D.

[7] *testatur* after *seipso*, B.

[8] *hominum*, C.

[9] *recitassent*, C.; *recitasset*, B.

in Irlond haþ oon boon al hool in oon side instede of all his ribbes; and Thomas [1] Hayward of Berkeley haþ in þe molde of his heed, pol and forheed, but oon boon al hool; þerfore he may wel suffre grete strokes aboue on his heued,[2] and busche aȝenst men and horshedes, and breke strong dores wiþ his heed, and hit [3] greueþ hym nouȝt. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 21°, seiþ þat som men hadde in to alle þe body senewes, even i-streiȝt,[4] þwart ouer in [5] a crosse wise, and passynge wonderful in strengþe. Som mowe dure to renne wiþ out [werinesse; som be passyng clere of sighte, as a knyghte þat highte Strabo stode in][6] a weytes place, and sigh þe navey of schippes [7] of Puni þat were from hem [8] an hondred and fyue and þritty myle.[9] *Also Plinius, libro xi., capitulo* 44°, seiþ þat Tiberius Cesar sigh more clereliche in derkenesse þan in liȝt, so þat whan he were awaked anyȝt [10] he myȝt see [11] al þing cleerliche aboute hym. *Also Plinus, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 27°. Som were wonder myȝty of mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers, that to al þe kynȝtes of his oost ȝaf certayne names. And Seneca, libro primo declamationum, seiþ of hym self, þat he was so myȝty of mynde þat he rehersed two þowsand names arewe by herte in þe same ordre as þey were i-seide. And þat he rehersede mo þan two hondred vers þat oþer men hadde i-ȝeue,[12] and bygan TREVISA.

---

capitulo 21°, somme men hauenge senowes as transuertede and ouercrossede thro alle the body, haue bene of grete myȝhte; somme preuayle in swifte course and rennenge; somme men be nowble in siȝhte, as a knyȝhte callede Strabo was, whiche see the schippes Punicalle and myrrours by c.xxxv[ti] m[l] passes from hym. Also, after Plinius, libro xi°, capitulo xlix°, Tiberius themperour see more clerely in derknesse then in lyȝhte, in so moche that he awakede in the nyȝhte see alle thynges clerely. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 27°. Mony men haue hade grete scharpenesse in mynde, as Cyrus kynge of Pers[i]a, whiche ȝafe names to alle the knyȝhtes in his hoste. Also Seneca rehersethe of hym selfe in the firste prologe, that he was of suche memory that he wolde haue rehersede ij. m[l] names by herte, after the ordre thei were seide, and also moo then ij[c] versus seide of an other man, begynnenge at the laste MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Thomme, α.*; *Tom,* Cx.
[2] *heed without hurt,* Cx. (omitting the rest of the sentence.)
[3] *hit*] om. *α.*
[4] *i-straut, α.*; *straught,* Cx.
[5] *and, α.,* Cx.
[6] Added from Cx.
[7] *nauyes and shippes,* Cx.
[8] *him,* Cx.
[9] *myles,* Cx.
[10] *waked in the nyght,* Cx.
[11] So Cx.; *i-see,* MS.
[12] *yeuen,* Cx.

datos ab ultimo incipiens usque ad primum repetisset. Item ibidem dicit quod Cineas legatus Pyrrhi regis Epirotarum postero die adventus sui[1] apud Romam omnem senatum et circumfusam plebem propriis nominibus salutaverit. Et quidam alius recitatum a poeta carmen novum suum esse dixit, eo quod carmen illud semel auditum expeditius recitaret quam ille qui composuit. *Item Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.*[2] Quidam etiam[3] ingenii vigore claruerunt, ut Julius Cæsar, qui legere, scribere, et audire simul solebat; quaternas etiam simul epistolas dictare consuevit.[4] *Item libro septimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* Quibusdam vires majores sunt in dextra, quibusdam in læva, quibusdam[5] æqualiter in utraque. Item ponderosiora sunt mares fœminis, defuncta viventibus, dormientia vigilantibus. Virorum quoque cadavera supina fluitant,[6] fœminarum vero prona et resupina, ac si pudori[7] parcat natura.[8] *Item libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo.*[9] Legimus unum hominem risisse eo quo natus est die, ac manum

---

[1] *sui*] om. E.

[2] C. omits reference. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 25.

[3] *et*, B.

[4] Transposed in C.

[5] *quibus*, A.

[6] *fluctuant*, B.

[7] *pudore*, E.

[8] Paragraph slightly abbreviated in C.D.

[9] The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 15.

TREVISA.

at þe laste and rehersed anon to þe firste wiþ oute eny faile. Also he seiþ þere þat Cineas, Pyrrhus messanger[1] kyng of Epirotes, þis Cineas þe secounde [day][2] þat he come to Rome, he saluted[3] and grette þe senatoures, and spak to eueriche of þe peple þat come aboute hym by his owne name. Anoþer seide þat Cineas hadde[4] a grete makynge of poyesie, for he rehersed hit at þe firste bygynnynge[5] more swiftly þan he þat hadde i-made it. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 21°,[6] seiþ som were more noble and wys of witte, as Iulius Cesar, þat was i-woned to rede and write what me[7] seide wiþ good avisement al at ones. Also he vsed to write quayers, and endite letters and pisteles al at ones. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 18°, seiþ þat som men haueþ more strengþe in þe riȝt side, and som haueþ more in þe lift[8] side, and some beeþ i-liche strong in eiþer side.[9] Also men beeþ heuyer þan wommen, and dede men[10] bodyes heuyer þan quykke, and sleping þan wakynge heuyer also. Of dede men kareyns renneþ foule moistures and humours, and þey ligge vpriȝt; and of dede wommen kareyns and þey ligge neuelynge and dounriȝt,[11] as þey kynde spared schame. *Also libro* 7°, *capitulo* 17°, we redeþ þat oo man lowh[12] þat day þat he was i-bore, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

vn to the firste. Also he rehersethe there, that Cineas, meassenger of kynge Pyrrhus, salutede alle the senate of Rome and alle the peple abowte by theire propre names in the secunde day after his commynge to the cite. Also an other man rehersenge the versus of a poete, ascribede the lawde to hym, in that he rehersede theym more expedientely then the poete whiche made theyme. *Also Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 27°, rehersethe that somme men haue bene nowble of witte, as Iulius Cesar, whiche was vsede to rede, wryte, here, and to endyte epistoles at oon tyme. *Also Plinius* rehersethe, *libro* 7°, *capitulo* 28°,[13] that somme men haue moste strenȝhte in the ryȝhte honde, somme in the lifte honde,[14] and somme men haue egalle strenȝhtes in either honde. f. 80. a. Also men be moore heuy then women, and dedde thynges more then thynges in lyfe, and thynges slepenge more then thynges wakenge. *Also, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 17, we haue a-redde a man to haue laȝhede in the firste day

---

[1] *messager*, α.
[2] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] *salewed*, Cx.
[4] *hadde made*, Cx.
[5] *atte firste herynge*, Cx.
[6] 27, α., Cx.
[7] *men*, Cx. (and so generally.)
[8] *left*, α.
[9] So α. and Cx. Some words are repeated in MS.
[10] *mennes*, Cx. (with other slight variations above and below.)
[11] *þis ys a merveyle.* Note in MS.
[12] *louȝ*, α.
[13] The true reference is to capp. 17, 18.
[14] *londe*, Harl. MS.

cujusdam palpantis[1] repulisse. *Item*[2] *capitulo vicesimo.* Et feruntur aliqui[3] nunquam risisse, aliqui[4] nunquam flesse,[5] aliqui nunquam exspuisse, aliqui nunquam eructasse. *Item*[6] *capitulo quarto.* Et quemadmodum in cæteris animalibus, sic in humano genere gignuntur quandoque utriusque[7] sexus personæ, quas Hermaphroditas[8] vocamus, olim androgynos vocatos,[9] et inter prodigia notatos,[10] nunc vero inter delicias computatos.[11] Sed et sexum ipsum mutari vidimus et audivimus. Nam in Africa vidimus puellam ipso[12] nuptiarum die in marem mutari,[13] barbamque et cætera virilia produxisse, uxoremque cito postmodum[14] duxisse. *Ranulphus.* Item tangit Augustinus de Civitate, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo nono, quod[15] tradit A. Gellius,[16] libro Atticarum noctium, ex fœminis mutationes fieri in mares non esse fabulosum, sed potius ad litteram verum, unde[17] et ipse A.

Hermaphroditæ.

Sexus mutationes.

---

[1] *palpantis se*, C. D.
[2] *Idem*, C. D.
[3] *multi*, B.
[4] *alii*, B., and so below (twice).
[5] *flevisse*, C. (not D.)
[6] *Idem*, C.
[7] *utrius*, C. (not D.)
[8] *hermofroditas*, MSS.
[9] *vocitatos*, C.D.
[10] So A.; *computatos*, B.; *vocatos*, D.E.
[11] *notatos*, B.
[12] *ipsa*, B.
[13] *vidimus . . . mutari*] added in margin of C. Absent from D.
[14] *postmodum cito*, B.
[15] *quod cum*, C.
[16] *Agellius*, MSS.
[17] *unde*] om. C.

TREVISA.

putte awey a manis hond þat groped and handeled hym. *Also, Capitulo* 20°. Men[1] spekeþ of som men þat neuere lowh, of som þat wepe neuere, of som þat spat[2] neuere, of somme þat bolked[3] neuere. *Trevisa.* Rogge[4] Bagge was a ful old man at Wotton vnder hegge, in Glowcetre schire, he spat neuere, he kowhed[5] neuere. *Also Seneca, ubi prius, capitulo* 4°. And as hit is among oþer[6] bestes, so hit is in mankynde þat somtyme oon of mankynde is boþe man and woman, and such oon is i-cleped hermofrodita, and was somtyme i-cleped androgumus,[7] and acounted among meruayles and wondres; but now among us it is deynte, for it is seelde i-seye. Also we haueþ i-seie and i-herde þat some haueþ i-chaunged[8] hir schaþ; for we sighe in Affrica a mayde þe same day þat sche scholde haue be i-wedded, i-chaunged and i-torned into a man, and was i-berded anon, and anoon hadde alle lymes as a man schulde haue, and wedded a wyf with inne a schort tyme after. Also Seynte Austyn de civitate Dei, libro 3°, capitulo 29°, toucheþ þat A. Gellius[9] [libro] Atticarum[10] noctium seiþ þat wommen beeþ somtyme i-torned into men: hit is no made[11] tale, but hit is sooþ as þe lettre is i-write;

MS. HARL. 2261.

of his natiuite, and to haue put a way the honde of the man towchenge hym. *Also, capitulo* 20. Somme men be seide to haue not laȝhede in theire lyfe, somme men neuer to haue wepede, somme men neuer to haue spytte. *Also, capitulo quarto,* lyke as hit is in other bestes, so hit is in the kynde of man, that somme persones be gendred of bothe kyndes, whom we calle hermofroditas, callede somme tyme androdinos, namede as amonge wondres, now acomptede amonge delites. Also we haue seen and herde peple to haue chaungede theire kynde. For we see a maide in Affrike in the day of here mariage to haue ben chaungede in to a man, and to haue hade a berde and other membres of a man, and to haue mariede soone after with a woman. Also Seynte Austyn seithe, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo 29, that A. Gellius[9] rehersethe, libro Atticarum noctium, women to haue ben chaungede in to men, and that hit is not a fable but a trawthe. Wherefore A. Gellius[9] dothe

---

[1] *Mė, a.*, and also Cx. (contrary to his custom.)

[2] *spytte*, Cx., and so below.

[3] *balked*, Cx.

[4] *Rogger*, Cx. (not *a.*)

[5] *coughed*, *a.*, Cx.

[6] *oþere, a.*

[7] *androgimus, a.* Both in Trevisa and in the Harl. translation we should read *androgynous.*

[8] *chaunge wonderly*, Cx.

[9] *Agellius*, MS., *a.*, and Harl. MS.

[10] *atticaruco*, MS., *a.*, and Cx. (not Harl. MS.) Several proper names have been tacitly corrected throughout the chapter.

[11] *magel*, Cx.

Gellius refert se vidisse apud urbem Smyrnam puellam mutatam in marem eo die quo nubere debuit. Unde et aliquando tale monstrum allatum senatui sub Licinio Crasso et Cassio Longino[1] consulibus jussu aruspicum in desertam insulam deportatum est. Item de gallinis sexum mutantibus in gallos loquitur Titus Livius, et etiam Avicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, quod gallina quædam vicerat gallum in pugna, quæ post victoriam levavit caudam ut gallus; aculeus corneus sibi crevit in tibia, et crista in capite.[2] *Item Trogus, libro septimo, capitulo quintodecimo.*[3] Cæterum in Ægypto Trogus refert septenos fœtus uno partu edi; sed et tunc editis geminis, præcipue si varii sexus fuerint, aut puerperæ aut puerperio raram vitam superesse. *Item capitulo duodecimo.*[4] Sed et aliquoties modico interveniente tempore duo conceptus fiunt, et itidem duo vicissim fiunt partus et uterque perfectus, sicut patuit in Hercule et ejus fratre[5] Iphicle.[6]

Varia miracula ad conceptum spectantia.

---

[1] *et Longino*, C.

[2] All this passage from Ranulphus added in margin of C. A. and B. transpose it after the next two passages, after *Hippicle*. It is absent from D.

[3] *Item . . . quintodecimo*] Idem capitulo 40, C.; Idem c. 5, D.; Item libro 7, c°. 40, A.B. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 3.

[4] C. omits reference. D. has c. 2°. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 9. Ed. Franz (but this is c. 11 of some).

[5] *fratre suo*, B.

[6] *Hippicle*, MSS.

TREVISA.

þerfore A. Gellius seiþ, þat in a citee þat het Smyrna he seih [1] a maide i-torned in to a stoon [2] þe same day þat sche schulde haue be wedded. Also suche oon was i-brouȝt to Rome to þe senatoures in þe tyme of Licinius [3] and Cassius Longinus, consulus [4] of Rome, and by heste of dyuynours þat toke hede of þe [5] weder and of chitterynge of briddes it was i-bore into a wild ilond. Also Titus Liuius spekeþ of hennes þat were i-torned into cokkes And Auicenna, libro 8° de animalibus, spekeþ of an hen þat hadde ouercome a cok in fiȝtinge, and after þe fiȝtynge and þe victorie, he [6] rered vp the tayle as a cok, and had anon i-growe [7] a spore on þe leg and a crest on þe heed as it were a cok. *Also capitulo* 50°. Trogus seiþ in Egipt beeþ seven children i-boren [8] at oon berþen ; but ȝif tweie twynnes beeþ i-bore, it is wel seelde [9] þat þe moder and þe firste childe lyveþ longe after þe burþe, and nameliche ȝif þat oon is a knaue childe and þe oþer a mayde childe. *Also capitulo* 12°. And somtyme a womman conceyueþ twey children and is but a litel tyme bytwene; and so þe children ben afterward i-bore oon after oþer, and beeþ perfit i-now, as hit was of Hercules and his broþer Iphicles.[10] And so it ferde [11] of þat woman þat bare

MS. HARL. 2621.

reherse hym selfe to haue seen at a cite callede Smyrna, a maide chaungede in to a man in the day of theire weddenge. Wherefore suche a wondre brouȝhte oon tyme to the senate, in the tyme of Licinius Crassus, and Cassius Longinus,[12] consulles, whiche was sende in to a deserte place thro the cownsaille of wicches. Also Titus Liuius spekethe of hennes chaungenge theire kynde in to kokkes, and also, Auicenna, libro octauo de animalibus, that an henne hade the victory of a cokke in fiȝhte, whiche lifte the tayle lyke to a cokke after the victory, spurres groenge in the legge of hit, hauenge a combe in the hedde. Also the same Auicenne, capitulo 5°. Also Trogus rehersethe a woman in Egipte to haue childede vij. childer at oon season, but other the moder other the childer contynue not in lyfe longe after. But mony women haue ij. childer at oon tyme, and tweyne at an other tyme, as hit was schewede in Hercules, and in Iphicles [10] his brother. Also somme

[1] *syȝe, a.* ; *sawe,* Cx. (and so usually.)
[2] *a man, a.*, Cx.
[3] *Lasciuius,* MSS.
[4] *consuls,* ., Cx.
[5] þe] om. *a.*, Cx.
[6] *she,* Cx.
[7] *i-crowe, a.*
[8] *i-bore, a.* ; *born,* Cx. (The latter varies the sentence.)
[9] *selde, a.*
[10] *Hispicle,* or *Hispicles,* MSS. ; *Hispycle,* Cx.
[11] *ferde or happend,* Cx.
[12] *Lascivius Crassus, Cassius, and Longinus,* Harl. MS.

Et etiam in illa muliere, quæ gemino partu alteram marito[1] alterum adultero similem genuit. Et in illa quæ sub septimo mense edito puerperio in secundis post hoc[2] mensibus geminas enixa est. Quasdam autem semper[3] fœminas, quasdam semper mares parere, quasdam hoc[4] alternare manifestum est. Aliquæ etiam semper et ad omnes viros sunt steriles; aliquæ ad aliquos sunt steriles, ab aliis tamen concipiunt. *Item*[5] *capitulo tertio decimo.* Quasdam etiam sibi similes semper parere, quasdam similes patri, quasdam similes nulli, quasdam fœminam patri, marem sibi; quasdam antiquioribus parentibus similes producere notum est.[6] Exemplum est de Nicæo nobili pictore[7] apud Byzantium, qui de pulchra matre natus degeneravit in avum[8] Æthiopem. *Hugutio, capitulo*[9] *Molo.* Talem ferunt fore fœminarum naturam, ut quales formas conspexerint,[10] dum concipiunt, talem sobolem procreare; nam anima humana in usu venereo formas extra conspectas intus transmittit, et earum species in propriam qualitatem rapit. Sic solent in Hispania obicere[11] generosos equos obtutibus equarum

[1] *alterum marito*] om. A.
[2] *hæc*, D.
[3] *super*, B.
[4] *hæc*, D.
[5] *Item*] libro septimo, C.
[6] Slightly varied in C.D.
[7] Higden should have written *pycte.* See Plin., vii. 10.
[8] *nanum*, C.D.E.; *atrum*, B.
[9] *Hugo*, A.B. *Hugutio . . . xiij*°., added in margin of C. Absent from D.
[10] *mentaliter* added in B.
[11] *subjicere*, A.

tweie children oon liche to hire housbonde, and þe oþere to þe copenere,[1] and of þat woman þat in þe seuenþe monþe aftir hir birþe in þe secounde monþe after sche bare tweie children. Som wommen bereþ alwey mayde children, and some alway knaue children, and som alway chaungeþ and bereþ somtyme a mayde [2] childe [and][3] somtyme a knaue childe. Som beeþ bareyn and conceyueþ neuere of no man, and som conceyueþ [of som men][4] and [of][4] som men conceyueþ nouȝt. *Also, capitulo* 13°. Som bereþ children liche to [hem self and some liche to þe fader, and som liche to no man. Some bereþ douȝters liche to þe fader [5] and sones [6] liche to hemself. Some bereþ children liche to][7] some of [8] hire forfadres. Ensample is of [9] Niceus þe [10] noble peyntour at Byzantium, þat was i-bore of a faire moder and wente out of kynde and hadde on honde [as][11] a blew man. *Hugo, capitulo malo.* Me seiþ þat wommen kynde [12] is suche þat þey [13] conceyueþ children i-liche to þinges þat þey seeþ i-peynt and i-schape; for þe worchynge of the soule while þe body is in getynge of a childe sendeþ inward liknes and schappes þat þey [14] seeþ wiþ oute, and rauischeþ þe ymages þerof as hit were to his disposicioun. And so þey useþ in Spayne for to brynge TREVISA.

---

women haue in alle tymes male childer, somme women at alle tymes female childer, and somme women bothe at diuerse tymes. Also somme women be bareyn at alle tymes and to alle men, and somme women beenge bareyn to somme men conceyve of somme men. *Also, capitulo* 13°. Somme women haue childer like to theyme, somme like to the fader, and somme like to theire predecessores afore tyme. An exemple may be schewede of Niceus, a nowble peynter at Byzantium, whiche borne of his moder, a feire woman, wente owte of kynde in to a fowle man of Ethioppe. *Hugo, capitulo Malo.* Philosophers say the nature of women to be of suche disposicion that thei brynge furthe suche childer like to the formes whom thei beholde in the tyme of concepcion, for the sawle of man in the vse venerealle transmittethe interially formes other similitudes conceyvede exterially, and takethe, as by rape, the similitudes of theyme in to his propre qualite. Therefore men in MS. HARL. 2261. f. 80. b.

---

[1] *compyner*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
[2] *mayden*, α.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *fadris*, β.
[6] So β.; *some* α.
[7] Added from α., which is partly corrected from β. and Cx.
[8] *some of*] om. β.
[9] *of*] om. α. and Cx.
[10] þe] So α. β. and Cx.; *for*, MS.
[11] Added from α and Cx.
[12] So α.; *womans kynde*, Cx.; *kyndynde*, MS.
[13] *he*, α.; *she*, Cx.
[14] *he*, α.; *she*, Cx.

concipientium, et pulchras columbas depingere in locis ubi columbæ conversantur. Et Quintilianus defendit matronam accusatam de adulterio, eo quod Æthiopem genuisset, allegans talem imaginem tempore conceptus in cubiculo depictam fuisse. Et Hippocrates[1] scribit quandam fuisse condemnandam, eo quod pulcherrimum puerum utrique parenti dissimilem pepererat, nisi Hippocrates monuisset quærere an similis pictura fuisset in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis. *Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Idcirco autem[2] in homine plures differentiæ fiunt, quia[3] animi celeritas et ingenii[4] varietas multiformes notas in ipso hominis conceptu imprimit. In cæteris[5] animantibus animi sunt quasi[6] immobiles, et ideo in illis[7] quisque[8] fœtus est suo generi similis.

---

[1] *Ipocras* or *Ypocas*, MSS. here and below.
[2] *autem*] om. A.
[3] *quoniam*, C.D.
[4] *ingenii humani*, C.D.
[5] *cæteris vero*, C.D.
[6] *quasi*] om. C.D.
[7] *in illis*] om. C.D.
[8] *quisquam*, B.

TREVISA.

faire hors and gentil, and holdeþ hem to fore þe mares and in hir siȝt while þey conceyueþ. And þey vseþ also to paynte faire coloures[1] in places þere[2] coluers beeþ i-woned to dwelle. And Quintilianus excuseþ and defendeþ a womman þat wsa accused of spousebreche for sche hadde i-bore a blew man, and he leggeþ[3] for hir þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in hir bed chambre whan sche conceyued þat childe. And Ypocras[4] wroot of a woman þat schulde be dampned to þe deeþ, for sche[5] hadde i-bore a faire childe þat was not liche hir self noþer to þe fader; but Ypocras made men assaie, and it was i-founde þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in þe fader and þe[6] moder bedchambre while þat childe was i-conceyued, and so þe moder was i-saued. *Plinius, libro* 7°, *capitulo* 13°. Þerfore in a man beeþ many dyuersitees, for swiftnes of þouȝtes and chaungynge of witte in þe concepcioun preentiþ[7] in meny dyuers liknesse and schappes. In oþer bestes wit is as it were not chaungeable, þerfore among hem al þe brood is liche[8] to þe same kynde.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Speyne vse to sette or putte feire horses to the siȝhte of the mares when thei vse to gendre, and to peynte in places where dofes vse freschely with feire dofes in picture. And Quintilianus[9] defended a woman accusede of advoutery, in that sche was delyuerede of a man of Ethioppę, makenge allegacion suche an ymage to haue be made in picture a bowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. Also that grete clerk Ypocras writethe a woman to haue been despisede, in that sche was delyuerede of a feire childe, like neither to the fader neither to the moder, but that Ypocras defendede that woman, in that there was suche an ymage abowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. *Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Therefore mony difference be in a man, swiftenesse of sawle, variablenesse of witte, impressenge mony similitudes in the concepcion of a man. But the sawles in other bestes be as immoveable, and þer fore euery concepcion of theyme is like to the kynde of hit.

---

[1] *coluers*, *a.*, Cx., who adds *or dowues.*

[2] As in other places this word appears in the MSS. for *where*.

[3] *leieþ*, *a.*; *leyed*, Cx. (with other slight variations.)

[4] As this form occurs in Chaucer it has been allowed to stand.

[5] *he*, *a.*

[6] *þe*] om. *a.* and Cx. (which is better.)

[7] *emprynteth*, Cx.

[8] *yliche*, *a.*

[9] *Quintelianus*, Harl. MS.

Cap. II.

De monstruosis hominum partibus.[1]

Varii hominum partus monstruosi; Cyclopes, Sciopodes, &c.

Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo. De monstruosis hominum partibus[2] quæritur utrum ex primo homine an ex Noe credantur propagari, quales dicuntur Cyclopes unum oculum in fronte habentes.[3] Quidam autem[4] utrumque sexum[5] dicuntur habere, dextram mammam virilem, sinistram[6] muliebrem, vicissimque[7] inter se coeundo et gignere et parere. Alibi etiam quinquennes[8] fœminas concipere; et octavum a nativitate[9] annum non excedere. Alii crura sine poplite habere[10] mira celeritate præstantes, quos Sciopodas[11] vocant, eo quod æstivo tempore resupini jacentes umbra pedum se protegant.[12] Ad quod dicimus, quod omnia hominum genera qui dicuntur esse credere non est necesse; veruntamen qualis ratio redditur apud nos de monstruosis partibus, talis de monstruosis gentibus reddi potest.

---

[1] Title in D. only.

[2] *partubus*, E.

[3] C.D. bring in here the reference to Augustine.

[4] So C.D.; *quod quidam*, A.E. (without sense); *dicuntur* before *utrum*, B.

[5] *sexuum*, A.

[6] *et sinistram*, C.D.

[7] *que*] om. E.

[8] *quinquennas*, A.; *quinquies*, B.

[9] *nativitatis*, B.E.

[10] *habere*] om. E.; *dicuntur habere*, B.

[11] So E.; *sciopatas*, B.; *sciopcidas*, A.

[12] *protegunt*, B.

Capitulum secundum.

TREVISA.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 16°, *capitulo* 7°. Off broodes, þat beeþ wonderliche i-schape, me axeþ ȝif þey come of Adam and Noe. Som of hem hatte Cyclopes, and haueþ but oon eyȝe in þe for heed. Some haþ[1] eiþer schap of man and of womman, and gendreþ to gidres and geteþ, and conceyueþ and bereþ child,[2] as þe cours comeþ aboute. For ones he schal gete a childe, and sche[3] schal eftsones conceyue and goo with childe, euerich in his tyme as hit gooþ aboute. Som wommen conceyueþ at fyue ȝere olde, and lyueþ nouȝt over eiȝte yere. Somme haueþ þighes with oute hammes, and beeþ wonderliche swift, an[4] hatte Sciopodes;[5] for þei liggeþ neuelinge[6] and doun riȝt in þe somer tyme, and defendiþ hem self wiþ þe schadewe of here feet from þe hete of þe sonne. Herto[7] we answereþ and seiþ þat it nedeþ nouȝt to trowe þat þere beeþ so many manere schape men[8] as me spekeþ of. Noþeles resoun as it is y-ȝoue of wonder schappe children þat beeþ among vs, suche resoun me may ȝeue of dyuers manere peple þat

---

Capitulum secundum.

MS. HARL 2261.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulo septimo. A question may be movede of suche mervayles in nature wheder thei come of Adam or of Noe, as men callede Cyclopes, hauenge oon eie in the forehede. And somme be seide to haue either kynde as the ryȝhte pappe of a man and the lifte of a woman, other while gendrenge to gedre and to conceyve. Also in other places hit is seide women of the age of v. yere to childe, and not to excede the viij^the yere from the natiuite of theyme, and somme men have thees with owte a homme of grete swiftenes, whiche peple be callede Sciopode,[9] in that thei lyenge in the somer tyme with theire faces vpwarde, defende alle theire body thro the schado of theire foote. To the whiche question we say that hit is [not] necessary a man to beleve the kyndes of alle men whiche be seide to be; neuerthelesse the same reason may be assignede of the monstruous peple whiche

f. 81. a.

---

[1] *haveþ*, *a.*

[2] *childer*, Cx. (with other slight variations.)

[3] *he*, *a.*, Cx.

[4] *and*, *a.*

[5] *Cyopodes*, MS., &c.

[6] *nyuelynge*, *a.*; *neuelynge*, *β.*

[7] *Wherto*, Cx.

[8] *mishappen men*, Cx.

[9] *stropode* or *scropode*, Harl. MS.

Deus enim ubi et quando aliquid[1] oporteat creari novit, sciens universitatis pulchritudinem, qualium partium similitudine aut dissimilitudine contexat. Certe sub nostra ætate in oriente natus est homo in superiori parte[2] duplex usque ad medium ventris, inferius autem simplex. Nec propter hoc diffitebimur eum ab[3] Adam processisse. Igitur hujusmodi[4] monstruosa aut omnino non sunt, aut si sunt homines non sunt, aut si homines sunt[5] ex Adam procul dubio processerunt. Quod vero[6] Antipodas quidam fabulantur existere, id est, homines a contraria parte mundi adversa pedibus nostris calcare vestigia, nulla ratione credibile[7] est. Nec[8] enim hoc[9] ulla historica cognitio prodit, sed tantum conjectura humana adinvenit. Quamvis[10] enim terra sit rotunda, et intra convexa cœli quodammodo suspensa, non tamen est nuda ex illa parte ubi constat eam aquarum congerie circumamictam;[11] sed et licet terra ibidem esset nuda,

Antipodes.

[1] *aliquam*, C.; *aliqua*, A.D.

[2] *superiori parte*] superioribus, C. D.

[3] *ex*, C.D.

[4] *Hujusmodi igitur*, B.

[5] *homines non . . . sunt*] om. C.D.

[6] *autem*, C.D.

[7] *credendum*, C., *credd͂*, D.; *ratio plena non notabit*, B.

[8] *Neque*, C.D.B., which last omits *enim*.

[9] *hæc*, D.

[10] *Licet*, C.D.

[11] *circumcinctam*, C.D.

TREVISA.

beeþ wonderliche i-schape. For God knoweþ where and whanne it needeþ to make eny manere þing, he knoweȝ þe fairenesse of al creatures, and wiþ what liknesse and vnliknesse of parties þey beeþ i-medled[1] to gidres. Certeynliche in oure tyme was aman i-bore in þe est þat hadde tweie bodies aboue anon to þe myddel of þe wombe, and byneþe but oon; but ȝit for al þat we schal trowe þat he com[2] of Adam. Þerfore, suche þat beeþ wonderliche i-schape oþer þey beeþ nouȝt; oþer þey beeþ no men; oþer ȝif þey beþ men, wiþ oute doute þey come of Adam his kynde.[3] Touchinge Antipodes þat men spekeþ of and seiþ[4] þat þey beeþ men in þe oþer side of þe erþe, and here feet toward oure,[5] and hire heed ȝonward and tredeþ hiderward, þat may be trowed by no resoun, þere is no storie þat makeþ vs haue knowleche; but onliche by gessynge of mankynde suche a tale is i-founde. Þey þe erþe be rounde al aboute and somdel honginge wiþ ynne þe holownesse of heuene, neuerþeles þe erþe is nouȝt bare in þat side, for he is byclipped and i-closed wiþ ynne

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

we schewede afore of the monstruous partes. For God knowethe how euery thynge awe to be create, and how he scholde dispose the pulcritude of the vniversite in hit, in similitude of partes either in dissimilitude. In oure tyme and age a childe was borne in the este, dowble in the superior parte vn to the myddes of the bely, and single from that place downewarde, ȝitte for alle that we schalle not [haue] diffidence but that he come of Adam. Therefore wondrefulle or monstruous thynges, other thei be not in eny wyse, or if thei be thei ar noo men, or if thei be men with owte eny dowte thei toke theire originalle of Adam. And that somme men say, as in fables, men callede Antipodas to be, that is to say, men to be in a contrarious parte of the worlde, and to trede with theire feete ageyne oure stappes; hit is not credible by eny reason, neither the cognicion of eny story dothe not expresse hit to be soo, but that the coniecture of man movethe that thynge. For thauȝhe the erthe be rownde and conuexede with ynne, neuerthelesse hit is not bare of þat parte, sithe that hit is circumamicte with waters, and thauȝhe the erthe were bare þer, hit wolde not

---

[1] *melled*, α.

[2] *come*, α., Cx.

[3] Text as in α. and Cx.; clauses transposed in MS.

[4] *syngeth*, Cx.

[5] *owres*, Cx.

non ideo esset consequens quod homines ibi haberet. *Ranulphus.*[1] Nisi forte velimus intelligere Antipodas eo modo quo tradit Marcianus in Astrologia sua,[2] dicens quod antipodibus[3] æstatem facit Capricornus et hyemem Cancer, quod utique ultra australem partem Æthiopiæ conjicitur[4] fore,[5] ubi obliqua et pæne contraria fiunt vestigia his qui circa insulam Tylæ[6] sub ipso polo arctico morantur.[7] *Isidorus, libro undecimo.*

Portenta futuri præscia.

Portentorum creationes quandoque fiunt ad significa-

[1] *Ranulphus*] This sentence added in margin of C. Absent from D.

[2] See Mart. Capell. *De nupt. Phil.* lib. viii § *De cursu solis* (in fine), p. 295. Ed. Grot.

[3] *antipodis*, A.E.

[4] *convicitur* A.E.

[5] *esse*, C.

[6] *Tile*, A.

[7] *commorantur*, A.B.C.

þe water. And þey he were bare[1] and nouȝt so i-closed, ȝit it foloweþ nouȝt that men schulde wonye þere. ℞. But we[2] wolde mene, as Marcianus seiþ in his Astrologie, þat Capricornus þe goot makeþ somer to þe Antipodes, and þe Crabbe[3] makiþ to hem wynter; and þat is acounted byȝonde þe side of Ethiopia, blew men[4] londe; þere men torneþ wel nigh here feet towarde men[4] feet þat woneþ aboute þe ilond Tyle vnder þe norþ sterre. *Trevisa.* Here take hed þat þe cercle þat[5] þe sonne holdeþ his cours ynne by the ȝere is i-deled in twelue parties, and eueriche partie þerof is i-cleped a signe, and euerich signe haþ his owne name.[6] Þese beeþ þe names of þe signes: þe Wether, þe Boole, þe Twynnes, þe Crabbe, þe Leon, þe Mayde, þe Balaunce, þe Scorpion, þe Archer, þe Goot, þe Sceen,[7] þe Fisshe. Also twelue monþes ben[8] in þe ȝere, and eueriche monþe þe sonne entreþ in to a signe,[9] as it falleþ for þe monþe. And so in Marche þey entreþ into þe Weþer; in Averel[10] in to the Boole; in May in to þe Twynnes; in Iuyn into þe Crabbe; and so forþ arewe by monþes and signes, so þat in Decembre þe sonne is in þe Goot. Þanne Marcianus wil mene whan he seiþ þat þe Goot makeþ somer [to Antipodes, þat whanne þe sonne is in þe Goot þan hit is somer][11] wiþ hem. But in Decembre it is mydwynter monþe; and whanne he seiþ þat þe Crabbe makeþ hem wynter, he meneþ þat whanne þe sonne is in þe Crabbe þan it is wynter wiþ ham, þat is in Iuyn, þat is mydsomer monþe: and so hit is i-clared[12] what it is to mene, þe Goot makeþ hem somer, and þe Crabbe wynter. *Isidorus, Etymolog., libro xj°.* Som tyme burþes beeþ i-bore wonderliche and[13] wonderliche i-schape for to be bodynge

TREVISA.

---

folowe by a directe consequente that the erthe scholde conteyne men in that parte. ℞. Perauenture but if we vnderstonde Antipodas men so namede in that maner as Marcianus dothe in his Astrology, seyenge that Capricorne makethe somer to men called Antipode, and Cancer wynter; whiche thynge is supposede to be caused ouer the sowthe parte of Ethioppe, for the stappes þer be oblike and contrarious to theyme whiche dwelle abowte the yle callede Tyle vnder that pole artike. *Isidorus, Eth., libro xj°.* The creaciones of wondres be causede otherwhile to the

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 81. b.

---

[1] *baar*, α.
[2] *he*, Cx.
[3] *the cancer, the signe*, Cx.
[4] *mennes*, Cx. (twice.)
[5] So Cx. (*that*); *of*, MS.
[6] *a propre name*, Cx.
[7] *sceene*, α.; *scene*, β; *stewe*, Cx. There is very little doubt that *scenc* (Germ. *Schenk*) is the true reading. See Glossary.
[8] *beþ*, α.
[9] So α.; *assigne*, MS.
[10] *Aprile*, Cx.
[11] Added from α. and Cx.
[12] *declared*, Cx., α.
[13] *and*] om. α.

tionem [1] futurorum, et tunc non diu vivunt; ut quod [2] in tempore Xerxis,[3] regis Persarum,[4] vulpes ex equa nata solvi regnum portendebat. Et tempore Alexandri Magni cujusdam monstri superiores partes hominis erant sed mortuæ, inferiores vero variarum bestiarum sed viventes, significabant repentinam regis interfectionem; nam [5] supervixerant deteriora melioribus. *Isidorus, libro undecimo, capitulo ultimo.*[6] Fiunt [7] quandoque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus seu [8] herbarum veneficiis.[9] Quædam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam, quædam [10] per corruptionem transeunt

---

[1] *significationes*, D.
[2] *quod*] om. C.D.
[3] *Xersis*, A.E.; *Xerses*, B.
[4] *Persarum*] om. C.D.
[5] *enim*, C.D.
[6] *Item capitulo ultimo*, C.D. (E. omits *capitulo ultimo.*)
[7] *fiunt etiam*, C.D.
[8] *aut*, C.
[9] *beneficiis*, B.
[10] *quædam vero*, C.D.

and forto[1] comynge[2] of wondres þat schal bifalle, but þanne þey lyveþ nouȝt l[o]nge.[3] As in Xerxes[4] kyng of Pers his tyme a mare foled [a fox],[5] and boded þat þe kyngdom schulde be vndoo.[6] And in þe grete kyng Alisaundres[7] tyme was i-brouȝt forþ a beest wonderliche i-schape, [for þe ouer parties of hym were i-schape][8] as þe parties of a man, but þey were dede, and [þe][9] neþer parties were i-schape as þe parties of dyuers manere bestes, and were onlyue,[10] and bode[11] sodeyn sleynge of þe king,[12] for þe worse parties lyuede lengere þan þe bettre. *Trevisa.*[13] William Wayte of Berkeley sigh a childe wiþ tweye hedes and tweye nekkes i-bore and i-fulled[14] at Mese in Loreyn, þe ȝere of oure Lord a þowsand þre[15] hondred and sixe and fifty, þat ȝere þe kyng of Fraunce was i-take at þe batayle of Peyters. Þis child hadde tweie armes[16] and tweie legges, as oþer children haueþ, and he hadde þe þridde legge growynge oute aboue þe buttokkes byhynde, and þe þridde arme bytwene þe tweie schuldres. *Item Isidorus, libro ij°, capitulo* 3°. Somtyme is grisliche and wonderliche chaungynge and schapynge[17] of men in to bestes, and is i-doo by wordes oþer by wichecraft. Som haþ and som[18] fongeþ suche chaungynge by þe same kynde, somme by corrupcioun passeþ and chaungeþ in to oþer kynde, and so of calues TREVISA.

---

significacion of thynges to comme, and then thei lyve not longe; as a fox was foolede of a mare in the tyme off Xerses kynge of Persa. And also þer was suche a wondre in the tyme of Alexander the Conquerour, the superior partes of whom were of a man, but dedde, and the partes inferialle were of diuerse bestes, and in lyfe, whiche signifiethe or signifiede the soden dethe of kynge Alexander, for the more vile partes lyvede more longe then the partes more nowble. *Isidorus, libro xj., capitulo ultimo.* And monstruous transformaciones of men in to bestes be made otherwhile thro charmes of wicches and wikkede operaciones of yerbes. Somme thynges receyve mutacion by theire nature, somme thynges goe in to other kyndes by corrupcion, as bees of roten calfes, and vermyn callede scarabei of cor- MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *to*] om. *a*.
[2] *and to kenning*, Cx., who has also various slight alterations.
[3] *longe*, *a*.
[4] *Excerses*, MS., &c.
[5] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[6] *vndo*, *a*., Cx.
[7] *Alisaundre his*, *a*.
[8] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[9] Added from Cx. (*the*).
[10] *alyue*, Cx.
[11] *bodede*, *a*.; *betokened*, Cx.
[12] So *a*. and Cx.; *kyngdom*, MS.
[13] Reference added from *a*.
[14] *cristened*, Cx.
[15] So. *a*. and Cx.; *sixe*, MS.
[16] So Cx.; *names*, MS., and *a*.
[17] *wonderfully chaungyng of schappes*, Cx.
[18] *som*] om. *a*.

in alias species, ut[1] de putridis vitulis apes, de putridis equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius:[2]

"Concava littorei si demas brachia cancri,
"Scorpius[3] exibit, caudaque minabitur unca."

Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.[4] Quoad monstruosas hominum transformationes tenendum est, quod dæmones et mali homines nec possunt naturam aliquam creare, neque[5] quod creatum est mutare; possunt tamen, Deo permittente, species transfigurare. Ita videlicet ut illud fantasticum hominis, quod cogitando sive somniando varias corporum formas haurit,[6] sopitis corporeis sensibus, etiam[7] cum corpus non sit, veluti tamen corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus alienis; talisque sibi homo esse[8] videatur, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et etiam[9] portare onera, quæ si vera sunt[10] onera, portantur a dæmonibus;[11] ut sic, Deo juste judicante, illusio fiat hominibus. *Ranulphus.* De ista materia vide plenius infra[12] post bellum Trojanum.

---

1 *et*, E.
2 *Met.* x. 369.
3 *Coppus*, A.
4 19°, C. The true reference is to lib. xviii., c. 18. D. omits all the remainder of this chapter.
5 *nec*, B.
6 *capit*, Aug.
7 *et*, B.C.
8 *esse*] om. B.
9 *etiam*] om. B., Aug.
10 *sint*, A. (not Aug.)
11 *ab hominibus*, B. (not Aug.)
12 *infra*] om. B.C.

i-rooted comeþ bees, and of hors i-roted comeþ harnettes.[1] TREVISA.
Þerfore Ouyde seiþ—

Ȝf þou craft habbe,
Take armes holow [2] for þe crabbe.
Scorpio bryngeþ [3] haile,
To stynge with croked tayle.

Augustinus, libro 18°, *capitulo* 6°. In þe manere of wonderful tornynge, chaungynge, and schappinge of men and wommen hit is to holdynge þat fendes and euel men mowe make no kynde, noþer chaunge þat is i-made. Neuerþeles Almyȝti God soffreþ liknesse of þinges dyuersliche forto seme,[4] so þat þe fantasie of a man þat gadreþ liknesse of dyuerse þinges in þouȝt, and in sweuenynge [5] whanne þe wittes beeþ i-lette and takeþ noon hede, makeþ to seme likenesse of bodies þat is nouȝt present, also of ymages and of dyuers liknesse and schappes of þinges þat neuere were i-made; and so men takynge semeþ þat þey seeþ liknesse and schappe of dyuers þinges and of bestes, as men semeþ slepynge and metynge wonderful sweuenes, and semeþ somtyme þat þey bereþ many ful heuy burþenes; [bote and þei ben berþennes] [6] fendes bereþ hem, and so God þat demeþ riȝtfulliche suffreþ mankynde be ofte so bigiled. R. Of þis matire loke [7] wiþ ynne more pleynliche after þe batayle of Troye.

---

rupte horses, cancres and scorpiones of mules. *Augustinus*, MS. HARL. 2261.
libro octavo, capitulo sexto. As vn to the monstruous transformaciones of men, hit is to be holden that the deuelles and ylle men may not create eny nature, neither chaunge that is create; neuerthelesse thei may thro the permission of God transfigurate similitudes, so that the thynge fantasticalle of a man that he [8] seethe diuerse similtudes, as in thenkenge other in dremenge, the wyttes corporealle oppressede; sithe hit is no tru body, ȝit hit dothe appere as to straunge wittes as a thynge corporealle in the similitude of somme beste, and hit apperethe to hym suche as he did see in dreames and to bere burdones. But and if the ordre of trawthe be considerate, the burdones be borne of deuelles. R. We schalle expresse more of this mater after the batelle of Troye.

---

[1] *cheaffers, a.*; *chauers*, Cx.
[2] *holw, a.*
[3] *springaþ*, γ. (not α or β.)
[4] *sene*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[5] *dreamyng or sweuenyng*, Cx. (who has various slight alterations.) Trevisa's translation is not very intelligible, and may be a little corrupt.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *lokeþ*, MS. (not α.)
[8] *that he*] These words should be cancelled apparently.

Cap. III.

De dissimilitudine inter hominem atque mundum.[1]

[2] Licet igitur homo[3] juxta prædicta conveniat cum mundo et ejus contentis, in nonnullis tamen conditionis[4] prærogativis a mundo discrepat. Nam licet corpus humanum ab initio fuerit[5] de limo formatum, suæ tamen animæ ita fuit proportionatum ut in eo esset complexionis æqualitas, organizationis conformitas, staturæ rectitudo, et figuræ pulchritudo. Et sic foret deinceps corpus animæ obtemperans[6] sine pugna rebellionis, propagans sine pronitate libidinis, vegetabile sine defectione vigoris, immutabile[7] sine corruptione mortalitatis. Quinetiam conceptus hominis[8] fieret sine pudore, partus sine dolore, victus sine sudore,[9] motus membrorum sine errore.[10] Ad hæc datus[11] sibi fuit paradisus ad habitaculum, mulier ad consortium,

Primævi hominis status.

---

[1] Title wanting in MSS.
[2] C.D. needlessly prefix *Ranulphus.*
[3] *homo* after *prædicta*, B.
[4] *suæ* added in A.B.C.D.
[5] *fuerat*, C. (not D.)
[6] *contemporans*, D.
[7] *immortalitatis*, A.; *immortale*, B.
[8] *humanus*, B.
[9] *labore*, C.D.
[10] *horrore*, C.D.
[11] So C. D., correctly; *data* A.E.; the longer form of the chronicle changing for the worse.

TREVISA.

Capitulum tertium.

THEY man, as it is i-seide, be liche [and] [1] acord to þe world, and to [2] þinges þat ben conteyned þerynne; neuerþeles in many poyntes of manis condicioun, of his prerogatif [3] and his worþynesse, he is dyuerse and vnliche to the world. For þey mannis body [4] we[re] [5] firste i-made of erþ, neuerþeles hit was [so] [6] couenabliche and so acordynge to þe soule, þat in mannis body was euenness of complexioun, acordynge of [7] lemes, riȝtfullnesse of stature, fairnesse of schappe. And so schulde þe body afterward be buxom to þe soule wiþ oute eny rebelnesse,[8] and brynge forþ children wiþ oute eny synne, and lyue wiþ oute eny defaute of strengþe, and be translated and chaunged in [9] þe blisse of heuene wiþ oute deienge and deeþ. Also he schulde gete and conceyue children wiþ oute schame, and a womman schulde bere children wiþ oute sorwe and woo, and haue mete and drynke wiþ oute sweet [10] and trauaille, sterynge and meuynge in lymes wiþ oute eny mysfare. And to al þis paradys was i-ȝeue to [11] mankynde forto wonye ynne,

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum tertium.

THEREFORE thauȝhe man haue convenience with the worlde, after thynges aforeseide, and with the contentes off hit, neuerthelesse he differrethe from the worlde in mony prerogatifes of his condicion. But thauȝhe the body of man was made in the begynnenge of the erthe, hit was so proporcionate to the sawle that equalite of complexion was in hit, conformite of organizacion, rectitude of stature, and pulcritude of figure, and so the body scholde be afterwarde obtemperate to the sawle with owte fiȝhte of rebellion, vegetable with owte defawte of strenghte, immutable with owte corrupcion of mortalite. And also the concepcion of men scholde be withowte schame, the byrthe with owte sorowe, lyvenge with owte laboure, the movenge of membres with owte erroure. Paradise was ȝifen

---

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[2] *in two*, Cx.
[3] *prerogatiue*, *a.*
[4] *body*] om. *a.*
[5] *were*, *a.*, Cx.
[6] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[7] *of*] *to*, Cx.
[8] *withouten ony rebellion*, Cx.
[9] *in to*, Cx.
[10] *swoot*, *a.*; *swete*, Cx.
[11] *to*] om. *a.*, Cx.

lignum vitæ ad edulium, universa creatura ad solatium, et tandem ipse Deus in præmium. Sed heu cito[1] cecidit tantus signifer, qui mane oriebatur. In honore quippe constitutus non intellexit; comparatus est jumentis inhærendo vetitis,[2] adeo ut ab illo die corpus corruptum per peccatum aggravet[3] animam, caro concupiscat adversus spiritum, et proni sint sensus hominis in malum, inimicique[4] hominis[5] domestici sensus ejus; quinetiam tentatio sit tota vita hominis super terram, sed et ipsa animæ accidentia ipsum corpus afficiant et transmutent, sicut e converso[6] corporis passiones redundant in animæ perturbationem. Insuper et inest homini assiduitas deficiendi, impossibilitas permanendi,[7] facilitas cadendi, difficultas resurgendi, vilitas nascendi, anxietas vivendi, necessitas moriendi. *Plinius, libro xvij°.*[8] *capitulo primo.*[9] Et

Conditio hominis post lapsum.

[1] *hodie*, B.

[2] *inhærendo vetetis*] om. D., which also omits *per peccatum* below.

[3] *aggravaret*, B.

[4] *quoque*, C.D.

[5] *hominis*] om. E.

[6] *e contrario*, B.C.

[7] *standi*, C.D.

[8] 17°, B.

[9] 13°, B. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 1.

TREVISA.

and womman forto be manis [felawe],[1] paradys to wonyng place, þe tree of lyf for mete, and al creatures for solace, at[2] þe laste God hem[3] self to be manis mede. But allas þat so noble a banyour fil so sone, þat was erliche i-brouȝt and i-putte into[4] worschippe: þey[5] knewe nouȝt þat þey[5] schulde be liche to bestes, whan he dede þat was forbode. From þat day forþward þe body þat is corupt by synne greueþ þe soule. Þe flesche coueyteþ aȝenst þe soule, and manis wittes torneþ and assenteþ liȝtliche to euel. A mannes owne meynal wittes beeþ his owne enemyes. So þat al a manis lyf is in temptacioun while he lyueþ here in erþe, and þe dispocisioun of þe soule ruleþ, meynteneth, helpeþ, and conforteþ þe body; but aȝenward þe wrecched disposicioun[6] of þe body distourbeþ þe soule. Also man[7] is euere faillynge [and] aweyward,[8] he may nouȝt stedfastliche abide; he falleþ liȝtliche, but he may nouȝt liȝtliche arise; profit of berþe is sorwe[9] and care in[10] lyuynge; and man moot nedes deie. *Plinius, libro* 17°, *capitulo* 13°.[11] And þey alle oþere þat beeþ i-made haue schilles,[12]

MS. HARL. 2261.

to man as a inhabitacion, where he scholde reioyce thynges afore seide, and a woman was ȝiffen to be his felowe, the tre of lyfe to refreschenge, euery creature to a solace, and at the laste God was ȝifen to hym in to rewarde. But allas so nowble a sterre hade soone a falle that spronge fulle tymely, whiche sette in honor hade not knowlege of hym selfe, whiche is comparable to brute bestes in drawenge to thynges prohibitte, in so moche that the corrupte body from that day laborethe to greve the sawle. For scripture dothe expresse that the flesche covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the wittes of a man be prompte to synne, and the propre wittes of a man be enmyes to hym, so that temptacion is alle the lyfe of man on the erthe. And also the accidentalle thynges of the sawle punnysche and transmute the body, soe in lyke wise the passiones of the body redunde in to the perturbacion of the sawle, wherefore assiduite of feyntenesse longethe to a man, impossibilite of permanence, lyȝhtenes to falle, difficulte to aryse,[13] disease to lyve, and necessite to dye. *Plinius, libro* 17°, *capitulo* 13°. And sythe other

---

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[2] *and atte*, Cx.
[3] *him*, *a.*
[4] *in*, *a.*
[5] *he*, Cx. (twice.)
[6] So *a.* and Cx.; *dispensacioun*, MS.
[7] So *a.* and Cx.; *men*, MS.
[8] *and aweyward*, *a.*; *and wayward*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *profit is* (*is of*, *a.*) *berþe sorwe*, MS. and *a.*
[10] *in hym*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[11] Reference transposed in MS.
[12] *shelles*, Cx.
[13] *a ryse*, MS., and similarly elsewhere.

cum cætera producta aut habeant testas, cortices,[1] coria, villos,[2] setas, pilos, plumas, pennas, aut squamas, homo ipse, tegumento carens, nudus effusus plorat in principio membris devinctus,[3] quadrupedi similis, animante[4] quovis debilius, nihil sciens, nihil aliud de se valens nisi sponte flere. Nulli[5] uspiam vita[6] fragilior, nulli morbus gravior, nulli libido major, nulli rabies acrior. Denique cætera animantia ad sese afficiuntur, in suo genere prope[7] degunt, non sæviunt nisi ad sui[8] dissimilia et[9] ad sibi contraria solummodo[10] et adversa. Homo tamen in seipso sibi[11] contrarius in sibi proximum grassatur, et cum propinqua defecerint[12] in seipsum sævit.[13] *Ranulphus.* Ad hoc duplex homini inflictum est infortunium, et hoc quidem juste, unum ab intra, ut qui in vita sua[14] projecit intima sua jam illa non habeat tranquilla, sed bella sibi pariant[15] intestina. Aliud quoque incommodum imminet ab extra, ut qui suo superiori Deo[16] obtemperare noluit, jam suum inferiorem sibi sentiat

---

1 *et cortices*, A.

2 *velles*, A.

3 *devinctus*] originally *destitutus*, but *devinctus* written above line in another ink in C. ; *destitutus*, D.

4 *animante*, B.

5 *Nulla*, A.E.

6 *vitam*, A.

7 Pliny has *probe*, which is much better.

8 *sui*] so A.B.; om. C.D. ; *sibi*, E.

9 *et*] om. E.

10 *solummodo*] om. C.D.

11 *sibi*] so A.B.C.D. ; *sibiipsi*, E.

12 *defuerint*, C.D.

13 *sævit*] om. B.

14 *vita sua*] vitia, B.

15 *parent*, B.

16 *scilicet Deo*, B.

ryndes, skynnes, wolle, heer, bristles, feþeres,[1] wynges, oþer scales, man is i-bore wiþ oute eny helynge,[2] naked and bare, and anoon at his berþe he gynneth forto wepe ; at þe bygynnynge liche to a beste, but his lymes failleþ hym, and may nouȝht helpe hym self. But he is feblere þan eny oþer beest ; he can non helpe, he may nouȝt doo of hym self, bot wepe wiþ alle his myȝt. No beest haþ lyf more brutel and vnsiker. Noon haþ siknesse more grevous, noon more likynge to doo oþer wise þan he schulde. Noon is more cruel. Also oþer bestes loueþ everiche oþer of þe same kynde, and woneþ to gidres, and beeþ not cruel but to bestes of oþer kynde þat beeþ contrarye to hem. But man torneþ þat manere doynge vp so down, and is contrarye to hym self and cruel to oþer men; and[3] he may not reche for to greue oþere, þan he bycomeþ angry and cruel to hym self. [R.][4] And ȝit to al þis man haþ tweie[5] myshappes, and þat riȝtfulliche : oon is of hym selue wiþ ynne hym ;[6] so þat he þat þrewe away pees and reste þat[7] werreþ with ynne hym in his lyuynge, he haþ neiþer[8] pees ne reste, but werre and stryf wiþ ynne. Anoþer myshap man haþ wiþ oute forþ, so þat he þat wolde not be sogette to God þat is aboue hym, now he feleþ his vnderlynges rebel to him. So þat þe TREVISA.

thynges brouȝhte furthe other haue schelles, barke, skynnes, hure, plumes other pennes, or scales ; a man entrethe in to this worlde bare and nakede, wontenge eny couerenge, wepenge in his begynnenge, more feble then eny other beste. For he can not do eny other thynge of him selfe but wepe. The lyfe of noon other thynge is more frayle, replete with moste infirmite, noo beste moore leccherous. For alle other bestes luffe to gedre in theire kynde, and lyve to gedre, not cruelle but to bestes of other kyndes and contrarious to theim ; but a man is contrarious oftetymes to his kynde and to hym selfe. R. Where fore ij. infortunys be ȝiffen to man by ryȝhteuousenes, oon is interialle in that he caste furthe his partes interialle in his lyve, he scholde not haue theim now in tranquillite, but that the partes interialle scholde be to hym a conflicte. That other infortuny is exterialle, that man scholde haue his inferior rebellante to hym, in that he was inobediente to God his maker, so that MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *veþeres, a.*

[2] *helynge or keueryng*, Cx.

[3] *and yf*, Cx.

[4] Added from Cx.

[5] So *a.* and Cx. ; *mystweie happes*, MS.

[6] *hym*] om. *a.*, Cx.

[7] *þat*] om. Cx.

[8] *noþer, a.*

rebellantem. Ita plane ut reliquæ creaturæ,[1] quæ sibi concessæ fuerant[2] ad solatium fragilitatis, ad sustentaculum recreationis, ad vehiculum imbecillitatis, ad obsequium subjectionis, ad spectaculum admirationis, jam magna ex parte hominis aspectum refugiant, tactum abhorreant, dominium non sufferant, convictum reformident.[3]

Cap. IV.

De creatione Adam.[4]

Comparatio status innocentiæ et status miseriæ.

Formatus itaque[5] Adam homo primus de limo terræ extra paradisum in agro Damasceno sexto die sæculi, et in paradisum translatus, peccatoque eodem die commisso dejectus est post meridiem. Sicque cecidit de statu innocentiæ ad statum miseriæ, vir quidem[6] in primordiis suis dulces in domo Dei capere potens[7] cibos, sed vetita volens et prohibita probans cecidit ab alto ad imum, de luce ad limum,[8] de incolat uad exilium, de domo ad devium, de fructu ad fletum,[9] de laude ad luctum, de joco ad jurgium, ab[10] amore ad odium, de prosperitate ad pœnalitatem,[11] de sospitate ad infirmitatem, de penu ad penuriam, de gratia ad culpam, de pace [ad rixas, de gaudio][12] ad pœnam, de familia-

---

[1] *reliqua creatura*, D.E.

[2] *fuerat concessa*, D.E. (but the verbs below in the plural).

[3] *convictum reformident*] om. D.

[4] Title in E. only.

[5] *igitur*, C.D.

[6] *qui*, B., om. D.

[7] *potens capere*, B.

[8] *tenebras*, D.

[9] *de risu ad rictum*, added in C.D.

[10] *de*, C.D.

[11] *dulcore ad absinthium*, added in C.D. The latter MS. has several clerical errors and omissions.

[12] Added from B.

creatures þat were i-ȝeue man to solas of brutelnesse, to susteynynge of confort, to bere vp febilnesse, to seruise and subiectioun, to merour [1] and schewyge of wondres, now for þe moste deel he [2] fleeþ mannys siȝt, and his felawschippe, and his companye, and hateþ his handelynge, and wil nouȝt of his lordschippe, and dredeþ sore to lyue and dwolle [3] wiþ hym. TREVISA.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM was i-made of erþe in the filde of Damask þe sixte day of þe world, and i-brouȝt in Paradys, and synned þe same day, and was i-putte out after mydday. And he fel out of þe state of innocence and of [4] welþe in to þe state [5] of wrecchednesse and of woo. Man in his [6] bygynnynge myȝte take wel swete mete in Goddis owne hous, but he desired þat he schulde nouȝt, and he assaied þat was forbode, and fel out of hiȝe in to lowh, out of liȝt in to derknesse and slym, out of his owne londe and contray in to outlawynge, out of hous in to maskynge and wayles [7] contray and lond, out of fruit into wepynge and woo, out of preisynge in to deel and sorwe, out of merþe in to stryf, oute of loue in to hate, out of ioye and welþe in to peyne and tene, out of helþe and grace in to gilt and synne, [8] out of pees in to peyne,

---

bestes and other creatures, whiche were create to the solace of man, to the sustentacle of recreacion, to the obsequy of subieccion, to the spectacle of admiracion, flee in grete parte the siȝhte of man, abhorrenge his towchenge, takenge not hym as theire lorde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the creation of Adam, the firste man.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM the firste man, yformede of the slycche of the erthe, in the felde Damascene with owte Paradise, in the vj^the day of the worlde, and translate in to Paradise, was deiecte for synne, doen that same day, from Paradise after none. And so Adam felle from the state of innocency to the state of miserye, from the hie place to a lawe place, from liȝhte to darkenese, from inhabitacion to exile, from frute to weipenge, from ioy to peyne, from luffe to hate, from swetenesse vn to bytternesse, from prosperite to penaunce, from healethe to infirmite, from grace to blame, from familiarite to offense.

---

[1] *myrour*, Cx.

[2] *þei*, β.; *a*, γ.; *they*, Cx., rightly; but see p. 237 note.

[3] So α.; *dwelle*, Cx.; *dye*, MS.

[4] *of þe*] MS. (not α.)

[5] *staat*, α.

[6] So α. and Cx.; *womman in his*, MS.

[7] So α., β., γ.; *into waylyngs and trouble*, Cx.; *valeyes*, MS.

[8] So α. and Cx.; *sitte*, MS.

Cain et Abel.

ritate ad offensam.[1] *Methodius.* Hic[2] Adam quintodecimo vitæ suæ anno genuit Cayn[3] et Calmanam sororem ejus.[4] Iterum[5] post hoc[6] quintodecimo anno,[7] quod[8] est trecesimo vitæ suæ anno, genuit Adam[9] Abel et Delboram sororem ejus, sed interfecto Abel[10] luxerunt eum parentes ejus centum annis. *Ranulphus.*

De numero annorum Adam.

Adam secundum Hebræos centesimo trecesimo ætatis suæ anno genuit Seth, et postmodum[11] vixit octingentis annis;[12] sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus, Etymologiarum[13] libro quinto, dicunt Adam fuisse ducentorum triginta annorum ante nativitatem Seth, et postmodum[14] vixisse septingentis annis; et sic Adam in toto vixit nongentis triginta annis; et mortuus sepultus est in Hebron,[15] quod est Cariatharbe, quod sonat,[16] *Urbs quatuor*, id est quatuor patriarcharum qui ibi sepulti sunt, scilicet Adam, Abraham, Isaak, Jacob.[17]

De generationibus ab Adam usque ad Noe.

Seth.

Seth centum quinque annorum[18] genuit Enos, et post vixit octingentis[19] annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes[20] dixerunt[21] Seth[22] ducentorum quinque annorum[23] genuisse Enos, et post[24] vixisse dcc. vij. annis.[25]

Enos.

Enos nonaginta annorum genuit Caynan, et post vixit octingentis[26] quindecim annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes dicunt Enos centum nonaginta annorum genuisse Caynan, et post vixisse septingentis[27] quin-

[1] C.D. add *de prospero ad pœnale, de vivido ad mortale.* B. adds, after *offensam, de dilectione ad inobedientiam.*

[2] *Hic itaque*, C.D.

[3] *Caym*, B.

[4] *suam*, D., and so below.

[5] *Item*, A.B.

[6] *hæc*, D.

[7] *xv. annis*, B.

[8] *id*, C. (not D.)

[9] *Adam*] om. C.

[10] *sed . . . Abel*] eo (Abel, D.) vero interfecto, C.D.

[11] *postea*, D.

[12] *Petrus* is here inserted in C.D.

[13] *Etymologiarum*] om. C.D.

[14] *post*, D.

[15] *Ebron*, A.D.

[16] *quod sonat . . . Jacob*] om. D.

[17] *et Jacob*, B.

[18] *secundum Hebræos*, added in C.D., and so below.

[19] *septingentis*, B.

[20] *et Isidorus*, added in C.D.

[21] *dicunt*, B.

[22] *Seth*] om. A.

[23] *ducentorum annorum et quinque*, B.

[24] *postmodum*, B.

[25] D. adds: *itaque in toto vixit* 912 *annis.*

[26] *septingentis*, B.

[27] *ducentis*, A.

out of homlynesse into offence and wreþþe. *Methodius.* Þis Adam þe fiftenþe ȝere of his lyf gat[1] Cayn, þat is comounliche i-cleped Caym, and his suster Calmana. Þanne fiftene ȝere afterward, whan Adam was þritty ȝere olde, he gat Abel and his suster Delbora. But Abel was i-slawe, and his fader and moder made [deel and][2] sorwe i-now[3] an hundred wynter. ℞. As Hebrewes seieþ, Adam gat Seth þe ȝere of his age an hundred and þritty, and lyued after eiȝte hondred ȝere, and so Adam lyued in al nyne hondred ȝere and þrittey. *Trevisa.* Þere were þre score and ten þat torned Holy Writte out of Hebrew in to Grewe, and þey beeþ i-cleped þe þre score and ten. ℞. Adam deide and was i-buried in Ebron, þat is i-cleped also Cariatharbe, þat is to menynge[4] þe cite of foure, þat beþ patriarkes þat beeþ i-buried þere, þat beþ Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth gat Enes whan he was an hondred ȝere olde and fyue, and lyuede afterwarde eiȝte hondred ȝere; but [þe] þre[5] skore and ten seith þat Seeþ was two hondred ȝere and fyue whan he gat Enos, and lyued afterward seuen hondred ȝere and seuene. Enos, foure score ȝere olde and ten, gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward eiȝte hondred TREVISA.

Methodius. Adam gate Cayn and Calmana his suster in the xv^the^ yere of his age; also in the xv^the^ yere after that, whiche is the xxx^ti^ yere of his age, he gate Abel and Delbora his sustyr, but Abel sleyne, Adam and Eve wailede his dethe by an c. yere folowenge. ℞. And, after men of Hebrewe, Adam gate Seth in the c. and xxx^ti^ yere of his age, and lyffede after viij^c.^ yere. But, after the lxx^ti^ interpretatores and after Isidorus, *Ethi. libro quinto,* Adam was of ij^c.^ and xxx^ti^ yere in age afore the natiuite of Seth, seyenge Adam to haue lyvede after vij^c.^ yere. And soe hade Adam in age ix^c.^ yere and xxx^ti^, whiche dyenge was buriede in Ebron, that is callede Cariatharbe, whiche sowndethe a iiij. cite, that is to say, of iiij. patriarkes whiche were beriede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth, beenge of a c. and v. yere in age, gate Enos, and lyvede after viij^c.^ yere: but after the lxx^ti^ interpretatores, Seth, beenge of cc. and v. yere, gate Enos, lyvenge after vij^c.^ and also vij. yere. Enos of xc. yere gate Cainan, lyvenge after dccc. and xv. yere. But after the lxx^ti^ inter- MS. HARL. 2261. f. 83 a.

---

[1] *bigate,* Cx.; and so below *sometimes.*

[2] Added from *a.* and Cx., who has *dole.*

[3] *i-now*] om. *a.* and Cx.; which have *for him,* probably rightly.

[4] *meane,* Cx.

[5] *the þre, a.* and Cx.; the latter has some omissions below.

decim annis.[1] *Ranulphus.*[2] Iste Enos dicitur specialiter[3] invocasse nomen Domini primo;[4] quia forte primus invenit verba deprecatoria, vel secundum Hebræos[5] quia[6] fecit imagines ad honorem Dei, vel[7] ad excitandum pigritiam humanæ memoriæ in Deum.[8]

Cainan. Caynan septuaginta annorum genuit Malaleel, et post vixit octingentis quadraginta annis; sed[9] Septuaginta interpretes[10] præponunt centum annos ad septuaginta, et postmodum subtrahunt centum.[11]

Mahalaleel. Malalael[12] sexaginta quinque[13] annorum genuit Jareth,[14] et postmodum[15] vixit octingentis triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes[16] præponunt centum annos ante[17] sexaginta quinque, et[18] post subtrahunt centum.[19]

Jared. Jareth[20] centum sexaginta duorum[21] annorum genuit Enoch, et vixit postmodum[22] octingentis annis. In hoc concordant Septuaginta interpretes cum aliis.[23]

Enoch. Enoch sexaginta quinque[24] annorum genuit Mathussale,[25] et postmodum vixit trecentis annis sexaginta quinque, ambulavitque cum Deo, et translatus est; sed Septuaginta interpretes præponunt centum ad sexaginta quinque. Iste[26] Enoch adinvenit[27] aliquas literas, et aliquos libros scripsit, sicut innuit Judas Apostolus in canonica sua; sub cujus tempore[28] Adam creditur

---

[1] *dicunt . . . . annis*] om. B.; sed lxx. et Isidorus ante Caynan ponunt 190 annos et [dicunt] post 715 vixisse; ita quod dies ejus sunt 908 anni, C.D.
[2] *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.C.
[3] *specialiter fertur*, B.
[4] *primo*] om. B.
[5] *secundum Hebræos*] prout dicunt Hebræi, A.B.C.
[6] *primus*, A.B.
[7] *et*, A.B.
[8] Sentence added in margin of C., slightly abbreviated; absent from D.
[9] *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus nongenti decem anni, B.
[10] *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D.
[11] *et decem annos*] ins. C.D.
[12] *Malaleel*, E.
[13] 45, B.
[14] *Jared*, B.
[15] *post*, C.D., and so frequently.
[16] *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D., which add the reference to Isidore throughout. After this it is not noted.
[17] *ad*, C.D.
[18] *et . . . centum*] ita quod vixit in toto 895 annis, C.D.
[19] *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus 895 anni, B.
[20] *secundum Hebræos*, added in C. D.
[21] *cxlij*, B.
[22] *post*, C.D.
[23] *interpretes . . . aliis*] et Ysidorus, C.D.
[24] *xlv.*, B.
[25] *Matussale*, A.
[26] *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.
[27] *invenit*, A.
[28] *diebus*, A.B.

ȝere and fiftene ; but þe þre score and ten seiþ þat Enos was nyne score ȝere and ten and gat Caynan, and lyued afterwarde seuen hondred ȝere and fiftene. Me seith specialliche þat Enos cleped fyrst Goddis name, for vppon caas he fonde first wordes of prayenge. Oþere, as Hebrewes telleþ, he fond first ymages to worschippe of God : forto wake þe slouþe of manis mynde into God Almyȝty. Caynan, þre score ȝere olde and ten, gat Malaleel, and lyuede afterwarde eyȝte hondred ȝere and fourty ; but þe þre skore and ten putteþ an hondred ȝere to fore þe[1] seuenty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred afterward. Malaleel, fyue and sixty ȝere olde, gat Iareth, and lyuede afterwarde eiȝte hondred ȝere and þritty. But þe seuenty setteþ an hondred to fore fyue and sixty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred aftirward. Iareth, an hondred ȝere olde and two and sixty, gat Enoch,[2] and lyuede afterwarde eiȝte hondred ȝere foure score and ten.[3] [In][4] þis seventy acordeþ wiþ othere. Enoch, fyve and sixty ȝere olde, gat Matusale, and lyued afterward þre hondred ȝere, and helde God Almyȝty his way, and was translated and i-brouȝt in paradys, but þe seuenty setteth a hondred ȝere tofore fyue and sixty. Þis Enoch was fyndere of lettres, and wroot som bookes, so seiþ Seynt Iudas the postle in[5] his pistle.[6] Me trowede[7] þat Adam deyde in TREVISA.

pretatores, Enos of c. and xc. yere to haue geten Cainan, and to haue lyffede afterwarde vij^c. and xv. This Enos is seyde to haue callede to helpe specially and firste the name of Godde ; for, as men of Ebrewe say, he made firste ymages to þe honor of God, to excite the slawthe of the memory of man in to the lawde of God. Cainan beenge of lxx^ti yere gate Malaleel, and lyvede after viij^c. and xl^ti yere ; but the lxx^ti interpretatores adde an c. yere afore lxx^ti, and after thei withdrawe an c. yere. Malaleel of lx. and v. yere gate Iareth, and lyvede after viij^c. and xxx^ti yere ; but the lxx^ti interpretatores putte an c. yere afore lx. and v. yere, and take after that an c. yere away. Iareth of an clxij. yere gate Enoch, and lyvede after viij^c. yere ; and the lxx^ti interpretatores acorde with other in that. Enoch of lx. and v. yere gate Matussale, and lyvede after iij^c. yere, and walkede with God, and was translate ; but the lxx^ti interpretatores putte an c. yere to lxv. This Enoch founde somme letters firste and did write bookes, as Iudas thapostle rehersethe in Canonica sua ; in the daies of whom mony men suppose Adam to haue diede. And lyke as the vij^the in MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So α. and Cx. ; *and*, MS.

[2] *Enoch̄*, MS., but *Enoch* below. The bar seems here and elsewhere to be only redundant.

[3] *foure score and ten*] om. Cx.

[4] Added from α. and Cx.

[5] *apostle*, α.

[6] *pistel*, α. ; *epistle*, Cx.

[7] *troweth*, Cx.

mortuus fuisse.[1] Et[2] sicut in generatione Cayn septimus ab Adam, scilicet Lamech, pessimus fuit, sic in generatione Seth septimus ab Adam, scilicet Enoch, optimus fuit.[3]

Methuselah.

Mathussale[4] centum octoginta[5] annorum genuit Lamech, et post[6] vixit septingentis duobus[7] annis, hoc est usque ad diluvium[8] secundum veriorem[9] traditionem, et[10] non ultra per quatuordecim annos sicut quidam posuerunt. Sed anno vitæ suæ nongentesimo sexagesimo[11] nono, quo cœpit diluvium, mortuus est.

Lamech.

Lamech[12] centum octoginta duorum annorum[13] genuit Noe, et postmodum[14] vixit quingentis nonaginta[15] annis.

Cap. V.

De posteritate Lamech.[16]

Cayn[17] primogenitus Adæ genuit Enoch, qui genuit Irad, qui genuit Mauaiel,[18] qui Mathussael, qui Lamech.

---

[1] *obisse*, A.B.

[2] *Ut*, A.

[3] *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.

[4] *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

[5] *septem*, ins. A.

[6] *postmodum*, B.

[7] 782, C.D.

[8] *sed non ultra*, ins. B.

[9] *variorem*, B.

[10] *sed*, B.

[11] *xlix.*, B.

[12] *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

[13] *annorum*] om. E.

[14] *post*, A.

[15] *quinque*, ins. B.C.D.

[16] Title wanting in MS.

[17] *Cain*, A. The following passage occurs before this in C. (It commences with a large capital N, but the words Cap. 5. are placed opposite *Cayn primogenitus*, &c., in the margin of C.) :—" Noe vero quingentorum annorum genuit Sem, Cham, " et Japheth ; et spatio centum annorum conficiens arcam, sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est " eam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quæ " præcepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium " per annum pæne terram occupans. " Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit " montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, " quia per tantam altitudinem creduntur opera hominum fœdasse " aera per ignis adorationem, qui " tam alte extulit fumum et favillas. " In quo anno terminatur prima " ætas ab Adam usque ad diluvium " sub generationibus decem, habens " annos secundum Josephum, libro " primo, capitulo quarto, et secundum Hebræos, 2656, sed secundum " Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum libro quinto, 2242, secundum " Hieronymum non plene 2000, secundum Methodium 2000. Ipse " tamen Methodius omittit annos " aliquos, si superfuerint ; quia per " chiliades sæcula disponit." This passage is given also in D., but more shortly ; and it occurs with some variations in the text of the longer MSS. below.

[18] *Malaleel*, D. badly ; see Gen. iv. 18.

þis Enoch his tyme; and as [in] [1] Cayn his children Lamech þe seuenþe from Adam was worst; so in Seþ his children Enoch þe seuenþe from Adam was best. Metusale, an hondred ȝere olde foure skore and seuene, gat Lamech, and lyued afterward seuen hondred ȝere and tweyne, þat was anoon to Noes flood. Lamech, an hondred ȝere olde foure skore and tweyne, gaat Noe, and lyued aftirward fyue hondred ȝere foure score and ten. TREVISA.

Capitulum quintum.

CAYM, Adams firste sone, gat Enoch, he gat Irad, he gat Mauaiel, [2] he gat Matusale, he gat Lamech. Þis Lamech

---

the generacion of Cayn, whiche was Lamech, was moste wyckede in his generacion, soe in lyke wise Enoch, the viithe from Adam, was moste goode. Matussale of c.lxxx. and vij. yere gate Lamech, lyvenge after vijc. and ij. yere, that is to the grete floode of Noe, and noo longer, after the trewe tradicion; by xiiij. yeres, as somme men putte: but he diede in the ixc. yere lx. and ix., in whiche yere the grete floode began. Lamech of a c.lxxxij. yere gate Noe, and lyvede afterwarde d.xc. and v. yere. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quintum.

CAYN the firste son of Adam gate Enoc, whiche gate Iradus, whiche gate Mauaiel; and he gate Matussale, whiche

---

[1] Added from β. γ.

[2] So α.; *Manuel*, MS.

De uxoribus et filiis Lamech. Artes inventæ.

Hic Lamech acceptis duabus uxoribus Ada et Sella, genuit ex Ada duos filios, Jabel qui fuit pater habitantium in tentoriis, et Tubal[1] qui fuit pater canentium in cithara[2] et organo. Ex altera uxore, Sella, genuit Tubalcayn,[3] qui fuit faber et malleator, et sororem ejus[4] Noema, quæ invenit artem texturæ. *Josephus.* Cayn violenter opes congregans ad luxuriam et latrocinia homines[5] invitavit, simplicem hominum vitam transtulit ad ponderum et mensurarum adinventionem, terminos et limites terræ primus[6] instituit, civitatem fecit et muravit, timens quos lædebat.

Primi homines inermes.

Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo secundo. Homines primum tanquam nudi et[7] inermes, nec contra bestias aut[8] homines tuti, nec receptacula frigoris aut æstus habentes, naturali solertia oppida excogitaverunt; unde et[9] tuguria et casas ex[10] virgultis et arundinibus contexuerunt,[11] ut vita eorum foret[12] tutior. *Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Lamech septimus ab Adam et pessimus primus induxit bigamiam, et sic adulterium contra legem Dei et[13] naturæ ac contra Dei decretum.

Bigamia inducta.

Iabal.

Josephus.[14] Jabel primus greges ordinavit a[15] characteribus, distinxit hædos ab agnis,[16] seniores a[17] junioribus divisit.[18] *Petrus, capitulo xxvij°.*[19] Tubalcayn invenit

Tubalcain et Iubal.

[1] *Iubal*, D.
[2] *cythara*, C.; *cithera*, A.B.
[3] *Tubalcain*, A.
[4] *suam*, B.
[5] *homines*] om. B.
[6] *primo*, A.
[7] *et*] om. C.
[8] *nec*, B.
[9] *et*] om. C.D.
[10] *ex*] om. C.D.
[11] *contexerunt*, A.
[12] *vita esset*, C.D.
[13] *ac*, B.
[14] *Petrus . . . Josephus*] om. D.
[15] *et*, B.C.D.
[16] *ovibus*, C.
[17] *et*, A.
[18] C.D. introduce the following passage:—"*Petrus.* Tubal (Iubal, "D.) fuit inventor consonantiarum, "non instrumentorum; quia longe "post inventa fuerunt; sed inventor "fuit musicæ, id est, consonantia-"rum; ut labor pastoralis verte-"retur in delicias. Et quia audierat "Adam prophetasse de duobus ju-"diciis, ipse scripsit hanc artem "in duabus columnis, in utraque "totam; in marmorea contra "diluvium, in lateritia contra "incendium, ne periret ars in-"venta." See p. 232.
[19] 20, C.D. The true reference is, to c. 28., both here and just above and also below, p. 228.

TREVISA.

took tweie wifes, Ada and Sella, and gat tweie sones, on Ada Iabel, þat was fader of hem þat wonede in tentes and in pauylouns. And Tubal þat was fadre of organistres and of harpores. And Lamech gat on Sella Tubalcan, þat was a smyth worchynge wiþ hamer; and his suster Noema, sche was first fyndere of[1] weuynge craft. *Iosephus.* Caym gadered richesse violentliche by strengþe, and made men be lecchoures and þeues, and tornede symple lyuynge [of][2] men to fyndynge of mesures and of wyȝtes; he ordeyned merkes [and][2] boundes of fildes and of londes, and bulde a citee and walled hit, for he dredde[3] ful sore hem þat he hadde i-greued. *Isidorus, libro* 15°, *capitulo* 2°. Men were first naked and vnarmed, nouȝt siker aȝenst bestes, noþer aȝenst men, and hadde no place to fonge hem, and to kepe hem fro[4] colde and for hete; þan by besynesse of kynde witte þey beþouȝt hem of buldynge, þerfore þey bulde hem smale cootes and cabans, and waf ham and heled hem wiþ smale[5] twigges and wiþ reed, þat hire lyf myȝte be þe more saaf. *Petrus, capitulo* 27°. Lamech, þe seuenþe from Adam and most schrewe, was þe firste þat brouȝte yn bygamye, and so spousebreche aȝenst þe lawe of God and of kynde, and aȝenst Goddis owne dome.[6] *Iosephus.* Iabel ordeynede first flokkes of bestes, and merkis to knowe oon from anoþer, and departide kydes from

MS. HARL. 2261.

gate Lamech. This Lamech, takenge to hym ij. wifes, Ada and Sella, gate of Ada Iabel and Tubal, and of his other wife, Sella, Tubalcaym, whiche was a smythe, and Noema, his suster, whiche founde firste the arte of weyvenge. *Iosephus.* Cayn gedrenge violentely richesse, desirede men to thefte and robbery, chaungenge the simple lyfe of men, founde measures firste, and made a cite, dredenge men, whom he hurte. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* The firste men, as bare and with owte armore, not sure ageyne men either bestes, hauenge as noo places for coldenesse other hete, made places to theyme by naturalle reason of roddes and reedes, that theire life myȝhte be in more suerte. *Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Lamech, the vij^{the} from Adam, and the moste wickede man, inducede firste bigamy, and so adultery, ageyne the lawe of God and of nature, and ageyne the ordinaunce of God. *Iosephus.* Iabel ordeynede firste flockes, diuidenge kyddes from lambes with

[1] *was first fyndere of*] fonde first, Cx.
[2] Added from *α*.
[3] *drad*, Cx.
[4] *for*, *α*.
[5] *cabans amd keuerd hem with smale*, Cx.
[6] *doom*, *α*.

artem ferrariam et sculpturam; quo fabricante Tubal sono malleorum delectatus proportiones et consonantias ex eorum ponderibus invenit,[1] id[2] est, exercitator fuit consonantiarum, non autem inventor instrumentorum musicalium, quia illa[3] longe postmodum sunt inventa.

Musices origo.

Ranulphus. Hic dicunt docti, quod licet Tubal ad alleviandum tædium pastorale musicam primus exercuerit, non ideo rationem consonantiarum per pondera primus invenit; sed magis Pythagoras. De quo vide[4] infra, libro tertio, de[5] Pythagora, capitulo undecimo.[6]

Pœna Lamech.

Petrus, capitulo xxvij°.[2] Lamech sagittarius, sed cæcutiens habuit adolescentem ductorem, cum exerceret venationem pro delectatione et usu pellium; quia non erat usus carnium ante diluvium.[7] Casu interfecit Cayn latentem inter frutecta, æstimans ipsum esse feram. Et quia ductor suus eum non præmunierat, eum similiter interfecit. Et ideo cum[8] peccatum Cayn sit punitum

[1] *adinvenit*, C.D.

[2] *id... xxvij°*] abbreviated in C.D. to—"Quod tamen Græci Pythagoræ "(Pittagoræ, MSS.) fabulose as-"cribunt; sic etiam excogitavit "operari in metallis ex figuris, quas "metalla liquefacta referebant."

[3] *illa* after *postmodum*, B.

[4] *videtur*, B.; om. A.

[5] *de.. .undecimo*] capitulo de Pittagora, B.

[6] *capitulo undecimo*] om. A.

[7] *quia . . . diluvium*] om. C.D.

[8] *tamen*, B.

TREVISA.

lambren,[1] and ȝonge from olde. *Petrus.* Tubalcain fonde first smythes craft[2] and grauynge, and whan Tubalcain wrouȝte[3] in his smeþes[4] craft, Tubal hadde grete likynge to hire þe hameres sowne,[5] and he fonde proporciouns and acorde of melodye by wyȝte in[6] þe hameres, and so þey vsed hym moche in þe acorde of melodye, but he was nouȝt fyndere of þe instrumentis of musik, ffor þey were i-founde longe afterward. ℞. Here wise men telleþ þat þey Tubal vsede first musyk for to releue hym self[7] while he was an herde, and kepte bestes, ffor all þat he was nouȝt þe firste þat fonde þe resoun of acorde in musyk by wiȝtes, but Pittagoras fonde þat; þerof loke wiþ ynne, in þe þridde book, of Pittagoras. *Petrus,* 27°. Lamech, an archer but somdel blynde, hadde a ȝongelynge þat ladde hym while he honted for pley and likynge, oþer for loue[8] of bestes skynnes, ffor men ete no flesche to fore Noes flood. And hit happe[9] þat he slow Caym, þat loted[10] among þe busshes, and wende þat it were a wylde beste; and for his ledere warned hym noȝt, he slow hym also. And þerfore siþþe þat Caym his synne was i-punsched seuen-

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

carectes, and the elder from the yonger. *Petrus, capitulo* 27°. Tubalcaym founde firste the arte of smythes and gravenge, whiche laborenge at the foerge, Tubal hauenge delectacion in the sownde of the malles founde proporciones and consonance of the weiȝhtes of theyme; that is to say, Tubal was an exciter of consonances but not the fynder of instrumentes musicalle, for thei were founde by a longe season after that tyme. ℞. But discrete men say, thauȝhe Tubal exercisede firste musike to alleuiate the tediosenes pastoralle, neuerthelesse he was not the firste fynder of the reason of consonance by weiȝhtes, but rather Pitagoras, of whom hit schalle be schewede in the thrydde booke. *Petrus,* 27° *capitulo.* Lameche the schoter hade a yonge man to his gouernoure and leder, whiche vsenge to hunte for delectacion and vse of skynnes, for men vsede not flesche afore the grete floode, did slee Cayn lyenge priuely in couerte, trawenge hit to haue bene a dere, whiche did slee also his leder, in that he ȝafe not to hym a monicion þer of. Therefore, sythe the synne of Cayn was punyschede vij. folde, that is to say, in

---

[1] *lambryn*, α.; *lambes*, Cx.
[2] *smythcraft*, α.
[3] So α. β. γ.; *Tubal gan worke*, MS.; Cx. has omissions here.
[4] *smyth*, α.
[5] *soun*, α.
[6] *in*] of, Cx.
[7] *for his plesir*, Cx.
[8] *one*, Cx.
[9] *happede*, α.
[10] *loyterd*, Cx.

septuplum, id est in[1] septima generatione,[2] peccatum Lamech est punitum septuagesies[3] septies, quia[4] septuaginta et septem animæ egressæ sunt[5] de Lamech, quæ[6] in diluvio perierunt; vel quia tot erant generationes inter Lamech et[7] Christum, qui pœnam pro omnibus solvit.

De longævitate patriarcharum, et de gigantibus.

Josephus. Nullus putet falsum quod de tanta antiquorum longævitate legitur, cum ipsi essent religiosi, et pabula haberent opportuniora, et etiam propter gloriosas virtutes quas[8] jugiter scrutabantur, scilicet astrologiam et geometriam, quæ nunquam addiscere[9] possent,[10] nisi ad minus sexcentis viverent annis; quo in spatio magnus annus astrorum impletur.[11] *Josephus.*[12] Usque ad septimam generationem filii Seth fuerunt boni; sed postmodum[13] viri[14] abusi sunt viris, et mulieres mulieribus. *Genesis.* Ingressique filii Dei ad filias hominum, id est, filii Seth ad filias Cayn, genuerunt gigantes. *Petrus, vicesimo nono.*[15] Et potuit esse, ut[16] incubi dæmones generarent gigantes, in quibus magnitudini corporum correspondebat immanitas

---

[1] *in*] So B.; om. E.
[2] *in septimam generationem*, C. (not D.)
[3] *septuagies*, E.
[4] *id est*, B.
[5] *sunt*] om. C.D.
[6] *quæ*] om. C.D.
[7] *inter . . . et*] usque ad, C.D.
[8] *quas ipsi*, B.
[9] *addicere*, E.
[10] *possunt*, A.
[11] Slightly varied in C.D.
[12] Reference added from A.B.C.
[13] *postmodum*] post 700 anno, C.D.
[14] *viri* after *sunt*, B.
[15] *xxix*] om. C.D.
[16] *quod*, C.D.; om. B.

TREVISA.

fold, þat is in þe seuenþe generacioun; for Lamech[1] was þe seuenþe from Adam in þat lyne; Lamech his synne was i-punsched seuene and seuenty folde; ffor seuen and seuenty children þat come of hym were dede in Noes floode. Oþere for so many generaciouns were bytwene Lamech and Crist, þat payed a payne for vs alle.[2] *Iosephus.* No man schal trowe þat it is false, þat is i-rad of so longe lyuynge of men þat were somtyme, for þey lyuede faire lyf, and hadde couenable and clene mete and drynke, and also for blisful vertues þat þey vsede, and made hem besy aboute astrologie and gemetrie, þat þey myȝte neuere lerne but ȝif þey lyuede sixe hondred ȝere at þe leste; for in so longe tyme is þe grete ȝere of [þe][3] sterres fulfilled. *Petrus.* Seth his children were good men anon to þe seuenþe generacioun; bot afterward men mys vsede men, and women [mysusede women].[4] *Genesis.* Godes sones took men douȝtres, þat is to menynge, Seth his sones took Caym his douȝtres, and gete geantis. *Petrus* 29. And hit myȝhte be þat Incubus,[5] suche fendes as lieþ[6] by wommen in liknesse of men, made geantes be i-gete, in þe whiche geantes gretnesse of herte answereþ and acordeþ to þe hugenesse of body. But after Noes flood

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

the vij^{the} generacion; the synne of Lamech was punyschede lxx^{ti} tymes vij. tymes, for lxxvij. sawles commenge furthe from Lamech were pereschede in the grete floode. Other elles so mony generaciones were betwene Lamech and Criste, which redemede mankynde. *Iosephus.* I move that a man thenke not this to be fals that is redde of the longe lyfe of men in that tyme, sythe thei were religious men, and oportune exhibicion was ȝiffen to theyme, hauenge glorious vertues, as astrology and geometry, whom thei serchede besily, whiche thynges they myȝhte not haue lernede withowte thei hade lyvede vj$^{c.}$ yere, for the grete nowmbre of sterres is fullefillede in that space. *Petrus.* The childer of Seth were goode vn to the vij^{the} generacion; but after that men abusede men, and women abusede women. *Genesis.* The childer of God goenge to the doȝhters of men, that is to say the sonnes of Seth to the doȝhters of Cayn, gate gigantes. *Petrus.* And hit myȝhte be that spirittes gate gigantes, in whom hugenesse of sawle was corespondente to the hugenesse of theire body. But other gigantes were

---

[1] *Adam Lameth*, *a.*
[2] *payed rawnsome*, Cx., who omits *for vs alle.*
[3] Added from *a.*
[4] So Cx. and *a.*
[5] *Incuby*, *a. γ.*; *Incubi*, *β.*, Cx., a preferable reading; but possibly *Incubus* may be meant for an (English) plural.
[6] *liggeþ*, *a.*

animorum. Sed et post diluvium nati sunt alii gigantes in Hebron, et postmodum[1] fuerunt alii in Than civitate Ægypti, qui dicti sunt Tithanes,[2] de quorum stirpe fuit Enachim,[3] cujus filii habitaverunt in Hebron,[4] de quibus ortus est Golias.[5]

De duabus columnis contra diluvium et ignem.

Josephus. Illis temporibus scientes homines, sicut per Adam prædictum fuerat, quod aut aquis aut igne forent perituri,[6] studia sua et artes quas excogitaverant[7] scripserunt in duabus columnis, lapidea et lateritia,[8] ne tolleretur[9] a memoria quod[10] sapienter excogitaverant;[11] in marmore[12] quidem contra diluvium aquæ, in lateritia contra[13] incendium. E quibus ferunt columnam[14] lapideam diluvium evasisse, et adhuc in Syria permansisse.[14]

De diluvio Noe, et de arcæ constructione.

Genesis. Igitur Noe cum quingentorum esset annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japhet, hoc est dicere, cum tantæ esset ætatis[15] habuit hos tres filios generatos, et post hoc spatio centum annorum confecit[16] arcam de lignis lævigatis, id est, politis, scilicet[17] intus et extra bituminatam, trecentorum cubitorum in longitudine, quinquaginta cubitorum in latitudine, triginta cubitorum in altitudine, id est, a fundo[18] ad tabulatum sub tignis, in qua fecit fenestram, et ostium

---

1 *postea*, B.C.D.
2 *Titanes*, A.D.; *Titantes*, B.
3 *Eneachym*, B.
4 *Ebron*, A.
5 *Goliath*, B.
6 *forent perituri*] fuerant perituri, B.; deberent perire, C.D.
7 *excogitaverunt*, B.
8 *lateritia et marmorea*, B.
9 *tollerentur*, B.
10 *quæ*, B.
11 *excogitaverunt*, B.
12 *marmorea*, A.B.
13 *contra ignis*, B.
14 Extract slightly abbreviated in C.D.
15 *esset ætatis tantæ*, B.
16 *Igitur . . . confecit*] Fecit quoque Noe, C.D.
17 *scilicet*] om. B.
18 *fundo usque*, A.D.

were oþere geantes i-bore in Ebron, and afterward were oþere in Than, a citee of Egipte, and þilke geantes were i-cleped Tithanes; of hem com Enachym, his children woned in Ebron; of hem come Golias. *Iosephus.* Þat tyme men wiste, as Adam hadde i-seide, þat þey schulde be destroyed by fuyr, oþer[1] by water, þerfore bookes þat þey hadde i-made by grete trauaille and studie þey closede hem in tweie greet pileres i-made of marbyl and of brend tyle. In a piler of marbyl for water, and in a pyler of tyle for fuyre; ffor hit schulde be i-saued in[2] þat manere to helpe [of][3] mankynde. Me seiþ þat þe piler of stoon scaped þe flood and is ȝit in Siria. *Genesis.* Þanne whan Noe was fyue hondred ȝere[4] olde he gat Sem, Cham, and Iapheth; þat is to menynge,[5] whan he was so olde, he hadde þese þre sones i-gete, and he made þe schippe an hondred ȝere afterward of tymber, i-planed wel smethe,[6] and was i-glewed with ynne.[7] Þe schippe was þre hondred cubite long, and fifty cubite brood, and þritty cubite high from þe cule[8] to þe hacches vnder þe cabans and housynge. Noe made a wyndow in his schippe, and a dore on TREVISA.

---

borne in Ebron after the grete floode, and other in Tan,[9] a cite of Egipte, whiche were callede Titanes, of the stokke of whom Enachim was, whose childer dwellede in Ebron, of whom Golias come. *Iosephus.* Men in that tyme knowenge by Adam that thei scholde peresche with water other fyre, did write artes whom thei hade geten by labore in ij. pillers of diverse ston, that hit scholde not peresche from memory. Oon ston was of marbole, ageyne the floenge of water; that other was of tyleston, ageyne the brennenge of fyre; whiche pillers be seyde to be ȝitte in Siria. *Genesis.* Þerefore Noe beenge of v^c^ yere in age, gate Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, that is to say, when Noe was of that age, he hade geten those childer, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth; and after that, by the space of a c. yere, Noe made the schippe of pleyne burdes, dressede with picche with ynne and with owte, conteynenge iij^c.^ cubites in longitude and l^ti^ cubites in brodeness, xxx^ti^ cubites in hiȝhte, that was from the bothom of hit vn to the hacches, where he made a wyndowe, and a MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *or ellys*, Cx.
[2] *in*] by, Cx.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *ȝere he*, MS. (not α.)
[5] *to seyne*, Cx.
[6] *smoth*, Cx.
[7] *within and without*, Cx.
[8] *kele*, α. and Cx.
[9] *Can*, Harl. MS.

in latere deorsum. Fecit etiam mansiunculas, cœnacula, et tristega, consummans eam in[1] cubito.[2]

Arcæ cum homine comparatio.

Petrus, capitulo tricesimo.[3] Et facta est hæc arca instar corporis humani, in quo longitudo, scilicet[4] a planta usque ad verticem, sexies major est latitudine, quæ extenditur a crate lateris ad cratem; et iterum longitudo decies major est[5] altitudine, quæ extenditur a dorso usque ad ventrem. [6]*Hugutio de arca.* Arca ista non valebat[7] tot et tanta[8] capere, nisi cubiti illi fuissent geometrici; cubitus enim communis et usualis[9] continet pedem et dimidium, sive sex palmos. Palmus autem[10] extenditur a pollice usque ad extremum digitum. Cubitus vero geometricus continet sex cubitos communes, quod est[11] novem pedes.

Noe arcam ingreditur.

Igitur[12] arca perfecta, Noe sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est in eam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quæ precepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium per annum pæne terram[13] occupans.

---

[1] *in*] om. B.

[2] Paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

[3] *capitulo xxx.*] om. C.D.

[4] *scilicet*] om. B.

[5] *est*] om. B.

[6] *Rabanus et*, ins. C.D.

[7] *valuit*, C.D.

[8] *tot et tanta*] tanta et tot, B.; tam multa, C.D.

[9] *usualis et communis*, B.

[10] *enim*, B.; *quoque*, C.D.

[11] *quod est*] scilicet, B.; *qui sunt*, D.

[12] The rest of this chapter is wanting in C.; part is transposed to the beginning of the chapter. *See* previous note.

[13] *terram fere*, B.

þe side dounward, and housynge and cabans wiþ dyuers florynge: þe wyndow was a cubyt highe. *Trevisa.* Here me[1] may wondre how þe wyndowe was i-made byneþe in þe side of the schippe for comynge [yn][2] of water. Doctor de Lyra meueþ þis doute, and [sayth][3] þat þere we haueþ fenestra, þat is a fenestre and a wyndow, þe lettre of hebrew hatte[4] lucerna, þat is a lanterne; and som men seiþ þat þat lanterne was a carbuncle oþer som oþer precious stoon, þat schoon and ȝaf liȝt clere i-now þere it was i-sette. Bot som oþer seiþ þat þat wyndowe was an hool[5] cristal stoon, and feng yn liȝt[6] and hilde out water. Meny oþer wyndowes were in þe schippe, and so it nedede, for [þe][7] schippe was ful grete and huge, and had yn ful many bestes. *Petrus*, 30. Þis schip was i-made somdel to þe liknesse of manis body, in þe whiche þe lengþe from þe sole of þe foot in to þe top of þe heued[8] is suche sixe as þe brede, þat is from þe myddel of þe side ribbes in þe oþer side. Also[9] þe lengþe is suche ten as þe depnesse þat strecceþ from þe ribbe[10] to þe wombe. *Trevisa.* Yf þe man is[11] ful schape as he schulde be, noþer to greet noþer[12] to smal. *Hugo de Arca.*[13] Þis schippe myȝte nouȝt fonge so meny bestes and oþer þinges and so grete, but þe cubites were cubites of gemetrie.[14] For þe comoun cubite þat me vseþ conteyneþ but a foot and an half, þat is sixe spannes. A spanne strecceþ from þe ende of þe þombe to þe ende of þe myddel fynger, whan þe honde is i-strauȝt. But a cubite of gemetrie conteyneþ sixe comoun cubites, þat wil be nyne foot long. *Genesis.* Þanne whan the

TREVISA.

---

durre in the side downewarde. And also mansiones and other chambres, endenge theym in a cubite. *Petrus*, 30. That schippe was made after similitude of the man, in whom the longitude, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to the toppe of the hede, is in vj. tymes more then the brodenesse of hym, whiche is extended from side to side; and also the longitude of hym is x. tymes more then the hiȝhte whiche is extended from the bak to the bely. *Hugutio de Arca.* That schippe; myȝte not conteyne so mony thynges with owte the cubites were geometricalle, for the commune cubite and vsualle conteynethe a foote and a dimidia, a geometricalle cubite conteynethe vj. commune cubites, whiche make ix. footes. *Genesis.* Noe endenge that schippe in the

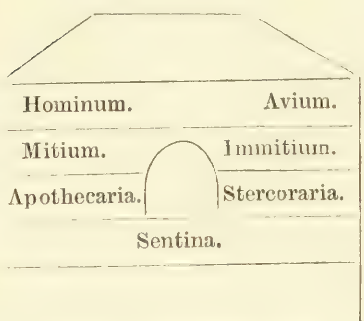
MS. HARL. 2261.

---

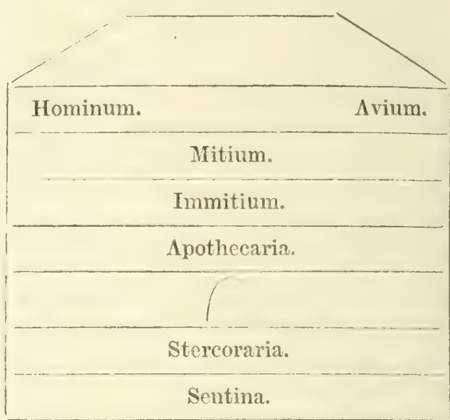
[1] *men*, Cx.
[2] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] Added from Cx.
[4] *haþ*, α. β. γ. and Cx., which seems right.
[5] *al hool of*, α. and Cx.
[6] *by whiche light entred*, Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] *heed*, Cx.
[9] *Also in*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[10] *rigge*, Cx.
[11] *be of*, Cx.
[12] *ne*, α.
[13] *Arm*, MS.
[14] *geometry*, Cx.

Prima ætas sæculi terminatur.

Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem putantur opera hominum fœdasse aera, scilicet per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit.[1] In hoc[2] anno terminatur prima ætas sæculi, ab Adam usque ad diluvium sub generationibus decem, quæ supra tanguntur, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et etiam secundum Hebræos, duo milia sexcentos quinquaginta sex. Sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum, libro quinto, duo milia ducentos, quadraginta



Dispositio arcæ secundum Augustinum.



Dispositio arcæ secundum alios.

duos. Sed secundum Hieronymum non plene duo milia; secundum Methodium duo milia. Ipse nempe Methodius[3] omittit annos, si qui superfuerint supra millenarios, quia ipse calculat ætates per chiliades.

---

[1] *Aqua . . . extulit*] om. A.B.
[2] *quo*, A.B.
[3] *Methodius*] om. A.B.

schippe was i-made, Noe, in þe ȝere of his lyf sex hondred, entrede and ȝede in to [þat] [1] schippe þe firste day of þe seconde monþe, þat is May. [2] And in eiȝte dayes he brouȝte in to þe schippe al þat he was i-hote yn for to brynge,[3] or [4] oure Lorde sent reyne vppon [5] erþe. And so þe flood was i-made, and occupied þe erþe wel nyh al a ȝere. Þe water of þe flood passede fiftene cubites aboue þe hiȝest hilles. For the workes of mankynde defouled þe ayer so hiȝe, as me troweþ, by worschippynge of fuyre þat smokede and spranclede [6] vp so hiȝe. Þis ȝere endeþ [7] the firste age of þe world from Adam to Noe his flood vnder ten generaciouns þat we speke of raþer. *And Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* And also the Hebrewes seiþ þat þis firste age of þe world conteyneþ two þowsand ȝere seuen hondred [8] and sixe and fifty; but þe seuenty torneres and Isidre also, libro quinto, seiþ two þowsand ȝere seuen hondred and two and fourty. But Ierom seiþ not fulliche two þowsand. And Methodius seiþ two þowsand, for here he leueþ þe odde ȝeres þat beeþ ouer þe þowsandes.[9] For þey [10] calcleþ and acounteþ þe ages of þe world by þowsendes, and leet þat oþer deel abyde. TREVISA.

(Diagrams of the ark as in Higden's text.)

---

vj^c. yere of his life, entrede in to hit þe firste day of the secunde monethe, bryngenge to hit by viij^the dayes thynges commaunded to be brouȝhte to hit, or the reyne began: after that a floode was made, occupienge the erthe allemoste by a yere. The water of þat floode was above the hieste hilles by xv. cubites, by whiche altitude hit is seide the werkes of men to haue corrupte the aier. In whiche yere the firste age of the worlde is terminate, from Adam to the grete floode, vnder x. generaciones, hauenge, after Iosephus, libro 1°, capitulo 4°, and after men of Ebrewe, ij^mł vj^c. lvj. yere. But after the lxx^ti interpretatores, and after Isidorus, libro 5to, ij^mł ij^c. xlij^ti yere; after Seynte Ierom not fully ij^mł; after Methodius ij^mł, but he levethe yeres, if þer be eny ouer mł, for he dothe calcle the ages by ciliades. MS. HARL. 2261.

(Here follow diagrams of the ark, entitled, *Descriptio arcæ Noe, secundum doctos.*)

---

[1] Added from α. and Cx.
[2] *of Maii*, Cx.
[3] *al that he was warned to brynge in*, Cx.
[4] *ar*, α.; *er*, Cx.
[5] *here vppon*, α., Cx.
[6] *sprynkeld*, Cx.
[7] *ended*, Cx.
[8] *hondred ȝere*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[9] So α. and Cx.; *þowsand*, MS.
[10] *he*, β. γ. and Cx., which is right, but the strange use of the pronouns has been noticed before both in MS. and α.

Cap. VI.[1]

De posteritate Noe.[2]

De arcu celesti.

Genesis. Exsiccatis tandem aquis diluvii,[3] et Noe egresso vicesimo septimo die mensis secundi, id est, Maii,[4] promisit Dominus Noe quod ultra non fieret diluvium. In cujus fœderis signum posuit arcum suum in nubibus celi. *Petrus.*[5] Arcus est signum duorum judiciorum, judicii scilicet præteriti per aquam ne[6] timeatur, et futuri per ignem ut expectetur. Inde est quod arcus[7] habet duos[8] colores, exteriorem cæruleum, id est, aqueum, quia[9] præteriit; et igneum interiorem, quia[10] futurus est. Et tradunt sancti quod per quadraginta annos[11] ante judicium non videbitur[12] arcus. *Ranulphus.* Secundum sanctos ab Adam usque ad Noe non pluerat, nec Iris apparuerat; nec fuit usus

[1] The division of the chapters is not marked by the original scribe in A., but a later hand has noted Cap. vi. in the margin.

[2] Title wanting in MSS.

[3] *diluvii*] om. C.D.

[4] *vicesimo . . . Maii*] eadem scilicet die qua ingressus est anno revoluto, C.D.

[5] A.B. add 32. The true reference is to c. 35.

[6] *ut*, B.

[7] *arcus*] om. C.D.

[8] *duos*] om. B.

[9] *qui*, B.

[10] *qui*, A.B.

[11] *per . . . annos*] 40 annis, C.D.

[12] *videtur*, B.

TREVISA.

Capitulum sextum.

At þe laste whanne þe water of þe flood was wiþdrawe[1] and[2] Noe went out of þe schippe þe seuen and twenty day of þe secounde monþe, þat is, May ; þan oure Lorde byhete Noe þat no suche flood schulde be after þat; and in tokenynge[3] of þe[4] couenant he sette his bowe in þe clowdes, þat is, þe reynbowe. *Petrus*, 32°. Þe reynbowe is tokenynge[5] of tweye domes, of þe dome þat was i-doo by water; for me schulde nouȝt drede hit; and of þe doome þat schal be by fuyre, for me schulde drede hit. Þerfore þe bowe haþ tweie coloures, þe vtter is watery, for þe dome of water is apassed ; þe ynnere is fury, for þe dome of fuyre schal be. And holy seyntes telleþ þat þe reynbowe schal nouȝt be seie fourty ȝere to fore þe day of dome. Also þei telle þat it roon neuere from Adam to Noes flood. Also noon reynbowe was i-seie at þat tyme, noþer flesche ne fische i-ete, noþer wyn i-dronke. For þat tyme was as hit were springing tyme, and þoo was i-now and plente of al[6] heleful[7] þinges, þat was afterward i-chaunged þorw synne.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum sextum.

The waters of that grete floode dryede, and Noe goen furthe from his schippe the xxvij^{ti} day of the secunde monethe, whiche was Maii, God promisede to Noe that the waters scholde sease, in a signe where of he put his bawe in the clowdes of heuyn. *Petrus*, 22° *capitulo.* That bawe is a signe of ij. iuggementes, oon paste by water, whiche scholde not be dredde, and an other iuggemente to comme by fyre whiche scholde be taryede. Therefore hit is that a bawe hathe ij. coloures, the coloure exterialle as of water, whiche is paste, and a coloure of fire with ynne, whiche is to comme. Also holy men expresse that the bawe schalle not be seen by xl^{ti} yere afore the iuggemente. Also they say that there was noo reyne from Adam vn to the grete floode, neiþer that bawe did appere, neither the exercise of flesche, fische, either of vynes, was vsede ; for that tyme was as the temperate tyme of ver, and habundaunce of hollesomme thynges whiche were chaungede afterwarde by synne. Wherefore the eitenge of flesche

---

[1] *flode withdrewe*, α. and Cx.
[2] *and*] om. Cx.
[3] *tokyn*, α. Cx.
[4] *þat*, α.
[5] *tokyn*, α.
[6] Text as in α. and Cx. ; some words repeated without sense in MS.
[7] *helthful*, Cx.

carnis aut piscis aut vineæ, sed herbarum et radicum.[1] Vixit Noe post diluvium trecentis[2] quinquaginta annis, et sic in toto vixit nongentis quinquaginta annis; et sic[3] mortuus est, relictis post se filiis[4] Sem, Chaam, et Jafeth,[5] de quibus disseminatum est omne genus hominum.[6] *Genesis.*[7] Igitur biennio post diluvium Sem centum annorum existens[8] genuit Arfaxath,[9] et vixit postmodum[10] quingentis annis.[11] Arfaxat, pater Chaldæorum secundum Hieronymum, centum triginta quinque annorum existens secundum Isidorum, libro sexto, sed[12] secundum Hebræos triginta quinque[13] annorum genuit Sale, et vixit postmodum trecentis tribus annis, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes, et[14] secundum Lucam Evangelistam qui secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, Arfaxat centum triginta quinque annorum existens genuit Caynan,[15] et postmodum vixit trecentis triginta annis.[16]

Incipiunt generationes a Noe usque Abraham. Shem. Arphaxad.

Caynan[17] centum triginta[18] annorum existens genuit Sale,[19] a quo sunt antiqui Samaritæ vel Judæi,[20] et postmodum, secundum Septuaginta interpretes,[14] vixit quadringentis triginta octo annis.

Cainan. Salah.

[1] *R. . . . radicum*] This passage (added in margin of C.) is as follows in A.B.C.:—" Item dicunt " quod ab Adam usque ad diluvium " non pluerat nec arcus apparuerat,* " nec usus carnis, piscis, aut vineæ " fuerat, quia tunc fuit quasi ver- " nalis temperies et copia rerum " salubrium, quæ postmodum per " peccatum fuerunt immutata,† unde " et‡ post diluvium esus carnium " concessus est homini, qui prius " herbis et radicibus vescebatur."

[2] *cc.*, B.

[3] *sic*] om. C.D.

[4] *post se filiis*] tribus post se filiis, A. ; tribus filiis, B. ; tribus filiis suis, C.D.

[5] *Japhet*, A.B.D.

* *erat*, B.
† *immutata sunt*, A.B.
‡ *et*] om. A.

[6] *humanum*, A.

[7] *Genesis*] om. C.D.

[8] *secundo anno post diluvium*, ins. C.

[9] *Arphaxat*, A.D.

[10] *postmodum*] almost always *post* in this cap. in C. ; *postea*, D.

[11] *annos*, D.; correctly; but the MSS. have *annis* almost always.

[12] *et*, A.

[13] 239, B.

[14] *et . . . interpretes*] om. B.

[15] *Chaynnan*, A.

[16] Sentence slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

[17] *Luca teste*, ins. C.D., badly.

[18] 230, D.

[19] By a blunder of the scribe the sentence has been transposed in A., marginal notes being placed to indicate the errors.

[20] *vel Judæi*] Iudi, E. ; om. A.

TREVISA.

Bot after þe flood mankynde hadde leue forto ete fische and flesche,[1] þat raþer ete herbes and rootes. Noe lyuede after þe flood þre hondred ȝere and fifty, and he leuede in alle nyne hondred wynter[2] and fifty, and so deyde, and lefte þre sones [on lyue][3] Sem, Cam, and Iapheth, of þe whiche þre com al manere of mankynde. *Genesis.* Þanne two ȝere after þe flood Sem was an hondred ȝere old, and gat Arphaxath, and lyuede afterward fyue hondred ȝere. Arphaxath was fader of Caldeys, and gate Sale whan he was an hondred ȝere olde and fyue and þritty, as Ierom seiþ; but Isidre, libro sexto and þe[4] Hebrewes seiþ fyue and þritty ȝere. He gat Caynan,[5] and lyued afterward þre hondred ȝere and þre;[6] [but þe seventy, and Luc also þat folweþ hem: Arphaxat whanne he was an hondred ȝere and fyue and þritty, he gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward þre hondred ȝere and þritty.][7] Caynan, an hondred ȝere olde and þritty, gat Sale; of hym come þe olde Samaritans and the Iudees, and lyuede afterward foure hondred and eiȝte and þritty ȝere,[8] so[9] þe seuenty telleþ.

MS. HARL. 2261.

was grauntede to man after that grete floode, vsenge a fore that tyme to eite yerbes and rootes. Noe lyvede after that floode by ccc. and l^ti^ yere, and so he lyvede in alle ix^c.^ and l^ti^ yere, whiche dyenge lefte his iij. childer after hym, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, of whom alle the kynde of man was disseminate. *Genesis.* Sem beenge of a c. yere in age, in the secunde yere after the grete floode, gate Arphaxat, and lyvede after v^c.^ yere. Arphaxat, the fader of men of Caldea, after Seynte Ierom, beenge of a c. and xxxv^ti^ yere after Ysoder and men of Hebrewe, when he was of the age of xxxv^ti^ yere, he gate Sale, and lyvede after ccc.iij. yere. But after the lxx^ti^ interpretatores, and after Seynte Luke Euangeliste, whiche foloede theyme, Arphaxat of a c. and xxxv^ti^ yere in age, gate Cainan, and lyvede after ccc. and xxx^ti^ yere. Cainan, hauenge a c. and xxx^ti^ yere in

---

1 *flesch and fische*, α.
2 *yere*, Cx.
3 Added from α. and Cx.
4 *þe*] om. α.
5 *He gat Caynan*] om. α. and Cx.
6 So α. and Cx.; *þritty*, MS.
7 Added from α. and Cx. (the latter has *also foloweth.*)
8 *ȝere*] transposed in α.
9 *so þat*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)

Sale.

Sale secundum Hebræos triginta[1] annorum existens genuit Heber, a quo dicti sunt Hebræi; et postmodum vixit quadringentis[2] annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus anteponunt centum ante[3] triginta et post trecentos triginta.[4]

Heber.

Heber, a quo dicti sunt[5] Hebræi[6] secundum Hebræos triginta quatuor[7] annorum existens genuit Phaleg,[8] et postmodum vixit quadringentis triginta annis; sed[9] Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum ante triginta quatuor.[10]

Phaleg.

Phaleg[11] secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens[12] genuit Reu vel[13] Ragau, et postmodum vixit[14] ducentis novem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes[15] et Isidorus addunt centum ante[16] triginta, et postmodum ponunt[17] ducentos octo.[18] Et vocatus est iste Phaleg,[19] quod interpretatum est[20] *divisio*, eo quod[21] in diebus[22] ejus, cum terra esset labii unius, linguæ confusæ sunt turris[23] constructione, et sic gentes per terras sunt divisæ.[24]

Ragau vel Reu.

Ragau secundum Hebræos triginta duorum annorum existens[25] genuit Sarug, et vixit postmodum ducentis[26] septem annis; sed[27] Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta duos,[28] et postmodum[29] ponunt[30] ducentos septem.[31]

---

1 100, D.
2 430, C.; 403, D.
3 *ante*] om. B.
4 303, D.; sentence slightly varied in C.D.
5 *dicti sunt*] om. C.D.
6 *a . . . Hebræi*] om. B.
7 *quatuor*] om. B.C.
8 So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.
9 *quadringentis . . . sed*] 40, B.
10 *ponunt . . . quatuor*] anteponunt cxxxiiij. annos, B.; ante ponunt 100 et post 330, C.D.
11 So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.
12 *existens*] om. C.D.
13 *Reu vel*] om. D.
14 *vixit*] added from A.C.D.
15 *interpretes*] om. A.
16 *anteponunt centum*, B.
17 *ponunt*] om. B.
18 *sed . . octo*] om. C.D.
19 *Phalech*, A.B.E.
20 *interpretatur*, C.D.
21 *eo quod*] quia, C.D.
22 *tempore*, B.
23 *in turris*, B.
24 Transposed in C.D.
25 *existens*] om. C.D.
26 *trecentis*, C.D.
27 *sed secundum*, B.
28 *anteponuntur* 132, B.
29 *post*, B.
30 *ponunt*] om. B.
31 107, B.; *sed lxx. et Isidorus ponunt* 300 *ante* 32, C.D.

TREVISA.

Hebrewes seiþ þat Sale, whan he was þritty ȝere olde, gat Heber. Of þis Heber þey were i-cleped Hebrewes. And Sale lyuede after he hadde i-gete Heber foure hondred ȝere, but þe seuenty and Isidre acounteþ[1] þe hondred ȝere afore[2] þe þritty, and þre hondred ȝere after þe þritty. Of [Heber][3] Hebrewes had[4] þe name. Þe Hebrewes seiþ þat Heber foure and þritty ȝere olde gat Phalech, and lyuede afterward foure hondred ȝere and þritty; but þe seuenty putteþ þe hondred tofore þe foure and þritty. Hebrewes seiþ þat Phalech þritty ȝere olde gat Reu, þat hatte Ragau also, and lyuede afterward two hondred ȝere and nyne; but þe seuenty and Ysidre putteþ þe hondred tofore þe þritty, and afterwarde two hundred and nyne. Þis hatte[5] Phalech riȝtfulliche, for Phalech is to menynge[6] *departynge;* for longage was departed in his tyme, þat raþer was al oon in þe buldynge of þe tour Babel, And so men were departed in to dyuers londes. Ragau, two and þritty ȝere olde, gat Sarug, and lyuede afterward two hondred yere and seuene; so seiþ Hebrewes. But þe seuenty and Isidre seiþ an hondred tofore two and þritty, and afterwarde two hondred and seuene. Hebrewes seiþ þat Sarug þritty ȝere olde gat

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

age, gate Sale, of whom the olde Samarites come. Sale, after men of Hebrewe, beenge of xxx^ti yere in age, gate Heber of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, and lyvede after cccc. yere; but after the lxx^ti interpretatores a. c. yere be put afore xxx^ti yere, and after that ccc. and xxx^ti. Heber, of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, hauenge xxxiiij. yere in age, gate Phaleg, and lyvede after cccc. and xxx^ti yere; but the lxx^ti interpretatores put a c. yere afore xxxiiij^ti yere. Phaleg, after men of Hebrewe, of xxx^ti yere in age, gate Reu or Ragau, and lyvede after ij^c. and ix. yere; but the lxx^ti interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxx^ti and cc. and vij. yere after, and he was callede Phaleg, as diuision by interpretation, in that the langage were confusede in his daies in the construccion of the towre of Babel, and so the peple were diuided. Ragau, after men of Hebrewe, hauenge xxxij^ti yere in age, gate Sarug, lyvenge after cc. and vij. yere; but the lxx^ti interpretatores and Ysoder putte an c. yere afore xxxij^ti and after ij^c. vij. yere. Sarug, after men of Hebrewe, of xxx^ti

---

1 *accompted*, Cx.
2 *tofore*, α.; *bifor*, Cx.
3 Added from Cx.
4 *haue*, Cx.
5 *heet*, Cx.
6 *to say*, Cx.

Sarug.

Sarug secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens[1] genuit Nachor, et postmodum vixit ducentis duobus[2] annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta et postmodum ducentos.

Nachor.

Nachor secundum Hebræos viginti annorum[3] existens[4] genuit Thare, et postmodum[5] vixit annis centum novem; sed Septuaginta interpretes[6] ponunt[7] centum ante viginti novem. Isidorus[8] dicit Nachor fuisse septuaginta novem annorum, quando genuit Thare.

Thare.

Thare secundum Hebræos et secundum Isidorum cum esset[9] annorum septuaginta genuit Abram,[10] Nachor, et[11] Aram; et postmodum vixit centum triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes ponunt centum ante septuaginta annos. *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.*[12]

Ætas secunda terminatur.

Et sic[13] terminatur secunda sæculi ætas a diluvio usque ad nativitatem Abrahæ, per decem generationes protensa; habens secundum Hebræos, Josephum, et Hieronymum annos ducentos[14] nonaginta duos, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinum sunt[15] anni mille septuaginta duo sub generationibus[16] undecim; sed[17] secundum Isidorum sunt anni nongenti[18] quadraginta duo, secundum Methodium habet chiliadem.

---

[1] *existens*] om. C.D.
[2] *ducentos*, C.D.
[3] *annorum*] om. E.
[4] *viginti existens*] annorum 39, C.D.
[5] *et postmodum*] om. B.
[6] *interpretes*] om. B.
[7] *præponunt*, A.
[8] *autem*, ins. C.D.
[9] *cum esset*] om. C.D.
[10] *Abraham*, C.D.
[11] *Nachor et*] om. B.
[12] *tricesimo octavo*] om. C.D.
[13] *sic*] om. B.
[14] *mille ducentos*, C.D.
[15] *sunt*] om. B.
[16] *et generationes*, C.D.
[17] *sed*] om. C.D.
[18] *nonagenti*, E.

Nachor, and lyued afterward two hondred ȝere and tweyne; but the seuenty and Ysidre putteþ an hondred ȝere to fore þritty,[1] and two hondred after.[2] Hebrewes seiþ þat Nachor nyne and twenty ȝere olde gat Thare, and lyued afterward an hondrede ȝere and nyne; but þe seuenty putteþ an hondred ȝere to fore nyne and twenty; and Isidre seiþ þat Nachor was seuenty ȝere and nyne, whan he gat Thare. [Þe Hebrewes and Isidre seiþ þat] [3] Thaare seuenty ȝere olde gat Abraham, Naachor, and Aram,[4] and lyued afterward an hondred ȝere and þritty, but the seuenty putteþ the hondred to fore þe seuenty ȝeres.[5] *Trevisa.* ȝit take hede rediliche of þe seuenty: I haue i-seide to fore þat þey were þre score and ten, þat tornede Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe: hem I clepe þe Seuenty, and so þey beþ i-cleped in þis book and of meny holy doctoures; and þey beeþ specialliche i-cleped þe Seuenty tourneris,[6] for þey torned Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe.[7] *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.* And so the secounde age of þe world is i-ended, from Noes flood to Habrahams burþe; and conteyneþ ten generaciouns, and two hondred ȝere foure [8] score and twelue, so seiþ the Hebrewes, Ioseph, and Ierom. But þe seuenty, as [9] Seynt Austyn, acounteþ a þowsand ȝere and two and seuenty, and eleuene [10] generaciouns. But Isidre acounteþ nyne hondred ȝere, and two and fourty;

TREVISA.

---

yere in age, gate Nachor, and lyvede after ij$^{c.}$ and ij. yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxx^{ti}, and after that cc. yere. Nachor, after men of Hebrewe, hauenge xxix^{ti} yere in age, gate Thare, and lyvede after a c. and ix. yere But Ysoder seithe Nachor to haue been of lxxix. yere when that he did gette Thare. Thare, after men of Hebrewe and Ysoder, of lxx^{ti} yere, gate Abraham, and lyvede after a c. and [x] xx^{ti} yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores putte a c. yere afore lxx^{ti}. *Petrus, capitulo* 38°. And so the secunde age of the worlde is terminate from the grete floode to the natiuite of Abraham by x. generaciones, hauenge, after men of Hebrewe, Iosephus, and Seynte Ierom, ix$^{c.}$ xc. and ij. yere; but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores and Seynte Austyn, m^{l} yere, lxxij., vnder a xj. generaciones. And after Ysoder, ix$^{c.}$ yere xlij^{ti}. And after Methodius, hit hathe a ciliade. The cause of this

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *the thrytty*, Cx.
[2] *afterward*, Cx.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *Aaron*, MS.; *Aran*, Cx.
[5] *yere*, Cx.
[6] *turneres*, α.
[7] Cx. omits the extract from Trevisa.
[8] So α. and Cx.; *and þritty foure*, MS.
[9] *and*, α. and Cx.
[10] *enleuene*, α. and Cx.

Diversitas inter Hebræos et lxx. interpretes.

Causa hujus diversitatis est quod Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinus addunt centum annos ad ætatem cujuslibet generationis[1] ab Arphaxat[2] usque ad Nachor. *Beda.* Sicut Noe fuit decimus ab Adam, sic Abram[3] fuit decimus a Noe. Veruntamen Lucas in serie[4] genealogiæ suæ[5] quando dixit "qui fuit Sale, qui fuit "Caynan, qui fuit Arphaxat," secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, qui unam generationem plusquam Hebræi posuerunt. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Cum aliquid diversum in pluribus translationibus reperitur quod juxta fidem rerum gestarum stare non potest, potius credatur illi linguæ unde in aliam fit translatio. *Beda.* Translatio[6] Septuaginta interpretum vel minus solicite primo edita est, vel postmodum a gentilibus[7] corrupta. *Eusebius.* Ab Adam usque ad Abraham nulla penitus[8] Græca nec barbara invenitur historia. *Methodius.* Centesimo anno tertiæ[9] chiliadis[10] natus est[11] Noe filius nomine Ionicus,[12] cui dedit Noe dominationes usque ad mare Eliocora, cui

Ionicus, Noe filius.

---

[1] *generantis*, A.C.; *ætatem* after *generationis*, B.
[2] So A.D.; *Arfaxat*, E.
[3] *Abraham*, A.B.C.D.
[4] *suæ*, added from A.B.C.D.
[5] *geneologie*, E. (not A.)
[6] *vero*, ins. B.
[7] *gentibus*, B.
[8] *est nec*, ins. C.D.; *nec* (only), ins. A.B.
[9] *tertiæ*] om. B.
[10] *cicliadis*, C.
[11] *est*] om. E.
[12] *Ionichus*, E.

TREVISA.

and Met[h]odius a þowsand. Þe caas of þis dyuersite[1] is, for þe seuenty, and Seynt Austyn[2] also, putteþ to eueriche fader his age from Arphaxath to Nachor an hondred ȝere. *Beda.* As Noe was þe tenþe from Adam, so Abraham was þe tenþe from Noe. Noþeles Luke followeþ þe seuenty in his genelogie, whan he seiþ, "Qui fuit Sale," þat is to menynge, "þat was "Sale his sone" and so forþ, "þat was Caynan his sone, þat "was Arphaxath his sone." Þere Luke foloweþ þe seuenty, þat putteþ on generacioun moo þan þe Hebrewes putteþ. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Whanne in meny translaciouns is dyuersite i-founde, þat may nouþt stonde; þanne þe firste longage, þat þe tornynge and translacioun is i-made of, schal be most i-trowed.[3] *Beda.* Þe tornynge and translacioun of þe seuenty was first nouȝt ful rediliche i-torned, oþer it was afterward apayred by mysbeleued men. *Eusebius.* From Adam to Abraham is no storie i-founde in Grewe, noþer in straunge langage. *Methodius.* Noe hadde a sone i-bore two þowsand ȝere and an hondred after þe begynnynge of þe worlde; þat sone heet Ionicus; Noe ȝaf hym lordschip anoon to þe see Eliochora. To hym God Almyȝty ȝaf witte and wisdom þat he schulde fynde

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

diuersite may be assignede þat the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, and Seynte Austyn putte a c. yere to the age of euery man from Arphaxat to Nachor. *Beda.* And lyke as Noe was the x^{the} from Adam, soe Abraham was the x^{the} from Noe; but truly Seynte Luke folowede the lxx^{ti} interpretatores in the ordre of his genealogy when he seyde "whiche "was Sale, whiche was Cainan," whiche putte oon generacion more then men of Hebrewe putte. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro quinto decimo, capitulo* 13°. When a thynge is founde variable and diuerse in mony translaciones, that hit may stonde accordenge to the trawethe of the gestes, then hit is to ȝiffe moste specialle credence to that langage from whom the translacion is made. *Beda.* The translacion of the lxx^{ti} interpretatores was made insufficientely, either hyt was corrupte of peple afterwarde. *Eusebius.* There is noo storye founde from Adam vn to Abraham in Grewe other in the langage of Barbre. *Methodius.* Ionicus, the son of Noe, was borne in the c. yere of the thridde ciliade; to whom Noe ȝafe mony dominations; and God ȝafe to hym a ȝifte of sapience that he myȝhte

---

[1] *dyuercete*, α.
[2] *Augustyn*, Cx.
[3] *bileued*, Cx.

etiam dedit Deus donum sapientiæ, ut inveniret astronomiam, et quod [1] sciret prædicere quosdam eventus, potissime [2] de ortu et occasu quatuor regnorum principalium; scilicet quod primi [3] de Cham regnarent Assyrii, de quo fuit Belus; postmodum de Sem,[4] Medi, Persæ, et Græci; denuo [5] de Japhet, Romani. Hæc ostendit Ionicus [6] Nemphroti[7] discipulo suo, qui exhinc accensus libidine [8] dominandi regnavit inter filios Cham in Babylone, qui interim obtinuerunt Assyrios et Ægyptios, quousque regnaret Ninus [9] Assyrios. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*[10] Post obitum Noe in diebus Phaleg,[11] cum terra esset labii unius, filii filiorum Noe, ducente et docente eos Nemphrot, filio Chus filii Cham filii Noe, putantes felicitatem non a Deo sed propria virtute sibi provenire, insuper et [12] arbitrantes [13] quod Deus per invidiam eos separare vellet,[14] ut sic divisos eos facilius subjugare posset, timentesque aliud [15] diluvium adventurum,[16] turrim altam ex cocto latere et bitumine colligato ædificabant in campo Sennaar,[17] ubi postmodum constructa est Babylonia. Sed verius [18] eos dispersit Deus, ne dis-

Nemphrot vel Nimrod.

Turris Babel.

[1] *quod*] ut, B.; om. C.D.
[2] *præcipue*, C.D.
[3] *primo*, B.
[4] *Seem*, B.
[5] *post*, C.D.
[6] *Ionichus*, some MSS.
[7] *Nembroti*, D., and similarly below.
[8] *amore*, C.D.
[9] *qui primo subjugavit*, C.D.
[10] *capitulo quinto*] om. B.
[11] *Phalec*, E.
[12] *et*] om. B.
[13] So C.D.; *arbitrabantur*, A.E.
[14] *hac de causa*, ins. C.D.
[15] *aliud*] om. C.D.
[16] *adventurum*] om. C.D.; *venturum*, B.
[17] *Sennar*, B.
[18] *Verius autem*, D.

TREVISA.

science of astronomye, and he couþe[1] telle to forehonde[2] what schulde byfalle[3] and come afterward; and specialliche of þe bygynnynge and endynge of þe foure cheef kyngdoms. And so þey knewe [þat][4] firste of Cham þe Assires schulde regne; of Cham com Belus. Afterward of Sem þe Medes, þe Þerses, and Grees.[5] Þan of Iapheth þe Romayns. Ionichus schewed al þis to his disciple [Nemproth, þerfore][6] Nemproth had greet desire to reigne, and reigned in Babiloyne amonge Cham his children. Þey get and hild Assiria and Egipt, forto Nynus regned in Assiria vppon þe Assires. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After þat Noe was deed in Phalech his tyme, whan[7] al þe men of þe worlde hadde oon longage and tonge, Noe his children by ledynge and by techynge of Nemproth trowed þat good happes and good speede is nouȝt of God Almyȝty, but by manis owne vertues and dedes. Also þey wende þat God Almyȝty wolde departe hem by enuye, þat he myȝte þe more liȝtliche make hem suget. Also þey dradde þat anoþer flood schulde come, and bulde a wel hiȝe place[8] of brent tyle and glewe instede of morter in þe feeld þat hatte Sennaar; þere Babiloyne was afterward i-bulde, but God Almyȝty departed

MS. HARL. 2261.

fynde astronomy, and to knowe thynges to comme, and specially of the spryngenge and fallenge of iiij. realmes, that is to say, men of Assiria scholde [come] of Cham, of whom Belus come. Afterwarde men of Media, of Persa, and men of Grewe scholde comme of Sem, and the Romanes of Iapheth. Ionicus schewede this to Nemproth his disciple, whiche accende in luste of dominacion reignede in Babilon among the childer of Cham, whiche obteynede men of Assiria and of Egipte vn tille that Ninus reignede there. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After the dethe of Noe in the daies of Phaleg, when the erthe was of oon langage, Nemproth techenge theyme, son of Chus, the son of Cham other Chuder,[9] the son of Noe, trawenge felicite not to be of God but of theire propre vertu, supposede that God wolde separate theyme that he myȝhte subiecte theym diuidede the rather to hym, dredenge an other floode to comme, made to theyme an hie towre of sodde, tyle, ston, made sure with pycche, in the felde of Sennar, where Babilon was edifiede afterwarde. ℞. But truly God dispersede theyme

[1] *kouþ*, α.
[2] *bifore*, Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *byfalleþ*, MS.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.; *knewethe*, MS.
[5] *the Grees*, Cx., which is better.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *than*, Cx.
[8] *tour*, α.
[9] The MS. has been corrected, and the reading is somewhat uncertain.

sentiones inter se[1] facerent. Vocatus est autem[2] locus ille Babel, quod sonat *confusio*, eo quod linguæ ædificantium ibidem divino nutu sint[3] confusæ. *Ranulphus.*[4] Heber putatur immunis a conspiratione in turris constructione, et ideo[5] immunis[6] a linguæ confusione. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo quinto.*[7] Igitur Nemphrot robustus venator hominum,[8] id est, oppressor, expulso Assur de terra illa, cœpit regnare inter filios Cham in Babylone civitate, quam fundavit. Hanc tamen postmodum Semiramis regina ampliavit. Deinde Nemphrot transivit ad Persas, et[9] docuit adorare ignem et colere,[10] ubi fundavit civitatem Niniven; quam postmodum Ninus et Semiramis[11] ampliarunt.[12]

Cap. VII.[13]

De filiis Noe et de regnis ab eorum posteris fundatis.[14]

Gentes per terras divisæ; hominum variæ fortunæ.

Augustinus De Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.[15] Gentibus itaque per terras divisis, quibusque suas cupiditates sectantibus, dum id[16] quod appetebatur nemini sufficere videbatur, adversus seipsas[17] dividebantur;[18] et pars prævalens reliquam opprimebat,

[1] *eos*, B.
[2] *autem*] so A.B.C.D.; om. E.
[3] *sunt*, B.
[4] *Ranulphus*] *Freculphus*, B.; om. A.C. The passage is added in the margin of C.; D. omits it.
[5] *iccirco*, A.B.
[6] *fuit*, B.C.
[7] *capitulo xxxv.*] om. C.D. The true reference is to *Hist. Gen.* c. 37.
[8] *hominum*] om. B.
[9] *et*] quos, C.D.
[10] *et colere*] om. B.
[11] So B.; *Semira*, E.; *Samiramis*, A.; *Semiramis uxor sua plurimum*, C.D.
[12] *ampliaverunt*, A.
[13] *Cap. VII.*] om. B.
[14] No title in MSS.
[15] The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 2.
[16] *illud*, A.B.
[17] So B.; *se ipsam*, A.D.E.
[18] So B.; *dividebatur*, A.D.E.

hem for þey schulde not make discencioun and stryf among hem self. Þis Nemprot was Chus his sone; Chus was Cham his sone; and Cham was Noe his [sone].[1] Þat place is i-cleped Babel, þat is to menynge *schedynge*; for þere at God Almyȝte his heste þe longages and tonges of þe bulders were i-schad and to schift.[2] Heber was i-holde gilteles of conspiracioun in þe buldinge of þe toure, and þerfore he was i-spared as gilteles in þe schedynge of tonges. *Petrus, tricesimo quinto.* Þanne Nemprot, a stronge huntere of men, þat is, a tyraunt vppon men, he putte Assur out of þat londe, and byganne to reigne among Cham his children[3] in þe citee of Babiloyne þat he bulde. Noþeles Semiramis þe queene afterward made þis citee wel more. Afterward Nemprot wente to þe men of Pers and tauȝte hem to worschippe þe fuyre, and foundede þere þe citee of[4] Nyneue. Afterward Ninus and Semiramis[5] made þat citee more. TREVISA.

Capitulum septimum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo. Whanne men were departed and to schift[6] in to dyuers londes, and euerich folowed his owne likynge and wille, while

---

rather leste thei scholde make dissencion amonge theyme selfe, whiche place was callede Babel, sowndenge *a confusion*, in that the langages of men edifienge hit were confusede by the wylle of God. But Heber was trawede to be with owte blame from conspiracion in the makenge of that towre, wherefore he was partelesse in the confusion of the langage of theyme. *Petrus*, 15°. There Nemproth the bostuous oppressor of men, expellenge Assur, began to reigne in the cite of Babilon amonge the childer of Cham, whiche cite he made, whom whene Semiramis made more large. After that Nemproth wente to men of Persa, and tauȝhte theyme to worschippe fire, where he made the cite of Niniuen, whom Ninus and Semiramis did ampliate afterwarde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum septimum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo primo. This peple diuided in to the worlde, and folowenge the lustes of ambicion, seenge that thynge not to be sufficiaunte that was desirede, was diuidede amonge theyme selfe;

---

[1] Added from α. and Cx.
[2] *skaterd*, Cx.
[3] *childer*, Cx.
[4] *of*] om. α.
[5] *Semyramys*, MS. (*Semyramis*, above.)
[6] *to schufte or skatred*, Cx.

saluti libertatem præferens, ita ut magnæ[1] fierent admirationi, qui perire maluerunt quam servire; cum[2] vox naturæ sit malle subici quam deleri. Hinc non sine Dei providentia factum est, ut quidam essent regnis præditi, quidam subditi.[3] *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.*[4] Gentes igitur de Sem, primogenito Noe, descendentes possederunt terram meridianam ab ortu solis usque ad Phœnices, sub linguis viginti septem, patrias[5] quadringentas sex occupantes.[6] Qui vero[7] de Cham descenderunt a Sidone per oceanum austrinum[8] usque ad Gaditanum[9] fretum tenuerunt patrias trecentas nonaginta quatuor sub linguis triginta. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo.*[10] Qui autem de stirpe Japhet a Tauro monte Ciliciæ[11] descenderunt[12] versus aquilonem per oceanum septentrionalem mediam partem Asiæ et omnem Europam usque ad oceanum Britanicum, tenuerunt patrias ducentas sub linguis et gentibus quindecim, nomina locis et po-

Posteritas Sem.

Posteritas Cham.

Posteritas Japhet.

---

[1] *magni*, A.
[2] *tamen*, ins. C. (not D.)
[3] *subjecti*, B.
[4] *Isidorus, libro quarto*, C.D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 2.
[5] *vero*, ins. C.
[6] *occupantes*] om. E.
[7] *vero*] om. C.D.
[8] *austrum*, C. (not D.)
[9] *Gadithanum*, A.
[10] b. 18. c. 1., D. The true reference seems to be lib. xvi. c. 3.
[11] *Scicilicæ*, B.
[12] *descenderunt*] om. D.E.

[þat] [1] it semede þat what þat[2] was desired was i-now to no man. Mankynde was departed aȝenst hym self, and þe strenger party bare doun þat [oþer],[3] and tolde more prys of fredom þan of sauacioun and of hele ; so þat it was greet wonder of hem, þat hadde leuere be lost and i-spilde þan be vnderlynges and servy.[4] And ȝit be [5] lore of kynde, bettre is to [6] be vnderlynge and seruaunt þan be put out of lyf. Þerfore by Goddes ordenaunce hit is doo þat som men beeþ kynges and lordes and some beeþ sugettis and seruauntes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þan men þat come of Sem, Noe his [firste] [7] sone, hadde þe souþlond from þe rysynge of þe sonne anon to þe Fenices, men þat so hatte. [Þese men, þat so hatte,] [8] þat come of Sem, occupied foure hondred contrees and sixe vnder seuene and twenty longages. Þey þat come of Cham helde þe londe by þe souþ occean anoon to þe see Gaditan, þre hondred contrayes [9] foure score and fourtene vnder þritty longages and tonges. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* Þey that come of Iapheth helde þe lond from þe hil þat hatte mons Taurus in Cilicia norþward toward þe norþ occean, þe haluendel [10] of Asia, and al Europa anon to þe Brittische see,[11] þat is þe Englische see, þre hundred contrayes vnder fiftene longages and tonges, and lefte eche lond and TREVISA.

---

and the stronger parte oppressede the parte more feble, preferrenge liberte to theire sawle healethe, to be hade in grete meruayle, wyllenge raþer to die then to be subiecte; sythe nature willethe rather to be subiecte then to be destroyede: whiche thynge was not doen with owte the prouidence of God, that somme scholde be gouernoures in realmes and somme subiectes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Therefore peple descendenge from Sem, the firste son of Noe, hade in possession the londe meridien, whiche was from the rysenge of the son to the Feniceannes vnder xxvij^{ti} langages, occupienge cccc. and vj. cuntres. And men that come of Cham occupied ccc. xc. cuntres and iiij., vnder xxx^{ti} langages, from Sydon by the sowthe ocean vn to the see Gaditan. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* And men that come of Iapheth occupiede from the mounte callede Taurus towarde the northe, and halfe parte of Asia, and alle Europa vn to the see of Briteyne, conteynenge cc. cuntres, vnder xv. langages, levenge to the places and to MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[2] Possibly *þat* should be cancelled; it is found however in α. β. γ., as well as in MS.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *seruauntes*, Cx.
[5] *by*, α. and Cx.
[6] *to*] om. α. and Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] Added from α. and (partly) Cx.
[9] *contrayes and sixe*] MS. (first hand.)
[10] *to half dele*, Cx.
[11] *occean*, α.

Nomina locorum unde derivantur.

pulis[1] relinquentes; de quibus plurima sunt immutata aut a regibus locorum, aut ab ipsis locis, aut[2] ab incolarum moribus. Cætera autem permanent, ut[3] fuerunt. Ita etiam[4] ut[5] hodie rationabiliter appareat unde fuerunt[6] derivata, sicut ex Assur Assyrii, ex Heber Hebræi. De quibusdam vero ratio non apparet, sicut illud quod dicunt Ægyptios[7] pertinere ad Mesraim,[8] Æthiopes ad Chus. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*[9] A Chus usque[10] nunc Æthiopes dicti sunt Chusei, a Mesraim[11] Ægyptii dicti sunt Mesrei. Sicque[12] gente per terras divisa aliqui nomina locis imposuerunt; aliqui, ut Græci, ad libitum nomina mutaverunt, aut propter scripturæ decorem, aut propter[13] legentium delectationem, aut ut[14] antiquorum gloriam suam propriam facerent. *Hugutio, capitulo*[15] *Phrygia.*[16]

Diversa nomina pro diversis conditionibus.

Sæpe etiam pro qualitate negotii varia imponuntur nomina; ut cum Trojanos volumus designare timidos, vocamus[17] eos Phrygios; si generosos, vocamus[18] eos Dardanos; si fortes, dicimus eos Trojanos; si audaces, vocamus[19] eos Hectores.[20] *Isidorus, libro nono,*[21] *capitulo secundo.* Gentes orientales in gutture verba collidunt,

[1] *locis et populis*] gentibus et regnis, C.D.
[2] *aut*] om. A.
[3] *permanent, ut*] *permanentia*, B.
[4] *etiam*] om. A.B.C.; *ut etiam*, D., which is better.
[5] *jam*, ins. C.
[6] *fuerant*, B.
[7] So D.; *Egiptiones*, A.E.
[8] *mensuram*, B.
[9] 2°, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 6.
[10] *sicut*, C.D.
[11] *a Mesraim*] added from C.D.
[12] *quia sic*, A.B.
[13] *propter*] om. A.
[14] *ut*] om. A.
[15] *de*, C. Reference omitted in D.
[16] *Frigia*, MSS. Other slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapter.
[17] *dicimus*, C.D.
[18] *dicimus*, B.C.; *eos*, om. B.D.
[19] *dicimus*, C.D.
[20] *Hectoreos*, D.
[21] 14, C. Extract from Isidore omitted in D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 1.

puple his name; of the whiche meny beeþ now i-changed oþer of kynges of londes, oþer of the same londes, oþer of maneres[1] of men of londes. Oþer thinges stondeþ, as it were;[2] so þat ȝit it is sene of whom þey come; as þe Assures come of Assur, and the Hebrewes come of Heber. Of som is no resoun i-knowe, as þat þat me seieþ þat þe Egipcians perteyneþ to Mesraim and Ethiopes to Chus. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* Of Chus forto now þe Ethiopes beeþ i-cleped Cusey[3] and þe Egipcians Mesrei. And so, when men were to schift into dyuers londes, som chaungede names as hem likede, as the Grees, oþer for fairenesse of wrytinge, oþer for likynge of rederes, oþer forto make her owne [selfe the][4] noblete of hir forfadres. *Hugo, capitulo Frigia.*[5] Ofte names beeþ i-sette for a manere of doynge.[6] As whan we wole mene þat þe[7] Troians beeþ feerful, we cleped hem Frigios; and ȝif we wole mene þat þey beþ gentil and noble, we clepeþ hem Dardans; ȝif we wil mene þat þey beeþ stronge, we clepeþ hem Troians; ȝif hardy, we clepeþ hem Hectores.[8] *Isidorus, libro* 14°, *capitulo secundo.* Men of the est sowneþ her — TREVISA.

---

the peple names. Of whom mony thynges be chaunged now, other of kynges of those places, other of the places, other elles thro the maneres of the inhabitatores of theym. Other thynges be permanente as thei were, as men of Assiria toke theire name of Assur, men of Hebrewe of Heber. *Ozee,*[9] *libro primo, capitulo quinto.* Men of Ethiope be callede vn to this tyme Chusei, of Chus, and men of Egipte Mesrei, of Mesra. Soe this peple, diuided by regiones and cuntrees, some men haue ȝiffen names to places, somme men haue ȝiffen names to them after theire pleasure, like to men off Grewe. Somme men haue chaungede the names for feirenesse of scripture, other for the delectacion of men redenge, other elles that thei myȝhte ascribe to theyme the lawde of olde men as theire propre lawde. *Hugutio, capitulo Frigia.* Diuerse names be assignede ofte for the qualite of labores, as callenge men of Troy Frigios, when we wille calle thyeme afrayede, callenge theyme Dardanos when thei be gentille, and Troianes when we wille calle theyme myȝty, and Hectores when we calle theyme bolde. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto, capitulo secundo.* Peple of the este sownde the wordes in the throte, — MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *manere*, MS.
[2] *stande as they were*, Cx.
[3] *Chusei*, *a.*
[4] Added from Cx.
[5] *Frisia*, MS. and *a.*
[6] *Dyverce namys after dyverce condycyouns* in margin of MS. and *a.*
[7] So *a.* and Cx.; *þei*, MS.
[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *Ector*, MS.
[9] So Harl. MS. for *Iosephus.*

ut Hebræi et Syri; gentes mediterraneæ in palato feriunt,[1] ut Græci et Asiani;[2] occidentales inter dentes verba frangunt, ut Romani et Hispani. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*[3]

Regna quatuor primæva, Assyriorum, Ægyptiorum, Scytharum, Sicyoniorum.

Sed a principio dispersionis[4] gentium quamquam[5] regna Assyriorum in oriente, Ægyptiorum in meridie, Scytharum in aquilone, Sicyoniorum in occidente, id est,[6] in Græcia, fuerunt quasi coæva quoad initium, *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo,* regna tamen Assyriorum, Medorum, seu[7] Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum consequenter sibi[8] succedentia fuerunt principalia inter cætera quoad progressum; quorum tamen primum et ultimum clariora fuere[9] et durabiliora. Cætera quoque regna sive reges velut appendices istorum dixerim;[10] Atheniensium quoque gesta majora fuere fama quam reipsa, teste Salustio et Varrone,[11] et hoc propter scriptorum et philosophorum ibidem florentium præclara ingenia, qui gesta ipsa laudibus nimium extulerunt. *Ranulphus.* At[12] quia tractatus generalis quatuor regnorum principalium prædictorum,[13] a principio videlicet[14] regni[15] Assyriorum usque ad finem regni Romanorum vastum[16] [17] vendicat procursum, idcirco de

Regna quatuor principalia demum effecta, Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, Romanorum.

[1] *fereunt*, A.; *ferent*, B.
[2] *Aciani*, B.
[3] E. omits *c.* 18. The true reference is to c. 17. apparently; just below lib. xviii. c. 2. is certainly intended.
[4] *dispositionis*, B.
[5] *quamvis*, B.; *licet*, C.D., which abbreviate the sentence.
[6] *scilicet*, B.
[7] *et*, C. D.
[8] *sibi*] om. D.
[9] *latiora fuerunt*, B.
[10] *dixerunt*, D.
[11] *Verone*, A.
[12] *Et*, C.D.
[13] *prædictorum*] om. C.D.
[14] *scilicet*, C.D.
[15] *regni*] om. A.
[16] *vastat*, A.
[17] *sibi*, ins. C.D.

wordes in þe þrote as Hebrewes and Siries;[1] men of myddel londes in þe roof of þe mouþ, as Grees and Asyans; men of þe west brekeþ here words bytwene þe teeþ, as Spaynardes[2] and Romayns. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*[3] But siþe þat men were first to schift[4] into dyuerse londes, þey þe kyngdoms of Assiries[5] in þe est, of Egipcians in þe souþ, and of Sithes[6] in þe norþ, þat is in þe[7] Grees, begunne as it were at ones: *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo*:—noþeles the kyngdoms [of][8] Assiries, of Medes, þat is of Perses, of Grees, of Romayns, folowede eche after oþer, and were principal among oþere. Noþeles þe firste and þe laste were more noble, and durede lengere.[9] Oþer kyngdoms [and kynges longede to þese kyngdoms].[10] Also berynge and dedes of men of Athenys beeþ gretter in loos and in fame þan þey beþ in dede; so seiþ Salustius and Varro[11] also. And þat is for[12] writers and philosofres of Athenes were solempne of witt, and preysede þe dedes hugeliche and ouermesure. ℞. And for þe tretysis[13] ful and general of þe forsaide foure cheef kyngdoms, from þe begynnynge of þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe ende of þe kyngdom of Romayns, axeþ longe writyne and proces; þerfore TREVISA.

---

as men of Hebrewe and of Siria, peple of the myddel cuntre breke theire wordes in the hier parte of the mowthe, as men of Grece and of Asia, men and peple of the weste breke theire wordes amonge the teithe, as men of Rome and of Speyne. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo, capitulo primo.* Neuerthelesse the realmes of Assiria, Media, or of Persia, of Grekes and of Romanes, by succession were realmes moste principalle amonge other realmes, as vn to progresse, the firste of whom and the laste were moste clere and durable. And other realmes and kynges were as dependenge to theyme; for the gestes of kynges of Athenes were made more glorious in fame than thei were in trawthe, and that was causede by the actes of philosophers and of other discrete men inhabitenge that study, exaltenge the gestes with grete lawde. ℞. And for cause that a generalle tracte of the iiij. principalle realmes afore seide, from the begynnenge of that realme of Assiria vn to the ende of the reigne of the Romanes, dothe require a large f. 78. b. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Syres*, α.
[2] *Spaynols*, Cx.
[3] Cx. prints *octodecimo* (at length, and so below.)
[4] *firste skatred*, Cx.
[5] *Assyriens*, Cx.
[6] *Schytes*, α.; *Shites*, Cx.
[7] þe] om. α.
[8] Added from α.
[9] *lengere þan*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[10] Added from α. and Cx.
[11] *Farro*, MS. and α.
[12] *for that*, Cx.
[13] *tretys is*, MSS. and Cx.

tribus regnis primævis, regno Assyriorum quasi coævis, primitus est agendum.[1]

Cap. VIII.

De regnis Scytharum, Ægyptiorum, Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum.[2]

§ 1. *Regnum Scytharum incipit.*[3]

Tanaus primus rex Scytharum.

[4]Regnum[5] Scytharum[6] in aquilone, quod ratione temporis et ætatis secundum post Assyrios vendicat ordinem, incepit tempore Sarug[7] proavi Abrahæ sub Thanao primo ipsorum[8] rege, a quo fluvius[9] Thanay videtur denominari,[10] qui ad orbis boream dividit Asiam ab Europa. Hoc quidem[11] regnum nulli hominum unquam cessit, quin[12] etiam Asiam ter conquisivit, Darium regem Persarum fugavit, Cyrum regem occidit, Zephironem Alexandri magni ducem delevit.

Reges Sicyonis.

Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.[13] Aliud quoque regnum in occidente fuit[14] Sicyoniorum,[15] id est, Arcadiæ, quæ pars est Græciæ in Europa, currens sub Agilao[16] primo per annos nongentos septuaginta unum sub regibus

[1] *tractandum*, C.D.
[2] Title wanting in MSS.
[3] A.B.C.D. omit title of the section; and so below; *incepit*, E., here and below.
[4] *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.
[5] *itaque*, ins. C.D.
[6] *Scitatarum*, A.
[7] *Sarag*, E.
[8] *illorum*, A.B.; *eorum*, C.D.
[9] *flumen*, C.D.
[10] *denominatur*, C.D.
[11] *quidem*] om. B.
[12] *quin*] om. B.
[13] 40, B.; C.D. omit reference.
[14] *fuit*] om. B.
[15] *Cicionorum*, A.; *Scicioniorum*, B.; *Sicioniorum*, D.; *Scicionorum*, E.; and similarly below.
[16] *sub Agilao*] *a Gilao*, B. Ægialeus is the true form of the name of the first mythic king of Sicyon.

of þre þe[1] firste kyngdoms, as it were of þe same age wiþ þe kyngdom of Assiries, firste we schal write. TREVISA.

Capitulum octavum.

THE kyngdom of Sithes[2] in þe north by cause of age and of tyme axeþ þe secounde place in ordre, and is sette after þe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus þe firste kyng þat[3] was þere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semeþ þat þe ryver Thanays haþ þe name of þis kyng Thanaus; þe whiche ryuer in þe norþside of þe world departeþ betwene Asya and Europa. Þis kyngdom was neuere ouercome, but þries he conquerede Asia and ouercome Darius, kyng of Perses, and slowh Cyrus þe kyng, and dede awey Zephiron, þat was þe grete Alisaundre his ledere. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Also anoþer kyngdom was in þe west, and was þe kyngdom of Scicions,[4] þat is of Arcadia, a partie of Grees in Europa, and durede vnder Agilaus first nyne hondred ȝere þre score and enlevene. Agilaus is a lorde, as it were a kyng oþer an emperoure. Afterwarde

---

processe, þerfore we wylle procede and determinate of the thre firste realmes as egalle to hit. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the inception of realmes. Capitulum octavum.

THE realme of Scitia, other the reigne of kynges in hit, whiche chalangethe the secunde place and ordre after men of Assiria, began in the tyme of Sarug, grawntefader to Thare the fader of Abraham, requirenge that place bothe by the reason of tyme and of age, vnder Thanaus, firste kynge of theyme, of whom that floode callede Thanay semethe to haue taken name, whiche diuidethe Asia from Europa in the northe partes of the worlde. That realme was not getten by conqueste of eny man, but men in hit conquerede iij. tymes Asia, causenge Darius kynge of Persia to flee; sleenge also Cirus the kynge, and destroyenge Zephiro, duke of grete Alexander. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* There was an other realme in the weste[5] of men of Scitia, that is to say of Archadia, whiche is a parte of Grece in Europa, rennenge other contynuenge vnder the firste Agilaus by ix$^{c.}$ yere lxxj., vnder xxxj^{ti} kynges, from

---

[1] *þre þe*] So MS., *α. β. γ.*
[2] *Schytes, α.*
[3] *þer, α.*
[4] Either for *Sicyon* or *Sicyonians.*
[5] *este*, MS. originally; but the correction may be by the first hand.

triginta uno, ab[1] anno vicesimo quarto Nachor avi Abrahæ usque ad Zeuxippum,[2] qui regnavit septimodecimo anno Hely sacerdotis. Inde quædam regio in Arcadia quondam vocabatur[3] Agealea,[4] quæ tamen postmodum dicta est Peloponnesus,[5] ubi fuit unum de Græciœ[6] regnis.[7] *Ranulphus.*[8] Vult tamen Dionysius quod[9] regnum Sicyoniorum inceperit quinquagesimo[10] anno Thare, vicesimo videlicet[11] anno ante nativitatem Abrahæ, in quo regnavit primus[12] Cecrops[13] per annos quadraginta quinque.[14]

§ 2. *Regnum Ægyptiorum incipit.*

Menes primus rex Ægypti.

Aliud[15] regnum quasi coævum[16] prædictis fuit regnum Ægyptiorum in meridie, quod tempore[17] Nachor avi Abrahæ incepit, habens quindecim dynastias, quæ dicuntur summæ potestates, a primo Mineo vel Zones[18] usque ad tempora Abrahæ. Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt sexdecim dynastias. Tandem Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones,[19] tenuerunt octodecim dynastias.[20] Sicque duravit hoc regnum Ægyptiorum usque ad tempus

Variæ in Ægypto dynastiæ.

Persarum occupatio.

---

[1] *sub*, D., and similarly in some other places.
[2] *Zeusippum*, MSS.
[3] *dicebatur*, C.
[4] *Agealia*, A.D. The true form is *Ægialeia.*
[5] *Peloponensis*, MSS.
[6] So, A.B.; *Græcis*, E.
[7] *Græciæ regnum*, C.D.
[8] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[9] *quia*, B.
[10] *primo*, ins. C.D.
[11] *scilicet*, C.D.
[12] *primus*] om. D.
[13] *Cicrops*, MSS.
[14] *quadraginta quinque*] om. B.
[15] *etiam*, ins. C.D.
[16] *vicinum istis*, B.
[17] *tempore*] xlv. anno, B.
[18] *Zenes*, A.
[19] *Pharones*, E.
[20] *Deinde . . . dynastias*] Deinde 16 dynastias tenuerunt Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, C.D. Higden should have written *Dios-politani.*

TREVISA.

þis kyngdom durede, vnder oon and pritty kings,[1] from þe foure and twenty ȝere of Nachor Abraham his graunsire anon to Zeuxippus,[2] þat reignede þe ȝere of Hely þe preost seuentene. Þerfore oon kyngdom in Arcadia somtyme heet Agealea. Noþeles afterward hit heet Peloponnensis; þere was oon of þe kyngdom of Grees. [℞.][3] Noþeles Denys seiþ þat þe kyndom of Scicions bygan þe ȝere of Thare fifty; þat was twenty ȝere or Abraham was i-bore; Thare was Abraham his fader. In þis kyngdom þe firste kyng was Cecrops,[4] and reignede fyue and fifty ȝere. Anoþer kyngdom as hit were in þe same age with þe[5] forseide kyngdoms was[6] þe kyngdom of Egipt in þe souþ, and bygan in Nachor his tyme, Abraham[7] his grauntsire. Þis kyngdom hadde fiftene grete lordeschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias, from þe firste Mineus, oþer Zones,[8] to Abrahams tyme. Afterward Thebei, men of Thebes, hylde sixtene[9] grete lordschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias.[10] Þan Diapolitani, þat were i-cleped Pharaones, þat were kynges of Egipt, hylde ciȝtetene grete lordschippes and cleped hem Dynastias. Dynastia is *grete lordschippe*, and power durynge in a prouince to chese[11] kyng oþer emperoure. And so þis kyngdom of Egipt durede anon to þe tyme of Cambys[es][12] þat was

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

the xxiiij[the] yere of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham, vn to Zeuxippus,[2] whiche reignede in the xvij[the] yere of Hely the preste. Where of a region in Archadia was callede somme tyme Agialia, whiche was callede afterwarde Peloponensis, where oon realme of Grece was. ℞. Neuerthelesse Dionisius wille that þe reigne of men of Scitia began in the l[ti] yere of Thare, that was afore the natiuite of Abraham by xx[ti] yere, in whom Cicrops reignede firste by xlv. yeres. Also the realme of men of Egipte in the [sowthe] was coegalle vn to theyme whiche began in the tyme of Nachor, grawntefader to Abraham, hauenge xv. hye potestates from the firste Mineus other Zones vn to the tymes of Abraham. After that men callede Thebei occupiede and did holde xvj. hye potestates. At the laste Diapolitanes, whiche were callede Pharaones, holded xviij. hie potestates, and so the realme of men of Egipte durede vn to the times of Cambises, son of Cirus kynge of Persia, to

---

[1] So α. and Cx.; *kyngdoms*, MS.
[2] *Zeusippus*, MSS. and Cx.
[3] Reference added from α. and Cx.
[4] *Cicropos*, MS.; *Cicrops*, α.
[5] *þese*, α. Cx.
[6] *þat was*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[7] *Abrahams*, α.
[8] *sonnes*, Cx.
[9] *sexten*, Cx.
[10] *Damastias*, MS., and similarly below.
[11] *that chose*, Cx.
[12] *Cambis*, MS. and α.

Cambysis,[1] filii Cyri regis Persarum, cui pater adhuc vivens regnum Assyriorum jam tunc ad Medos translatum concesserat, et eum[2] Nabugodonozor cognominaverat;[3] cujus quoque[4] princeps Holofernes[5] Ægyptum subjugavit. Et extunc sub septem regibus Persarum Ægyptus mansit.

Decem reges indigenæ.

Post quos recessit Ægyptus a Persis, habens decem[6] proprios reges; quousque Ochus, qui et[7] Artaxerxes,[8] rex Persarum duodecimus, expulso usque ad[9] Æthiopiam Nectanebo,[10] rege Ægypti ultimo, regnum Ægypti recuperaret.

Persæ iterum occupant Ægyptum.

Quod quidem regnum extunc[11] sub tribus regibus Persarum mansit usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni. Ex quo tempore regnum Ægypti et Persarum cessit ditioni Græcorum per annos trecentos sub regibus tredecim, qui dicebantur Lagidæ sive[12] Ptolemæi[13] usque[14] ad tempora Julii Cæsaris, sive, ut quibusdam placet, usque ad quintumdecimum annum Augusti Cæsaris, qui superavit Cleopatram filiam Dionysi[15] Ptolemæi ultimi Lagidæ.[14][16]

Succedunt Lagidæ vel Ptolemæi.

Romanis cedit Ægyptus.

Ex quo tempore[17] Ægyptus cessit Romanis. Sicque a principio omnes reges Ægypti usque ad Alexandrum fuerunt

---

[1] *Cambise*, A.E. (not D.)

[2] *eum*] om. C.D.

[3] So C.D.; *cognominavit*, B.; *cognoverat*, A.E.

[4] *etiam*, C.

[5] *Olofernes*, B.D.

[6] *duos*, E.

[7] *et*] om. E.

[8] *Artharxerses*, A.; *Artaxerses*, B., *Artexerses*, E.

[9] *usque ad*] usque in, B.; in, C.D.

[10] *Nectanabo*, MSS.

[11] *extunc*] om. D.

[12] *sive*] om. B.

[13] *Ptolomei*, MSS., here and below.

[14] *usque . . . Lagidæ*] om. A.B.(not C.D.)

[15] *Dionisii*, MSS.

[16] Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

[17] *Ex quo tempore*] Et extunc, C.D.

TREVISA.

Cyrus his sone. Cyrus was kyng of Pers, and ȝaf while he lyuede þe kyngdom of Assyria þat was þoo i-torned to þe Medes to his sone Cambys[es], and cleped him Nabugodonosor also, and his prince Olofernes,[1] and sodued Egipt. And Egipt was vnder seuene kynges of Perse, and after wente from the Perses, and hadde ten kynges of her owne forto Ochus, þat heet Artaxerxes[2] also, þe twelfþe kyng of Perses, put out Nactanabo,[3] the leste kyng of Egipt, anon to Ethiopia, and wan þe kyngdom of Egipt. Afterward þe kyngdom durede vnder þre kynges[4] anoon to the seuenþe ȝere of þe grete Alisaundre,[5] after [þat][6] þe kyngdoms of Egipt and of Perse was[7] vnder þe Grees þre hondred ȝere vnder þrittene kynges, þat were i-cleped Lagides and Ptholomeus[8] anoon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; oþer, as som mem meneþ, anon to þe fiftenþe ȝere of Augustus Cesar that ouercome Cleopatra,[9] Denys his doȝhter. Denys was Ptholomeus and last Lagid. Egipt from that[10] tyme fel to[11] Romanys,[12] and so al þe kynges of Egipt from the firste begynnynge anon to Alisaundre were foure score and eleuene. Þe kynges of Egipt were first i-cleped

MS. HARL. 2261.

whom his fader ȝafe, beenge in lyfe, the realme of Assiria, whiche he did translate to men of Medea, and namede hym Nabugodnosor, whose prince, Olofernes by name, subduede to him Egipte, and after that Egipte remaynede under vij. kynges of Persia. After whom Egipte was occupiede by x. kynges of that cuntre, vn til that Ochus, otherwise callede Artaxerses, þe xij^the kynge of Persia, expellenge Nectanabus, kynge of Egipte, vn to Ethioppe, recurede that realme ageyne. Whiche realme remaynede afterwarde vnder thre kynges of Persia vn to the vij^the yere of Alexander the Conqueroure, from whiche tyme the realmes of Persia and also of Egipte began to be subiecte to the domination of Grekes by ccc. yere, vnder xiij. kynges, whiche were callede Lagide other Ptolomei, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar; other elles, after somme men, vn to the xv^the yere of Augustus Cesar, whiche hade victory of Cleopatra, the doȝhter of Dionysius Ptolomeus, laste of that name callede Lagide. From whiche tyme Egipte was subiecte to the Romanes. Soe alle the kynges in Egipte from the begynnenge to kynge Alexander were xc., of whom the firste were callede Dinas-

[1] So α.; *Olofernus*, MS.
[2] *Arthaexerses*, MS.; *Artharexerses*, α.
[3] So α. and Cx., *Nactabono*, MS.
[4] So Cx.; *þre kyndoms*, α.; *þe kyng Donis*, MS.
[5] *Alexander*, α.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] So MS., α. β. γ.; *were*, Cx. Perhaps his own correction.
[8] *Tholomeus*, Cx. (i.e. *Ptolemies.*)
[9] *Cleopatram*, α.
[10] So Cx.; *the*, MS.
[11] So α. and Cx.; *in to*, MS.
[12] *þe Romayns*, α.

nonaginta,[1] quorum primi dicebantur Diastenes,[2] postmodum[3] Pharaones, tandem[4] Lagidæ sive Ptolemæi. *Josephus, libro octavo,[5] capitulo tertio.*[6] Reges Ægypti ab infantia aliis reor[7] nominibus appellari, sed ad imperium ascendentes vocabantur Pharaones,[8] quod lingua Ægyptiaca[9] sonat *rex;* sic etiam[10] reges Alexandriæ ad regnum pervenientes[11] vocabantur Ptolemæi, et reges Romanorum dicebantur Cæsares;[12] sed post socerum Salomonis nullum legi apud Ægyptios Pharaonem vocatum.

§ 3. *Incipit regnum Assyriorum.*[13]

Regnum Beli antiquissimum.

Augustinus De Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.[14] Quartum regnum sed tempore primum fuit[15] Assyriorum in oriente sub Belo Nemprotide, incipiens vicesimo quinto anno Sarug proavi Abrahæ, quod toti[16] Asiæ excepta India dominabatur. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.*[17] Et duravit per annos mille trecentos duo sub regibus triginta septem usque ad ultimum Sardanapalum,[18] qui obiit septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda. Deinde Arbaces sive Arbaccus[19] præpositus[20] et interfector regis transtulit monarchiam Assyriorum[21] ad Medos, quod intelligendum est spe sed nondum[22] re.[23] *Ranulphus.* Nam apud Assyrios post Sardana-

Durat usque ad Sardanapalum.

Arbaces regnum ad Medos transfert.

[1] 91, A.B.C.D., and so Trevisa, but not Harl. MS. Higden should have written *septuaginta* according to his own calculation, including Alexander.

[2] *Diastines,* A.; *Dinastines,* D. Higden doubtless intended *Dynastæ.*

[3] *postea,* C.D.; *deinde,* B., omitting *tandem.*

[4] *post Alexandrum,* ins. C.D.

[5] 4°, C.

[6] 4°, C.; 8°, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 6.

[7] *sentio,* C. (not D.)

[8] *Pharaones . . . Cæsares*] om. B.

[9] *lingua Ægyptiaca*] Ægyptiace, D.

[10] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[11] *venientes,* C.

[12] The reference to Augustin is brought in here in C.D., and the passage is abbreviated.

[13] A.B.C.D. omit title of the section.

[14] The true reference is to c. 17.

[15] *regnum,* ins. B.

[16] *quod toti*] totique, C.D.

[17] 140, B.

[18] *Sardanapallum,* MSS.

[19] *sive Arbaccus*] om. C.D.

[20] *propositus,* D.

[21] *usque,* ins. B.

[22] *in,* ins. A.C. (not D.)

[23] Slightly transposed in C.D.

Dyastenes, and þan Pharaones, and at þe last Lagides and Ptholomeus.[1] *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þe kynges of Egipt hadde in her childhode oþer names, but whanne they were i-made kynges þey were i-cleped Pharaones. For a kyng is i-cleped Pharao in þe longage of Egipt. Þe kynges of Alexandria were i-cleped Ptholomeies, when þey were i-maked[2] kynges; and þe kynges of Romaynes were i-cleped Cesars. Salomon wedded a kynges douȝter of Egipt; [I rede of no kyng after hym of Egipt][3] þat was cleped Pharao. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.* Þe fourþe kyngdom, but þe eldest of tyme, is þe kyngdom of Assiries; and bygan in þe est vnder Belus Nemproth þe fyue and twenty[4] ȝere of Sarug þat was Abrahams fader[5] grauntsire. Þis kyngdom had lordschippe of al Asia outake Inde. *Petrus sexagesimo.* And it durede a þowsand ȝere þre hundred and tweyne, vnder seuene and þritty kynges anon to þe [last][6] Sardanapallus þe kyng, þat dyede in[7] þe seuenþe ȝere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. Þan Arbaces, þat heet Abbacus[8] also, þe kynges styward and his traytour, for he slowh hym and tornede þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe Medes, þat is to vndirstondynge in hope and nouȝt in dede. [R.][9] For after Sardanapallus from þe TREVISA.

---

tines, after that Pharaones, at the laste Lagide or Ptolomei. *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.* Kynges of Egipte, as I suppose, hauenge other names in theire yowthe, ascendenge to the empyre were callede Pharaones, whiche is callede a kynge after the langage of men of Egipte. Soe in lyke wise kynges of Alexandrye ascendenge to thempyre were callede Ptolomei, and kynges of the Romans were callede Cesares. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* The iij^the realme, but firste in tyme, was of men of Assiria in the este, vnder Belus Nemprotides in the begynnenge, in the xxv^ti yere of Sarug grauntefader to Thare, whiche hade dominacion in alle Asia, Ynde excepte. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* And that realme indurede by a m^l ccc. ij. yere, vnder xxxvij^ti kynges, vn to the laste Sardanapallus, whiche diede the vij^the yere of Ozias, kynge of Iuda. After that Arbases, other wise callede Arbaccus, the governour and sleer of the kynge, did translate the monarchye of men of Assiria vn to men of Media; whiche is to be vnderstonde in kynde other in similitude, but not in trawethe. ℞. For vij. myȝhty MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Ptolomees*, α.
[2] *made*, α.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] So α. and Cx.; *þritty*, MS.
[5] *ffader*, α.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *in*] om. α. and Cx.
[8] *Abaccus*, α.
[9] Added from α. and Cx.

palum, a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda[1] usque ad Manassen regem Juda, per annos circiter centum et duodecim, septem fuerunt reges potentes,[2] quamvis non monarchæ, quorum nomina sunt Arbaces, Phull,[3] Tegla-Falasar,[4] Salmanazar,[5] Senacherib, Assaradon, Sargon.[6] Volunt tamen quidam[7] ut post mortem Sardanapali, a septimo anno Oziæ usque ad vicesimum[8] primum annum transmigrationis Judaicæ, monarchia orientis steterit apud Medos per annos ducentos sexaginta sub regibus octo, a primo scilicet Arbace usque ad ultimum Astyagen; qui fuit avunculus Darii et avus Cyri; quem Astyagen Cyrus subvertens transtulit regnum Medorum ad monarchiam Persarum, relicto ibi[9] Astyagi[10] regno Hyrcanorum.[11] Veruntamen[12] tempore Senecherib regis Assyriorum et Ezechiæ regis Juda surrexit magnum regnum Babyloniorum et Chaldæorum,[13] currens sub regibus septem, qui sunt Merodak seu Baladak,[14] Nabugodonosor, Nabogodonosor secundus,[15] E[vi]lmerodac,[16] Regusar,[17] Labofardac, Balthazar,[18] qui et Nabar; quem occidens Cyrus junctus Dario avunculo suo transtulit

Reges Assyriorum post Sardanapalum non monarchæ; eorum nomina.

Regnum Babylonis tempore Ezechiel exortum. Regum nomina.

---

[1] *regis Juda*] om. C.D.

[2] *potes*, A.

[3] *Phulli*, B.

[4] *Teglafalazar*, A.; *Tegbathfalazar*, B.; *Teglasphalusar*, D.

[5] *Salmanasar*, D.

[6] The orthography of E. for these Assyrian kings has been kept here and below.

[7] *quidem*, A.; *quidam tamen*, B.

[8] *tricesimum*, B.C.; 31, D.

[9] *ibi*] *ipso*, A. (second hand); *illi*, which the Harl. MS. probably had, seems to be the true reading.

[10] *Astragi*, B.

[11] *relicto . . . Hyrcanorum*] om. C. D.; the whole passage being slightly transposed.

[12] *Denique*, C.; *Diebus tamen*, D.

[13] *Caldeorum*, A.D.

[14] *Merodac seu Balodac*, A.; *Balladac*, B.; *Meradac seu Baladac*, D.

[15] *Nabugodonosor secundus*] om. A.B.C.D.

[16] *Evilmerodac*, A.D.

[17] *Ragusar*, D.

[18] *Baltasar*, A.; *Balthasar*, D.

TREVISA.

seuenþe ȝere of Ozias kyng of Iuda to Manasses kyng of Iuda, aboute an hondred ȝere and twelue, the Assiries hadde seuen myȝty kynges, þey [he][1] hadde nouȝt þe kyngdom al hool, of þe whiche þese beeþ þe names: Arbaces, Phull, Teglafalasar, Salmanasar, Senacheryb, Assaradon, Sargon. Noþeles som wil mene þat after Sardanapallus his deþ, from þe seuenþe ȝere of Ozias þe kyng to þe ȝere of[2] transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þritty, þe hoole kyngdom of þe est stood with þe Medes two hondred ȝere and þritty vnder eyȝte kynges, from þe firste Arbaces anon to Astyages þat was Darius em[3] and Cyrus his grauntsire. Cyrus ouertorned þis Astyages, and tornede þe kyngdom of Medes to þe hool kyngdom of Perses, and lefte þe kyngdom of Hircans to Astyages. Noþeles in Senacheryb kyng of Assiries his tyme, and in Ezechias his tyme kyng of Iuda, com vppe þe[4] grete kyngdom of þe Babileyns and Caldeys, and durede vnder seuene kynges,[5] þat beeþ Meredak,[6] þat hatte Baladak also; Nabugodonosor, Euilmederok,[7] Rugusar,[8] Labofardok,[9] Balthasar, þat heet Nabar also. Hym slowh Cyrus i-socied to his eme[3] Darius,

MS. HARL. 2261.

kynges reignede in Assiria after Sardanapallus, thauȝhe thei occupiede not the holle monarchye, from the vij[the] yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda, by a c. yere and xij., the names of whom were Arbases, Phullus, Theglatphalazar, Salmanazar, Sennacherib, Assaradon, and Sargon. Neuerthelesse somme men wille that the monarchye of the este stode at men of Media after the dethe of Sardanapallus, from the vij[the] yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda vn to the xxxj[ti] yere of the transmigracion of the Iewes, by cc. yere and lx. yere, vnder viij. kynges, from the firste Arbases vn to the laste Astiages, whiche was vncle to Darius and graunte-fader to Cirus. Whiche Cirus, ouercommenge Astiages, did translate the realme of Media to the monarchye of men of Persia, levenge to that Astiages the realme of Hircannes. And in the reigne of Sennacherib kynge of Assiria, and of Ezechias kinge of Iuda, a grete realme of men of Caldea and of Babilon did aryse,[10] contynuede vnder vij. kynges, whiche were Merodac other Beladas, Nabugodnosor, Euilmerodac, Egesar, Regusar, Labefardac, Balthazar, other elles Nabar, whom Cirus sleenge, þro help of Darius his

[1] Added from *a*.
[2] *of þe*, *a*.
[3] *eem*, *a*.; *vncle*, Cx., and so below.
[4] *to þe*, MS. (not *a*. or Cx.)
[5] So Cx.; *kyngdoms*, MS. and *a*.
[6] Here and below the orthography of the proper names has been left unaltered.
[7] *Euilmerodoc*, *a*.
[8] *Regusar*, *a*.
[9] *Labofardak*, *a*.
[10] *a ryse*, Harl. MS.; similarly *a passede* below.

regnum ad Persas et Medos [1] sub anno transmigrationis Judaicæ [2] tricesimo primo; et [3] sic fluxerunt anni ducenti [4] sexaginta a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda, quo cepit deficere monarchia Assyriorum usque ad tricesimum primum annum transmigrationis quando incepit monarchia Persarum.

§ 4. *Regnum Persarum.*

Cyrus, rex primus Persarum. Nomina successorum.

[5] Deinde monarchia Persarum ab anno tricesimo primo transmigrationis [6] usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni,[7] hoc est, a primo Cyro usque [8] ultimum Darium filium Arsamis,[9] duravit per annos ducentos triginta quinque [10] sub regibus tredecim, qui sunt, secundum Giraldum, Cyrus primus; [11] Cambyses secundus, quem pater suus Cyrus cognominaverat Nabugodonozor, et se vivente [12] Nineven cum regno Assyriorum tradiderat annis duodecim, sub quo etiam historia Judith contigit; tertius Ermeides [13] magus; quartus Darius,[14] filius Hystaspis;[15] quintus Xerxes; sextus Artaxerxes;[16] septimus Xerxes;[17] octavus Sogdianus;[18] nonus Darius [19]

---

1 *et Medos*] om. E.

2 *Judaicæ*] om. C.D., which have slight transpositions.

3 ℞, ins. C.D.

4 *trescenti*, B.

5 *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

6 *quando . . . transmigrationis*] om. B.

7 *Magni*] om. B.

8 *ad*, ins. B.

9 *Arsanni*, or *Arsanii*, MSS., and so below. Possibly Higden himself wrote the erroneous form.

10 239 *annis*, C. (not D.)

11 *licet alii ponant Darium avunculum Cyri esse primum*, ins. C.D.

12 *se vivente et*, C.D. (the latter omits *et* altogether.)

13 *Ermeides*] Ermoides, B.; Emeridius, C.D.

14 *Carius*, C.D.

15 *Itapsis*, MSS.

16 *qui et Longimanus, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt*, ins. B.C.D.; *qui et Longimanus dictus est, sub quo Esdras et Nehemias floruerunt*, A. The versions also vary.

17 *septimus Xerxes*] om. E.

18 *Fogodianus*, MSS.

19 *Sarius*, B.

TREVISA.

and tornede his kyngdom [to þe kyngdom] [1] of Perse and of Medes þe ȝere of þe transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þritty. And so passede two hondred ȝere and sixty from þe seuenþe ȝere of Ezechias [2] kyng of Iuda. In þe whiche ȝere bygan to faille þe hole kyngdom of Assiries anon to þe ȝere of þe transmygracioun oon and þritty. Þoo bygan þe hool kyngdom of Pers. [3] [Þan þe hole kyngdom of Perse,] [4] from þe ȝere of þe transmygracioun oon and þritty anon to þe seuenþe ȝere of þe grete Alexandre, þat was from þe firste Cyrus to þe laste Darius Arsanius his sone, durede two hondred ȝere and fyue and þritty vnder þrittene kynges; þat was Cyrus þe firste, Cambyses þe seconde. His fader Cyrus ȝaf hym anoþer name, and cleped hym Nabugodonosor, and ȝaf hym Nynyve wiþ þe kyngdom of Assiries, whyle he was hym self alyve. [5] Vnder hym byfel þe storie of Iudith. Þe þridde Ermeudes Magus; þe ferþe Darius Tapsis his sone; þe fifte Excerses; þe sixte Athar Excerses, [6] þat heet Longimanus [7] also. Vnder hym were Esdras and Neemyas. Þe seuenþe Excerces; the eiȝþe Fogodian; þe nynþe Darius Nothus. Nothus is a bastard, or he þat is i-gete of a worþy fader and i-bore of an vnworþy moder. Þe tenþe

MS. HARL. 2261.

vncle, translate that realme to men of Persia and of Media in the xxxj^{ti} yere of the transmigracion of the Iewes. And so cc. and xl^{ti} yere apassede from þe vij^{the} yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda, in whiche tyme the monarchye of men of Assiria began to fayle, vn to the xxxj^{ti} yere of the transmigracion of Iewes, when the monarchy of men of Parthia began. And so the monarchy of men of Persia indurede from the xxxj^{ti} yere of the transmigracion vn to the vij^{the} yere of grete Alexander, whiche was from the firste Cirus vn to the laste Darius, son of Arsannius, by cc. and xxxv^{ti} yere, vnder xiij. kynges. Whiche be, after Giraldus, Cirus; after hym Cambises, whom his fader namede Nabugodonozor, and ȝafe to hym in his lyfe Niniuen with the realme of Assiria, by xij. yere afore his dethe, vnder whom the memory of that woman Iudith happede. The thrydde was callede grete Ermeides. The iiij^{the} Darius, son of Ytapsis. The v^{the} Xerses; the vj^{the} Artaxerses, whiche was namede otherwise Longimanus, [7] in the tyme of whom Esdras and Neemias floreschede. The vij^{the} Perses. Fogodianus the viij^{the}. Darius Nothus the ix^{the}. [8]

[1] Added from *α*.
[2] So Trevisa for *Ozias*.
[3] *Peerse*, *α*. (*Peers*, above.)
[4] Added from *α*. and Cx.
[5] *anlyue*, *α*.
[6] *Artarexerses*, *α*.
[7] *Logimanus*, *α*.; *Longinianus*, Harl. MS.
[8] *the ix^{the} Nothus the ix^{the}*, Harl. MS.

Nothus; decimus Artaxerxes,[1] qui et Assuerus, sub quo[2] Hester fuit; undecimus Ochus; duodecimus Arsames;[3] tertius decimus Darius, filius Arsamis; quem devincens[4] Alexander Magnus transtulit regnum Persarum ad monarchiam Macedonum apud Græcos.

§ 5. *Regnum Græcorum.*

Cranaus primus rex. Varia per Græciam regna exorta.

Hoc[5] tamen regnum Macedonum prius inceperat sub primo Cranao quartodecimo[6] anno Oziæ regis Juda; et sic duravit per annos sexcentos triginta sex[7] usque ad ultimum, Persium,[8] quem occiderunt Romani nono anno Oniæ pontificis, qui et Menelaus.[9] Erant tamen[10] in Græcia alia regna successive instituta; quorum primum fuit apud Arcadiam, id est Sicyonios, et inde translatum ad Peloponenses sicut supra dicitur.[11] Aliud regnum Græcorum[12] fuit apud Argivos, et inde translatum ad Mycenas.[13] Aliud fuit apud Athenienses, aliud apud[14] Lacedæmones, id est Spartanos, aliud apud Epirum sive Thraciam,[15] aliud apud Macedoniam; quæ omnia, sicut cætera terrarum regna, a regno Romano[16] sunt[17] absorpta, et eidem concorporata in hunc modum.

[1] *Artarxerses,* A.D.; *Artexerses,* E.

[2] *historia,* ins. B.

[3] *Arsanius,* MSS., and *Arsanii* below.

[4] *interficiens,* C. D.

[5] *Hoc*] *cum,* and the sentence beginning at *apud Græcos,* in C. (not D., which inserts in marg. *Willelmus.*)

[6] *quarto,* D.

[7] 626, C.D.

[8] So MSS. Higden should have written *Persea.*

[9] ℞, ins. C.D.

[10] *etiam nihilominus,* ins. C.D.

[11] *dicitur*] om. E.

[12] *Græcorum*] om. C.D.

[13] *Mecenas,* A.E.; *Messenas,* D.

[14] *apud*] om. B.

[15] *Traciam,* E.D. (as usual); *Aranciam,* B.; *Franciam,* C.

[16] *tandem,* ins. C.D.

[17] *sunt* after *concorporata,* B.

Artharexcerses, þat heet Assuerus also; vnder hym was Hester. Þe enleuenþe Ochus; þe twelfþe Arsanius; þe þrittenþe Darius Arsanius his sone. Þe grete Alexandre ouercome hym, and tornede þe kyngdom of Perses to þe hole kyngdom of Macedonyes [1] and [2] of Grees. Noþeles þis [3] kyngdom of Macedons bygan raþer vnder þe firste Cranaus þe fourtenþe ȝere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, and so durede sexe hondred ȝere and sixe and þritty anon to þe laste Persius. Þe Romayns slowh hym þe nynþe ȝere of Onias þe bisshop, þat heet Menelaus also. Noþeles þere were oþer kyngdoms in Grees, eueriche after oþer i-ordeyned; of þe whiche þe firste was in Arcadia at þe Scicions, þat peple, and was i-torned þens to þe Peloponenses, as it is i-seide tofore. Anoþer kyngdom of Grees was among þe Argyues, and was i-torned þennes to þe Macens.[4] Anoþer was at Athenys, þat citee; anoþer among þe Lacedemons, þese were þe Sportans. Anoþer at Epirus, þat is T[h]racia. Anoþer at Macedonia. Þe kyngdom [5] of Rome swolowede vp alle þese kyngdoms [as he dede oþere kyngdoms] [6] of londes, and made hem [alle] [7] longe to þe kyngdom of Rome. In þis manere þe kyngdom of Rome [8] TREVISA.

Artaxerses other Assuerus þe x^the^, vnder whom Hester was. Ochus the xj^the^. Arsannius the xij^the^. Darius the son of Arsanius the xiij^the^. Whom Alexander ouercommenge, did translate the realme of men of Persia vn to the monarchye of men of Macedony amonge the Grekes, whiche realme began afore vnder Cranaus in the xiij^the^ yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda; and so that realme indured by vj^c.^ and xxxvj^ti^ yere, vn to the laste, Persius, whom the Romanes did slee in the ix^the^ yere of Onias the bischoppe, other Menelaus. After that other realmes were made in Grece by succession; the firste was at Archadia, after that tyme translate to men of Peloponense, as hit is expressede afore. An other realme of the Grekes was at Argiuos, whiche was translate from þens to Mecenas. An other was at Athenes, an other at Lacedemonia. An other realme at Epira other Tracia; an other at Macedonia. Whiche realmes were made subiecte to the realme of Rome, and concorporate to hit, as other realmes were in this maner. The realme of Romanes, begynnenge vnder Ianus the firste MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Macedons*, α.
[2] *at þe Grees*, α.
[3] So α. and Cx. *Noþeles þere were oþer kyngdoms, but þis*, MS.
[4] *Mecens*, α. and Cx.
[5] *kyng*, Cx.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] Text as in Cx.: words erroneously repeated in MS.

§ 6. *Regnum Romanorum.*

Janus primus rex; postea reges Latini, Albani, Romani.

[1]Regnum Romanorum sub Jano primo[2] rege Italiæ[3] exortum usque ad[4] annum septimum Darii filii Arsamis regis Persarum,[5] quem occidit Alexander Magnus, cucurrit per annos octingentos[6] octoginta sub regibus viginti septem; quorum sex primi fuerunt Latini, et quatuordecim sequentes Albani, reliqui septem[7] post urbem conditam[8] Romani. Ex quibus Romulus fuit primus, et Tarquinius Superbus fuit ultimus. Denuo,[9] expulsis ab[10] urbe regibus, duo consules annuatim sunt[11] creati; deinde tribuni plebis et dictatores rem publicam tractabant usque ad Julium Cæsarem per annos quadringentos sexaginta tres.[12] Post hæc, omisso nomine regio, monarchæ, Cæsares, imperatores, et Augusti primatum tenuerunt. Quorum primus fuit Julius[13] ex consule et dictatore factus imperator, cujus successor et nepos Octavianus[14] Augustus regna totius orbis in unam redegit monarchiam.[15] Tandem Philippus imperator vicesimus octavus primus[16] Christianus est effectus. Deinde Constantinus Magnus sedem impe-

Consules, tribuni plebis, dictatores.

Cæsares vel imperatores.

---

[1] *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

[2] *primo*] om. E.

[3] *Italiæ*] sexto anno Delboræ judicis Israel, C.D.

[4] *in*, C. (not D.)

[5] *regis Persarum*] om. C.D.

[6] *septingentos*, B.

[7] *septem*] om. D.

[8] *dicebantur*, ins. C.D.

[9] *Denuo*] Post hæc, C.D.

[10] *ex*, A.

[11] *sunt*] om. C.D.

[12] *quatuor*, A.B.C.D. and the versions.

[13] *Cæsar*, ins. B.

[14] *Octouianus*, MSS.

[15] *mundi redegit in monarchiam*, B.

[16] *vicesimus octavus primus*] om. C.D.; *primo*, B.

TREVISA.

bygan vnder Ianus þe firste kyng of Italy, and durede anon to þe seuenþe ȝere of Darius Arsanius his sone, kyng of Perses. ⁖ Hym slowh þe grete Alexander. And so þe grete[1] kyngdom of Rome durede at þat cours eiȝte hondred ȝere and foure score, vnder seuen[2] and twenty kynges. [Of þe whiche seuen and twenty[3] kynges][4] sixe þe firste[5] were Latyns. Þe fourtene[6] þat were[7] after were Albans. Þe oþere seuene þat come after þat þe citee was i-bulde were Romayns, of þe whiche Romulus was þe firste and Tarquinius þe proude was þe laste. Afterward kynges were i-put[8] out of þe citee, and were from ȝere to ȝere tweie consulles i-chose. After consuls tribunes plebis[9] and dictatores[10] rulede the comounte anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme, foure hondred ȝere þre score and foure. Afterward he[11] lift of þe name of kynges, and cleped here cheef lordes Cesares, emperours, and Augustes; of þe whiche Iulius Cesar was þe firste of a consul and dictatour i-made emperour; his successour and ne was Octauianus[12] Augustus, and brouȝte alle þe kyngdoms of þe world in to oon kyngdom al hool. Þanne Philippe þe eiȝte and twentyþe emperour was þe firste emperour þat was Cristene.[13] Þanne þe grete

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

kynge of Ytaly, vn to the vij^the yere of Darius, son of Arsanius, and kynge of Persia, whom Alexander the Conqueroure did slee, contynuede by viij^c· and lxxx. yere, vnder xxvij. kynges, the firste vj. of whom were Latynes, and other xiiij. succedenge were Albani. Other vij. were after the makenge of the city of Rome, of whom Romulus was firste and Tarquinius the prowde was laste. Then, the kynges expulsede from the cite of Rome, ij. consulles were made and create yerly; after theym, tribuni, maisters of the peple, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar, by cccc. yere lxiiij. After that, the name of a kynge ylefte, monarche, Cesares, emperoures, and men callede Augusti holdede the primate and chiefe place. Of whom Iulius Cesar, of a consul and a dictator, was made emperoure firste; Octauianus Augustus, his successor and nevewe, redacte in to oon monarchy the realmes of alle the worlde. At the laste, Philippus the xxviij^ti emperoure was made a Cristen man, firste of alle emperoures. After that, grete Constan-

---

[1] *grete*] om. *α*.
[2] *eiȝte*, MS. and *α*. (not Cx).
[3] *tweny*, *α*.
[4] Added from *α*. and Cx.
[5] The same order of words in *α*. and Cx.
[6] So Cx.; *fourtenþe*, MS.
[7] *came*, Cx.
[8] *put*, *α*.
[9] *plebes*, MS., Cx.
[10] *doctores*, MS. *α*. and Cx.
[11] *they*, Cx.
[12] So Cx.; *Octianus*, *α*.; *Occeanus*, MS.
[13] *cristened*, Cx.

rialem apud Constantinopolim constituit, dignitatem tamen sedis apostolicæ apud Romam successoribus Beati Petri reliquit.[1] Translato tandem imperio ad Karolum Magnum regem Francorum, Pipini regis filium, nomen imperiale solummodo apud Constantinopolim mansit.[3]

Cap. IX.

De Nini et Semiramidis imperio.[4]

Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo. In diebus Sarug, Belus Nemprotides, rex Babylonis, intravit Assyriam, sed parum ibi conquisivit. At,[5] cum per sexaginta quinque annos regnasset, mortuus est. Cui successit Ninus filius suus tricesimo anno Thare,[6] patris[7] Abrahæ, regnare incipiens, regnavitque fere[8] toti Asiæ, excepta India, quinquaginta tribus annis. In cujus regni[9] anno quadragesimo tertio[10] natus est Abraham, anno ante urbem Romam conditam M. et pene CCC.[11] *Orosius, libro primo.* Anno ante urbem conditam M.CCC°. Ninus rex Assyriorum propagandæ dominationis libidine arma foris extulit, cruentamque vitam quinquaginta annis per totam

Ninus rex Asiæ.

---

[1] *relinquit*, A. ; *relinquens*, C.D.
[2] *solomodo*, E. (not A.)
[3] In the preceding chapter a few trivial errors of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly corrected ; all the more serious errors are recorded.
[4] Title wanting in MSS.
[5] *Cumque*, C.D.
[6] *Dionysius* (in marg.) C.D.
[7] *avi*, C.D.
[8] So D. ; *fere* after *Asiæ* in A.E.
[9] *regni*] om. C.D.
[10] *anno ultimo*, C.D.
[11] *anno . . . ccc.*] om. C.D.

Constantyn made Constantynople[1] þe chief citee of þe empere, and lefte Rome forto be chief see of þe pope to Seint Petre his successours. Whanne þe empere was translated and i-torned to þe grete Charles, kyng of Fraunce, Pipinus þe kynges sone, þanne þe name of þe emperour [was] lefte[2] allone at Constantynople. TREVISA.

Capitulum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo. In Sarug his tyme Belus, Nemproth his sonne, kyng of Babiloyne, wente into Assyria, and wan it afterward wiþ ynne a schort tyme; and whan he hadde i-reigned fiue and sixty ȝere þanne he deide. And his sone Nynus regnede after hym, and bygan to reigne þe ȝere of Thare Abrahams fader euene þritty, and was kyng wel nygh of al Asia outake Inde þre and fifty ȝere. In þe ȝere of his kyngdom þre and fourty Abraham was i-bore, to fore þe buldinge of þe citee of Rome nyh a þowsand ȝere and þre hondred. *Orosius, libro primo.* Þe ȝere to fore þe buldynge of þe citee of Rome a þowsand and þre[3] hondred, Nynus kyng of Assiriens for couetise to make hym greet lordschipe[4] bare out armour, and lyuede

---

tyne ordeinede the seete imperialle at Constantinople, levenge the dignite of the seete apostolicalle at Rome to the successores of Seynte Petre. At the laste, the empyre translate to grete Charles kynge of Fraunce, son to kynge Pipinus, the name imperialle remaynede oonly at Constantinople. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo. Belus Nemprotides kynge of Babilon, entrede in to Assiria, in the daies of Sarug, conquerenge but lytel þer, whiche diede after that he hade reignede lxv. yere. Whom Ninus his son succedede, begynnenge to reigne in the xxx^{ti} yere of Thare fader to Abraham, reignenge in alle Asia, Ynde excepte, liij. yere; in the xliij^{ti} of the reigne of whom Abraham was borne, by a m^{l} yere allemoste and ccc. afore the edificacion of the cite of Rome. *Orosius, libro primo.* In the m^{l} and ccc. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome, Ninus kynge of Assiria, movede thro the luste of domination,

---

[1] *Constantynnoble*, MS., α. β. γ., here and below. (not Cx.)

[2] *lifte* after *þanne* in MS. (not α. or Cx.) The verb is wanting in all, and in β. and γ.

[3] *nyne*, α.

[4] *his lordshippe grete*, Cx.

Asiam bellis[1] egit.[2] A meridie atque mari[3] Rubro surgens sub ultimo septentrione Euxinum Pontum vastando perdomuit. Scythicam[4] barbariem adhuc tunc imbellem et innocentem vires suas nosse; et non jam lacte pecudum (ut prius) sed sanguine hominum vivere, dum vicit, edocuit. Novissime[5] Zoroasten, Bactrianorum regem magicæque artis inventorem, interfecit. Postremo, dum deficientem a se urbem quandam obsideret, ictu sagittæ interiit.[6] *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo sexto.*[7] Ninus, filius Beli, mortuo patre obtinuit Assyriam; et civitatem Niniven, a nomine suo sic nuncupatam, caput[8] regni sui fecit, ac[9] trium dierum itinere ampliavit; nam prius Nemphrot eam[10] fundaverat.[11] Devicit etiam Chaam, qui et Zoroastes, regem Bactriæ;[12] qui[13] septem liberales artes[14] in quatuordecim columnis, septem æneis et septem lateritiis, contra utrumque diluvium conscripsit. Cujus etiam[15] libros Ninus combussit. *Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.*[16] Scripsit[17] Aristoteles de Zoroaste, quod vicies centum milia versuum in arte magicæ[18] com-

Zoroasten interficit.

Ejus mors.

---

[1] *bellando*, A. (second hand).
[2] *exegit*, B.
[3] So A.B.C.D.; *atque a mari*, E.
[4] *Schiticam* or *Sciticam*, MSS.
[5] So A.; *Novissimo*, E.
[6] *Orosius . . . interiit*] om. D.; add. in marg. C.
[7] The true reference is to *Hist. Libr. Gen.*, c. 39.
[8] *caput* after *sui*, B.
[9] *et*, A.
[10] *illam*, A.
[11] *nam. . .fundaverat*] om. C.D.
[12] *qui. . .Bactriæ*] qui adhuc vivens regnabat in Bactria, qui etiam dicebatur Zoroastes, magicæ artis inventor, C.D. *Zoroastres* is the classical form.
[13] *etiam*, ins. C.D.
[14] *regem . . . artes*] om. B.
[15] *etiam*] om. B.E.
[16] 18, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 9.
[17] *Scripsit quidem*, C.D.
[18] *magica*, A.

cruel lyf fifty ȝere in al Asia in werre and in bataille, and arοose out of þe souþ and from þe reed see, and destroyed in þe norþ vppon þe see þat hatte Eusinum þat streccheþ from the ryver Thanay to þe endes of Hiberia[1] and[2] Armenya. And so þis kyng Nynus ouer come men of Scitia barbarica, þat were ȝit no warriours, but stille men and esy,[3] and made hem knowe strengþe, and tauȝte hem to lyue by manis blood þat lyvede toforhonde by[4] melke of bestes; and at þe laste he slow Zoroastes[5] kyng of Bactrians þat was fyndere of wyccheeraft, but at þe laste dede, while he bysegede a citee þat was tornede from hym, he was i-hit wiþ an arewe, and so he was i-slawe. *Petrus*, 36°. Nynus Belus his sone, whanne his fader was dede, [hadde][6] Assiria and þe citee Ninyue i-nemped by his name, and made þat citee Ninyue [chef of his kyngdom, and made the citee][7] huger and more by þre iorneyes. For Nemproth hadde toforehonde i-founded þat citee, and slow also Cham, þat hete Zoroastes[5] also, kyng of Bactria, þat wroot the seuene[8] science in fourtene pileres, in seuene of bras and seuene of brent[9] tyle, forto saue hem aȝenst eiþer flood,[10] but Nynus brende his bookes. *Isidorus, libro* 8°. Aristotil of Zoroastes he wroot þat he made twenty hondred þowsand vers of wicchecrafte, and Democritus made

TREVISA.

---

gedrede an hoste, ledenge a cruelle lyfe by l[ti] yere, thro alle Asia, in batelles, begynnenge from the meridien and the redde see, made tame the cruelle peple of Scitia; sleenge also at the laste Zoroastes, kynge of Bactria, and the firste fynder of wicchecrafte. And at the laste Ninus was sleyne with an arowe at the seege of a cite. *Petrus*, 16° *capitulo*. Ninus, the son of Belus, after the dethe of his fader opteynede Assiria, and the cite of Niniuen, callede so after his name, and made hit the principalle place of his realme, makenge that cite more large by the iourneye of thre daies, whom Nemproth founded firste, ouercommenge Cham and Zoroastes kynge off Bactria, whiche did write ageyne either grete floode vij. artes liberalle in xiiij. pyllors, vij. of brasse and vij. of tylestones. The bookes of whom Ninus brente also. *Isidorus libro octavo*. The grete clerke Aristotille wrytethe of Zoroastes, that he made xx[ti] tymes a c.m[l] versus of wicche crafte, whiche

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Heberia*, MS.
[2] *an*, α.
[3] *pesible*, Cx.
[4] *with*, Cx.
[5] So α. and Cx.; *Zorastes*, MS., but *Zoroastes* below (once).
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] Added from α.; so also in Cx. (nearly).
[8] So α. and Cx. (who has *sciences* below); *seuenþe*, MS.
[9] *brand*, Cx.
[10] *agenste fyre and water*, Cx.

posuerit; quam artem Democritus[1] postmodum tempore Hippocratis[2] ampliavit. *Petrus tricesimo sexto.*[3]

De ortu idololatriæ.

Ab isto Nino orta sunt idola in hunc modum.

Beli simulacrum a Nino adoratum.

Mortuo Belo, Ninus filius ejus in solatium doloris imaginem patris fecit. Cui tantam reverentiam exhibuit, ut quibuslibet[4] reis ad eam[5] confugientibus parceret. Hujus rei[6] exemplo plures suis caris imagines fecerunt. Et sicut ab idolo Beli cetera idola originem traxerunt, sic ab ejus nomine derivatum est[7] generale nomen idolorum secundum diversitatem idiomatum. Nam aliqui Beel, aliqui Baal, aliqui Baalim[8] dixerunt. Immo et nomina specificaverunt; alii Beelfegor, alii Belzebub[9] dicentes.[10] *Alexander in Mythologia.*

Alii aliter rem tradunt.

De ortu idolatriæ omnia pene figmenta manarunt. Nam cum[11] Cirophanes[12] Ægyptius dilecti filii sui jam defuncti simulacrum, quod ob specimen[13] doloris idolum dicitur,[14] in memoriam defuncti filii[15] confinxisset,[16] ac multipliciter a servis adoratum reorum confugium[17] statuisset, dum tristitiæ remedium quærit, seminarium doloris invenit. Nam error inveteratus[18]

[1] *philcsophus*, ins. C.D.

[2] *Ypocratis* or *Ipocratis*, MSS.

[3] 26, A.; 16, B.; 38, C.D. The true reference is to c. 40.

[4] *quibuscunque*, B.

[5] *ipsam*, C. (not D.)

[6] *rei*] om. C.D.

[7] *derivatur*, C.D.

[8] So A.; *balim*, E.

[9] So A.B; *Belsebub*, E.

[10] *dixerunt*, C. (not D.)

[11] *cum*] om. E.

[12] So A.E.; *Sirophanes*, B.D.; *Strophanes*, C. Perhaps Chephrenes, also written Sephres, is intended. See Osburn's *Monumental Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i., pp. 305–311.

[13] *spem*, A.E.

[14] *quod...dicitur*] om. C.D.

[15] *filii*] om. D.

[16] *confixisset*, B.D.

[17] *refugium*, A.B.C.D.

[18] *intricatus*, B.

TREVISA.

þat craft more afterward in Ypocratis[1] tyme. *Petrus* 36°. Of þis Nynus mawmetrie[2] bygan in þis maner.[3] Whan Bellus was dede his sone Nynus, for to have som comfort of his sorwe, made an ymage of his fader, and he dede þat ymage so grete worschippe and reuerence þat he spared al euel doeres þat fliȝe to þat ymage; by ensample of þis doynge meny men made ymages to her leue frendes, and so by ensample of Belus his mawmet come forþ oþere mawmettes. [Also of Belus his name come forþ þe comoun names of mawmettis][4] in dyuerse longages and tonges; for som men clepeþ her mawmet Beel, som Baal, and som Baalim, and som ȝaf here mawmettes[5] a surname, and cleped hir names[6] Belphegor, and som Belsebub. *Alexander in mythologia.*[7] Of þe bryngynge forþ of mawmetrie com wel nyh al þe feyninge of poetrie, for whanne Sirophanes of Egipt hadde an ymage of his sone þat was dede, þat ymage is i-cleped[8] Ydolum, þat is, likenesse and schappe, for liknes of sorwe. Whanne þey[9] hadde i-made þat image in mynde of his sone, þat ymage was hugeliche[10] i-worschipped of his seruauntes; it was refute and socour to mysdoeres as he hadde i-ordeyned; and while þey souȝte helpe and remedye of sorwe þei fond seed and springynge of wel more sorowe; for þe old

MS. HARL. 2261.

Of ydolatrye.

arte Democritus amplifiede in the tyme of Ypocras. *Petrus, tricesimo sexto capitulo.* Ydoles toke begynnenge of þis Ninus in this maner. Belus fader to Ninus dedde, Ninus made an ymage to the similitude of his fader in to the solace of his sorowe. To whom he ȝafe so grete reuerence that he sparede gilty men fleenge to hit. Thro exemple of whom other nowble men made ymages of theire frendes; and lyke as other ydoles toke begynnenge of the ydole of Belus, soe a generalle name of ydoles is deriuate of the name of hym, after diuersite of speches. For men calle somme ydoles Beel, somme Baal, somme Baalim, specifienge somme names, as somme men Beelzabub, somme men Beelphegor. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Alle figmentes toke begynnenge allemoste of ydolatry, for when Sirophanes of Egypte hade made an ymage of his son for grete sorowe, worschippede moche of his seruauntes, ordeinede hit to be a refute of gilty men fleenge to hit. Whiche inquirenge a remedy of hevynesse founde a grete place of sorowe, for olde erroure began to be diffudede thro the worschippenge

[1] *Ypocrat his*, α.; *Ypocras*, Cx.
[2] *Mawmetrye first*, α.
[3] So Cx.; *tyme*, MS. and α.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *mawmett*, α.
[6] *mawwett*, α. (not Cx.)
[7] *Mitologia*, MS., α.; *Mytilog.*, Cx.
[8] *he cleped*, Cx., which is better (β. and γ. agree with MS. and α.)
[9] *he*, Cx.
[10] *gretely*, Cx.

in idolorum cultura cœpit diffundi. Nec tamen eosdem ritus cuncti recipiendos[1] statuerunt.[2] Nam philosophi unum Deum colunt; quem pro[3] multiplici dispositione, qua variis modis mundum regit, variis vocabulis appellant; utpote[4] Vitumnus, quia vitam præstat; Sentinus, quia sensum dat;[5] Jupiter, quia juvat. Refert etiam Plato in libro qui intitulatur *Philosophus,* quod poetæ lucri causa et favoris rationes, scientias,[6] et potentias ad usum vivendi concessas membratim effigiaverunt, et propriis nominibus assignaverunt; utpote scientiam colendi agros vocaverunt Cererem, scientiam colendi vineas Bacchum.[7] Et etiam turpes actus hominum inter deos numeraverunt.[8]

Dii ethnicorum homines fuerunt, secundum Isidorum.

Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo. Quos pagani deos asserunt homines fuerunt, et pro uniuscujusque vita meritis vel magnificentia coli apud suos post mortem cœperunt. Sed etiam[9] dæmonibus persuadentibus[10] quos illi pro sola memoria honoraverant, successores existimabant[11] deos. Et ad ista magis extollenda accesserunt figmenta poetica.

Tres differentiæ numinum, secundum Labeonem.

Ranulphus. Et sicut innuit Augustinus de Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo, poeta Labeo[12] tradidit tres differentias numinum. Nam quosdam

[1] *recipiendo,* A.
[2] *recipientes censuerunt,* C.D.
[3] *ex,* C. ; om. D.
[4] *utpote*] ut, C.D.
[5] For *Vitumnus* and *Sentinus,* see *Aug. de Civ. Dei,* vii., 2, and 3.
[6] *et scientias,* A. ; om. C.D.
[7] *vocaverunt Bacchum,* A. ; *Bacchum nuncupantes,* C.D.
[8] *numerantes,* C.D.
[9] *etiam*] om. C.D.E.
[10] *persuadentibus*] so A.C.D. ; om. E. ; *suadentibus,* B.
[11] *æstimabant,* A. ; *exæstimantes* C. ; *existimarent,* D.
[12] *Labio,* E. (not A.). This clerical error sufficed to lead Trevisa astray, and the Harleian translator also apparently.

errour in worschippe of mawmettis gan to sprede. Noþeles þe same manere doynge was nouȝt [1] i-ordeyned of al men. For philosofres worschipped oon [2] God and ȝaf hym many names for meny manere doynges and worchynges þat he worcheþ; lyveþ,[3] for he ȝeueþ lyf; feleþ, for he ȝeueþ felynge; Iupiter, þat is, helper, for he helpeþ. Also Plato, in þe book þat hatte Philosophus, seiþ þat poetes, by cause of wynnynge and of fauour, peyntede resouns sciens and myȝt þat were i-graunted to þe vse of lyuynge in meny manere schappes, and ȝaf euerich a propre name. And so konnynge of telienge [4] of feeldes þey cleped Cereres,[5] konnynge of telienge of vynes þey clepede [6] Ba[c]chus, and accountede foule dedes of men amonge goddes.[7] *Isidorus, Etymologia, libro* 8°. Þey þat payenis [8] clepiþ goddis, þey were men. And as þey bere hem in her lif, bettre or wers, so þey were i-worschipped after her deeþ. Bote by false lore of fendes men þat come afterward worschipped hem for goddis, þat were first i-worschipped onliche for mynde; and þan forto make it more solempne com feynynges of poetes. ℞. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro ij. capitulo xi.* Þe poete wiþ his lippe spekeþ of þre manere of goddes; for som þey clepeþ TREVISA.

---

of ydoles, neuerthelesse that rite was not ordeynede for alle men. For philosophers worschippede oon God, whom thei namede by diuerse names for the monyfolde disposicion thro whom he gouernethe the worlde in diuerse maneres; as Vitumnus,[9] in that he ȝiffethe life; Sentinus, in that he ȝiffeth wytte and felenge; Iupiter, for he helpethe. Also that grete clerke Plato rehersethe in a boke of his callede Philosophus, that poetes for cause of lucre and of fauore haue chaungede reasones, sciences, and powers to the vse of lyvenge grawntede a fore tyme to the actes and vile operaciones of men, callenge Sereris the science of tyllenge feldes, and Bac[c]hus of vynes, nowmbrenge these symple actes amonge goddes. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* The goddes, that paganes do worschippe, were men somme tyme, and began to be worschippede after their merites and magnificence in this lyfe; but, thro the persuasion of the deuel, theire successores trawede theyme to be goddes, whom men afore worschippede oonly for a memory; whiche thynges the figmentes of poetes helpede moche. ℞. And as Seynte Austyn semethe to reherse, *De Civitate Dei, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo,* poetes in wrytenge ȝafe iij. differences and diuersites of ydoles, callenge somme of MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So α. and Cx.; *now*, MS.
[2] *o*, α.; *oo*, Cx.
[3] *and lyveþ*, MS. α. β. γ. Probably we should read *lyver* (and *feler* below).
[4] *tellynge*, α.; *tillyng*, Cx.
[5] So MS.; and the error may be safely set down to Trevisa himself, who elsewhere imagines *Appolyn* to be the nominative of *Apollo*. The Harl. version is somewhat worse.
[6] So α.; *clepe*, MS.
[7] So Cx.; *goode*, MS.; *gode*, α.
[8] *paynyms*, Cx.
[9] *Victimus*, Harl. MS.

dixit deos, ut Jupiter, Mars; quosdam semideos, ut Hercules, Romulus; quosdam heroes, id est, virtuosos et morigeratos homines, qui putabantur aliquid divinitatis habere, ut Hector, Achilles. Ex idolatria ortæ sunt variæ superstitiones et multæ, qualis est illa de qua loquitur Hieronymus super Isaiam decimo[1] octavo, dicens quod Ægyptii et pene omnes orientales colunt Fortunam, cujus idolum loco nominatissimo ponunt; dextræ ejus cornu repletum hydromelle apponunt,[2] de quo omnes[3] circumsedentes nituntur gustare in ultimo die Novembris; quo tempore, si cornu plenum invenerint,[4] pronosticant copiam rerum toto anno illo affuturam; si econtra invenerint, gemunt.[5] *Trogus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.*[6] Mortuo Nino successit uxor sua[7] Semiramis cum filio impube Nino sive Ninian relicto; quæ non ausa immaturo puero regnum tradere, nec ipsa quidem regnum palam tractare, simulat se[8] pro matre filium, pro femina puerum. Nam vox utrique[9] gracilis et statura mediocris. Igitur brachia et crura velamentis, caput tiara tegit. Et

Ex idololatria ortæ superstitiones.

Semiramis uxor Nini.

[1] So A.B.; *vicesimo*, E. The text is correct. See lib. xviii. c. 65. (tom. iv. p. 639. Ed. Migne).

[2] *ponunt*, B.

[3] *omnes*] *homines*, B.

[4] *invenerunt*, A.

[5] *Ranulphus . . . gemunt*] om. C. D.

[6] *cap. septimo*] om. A.C.D.; *primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1. and c. 2.

[7] *sua*] ejus, B.

[8] *se*] om. B.

[9] *utriusque*, D.

TREVISA.

goddes, as Iupiter[1] and Mars; som half goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and som vertuous men þat me trowede þat hadde somwhat of godhede, as Hector[2] and Achilles. Of mawmetrie come meny euel manere of doynge; such is þat þat[3] Ierom spekeþ vppon Isay [decimo] octavo,[4] and seiþ þat Egipciens and wel nyh alle men of est[5] londes worschippeth Fortune, þat is, god of happes, as þey meneþ; the ymage of Fortune[6] is i-sette in a place þat is wel i-knowe, and haþ in his riȝt hond an horne ful of mede; alle þat sitteþ aboute fondeþ[7] to taste of þat horne þe laste day of Nouembre; and ȝif þey fyndeþ þan þe horne ful, it bodeþ a good corn ȝere, and ȝif þey fyndeþ it empty,[8] þanne þey makeþ sorwe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Whanne Nynus was dede, his wyf Semiramis, wiþ hir sone Nynus, þat heet Nynyan also, reignede in þis manere: þe womman durste[9] nouȝt bytake þe kyngdom to þe ȝong childe, noþer sche durste hir self regne openliche; þerfore sche desgised hir self in þe childes liche, þe moder for þe sone, a womman in stede of þe childe, for eiþer hadde a small voys and [was][10] mene of stature. Þerfore sche[11] hidde hir armes and hir þyȝhes wiþ dyuers helynges, and here heed wiþ a cappe. And for me schulde nouȝt seie þat sche hidde[12] eny þing wiþ þe[13]

MS. HARL. 2261.

theyme goddes, as Iupiter, Mars; somme halfe goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and somme vertuous as hauenge parte of godhede, as Hector and Achilles. Also diuerse supersticiones began of ydolatry, as Seynte Ierom spekethe on the xviij^the chapitre of Ysay, seyenge that men of Egipte and of the este partes worschippe Fortune. The ydole of whom thei sette in the chiefe place, holdenge an horne in the ryȝhtehonde replete with hony, of whom alle men syttenge aboute do taste in the laste day of Nouember; and if thay fynde the horne fulle at that tyme thei prenosticate grete habundaunce of goodes to comme in that yere foloenge, and if hit be voide thei waile and sorowe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Ninus dedde, Semiramis his wife, lefte with Ninus other Ninian his son tendre in age, began to reigne, whiche wyllenge not here childe to reigne for infancy, feynede here as a son, beenge the moder. For thei were of an egalle stature, and lyke of speche. Wherefore sche made clothes for here hedde, legges, and armes of purpose, commaundenge the

[1] So α.; here, and elsewhere *sometimes*, MS. has *Iubiter.*
[2] So α.; *Ector*, MS.
[3] *þa*, MS.
[4] 18°, α., Cx., correctly.
[5] *þe est*, α.
[6] *the ymage of Fortune*] twice repeated in MS.
[7] *foundeth*, Cx.
[8] *leer*, α.; *voyd or empty*, Cx.
[9] *þurste*, α.
[10] Added from γ.; α. β. and Cx. agree with MS.
[11] *they*, Cx.
[12] *had*, Cx.
[13] *þe*] om. α.

ne novo habitu aliquid[1] occultare videretur, populum suum simili modo vestiri jubet.[2] Quem quidem[3] morem vestis gens illa adhuc[4] tenet. Magna deinde hæc mulier gessit; at[5] cum cunctorum invidiam superasset, quæ et qualis fuerit fatetur. Quod quidem factum magnam illi gloriam adauxit.[6] Nam et[7] Æthiopiam subjugavit, Indiam debellavit. Ad[8] postremum, cum concubitum proprii filii[9] expetisset, ab eodem interfecta est, cum quadraginta duobus annis regnasset.

Ninus, Nini filius.

Filius vero ejus[10] Ninus, paternis ac maternis laboribus contentus, raro a viris visus est;[11] in turba fœminarum consenuit. Posterique sui ejus[12] exemplum[13] secuti responsa[14] gentibus per internuntios dabant. *Ranulphus.*[15] Quod et usque ad tempora Sardanapali observatum est.[16]

CAP. X.

De Abraha.[17]

Abraham nascitur.

Genesis. Thare, cum septuaginta esset annorum, genuit Aram,[18] Nachor, et Abram.[19] Natusque est Abram

---

[1] *Quæ novo habitu ut aliquid*, A.; *Et ne habitu quid*, D.

[2] *populum similiter vestiri jubet*, C.D.

[3] *quidem*] om. C.D.

[4] *adhuc*] om. D.

[5] *at*] et, C.D.; ac, B.

[6] *Quod . . . adauxit*] varied in C.D.

[7] *et*] om. B.C.D.

[8] *Ac*, B.

[9] *ipsius filii*, A.; *proprii sui*, C. (not D.)

[10] *ejus*] om. B.

[11] *est*] om. C.D.

[12] *ejus*] om. D.

[13] *exemplar*, B.

[14] *responsum*, C. (not D.)

[15] Reference added from A.B.C.

[16] *Quod . . . est*] om. D.; in margin of C.

[17] Title wanting in MSS.

[18] So MSS., for Aran (Haran).

[19] *Abraham*, A.B.C.D., and so below.

newe manere of cloþinge, sche hiȝte þat hir peple schulde goo i-cloþed in þe same array, and ȝit þat peple vseþ þe same manere cloþinge. Þanne þis womman dede meny grete dedes, and whanne[1] sche had ouercome þe envie[2] of alle enemyes, þanne sche knowlechede what sche was and how sche hadde i-doo. Þan þe doynge torned hire to ful[3] greet worschippe; for sche ouercome Ethiopia, blew men lond, and Ynde also. And at þe laste sche desired hir owne sone, and bad him forto ligge by here; and he slow here, whan sche hadde i-reigned two and fourty ȝere. But hir sone Nynus helde hym apaied wiþ þe trauaille[4] of his fader and moder, and was afterward selde i-seie amonge men, and leuede and wax olde among wommen. And his successoures, kynges þat come after hym, folwede þat ensample of hym and ȝeuen[5] answere to þe peple by messangers þat schulde goo by twene. ℞. Þat manere doynge was i-vsed anon to þe kyng Sardanapallus his tyme. TREVISA.

Capitulum decimum.

Genesis. Thare whanne he was þre score ȝere olde and ten, þan he gat Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; [and Abraham][6] was

---

peple to be clothede in that maner also, whiche consuetude peple of that cuntre vse in to this tyme presente; whiche woman did grete thynges in here reigne. For sche made subiecte Ethioppe, and fauȝhte soore ageynes Ynde, whiche desirenge to haue hade the pleasure of the flesche with here awne son was sleyne by hym. And when Ninus, son to Semiramis, hade reignede xlij[ti] yere, contente with the labores of his fader, [he] was seen but selde of men, drawenge and taryenge moche in the company of women; whose successores vsenge the seide condicion ȝafe answeres to peple by messyngers betwene. ℞. Whiche thynge was obseruede and kepede vn to the tymes of Sardanapallus. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum decimum.

THARE beenge of lxx[ti] yere in age gate Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; whiche Abraham was borne in the xliij[ti] yere

---

[1] *and whan* repeated in MS.
[2] *enemy,* Cx,
[3] *right,* Cx.
[4] *transuaille,* MS.; *trauail,* Cx.
[5] *ȝeve, α.*; *yaf.* Cx.
[6] Added from *α.* and Cx.

quadragesimo tertio anno Nini regis Assyriorum, ducentesimo nonagesimo secundo[1] anno post diluvium secundum Josephum. *Ranulphus.* De numero annorum istius secundæ ætatis vide supra.[2] *Genesis.* Porro Aram[3] genuit Loth, Sarai,[4] et Melcham. Sed[5] mortuus est Aram ante patrem suum Thare[6] in Ur Chaldæorum. Ex quibus liquet quod[7] anno undecimo Abrahæ mortuus est Ninus. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Cujus uxor Semiramis, ut regnare posset post maritum,[8] nupsit proprio filio,[9] quem ex Nino marito[10] susceperat; et ex eo filium suscepit,[11] qui Babyloniam ampliavit. *Genesis.* Inde Thare, non valens ferre injurias sibi illatas de adorando igne, in Chaldæa, ubi et Aram primogenitum suum[12] extinxerant, peregrinatus est cum Abram et Nachor et familia Aram usque ad Charram[13] Mesopotamiæ,[14] ubi completis ducentis quinque annis mortuus est.[15] Abram, mortuo patre suo Thare,[16] descendit de Charra in Sichem, et inde Pentapolim; postmodum[17] collocans tabernaculum inter Bethel et Hai,[18] fame invalescente descendit in Ægyptum, dicens Sarai fore[19] sororem suam.[20] *Josephus, libro primo,[21] capitulo septimo.* Abraham, apud Chaldæos prius

Abraham de Charran in Ægyptum descendit.

Anno Abrahæ 75.

---

[1] 293, C.D.
[2] *Ranulphus . . . supra*] om. C.D.
[3] So A.B.; *Abraham*, E.
[4] So A.; *Saray*, E.
[5] *Sed*] *et*, C.D.
[6] *Thare*] om. C.D.
[7] *Ex quibus . . . quod*] om. C.D.
[8] *maritum*] eum, C.D.
[9] *filio suo*, B.
[10] *marito*] om. C.D.
[11] *suscepit*] *genuit*, C.D.
[12] *filium suum pr.* B.; *filium suum* C.D.
[13] *in Carram*, A.B.C. (not D.)
[14] *Mesopotamiæ*] om. B.
[15] *moritur Thare*, C.D.
[16] *suo Thare*] om. C.D.
[17] *postea*, C.D.
[18] So A.; *Hay*, D.E.
[19] *esse*, B.C.D.
[20] *dicens Sarray uxorem suam esse sororem*, C.D., which is better.
[21] *primo*] om. E. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 8.

i-bore þe ȝere of Nynus kyng of Assiria þre and fourty, two hondred ȝere foure score and twelue after Noe his flood, so seiþ Iosephus. ℞. Þe nombre and þe somme of þis secounde age loke to fore in þis book. *Genesis.* Þan Aram[1] gat Looth, Sarray, and Melcham: Aaram deide to fore his fader Thare in Ur Caldeorum, a place in Caldea: and so Ninus deide þe ȝere of Abraham his age eleuene. *Petrus* 60°. Semyramis Ninus his wif, for sche wolde reigne after hir housbonde Ninus, sche wedded hir owne sone þat sche hadde by hir housbonde Nynus, and hadde by hir sone a childe þat eched[2] Babilonia and made it more. *Genesis.* Þanne Thare myȝte nouȝt suffre þe wrong þat hym was doo of worschippynge of fuyr in Caldea, þere þei hadde i-slawe his eldest sone Aaram. He wente out of þe[3] contre wiþ Abraham and Nachor and Aaram his meyny anon to Charram in Mesopotamia, and deide þere after two hondred ȝere and fyue. Abraham whanne[4] his fader Thare was dede he wente doun out of Charra in to Sichem, and þennes into Pen[ta]polis;[5] afterward he piȝt his pauyloun bytwene Bethel and Hay. And honger wax[6] strong he went doun in to Egipte, and tolde þere þat Sarray was his suster. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo* 7°. Abraham lernede in TREVISA.

of Ninus kynge of Assiria, cc.xcij. yere after the grete floode, after Iosephus. ℞. Beholde in the vj^the chapitre afore of the nowmbre of the yeres of the secunde age. *Genesis.* Aaram gate Loth, Saray, and Melcha, but Aaram diede afore Thare his fader, in the cite of men of Caldea, wherefore hit doth appere that Ninus diede in the xj^the yere of Abraham. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* The wife of whom, Semiramis by name, did wedde here awne son, that sche myȝhte reigne, whom sche hade by Ninus here howsebonde, hauenge a childe by here son, whiche did ampliate Babilony. Thare hauenge not powere to suffre iniuryes doen to hym as for fire to be worschippede in Caldea, where he pereschede, Aaram his firste son wente furthe with Abraham and Nachor, and with the meyne other seruauntes of Aaram, to Carra in Mesopotamia, whiche diede there, cc. and v. yere complete. Thare ded, Abraham wente from Carra to Sichem, and afterwarde to Pentapolis, fixenge his tabernacle betwene Bethel and Hay. After that for hungre he wente in to Egipte, taking Saray with hym, sayenge here to be his sustyr. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.* Abraham, erudite MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *Aaron*, MS.
[2] *echyd and enlarged.* Cx.
[3] *þat, a.*, Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *was*, MS.
[5] *Pentapolis, a.*, Cx.
[6] *was*, Cx.

eruditus, in Ægyptum descendens [1] docuit Ægyptios primus [2] arithmeticam [3] et astrologiam prius [4] illis ignotam. *Genesis.*[5] Abraham plurimum ditatus rediens de Ægypto [6] ad locum prioris tabernaculi, propter jurgium pastorum recessit a Loth usque ad convallem Mambre juxta Hebron. *Petrus, quadragesimo secundo.* Hebron vel Chebron est [7] civitas, quæ et Cariatharbe dicitur [8] a *cariath* quod est civitas, et *arbe* quod est quatuor. Nam ibi [9] sepulti [10] sunt [11] quatuor patriarchæ maximi; Adam, Abraham, Isaak, et Jacob. *Ranulphus.* Sed Joseph sepultus est in Sichimis juxta Montem Ephraim,[12] sicut supra dictum est, et in libro Josuæ ultimo capitulo patet.[13] *Genesis.* Abraham cum redisset de cæde [14] quatuor regum dedit decimas de omnibus adquisitis occurrenti [15] sibi Melchisedech, regi Salem, qui obtulit panem et vinum. *Hieronymus in epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus capitulo quinquagesimo secundo.*[16] Decimæ leguntur primum datæ ab Abraham, sed primitiæ prius dabantur ab Abel. Hunc etiam [17] Melchisedech tradunt Hebræi fuisse Seem,[18] primogenitum [19] Noe, et vixisse usque ad

Abraham juxta Hebron revertitur.

De civitate Hebron.

Decimæ Melchisedech.

---

[1] *veniens*, C.D.
[2] *primus*] om. B.
[3] *arsmetricam*, A.; *arismetricam*, B.
[4] *antea*, C.D., which, after *ignotam*, add, *a quibus postmodum istæ scientiæ pervenerunt ad Ægyptios.*
[5] Reference added from A.
[6] *Abraham* after *Ægypto* in E.
[7] *est*] om. D.
[8] *dicitur*] om. B.
[9] *ibi enim*, C.D.
[10] *sepulte*, D.E.
[11] *sunt*] om. B.
[12] Variously written in MSS.
[13] *Ranulphus . . . patet*] om. C.D.
[14] *occisione*, C.D., which vary the sentence.
[15] *occurrente*, A.
[16] 43, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 46. and c. 47.
[17] *autem*, C. (not D.)
[18] *Sem*, A.
[19] *filium*, D.

TREVISA.

Caldea and wente doun in to Egipte, and was þe firste þat tauȝte þe Egipcians ars metrick[1] and astrologie, þat was vnknowe to hem to fore honde. *Genesis.* Abraham was ful riche, and went aȝen out of Egipt to þe place of þe forseide pauyloun, and for strif of herdes he departede from Loth, and wente from hym anon to þe vale of Mambre besides Ebron. *Petrus* 42, *Hebron.* Hebron, þat hatte Chebron also, is[2] a citee, and hatte [also][3] Cariatharbe, of *Cariath*, þat is a citee, and *Arbe*, þat is foure; for foure þe grettest patriarkes were i-buryed þere, Adam, Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob; but Ioseph is i-buried in Sichem besides Mount Ephraym, as it is i-seide aboue in libro Iosue, capitulo ultimo. *Genesis.* Whan Abraham come aȝen from þe batayle of foure kynges, he ȝaf teþynge of al þat he hadde i-gete to Melchysedek[4] king of Salem; and Melchisedek offred bred and wyn. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus* 43, *Decimæ Melchisedek.*[5] Men[6] spekeþ and[7] demeþ þat Abraham ȝaf first tethynges; but Abel ȝaf raþer þe firste þat God sente hym of alle manere kynde. Þe Hebrewes telle þat Melchysedek was Sem, Noe his sone,

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

firste amonge men in Caldea, goenge in to Egipte tawȝhte theyme arismetrik and geometry, and also astrology, not knowen amonge theyme afore that tyme. *Genesis.* Abraham, made ryche, returnede to the place of the firste tabernacle; whiche taryenge þer, a debate was movedȩ betwene his schepardes and the schepardes of Loth, wente from Loth vn to the vale of Mambra nye to Hebron. *Petrus, capitulo* 42°. Hebron other Chebron is a cite other wise callede Cariatarbe whiche is diriviede of *Cariat*, that is a cite, and *tarbe*, that is iiij.; for the iiij. grete patriarkes were beryede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac and Iacob. ℞. But Ioseph was buriede in Sichimis, nye to the mownte of Effraym, as hit is schewede in libro Iosue, ultimo capitulo. *Genesis.* When Abraham hade returnede from the seete of iiij. kynges he ȝafe the x^the^ parte of his goodes to Melchisedech kynge of Salem, metenge hym, whiche offrede to hym brede and wyne. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum; et Petrus, capitulo quadragesimo secundo.* Hit is redde that tithes were ȝiffen firste by Abraham, but firste getten frutes were ȝiffen firste of Abel. Men of Hebrewe afferme Melchisedech to haue be the firste son of Sem, the firste son of Noe, and to have lyvede vn to

---

[1] *arithmetryk*, *a.* (not Cx.)
[2] *þere is*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[3] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[4] *Melchesedech*, *a.*; *Mechysedech*, Cx.
[5] *Decimæ Melchisedek*] om. *a.*
[6] *Me*, *a.*
[7] *spekeþ and*] om. *a.*; *Me redeth that*, Cx.

Isaak; et omnes primogenitos a Noe usque[1] ad Aaron[2] fuisse sacerdotes, qui in conviviis et oblationibus benedicebant populo, quibus et primogenita dabantur;[3] et hæc esse[4] primogenita, quæ Esau vendidit Jacob

Iubileus.

fratri suo. Ab[5] ista etiam victoria Abrahæ tradunt quidam annum Jubileum sumpsisse primordium[6] pro hac remissione[7] captivorum. *Jobel* enim dicitur remissio, vel[8] initium. Unde Jobeleus[9] vel Jubileus instituitur in quinquagesimo anno, eo quod Loth tunc fuerit[10] quinquaginta annorum,[11] vel quod[12] Abraham astrorum peritus noverat quod intemperies, quæ proveniunt[13] ex planetis elevatis seu depressis usque ad quinquagesimum annum ad temperiem redeunt. Et quod Abraham[14] vidit in astris imitatus est in terris. *Petrus, quinquagesimo tertio.*[15] Abrahæ natus est Ismael de ancilla Agar, qui[16] tertiodecimo ætatis suæ anno circumcisus est.[17] Quem ritum adhuc sequuntur

Ismael.

Arabes, quorum auctor Ismael fuit.[18] *Genesis.* Hic postmodum vir sagittarius effectus progenuit ex sua

Circumcisio.

uxore Ægyptia[19] duodecim populorum duces, Saracenos,[20]

---

[1] *usque*] om. C. (not D.)
[2] So A.D.; *Aron*, E.
[3] *debebantur*, B.
[4] *et illa fuerunt*, C.D.
[5] *Petrus*, c. 41, ins. C.D. (in marg.)
[6] *initium*, C.D.
[7] *redemptione*, C.D.
[8] *et*, C. (not D.)
[9] *Jobelius*, A.
[10] *fuerat*, B.
[11] *eo quod ... annorum*] om. D.
[12] *quia*, A.B.C.D.
[13] *provenient*, B.
[14] *Adam*, A.B.; *Abram*, E.
[15] The true reference is to c. 50.
[16] *in*, ins. C.D. (omitting *ætatis suæ*).
[17] *erat*, D.
[18] *auctor fuerat*, D.
[19] *ex . . . Ægyptia*] om. C.D.
[20] *Sarracenos videlicet*, C.D.

and telleþ þat he leuede anoon to Isaac. Þey telleþ also þat from Noe anon to Aron [1] alle þe eldest sones were preostes, and blessid þe peple in offrynges [and festes],[2] and fenge and hadde þe firste burþe of bestes, and me seiþ þat suche were þe firste burþes þat Esau solde to his broþer Iacob. Also som men meneþ þat annus Iubileus,[3] þat is þe ȝere of grace as [4] is i-ordeyned þe fifþe ȝere, took þe bygynnynge of þe victorie for þe delyueraunce of prisoneres. Iobel is [5] forȝifnes oþer bygynnynge; þerof comeþ Ioboleus oþer Iubileus, þe ȝere of grace, as is [6] i-ordeyned þe fiftiþe [7] ȝere; for Looth was þoo fifty ȝere olde. For Abraham, þat was konnynge in þe craft of knowleche of þe planetes and sterres, knewe þat þe temperure [8] þat comeþ of hiȝnesse and lownesse of sterres and planetes,[9] comeþ aȝen to temperure at þe fiftiþe ȝere; and so Abraham ordeyned som liknesse here in erþe þat he say in þe sterres and planetes. *Petrus* 53. Abraham hadde a sone Ismael i-bore of his seruaunt Agar, þe whiche Ismael was i-circumcised [10] whan he was þrittene ȝere olde. Þe Arabes vseþ ȝit þat manere of doynge. Ismael was hire auctor. *Genesis.* Þis Ismael was afterward an archer, and gat on his wif þat was of Egipt twelue dukes, lederes of peple, þat cleped hem self TREVISA.

Ysaac, and alle the firste geten childer from Noe vn to Aaron to haue be prestes, whiche blessede the peple in festes, and in oblaciones; to whom the firste geten thynges were ȝiffen, whom Esau solde to Iacob his brother. From whiche victory of Abraham, somme men say the yere of Iubile to haue taken originalle, for that remission of captif men; for Iobel is callede remission other begynnenge, wherefore the yere of Iubile is ordeynede in the l^{ti} yere. Other elles Abraham, experte in astronomy, knowenge by the planetes the intemperaunce of wedre eleuate and depressede to returne to temperaunce at the l^{ti} yere, folowede in erthe that he vnderstode by the disposicion of bodies supracelestialle. *Petrus* 53° *capitulo.* Abraham gate Ismael of Agar seruaunte, whiche Ismael was circumsisede in the xiij^{the} yere of his age, whiche rite men of Araby kepe vn to this tyme, the auctor of whom Ismael was. *Genesis.* Whiche, made an archer, gate of his wife of Egipte xij. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Aaron*, α.
[2] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] *Iubilemus*, α.
[4] *and*, α. Cx. has omissions here.
[5] So α.; *his*, MS.
[6] *and is*, α.
[7] *L* (*i.e.* 50), Cx.; *fiftenþe*, MS.
[8] *temperure of þe fiftiþe ȝere*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[9] *planetes and sterres*, α.
[10] *i-circumcided*, α.

ex parte Saræ[1] se vocantes;[2] cum verius sint Agareni, ab Agar matre Ismaelis, sive Ismaelitæ ex patre sic dicti, seu[3] Madianitæ. Indixit Deus Abrahæ* et semini suo circumcisionem, quasi quodam charactere volens populum suum distinguere a cæteris nationibus.[4] *Anno Abr. 99.

Tempore circumcisionis nomina mutantur.

Petrus, quadragesimo septimo.[5] Quia tempore circumcisionis mutatum est nomen Abrahæ, ideo Hebræi octavo die, quando circumcidunt[6] pueros,[7] nomina illis imponunt. In veteri[8] testamento quatuor nomina leguntur prænuntiata, scilicet,[9] Ismaelis, Isaak, Sampsonis, et Josiæ; et in novo[10] solummodo[11] Johannis Baptistæ, et Christi. *Ranulphus.*[12] Quod quando fit, singularis meriti aut virtutis indicium est, sicut legitur in vita Remigii.[13] *Genesis.* Hoc anno subversa[14] est Sodoma, et Loth inde liberatus transiens in[15] Segor, modicam urbem juxta montem, vinoque inebriatus genuit ex seniore filia Moab; de quo Moabitæ descenderunt. Et ex altera[16] filia genuit Amon, de quo Amonitæ descenderunt. *Ranulphus.* De loco Sodomæ, qui nunc Mare Mortuum dicitur, vide[17] supra, libro primo de provinciis Asiæ, capitulo Judæa.

Sodoma subversa.

---

[1] *Sarra*, B.

[2] *revocantes*, E.

[3] *sive*, B.

[4] C.D. add: *Promisitque ei filium, quem Ysaac vocaret.*

[5] The true reference is to c. 50.

[6] *circumciderunt*, D.

[7] *pueros suos*, A.

[8] *veteri quoque*, C D.

[9] *scilicet*] om. B.

[10] *et in novo testamento duo tantum*, C.D.

[11] So A.; *solomodo*, E.

[12] Added from A.B.

[13] C.D. have in the margin, *In vita Remigii*, omitting *sicut, &c.* from the text.

[14] *submersa*, C.D.

[15] *in*] om. E., which (with A.) has *modica urbe;* C.D. omit these words, and otherwise vary the sentence.

[16] *alia*, E.

[17] *quære*, C.D.

TREVISA.

Saracenys, as þogh þey [1] were i-come of Sarra; but þey beeþ verrailiche Agarenes, for þey come of Agar [Ismael his moder. Also þey beþ cleped] [2] Ismaelites, for þey come of Ismael; and beeþ Madianites [3] also. ℞. Oure Lorde ȝaf Abraham and his children þe circumcisioun forto make and departe [4] his peple from oþer naciouns. *Petrus* 47. For Abraham his name was i-chaunged whan he was circumsised, þerfore þe Hebrewes ȝeue hir children names þe eiȝtþe [5] day whan þey beeþ circumcided. In þe olde testament me redeþ þat men were i-warned of foure men names to fore þe burþe: of Ismael, Isaac, Sampson, and Iosyas. In þe newe testament onliche of Iohn Baptiste and Crist. ℞. And whan þat [þat] [6] was i-doo it bodid grete merite and vertue; so me redeþ in Remigius his lyf. *Genesis*. Þis ȝere Sodoma was destroyed, and Looth delyuered, and wente into Segor, a litel citee þere besides an hul; and was wyndronken; and in his sleep he gat Moab on his eldest douȝter and [7] Amon on his oþer douȝter. Of Moab come þe Moabites, and of Amon come [8] Amonytes. ℞. Of þe place of Sodoma, þat hatte now þe dede see, loke above in þe firste book, in þe prouince of Asia, in þe chapitre Iudea, þat is þe Iewerye.

MS. HARL. 2261.

dukes and gouernoures of peple, callenge theyme Saracenes, as commenge of Sara, but in trawthe thei awe to be namede raþer Agarenes, of Agar moder of Ismael, other elles Ismaelites after Ismael, as Madianites were namede of Madian. ℞. God commaundede to Abraham the vse of circumcision, and to his sede, wyllenge to make a distinccion, as by a carecte, betwene his peple and other naciones. *Petrus*, 47° *capitulo*. And for cause that the name of Abraham was chaungede in the circumcision, þerfore men of Hebrewe name theire childer in the viij^the day, when the childer be circumcisede. And iiij. names be pronunciate in the olde testamente, that is to say, Ismael, Ysaac, Sampson, and Iosias, and ij. oonly in the newe testamente, Iohn Baptiste and Criste. ℞. Whiche thynge is a specialle schewenge of a singuler merite and vertu, as hit is redde in the life of Seynte Remigius. *Genesis*. Sodoma was destroyede that yere, and Loth delyuerede; and salvede, goenge in to Segor, a litel cite nye to the hille, drunke þro wyne gate of his elder doȝhter Moab, of whom Moabites come. Of Sodoma, whiche is callede the dedde see, loke in the firste boke, capitulo 14°.

---

[1] *þei þeiȝ*, *a.*

[2] Added from *a.* and Cx.

[3] *Madiamites*, MS. and *a.*

[4] *departed*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

[5] *eiȝteþe*, *a.*

[6] Added from *a.*; not in Cx.

[7] *an*, *a.*

[8] *come*] the, *a.* and Cx.

Cap. XI.

De Isaac et ejus familia; et de mythica Græcorum historia.[1]

Isaac nascitur.

Petrus quinquagesimo tertio.[2] Natus est Isaak* de Sara nonagenaria;[3] qui trimus effectus[4] ablactatus est; et tunc factum est convivium eo quod tunc primo[5] accesserit[6] ad mensam patris. Cres cœpit regnare in Creta,† a quo et Creta insula[7] dicta est; quem aiunt fuisse unum Curetarum[8] qui Jovem abscondit et educavit.[9] Moritur[10] Sara,‡ cum centum et viginti septem esset annorum, sepultaque est[11] in Hebron.[12] Et cito post Eleezer,[13] procurator Abrahæ, missus ad quærendum uxorem pro Isaak,[14] adduxit Rebeccam. Duxit quoque[15] Abraham Cethuram in[16] uxorem, ex qua genuit sex liberos, quos omnes separavit a filio suo Isaak.[17] *Petrus, quinquagesimo nono.*[18] Dicunt Hebræi Cethuram esse[19] nomen appellativum quod interpretatur *copulata*, quam dicunt etiam[20] fuisse Agar, quæ de concubina post mortem Sarai transivit in conjugem; ne, si senex aliam quam prius a se cognitam duceret,[21] lascivire videretur. Isaak quadraginta§ erat annorum, quando duxit Rebeccam in uxorem; quæ mansit

A filiis Cethuræ separatur.

Isaac Rebeccam ducit in uxorem.

* Anno Abr. 100.

† Anno Abr. 130. Anno Isaac, 30.

‡ Anno Abr. 136. Anno Isaac 36.

§ Anno Abr. 140. Anno Isaac 40.

---

[1] Title wanting in MSS.

[2] Reference added from A.C.D. The true reference is to c. 56.

[3] *vetula*, D.

[4] *effectus*] om. D.

[5] *postea*, B.

[6] *accessit*, D.

[7] *insula*] om. C.D., which have in margin *Dionisius*.

[8] *Curitarum*, A.

[9] *qui . . . educavit*] a quo Jupiter, ut ferunt, absconditus fuit et nutritus, C.D.

[10] *Petrus* 56, ins. C.D. in marg.

[11] *et sepulta est*, B.

[12] Sentence slightly varied in C.D., as also the following.

[13] *Eliezer*, A.; *Eleazar*, B.D.

[14] *Isaac*, A.; *Ysaac*, C.D.; and so usually.

[15] *que*, A.

[16] *in*] om. D.

[17] *quos separavit ab Ysaac*, C.D.

[18] The true reference is to c. 62.

[19] *fuisse*, C.D.

[20] *etiam dicunt*, A.

[21] *novis imperitiis*, ins. C.D.

TREVISA.

Capitulum undecimum.

ISAAC was i-bore of his moder Sarra whan sche was foure skore ȝere olde and ten. *Petrus* 53. Isaac was i-wened whan he was þre ȝere olde, and þo[1] was i-made a grete feste; for þo he wente firste to his fader bord. Crees bygan to regne in Creta; of hym þat ilond Creta haþ þat name Creta. Som men telleþ þat[2] Crees was oon of þe gouernours þat norsched and hidde Iupiter. Sarra deide whan sche was sixe score ȝere olde and seuene, and was i-buried in Hebron. And sone þere after Eleeser Abrahams seruaunt was i-sent forto fecche[3] a wyf for Isaac, and brouȝte Rebekka.[4] Also Abraham wedded Cethura to wyf, and gatt on hire sixe children, and departed hem alle from his sone Isaac. *Petrus* 59.[5] Hebreus seieþ[6] þat Cethura is a comyn name, and is to menynge[7] i-coupled; and seiþ þat þis Cethura was Agar, and of a lemman was i-made a wyf after þe deeþ of Sarra, anaunter[8] leste þe olde man schulde be holde a lecchour, and he hadde i-take anoþer þan he hadde i-lay by to fore honde. Isaac was fourty ȝere olde whan he wedded Rebekka, þat bare

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum undecimum.

YSAAC was borne of Sara beenge of xc. yere in age, whiche, hauenge iij. yere in age, was weynede, and then a grete feste was made, in that Ysaac comme that tyme firste to the burde of his fader. Crees began to reigne in the yle callede Creta, of whom that yle tooke name, whom thei seye to be oon of theym whiche did hyde Iupiter and noryschede hym secretely. Sara beenge of a cxxvij. yere diede, and was beriede in Hebron: after that Heleeser, proctor of Abraham, was sende to gette a wife for Ysaac, whiche brouȝhte Rebecca. Abraham did wedde Cethura in to his wife, of whom he gate vj. childer, whom he departede from Ysaac his son. *Petrus, 59° capitulo.* Men of Hebrewe say Cethura to be a nowne appellatiue, as cowplede, by interpretacion, whom thei say Agar, whiche beenge his concubyne, was made his wife after the dethe of Sara. Ysaac was of xl^ti yere in age when he did wedde Rebecca,

1 þoo, α.
2 say, Cx.
3 fette, Cx.
4 Rebecca, α.; Rebecka, Cx.
5 5, α. (not Cx.)
6 siggeþ, α.
7 vnderstandyng, Cx.
8 lest perauenter, Cx., who varies the rest of the sentence.

sterilis[1] per viginti annos. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* *Apud lacum[2] Tritonidem apparuit virgo[3] Tritona[4] nomine, quam Græci Minervam dicunt, quæ etiam dicta est Pallas a Pallante,[5] insula Thraciæ, ubi nutrita fuit, sive a Pallante gigante, quem interfecit. *Ranulphus.* Hic nota quod iste Pallas gigas alius est ab illo Pallante gigante, filio Evandri, quem Turnus occidit sub tempore Æneæ.[6] *Augustinus.*[7] Hæc virgo Pallas sive Minerva[8] plures artes adinvenit, potissime lanificium; quæ tanto proclivius dea credita est, quanto minus innotuit ejus origo. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.*[9] Nati sunt Isaak† duo gemelli filii ex Rebecca,[10] Esau et Jacob. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.* [11] Regnum Argivorum exortum est in Græcia sub Inacho patre Isidis, quæ[12] et Io dicebatur, et regnavit Inachus[13] quinquaginta annis. Duravitque hoc[14] regnum quingentis quadraginta quatuor annis sub regibus quatuordecim usque ad ultimum Acrisium, quem occidit Perseus,[15] licet non sponte, duodecimo scilicet anno Deeboræ[16] judicis Israel; et inde timens sibi Perseus agros[17] relinquens transtulit regnum ad Mycenas.[18]

De Pallade.

De regno Argivorum.

* Anno Abr. 154. Anno Isaac 54.

† Anno Abr. 160. Anno Isaac 60.

---

[1] *postmodum*, ins. C.D.
[2] *Apud lacum apud*, A.
[3] *virgo*] om. A.E.
[4] *Tritonia*, B.D.
[5] *Pallene*, C.D.
[6] *Hic nota . . . Æneæ*] om. C.D.
[7] *Augustinus*] om. C.D.
[8] *virgo . . . Minerva*] om. C.D.
[9] A.B.C.D. omit reference.
[10] *filii ex Rebecca*] om. C.D.
[11] *Hoc anno*, ins. C.D.
[12] *qui*, E.
[13] *Inachus*] om. C.D.
[14] *hoc*] Argivorum, C. (not D.)
[15] So D.E.; but E. has *Persius* below. *Percius* A., and *Persius* below.
[16] So MSS. and versions for *Debboræ.*
[17] *Argos*, A.C.; *Arguos*, B.
[18] *Micenas*, MSS. C.D. add, *ubi Danaus postmodum regnavit.*

TREVISA.

no childe twenty ȝere after. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. At þe lake Tritonides was i-seie a womman þat heet Tritona ; þe Grees clepeþ hir Mynerua; and hatte Pallas also of Pallas þe ilond of Tracia, þere he [1] was i-norsched, oþer of Pallas þe geant þat he [2] slowh. R. Here take hede þat þis geant Pallas was anoþer geant þan þe geant Pallas, þat Turnus Euander is sone slowh in Eneas his tyme. *Augustinus, ut* [3] *supra.* Þis mayde Pallas, þat heet Mynerua also, fonde vp meny craftes, and specialliche wolcraft,[4] and was þe liȝtloker [5] i-trowed a goddes. For me wiste wel litel whennes sche come.[6] Isaac hade tweye twynnes i-bore of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Þe kyngdom of Argiues bygan in Grecia vnder Inachus Isis his fader. Isis heet [Io] [7] also, and Inachus regnede fifty ȝere, and þat kyngdom durede fyue hondred ȝere and foure and fourty vnder fourtene kynges anon to þe laste Acrisius : hym slow Persius, þeyȝ it were nouȝt wiþ [8] his wille, þe twelfþe ȝere of Delbora iuge of Israel. And þerfor Persius dradde ful sore, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche was bareyne by xx^ti yeres. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* A woman callede Tritona apperede at a water callede Tritonides,[9] whom men of Grewe calle Minerua, whiche was callede also Pallas, of an yle in Tracia of that name, where sche was norischede, other elles of Pallas the gigante, whom sche did slee. R. Hit is to be attendede that this gigante, called Pallas, was an other then Pallas son of Euander, whom Turnus did sle in the tyme of Eneas. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* That virgyn callede Pallas other Minerua founde mony artes, and specially of makenge clothe, þe originalle of the byrthe of whom is not knowen, wherefore sche is callede a godesse. Ysaac gate ij. childer of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* The realme of men callede Argyues, in Grece, began vnder Inachus fader of Ysides, otherwise callede Io, whiche Inachus reignede l^ti yere; and that realme contynude by v^c. and xliiij^ti yere, under xiiij. kynges, vn to the laste, Acrisius, whom Persius did sle ageyne his wille, in the xij^the yere of Delbora iugge of Israel. Wherefore Persius dredenge

---

[1] *heo, β.*; *a., γ.*; *she,* Cx., quite rightly, who notwithstanding has *he slough.* The pronouns are so strangely employed by Trevisa or his scribes, that the concordant readings of MS. and *α.* have been rarely corrected.

[2] So MS., *α., β.,* Cx. ; *heo, γ.*

[3] *ubi, α.,* Cx.

[4] *wolle craft, α.,* Cx.

[5] *lightyer,* Cx.

[6] *cam,* Cx.

[7] Added from *α.* and Cx.

[8] *by,* Cx.

[9] *Tratonides,* Harl. MS.

Moritur Abraham* centum septuaginta quinque annorum existens, et[1] sepelitur[2] in[3] Hebron.[4] *Petrus, sexagesimo sexto.* Idioma Hebræi sermonis et mos antiquæ Latinitatis est,[5] ut prius[6] supputetur minor numerus, deinde major sequatur;[7] verbi gratia, nos dicimus juxta proprietatem linguæ nostræ: Vixit Abraham[8] centum septuaginta quinque annis. Illi e contrario dicunt sic:[9] Vixit Abraham quinque septuaginta centum annis. [10]*Augustinus*[11] *de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Argivorum† secundus rex Foroneus filius Inachi cœpit regnare, et regnavit sexaginta annis. Iste Foroneus Argolicus primus Græciæ leges dedit,[12] et sub judice causas agi instituit, unde et locum judiciorum a nomine suo appellavit Forum;[13] cujus frater Fogous[14] astrologus ad deos colendos invenit sacellos, ob quod deificatus est.[15] Horum soror fuit Isis sive Io, quæ ad Ægyptum navigans literas et agriculturam eos docuit; unde et post mortem apud illos[16] deificata est.[17] *Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto.*[18] Isis primo sistrum invenit, unde et Amazones cum sistris exercitum vocabant ad bellum.

* Anno Abr. 175. Anno Isaac 75.

Phoroneus et Phegeus.

† Anno Abr. 211. Anno Isaac 111.

De Iside.

---

[1] *et*] om. A.B.
[2] *sepultus est*, C.D.
[3] *spelunca duplici in*, ins. C.D.
[4] *Ebron*, A.
[5] *est*] ita se habent, C.D.
[6] *prior*, A.
[7] *sequitur*, B.; *ut*, ins. C.D.
[8] *Abraham*] om. C. (not D.)
[9] *Illi . . . sic*] Illi e contra, C.D.
[10] *Item*, ins. A.
[11] C.D. omit reference here, and place it before *Iste Feroneus*.
[12] *edidit*, B.
[13] *appellavit Forum*] dictum forum denominavit, C.D.
[14] *Fegous*, D. August. (*C. D.* xviii. 3) has *Phegous*. The classical forms of the names are *Phoroneus* and *Phegeus*.
[15] *est*] Added from B.C.D.
[16] *eos*, C.D.
[17] *honorum . . . est*] om. B.
[18] *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.C.; libro 13, D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 22.

TREVISA.

lefte þe Argus and tornede þe kyngdom to þe Mycenes.[1] Abraham lyuede fiftene ȝere þre skore and an hondred ȝere, and was i-buried in Ebron. *Petrus* 66. Þe longage of Hebreu[2] and þe vsage of olde Latyn is forto acounte the lasse nombre to fore þe more, contrarye to þe manere þat Latyn vseþ now, for now we seieþ in Latyn, Abraham lyuede an hondred ȝere þre skore and fiftene; but þe Hebrewes seiþ in þis[3] manere, Abraham lyuede fiftene ȝere þre skore and an hondred ȝere. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro* 18°. Feroneus, Inachus his sone, was þe secounde kyng of þe Argiues,[4] and reignede sixtene[5] ȝere. Þis Feroneus Argolicus ȝaf first lawes in Grees, and ordeynede þat causes schulde be i-pleded[6] to fore iuges. Þerfore þey cleped þe places of domes Forum after his owne name. His broþer heet Fogous,[7] and kowþe[8] moche astrologie, and ordeyned temples to worschip þe[9] false goddes ynne; þerfore he was acounted a god amonge hem þat worschipped suche goddes. His suster heet Isus,[10] and Io also: he[11] seilled into Egipt and tauȝte men here lettres and telynge of feeldes;[12] þerfore after her deth sche was i-made a goddesse among.[13] *Isidorus, libro* 3. Isis ordeynede firste trompes, þerfore þe Amazones cleped hire

MS. HARL. 2261.

lefte the Argyues, and translate that realme to Micenas. Abraham beenge of a clx. and xv. yere in age, diede and was beryede in Hebron. *Petrus, 66 capitulo.* The maner of men of Hebrewe is to accompte the lesse nowmbre afore the more nowmbre, as by grace of exemple we say, that Abraham lyvede an c. yere lxxv. Men of Hebrewe say, that Abraham lyvede v. xx. l. and a c. yere. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.* Foroneus, the secunde kynge of the Argiues, began to reigne, continuenge by lx. yere. This Foroneus ordeynede firste lawes amonge the Grekes, whiche ordeinede also causes to be ventilate afore a iugge, callenge the seete and place of the iugge Forum, after his name; whiche hade a sustyr, callede Isis other Io, whiche saylenge to Egipte tauȝhte theyme firste letters, and to tylle the londe, wherefore sche was made a goodesse

[1] So α. and Cx.; *Mecenes*, MS., in which (as well as in α.) several words are wrongly inserted from below.
[2] So α. and Cx.; *Ebron*, MS.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *his*, MS.
[4] *armes*, MS.
[5] *sixty*, Cx.
[6] *pleted*, Cx.
[7] So α.; *Fogronis*, MS.
[8] *and the Fogons coude*, Cx., who varies the sentence.
[9] *þe*] om. α.
[10] *Ysis*, Cx.
[11] *she*, Cx. (not α.)
[12] *fildes*, α.
[13] Cx. adds *theym*.

De fabuloso Epaphi ortu.

Ranulphus. Quod legitur[1] Jovem rapuisse Io et Epaphum genuisse, fabula est et figmentum poeticum propter utriusque personæ[2] famosam excellentiam.[3] Nam[4] fingunt poetæ nonnullos illustres personas[5] ex Jove progenitos, ut ex hoc genus illorum amplius illustretur.[6] Io namque fuit sub diebus Isaak, et Jupiter postmodum sub diebus[7] Josuæ.

Thessalus in Thessalia regnat.

Thessalus Græci filius regnavit in Thessalia.

Benedictio Isaac a Jacob. surrepta.

Jacob* post empta primogenita[8] post benedictionem surreptam[9] a patre, juxta matris suæ consilium descendit in Mesopotamiam.

* Anno Abr. 257. Anno Isaac 157.

De primogenitis.

Petrus, sexagesimo quarto. Primogenita dicuntur quædam dignitates et prærogativæ quas habebant filii primogeniti in suis cognationibus usque ad Aaron, videlicet quod induerentur veste[10] speciali in sacrificiis offerendis, quod etiam paternam reciperent benedictionem, quod etiam[11] duplam reciperent portionem in conviviis et in divisione hæreditatis, et quod[12] suis minoribus benedicerent. Jacob genuit ex Lya[13] Reuben[14] primogenitum suum.†

Diluvium sub Ogyge.

Hoc anno[16] factum est diluvium particulare in Achaia sive in Attica terra, sub Ogyge[17] rege, qui urbem

† Anno Abr. 265. [Anno Isaac 165.][15]

---

[1] *sequitur*, C. (not D.)

[2] *personam*, B.

[3] *excellentiam*] om. A.B.

[4] *Nam*] om. C.D.

[5] *personas*] om. C.D.

[6] *illustrarent*, D.

[7] *diebus*] tempore, C.D.

[8] *a fratre suo*, ins. C.D.

[9] *susceptam*, A.

[10] *veste*] om. A. ; speciali indumento, B.

[11] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[12] *et quod*] quod etiam, C. ; quod minoribus suis, D. (omitting *et*.)

[13] *ex Lya* after *suum*, B.

[14] *Reuben*] om. E. D. has in margin the dates 245, 145.

[15] Supplied according to the mind of Higden. The date is wanting altogether in A. ; D. has 251 and 151.

[16] *Hoc anno*] om. C.D.

[17] *Ogege*, D.

ofte to batailleward[1] wiþ trompes. [R.][2] Þat me redeþ þat Iupiter ravesched Io and gat Epaphus, it is but a fable and feynynge of poetes for noble fame[3] of eyþer persone.[4] For poetes feyneþ meny noble persones i-gete of Iupiter, for þe kyn schulde be[5] þe more gentil and noble i-holde.[6] But Io was in Ysaac his tyme, and Iupiter was afterward in Iosue his tyme. Thessalus, Grecus his sone, reignede in Thessalia. Iacob, after þat he hadde i-bouȝt þe firste birþe, and slyliche i-gete his fader blessynge by his moder counsaile þey[7] wente doun in to Mesopotamia. *Petrus* 64. Þe furste burþe[8] of hem[9] were special profiȝtes[10] and worschippes[11] to the eldest sones,[12] hadde in hire kynrede anon to Aaron; for þey were cloþed in special cloþynge in offrynge of sacrefice, and hadde hire fader blessynge, and double porcioun in festes and in delynge of heritage, and he[13] schulde blesse hire lasse.[14] Iacob gat his firste sone Ruben on his wyfe Lya. Þis ȝere was a litel flood in Achaia, þat hatte Atthica þat lond, vnder[15] Ogiges þe kyng, þat renewede

TREVISA.

---

after here dethe. *Isidorus, libro* 3°, *et* ℞. That men say Iupiter to have rauesched Io, and to haue geten Epaphus, is but a fable, and a fenynge of poettes, for the famose excellence of bothe persones. For poetes feyne mony nowble men to haue ben geten by Iupiter, that the kynde of theyme myȝhte be made more nowble þere by. For Io was in the tyme of Ysaac, and Iupiter was after the tyme of Iosue. Thessalus the son of Grecus reignede in Grece. Iacob wente in to Mesopotamy,[16] after the cownselle of his moder, after that he hade bouȝhte the fyrste frutes of Esau, and after the blessenge of his fader. *Petrus, sexagesimo quarto capitulo.* The firste geten thynges were callede certeyne dignites and prerogatifes, whom the firste childer hade in theire cognaciones vn to Aaron; that is to say, they were induede with a specialle vesture, in sacrifices and oblaciones to be offrede, that thei scholde receyve also the benediccion of the fader, and thei scholde haue also a dowble portion in festes, and in the diuision of inheritaunce, and that thei scholde blesse the yongers of theyme. Iacob gate of Lia Ruben his firste son. A particuler floode was that yere in Achaia, vnder Ogiges[17] kynge, whiche renewenge

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *bataylward*, α.
[2] Added from α.
[3] *ffame*, MS. (not α.)
[4] *persoon*, α.
[5] *holde*, added in α.
[6] *i-holde*] om. α.
[7] *he*, Cx.
[8] *burþes*, α., Cx.
[9] *of hem*] om. α, Cx.
[10] *profyȝt*, α. (not Cx.)
[11] *worschippe*, α., Cx.
[12] *oldest sonne*, Cx.
[13] *they*, Cx.
[14] *þe lasse*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[15] *was vnder*, Cx.
[16] *Egipte*, Harl. MS. (first hand).
[17] *Ogides*, Harl. MS.

Atthen innovans,[1] etiam [2] Eleusim condidit. Hoc anno* Jacob xci. annorum existens genuit Joseph ex Rachel.[3] *Petrus, septuagesimo quarto.* Finitis quatuordecim [4] annis, quibus Jacob servivit pro uxoribus,[5] pepigit Laban cum [6] eo quod quicquid varium nasceretur de unicolore merces sua foret. Unde et [7] tulit Jacob virgas virides populeas, amygdalinas, et platauinas, quas per loca decorticans [8] posuit in canalibus aquarum ante [9] conspectum ovium in [10] ipso fervore coitus, ut [11] sic tales fœtus conciperent quales umbras ascendentium arietum in aquarum speculo videbant. Et ne [12] omnes fœtus varii coloris fierent et sic [13] dolus deprehenderetur, in verno conceptu ponebat virgas, sed in serotina admissura non ponebat. [14] Sicque novam naturæ stropham commentatus est Jacob, qua contra naturam arte naturali pugnaret. *Ranulphus.*[15]

De strophis Jacob.

* Anno Abr. 251. Anno Isaac 151.

[1] *innovatur*, B.

[2] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[3] *Apparuit etiam virgo Minerva sive Pallas apud lacum Tritonidem*, C.D.

[4] *novem*, A.

[5] *suis*, ins. B.

[6] *cum*] om. A.

[7] *et*] om. C.D.

[8] *decorticavit et*, B.

[9] *in*, B.

[10] *in*] om. B.

[11] *ut*] unde, C. (not D.)

[12] *Et ne*] Ne autem, C.D.

[13] *sic*] om. D.

[14] *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (The latter omits several words.)

[15] *Ranulphus*] In the place of this next passage the following occurs in C.D.: "*Hugutio, capitulo Molo.* "Talem autem* ferunt fœminarum "esse naturam, ut quales formas in "extremo voluptatis æstu conspexe- "rint dum concipiunt talem sobo- "lem procreant. Etenim anima "in usu venereo formas extrinsecas "intus transmittit, earumque sati- "ata typis species rapit in pro- "priam qualitatem. Sic solent in "Hispania objicere generosos equos "obtutibus equarum concipien- "tium, et etiam pulchras depingere "columbas in locis ubi columbæ "conversantur. *Hieronymus.* Et "Quintilianus matronam accusa- "tam quod Æthiopem peperisset, "ex imagine tempore conceptionis "conspecta hoc contigisse argu- "mentans defendebat.† *Petrus.* Et "in libris Hippocratis reperitur "scriptum quandam fore puniendam "quia pulcherrimum puerum utri- "que parenti dissimilem peperis- "set, nisi monuisset Hippocrates‡ "quærere si talis forte pictura esset "in cubiculo parentum tempore "conceptionis." See above, p. 198.

* *etiam*, D.

† *defensabat*, D.

‡ *Ypocras*, MSS.

þe citee Atthen and bulde Eleusis. Þis ȝere Iacob foure score ȝere olde and enleuene gat Ioseph on Rachel. *Petrus* 74. Whanne þe fourtene ȝere were i-doo in þe whiche Iacob seruede for his wifes, Laban made couenant wiþ hym þat alle þe splekked lamberne[1] and kedes þat schulden be i-ȝened[2] durynge his couenant schulde be Iacob his[3] mede, and al þat were of oon colour whyte oþer blak, schulde be Laban his owne. Þerfore Iacob took grene ȝerdes of populers of almand trees and of platans,[4] and pyled of þe rynde in som place of þe ȝerdes, and in som place pyled hem nouȝt; and so he made þe ȝerdes splekked,[5] and leyde hem in þe waterynge place to fore þe schepes eyȝen, whan þey schulde conceyue[6] lambren liche to þe schadewes þat þey seie of rammes in þe merrour of þe water in þe conceyuynge. And for þey schulde not al be splekked leste þe gyle were i-knowe, þerfore in þe firste conceyuynge tyme he leyde so ȝerdes, but not in þe latter conceyuynge tyme, and so Iacob fonde a newe manere tornyng of kynde,[7] wiþ kyndeliche craft to fiȝte agenst kynde. ℞. Loke more of þis mater aboue, libro ejus, capitulo TREVISA.

---

the cite of Athenes made the cite of Eleusis. Iacob, beenge that tyme of xcj. yere, gate Ioseph of Rachel. *Petrus,* 74° *capitulo.* The xiiij. yere ypaste in whom Iacob did seruyce for his wifes, he made a couenant with Laban that he scholde haue alle lambes of diuerse coloures that comme of ewes of oon coloure. Wherefore Iacob gate roddes of almonde trees, of populer, and of other trees, whiche takenge barke from þeim putte the roddes in the places of water, afore the siȝhte of schepe when thei scholde be blissomede, that thei myȝhte haue lambes of diuerse coloure, lyke to MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *lambren, a.*; *lammes,* Cx.
[2] *yȝened, a.*; *ewed,* Cx.
[3] *Iacobys, a.*
[4] So Cx.; *plauntes,* MS.
[5] *spekeld,* Cx.
[6] *for they shold conceyue,* added in Cx.
[7] *kynge,* MS.

Vide residuum de materia ista [1] supra, primo [2] libro, capitulo primo. Reverso Jacob* cum uxoribus et liberis,[4] priusquam ad patrem veniret, duodecimo anno ante mortem Isaak, Joseph, sexdecim annorum puer existens, venditus est in Ægyptum; ubi mansit viginti duobus annis, antequam pater suus Jacob ad eum veniret. Joseph itaque [5] sic venditus a fratribus, denuo venditur a mercatoribus Ismaelitis [6] in Ægyptum Putiphari eunucho, magistro militum Pharaonis. *Augustinus super Genesim.* Iste Putiphar non erat de talibus eunuchis, qui parvuli castrantur; nam [7] uxorem habuit et liberos; cujus etiam filiam Joseph desponsaverat;[8] sed iste Putiphar videns Joseph fore elegantem emit eum, ut eo abuteretur more [9] sodomitico; sed Deus [10] ita infrigidavit eum, ut deinceps foret [11] impotens [12] ad coitum,[13] ac si eunuchus castratus fuisset. Unde, tanquam ex hoc habitus [14] est [15] honorabilior, factus est pontifex Heliopoleos.[16] *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quarto.* Argivorum† tertius rex [17] Apis, filius Foronei,[18] cœpit regnare, et regnavit viginti duobus annis. Moritur Isaak centum octoginta annorum [19] existens,‡ et sepultus est [20] in spelunca duplici in Hebron.[21] Quo in anno Pharao vidit somnium de septem spicis et septem bobus.

Joseph in Ægyptum venditur.

De Putiphari eunucho.

* Anno. Abr. 268. Anno Isaac 168.[3]

† Anno Abr. 271. Anno Isaac 171.

‡ Anno Abr. 280. Anno Isaac 180.

---

[1] *ista*] in materia, A.

[2] *quarto*, A.; *eodem*, B.

[3] Date added from A.D. The dates in E. below are corrected from other MSS.

[4] *in itinere exeunte*, ins. C.D. (*existente*, D.)

[5] *igitur*, C.D.

[6] *a mercatoribus Ismaelitis*] om. C.D.

[7] *quia*, C.D.

[8] *desponsavit*, C.D.

[9] *modo*, C.; *ut abuteretur eo* (only) D.

[10] *Deus autem*, C.D.

[11] *esset*, C.D.

[12] *impotens*] om. B.

[13] *vitium*, B.

[14] *factus*, B.

[15] *est*] om. B.C.D., and the sentence slightly transposed.

[16] *Eliapoleos*, B.

[17] *rex*] om. A.D.E. (D. has *secundus.*)

[18] *Feronei*, A.

[19] *annorum*] so B.; *annis*, E.; *an.*, A.D.

[20] *cum patre suo Abraham*, ins. C. D.

[21] *in Hebron*] om. C.D.

primo. Whanne Iacob was i-come aȝe wiþ his wyfes and his children, or þey come to his fader, twelue[1] ȝere to fore Isaac his deeþ, Ioseph sextene ȝere olde was i-solde in to Egipte to oon þat heet Putyphar, þat was eunuchus,[2] and maister of Pharao his knyȝtes. *Trevisa.* Eunuchus is he þat is i-gilded,[3] and suche were somtyme i-made wardeynes of ladyes in Egipt. *Augustinus super Genesim.* Þis Putiphar was[4] not so eunuchus as þey þat were i-gilded in hir childhode, for he hadde a[5] wyf and children, and Ioseph hadde i-wedded his douȝter. But þis Putiphar [say þat Ioseph was fayre,[6] and bouȝte him forto mysuse hym, þerfore God made þis Putyphar][7] so colde þat he myȝte neuere after haue to doynge flescheliche wiþ his owne wyf na more þan þey he were eunuchus[8] i-gelded, and þerfore, as he þat was most worschipful, he was i-made bisshop of God Heliopoleos. Apis þe þridde kyng of Argiues was Foroneus his sone, and regned two and twenty ȝere. Isaac an hondred ȝere [olde][9] and four skore[10] deyde, and was i-buryed in þe double graue of[11] Ebron. Þat ȝere Pharao sigh[12] þe sweuene of the seuene corn eres, and of þe seuene kuyn. TREVISA.

---

the coloure of the water whom thei did beholde. Iacob returnede, or that he come to his fader in the xij^the^ yere afore the dethe of Ysaac, Ioseph a childe of the age of xvj. yere, was solde in to Egipte, where he tariede xxij^ti^ yere or that his fader Iacob comme to hym. Ioseph solde of his breder to Ismaelites merchaundes, was solde ageyne in to Egipte to Putiphar maister of knyȝhtes of Pharao. *Augustinus super Genesim.* This Putiphar was not of theyme whiche were geldede when thei were childer, for he hade a wife and childer, whose doȝhter Ioseph did wedde. But this Putiphar seenge the beawte of Ioseph, bouȝte hym, that he myȝhte vse hym after the vse of sodomy. But Godde made hym so colde of nature that he myȝte not fulletylle the luste of the flesche, whiche was made after that the bischop of Heliopolis.[13] Apis the son of Foroneus, the thrydde kynge of Argiues, began to reigne, contynuenge hit by xxij^ti^ yere. Ysaac of clxxx. yere in age, diede and [was] beriede in the dowble denne in Hebron. In whiche yere Pharao hade the dreame of vij. eieres of corne, and of vij. oxen. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 *twelf*, α.
2 *eunuch's*, MS. (not α. or Cx.); *sone* after *eunuches* in MS. (not α. or Cx.)
3 *gelded*, Cx.
4 So Cx.; *þat was*, MS. and α.
5 *a*] om. α., Cx.
6 *so fayre*, α. (not Cx.)
7 Added from α. and Cx.
8 *eunuches*, α.
9 Added from α. and Cx.
10 *ȝere olde*, added in MS.
11 *in*, Cx.
12 *syȝe*, α.
13 *Oliopolis*, Harl. MS.

Cap. XII.[1]

De reliqua patriarcharum historia. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.

Jacob in Ægyptum descendit.

Apis, postea Serapis dictus, in Ægypto moritur.

Isto anno, qui fuit secundus annus famis, Jacob centum triginta annorum[2] existens descendit cum filiis suis in Ægyptum. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo decimo.*[3] Hoc anno Apis[4] rex Argolicus navibus vectus in Ægyptum moritur, et Serapis dictus est. Cujus rationem reddit Varro sic dicens: Arca sive sarcophagus[5] in quo Apis ponebatur Græce vocabatur[6] *soron*; inde dictus est *Soronapis*; postmodum,[7] ut assolet, dempta[8] una litera, dicebatur Serapis. Ille itaque bos maculis albis[9] distinctus, quem colebat Ægyptus, quia vivus colebatur, Apis dicebatur. Quo mortuo quærebatur alius vitulus albus[10] similibus maculis distinctus, delicate[11] nutritus et cultus. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Apis dicebatur taurus ille, qui de Nilo solebat exire et gesticulatione sua[12] ventura prænotare.[13] *Petrus.* Dicunt quidam quod in

---

[1] Not marked as a new chapter in B.C.D., indeed not even a new paragraph. No title in MSS.

[2] So B.; *annis*, E.

[3] *capitulo x°.*] om. A.C.D.; the whole reference omitted in B. It should be Lib. xviii. c. 5.

[4] *Apis*] om. B.

[5] *sarcophagum*, C.D.

[6] *dicebatur*, C.D.

[7] *postea*, D.

[8] *commutata*, B.

[9] *bos albus maculis*, D.

[10] *albus*] om. B.

[11] *delicate*] om. B.

[12] *sua*] sui corporis, C.D.

[13] *prædicere*, C.D.; *prænosticare*. B.; *provocare* (sic), A.

TREVISA.

Capitulum duodecimum.

THIS[1] ȝere, þat was þe secounde ȝere of hunger,[2] Iacob, an hondred ȝere olde and þritty, wente wiþ his children doun in to Egipte. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Þis ȝere Apis þe kyng Argolicus seilede in to Egipt and deyde, and was i-cleped Serapis. [Varro tellith why he was cleped Serapis,][3] and seiþ þat þe chiste þat he was i-putte inne was i-cleped Seron[4] in Grewe, and þerfore Apis was i-cleped [Seronapys],[5] and afterward by wiþ drawynge of lettres, as me vseþ, he was i-cleped Serapis. Þat whyte splekked oxe þat men of Egipt hadde,[6] ffor it was [i-worschipped onlyve, hit was][7] i-cleped Apys; and whan þat oxe was deed, þey ordeyned hem anoþer oxe þat was also whyte splekked and tenderliche i-norsched and i-worschipped. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Þat bole heet Apis, þat was i-woned to come out of þe ryuer Nylus, and warne by his pleyenge and startelynge[8] what was to comynge. *Petrus.* Som men telleþ þat eueriche ȝere in Serapis feste come vp a bole out

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum duodecimum.

IACOB, beenge of a c. and xxx[ti] yere in age, wente in to Egipte that yere, whiche was the secunde yere of the hungre. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Apis, kynge Argolicus, cariede in to Egipte with schippes, diede that yere, otherwise callede Serapis. The poete Varro schewethe a cause and a reason as for that name. For Senaropis in Grewe sowndethe as a beryalle, in whom Apis was putte. And after hit was callede Serapis, ij. letters taken aweye. That oxe distincte with white spottes, whom Egipte worschippede, was callede Apis, in that Ninus[9] was worschippede; whiche oxe other bulle dedde, an other calfe was inquirede that was like to hit, whiche founde thei norischede hit tenderly. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* That bulle was callede Apis, whiche was wonte to swymme ouer the floode callede Nilus, and to schewe thynges to comme thro his gesticulation. *Petrus.* Somme men say that bulle apperede above the water in the feste of Serapis, whiche

[1] *Yis*, α.
[2] *Fanus*, α., Cx.; *Phanus*, γ.
[3] Added from γ., Cx.
[4] *Soron*, γ.
[5] Added from α. and Cx.
[6] *hadde*] om. α. β. γ., Cx. For *hadde* we should perhaps read *hadde in worschip.*
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] So α. β. γ. and Cx.; *stelynge*, MS.
[9] The Harleian translator has misread his MS.

Serapis festo annuatim[1] emergebat[2] ille de[3] Nilo flumine,[4] habens in humero dextro signum candidum instar lunæ corniculatum, ad quem cum Ægyptii statim confluerunt[5] omni genere musicorum psallentes, taurus ille levabatur in aere tanquam psallens; ad cujus motum seu stationem Ægyptii in terra movebantur seu stabant, sed eadem die evanescebat. Igitur Ægyptii taurum pro Ape, vaccam pro Iside, ovem pro Hammone, id est Jove, adorabant. Unde et abominabile fuit apud eos hujusmodi[6] animalia[7] occidere aut edere.[8]

Argivorum quartus[9] rex Argus cœpit regnare, et regnavit quadraginta sex annis; sub quo etiam[10] Græcia, allatis aliunde seminibus, segetes habere cœpit.[12] Anno Abr. 293. Anno Jacob 133.[11]

Jacob moritur.

Jacob[13] centum quadraginta septem annorum existens,[14] benedictis filiis suis ac filiis filiorum[15] [16] singulis benedictionibus, moritur;[17] servatusque est[18] et conditus triginta diebus. Tandem delatus est[19] ad[20] Hebron in spelunca duplici tumulandus. *Petrus, capitulo decimo.* Mos erat ethnicorum incondita servare corpora novem diebus, quibus deplangerent[21] et corpora aqua calida foverent;[22] ut sic sciretur an[23] anima esset egressa vel[24] Anno Abr. 307. Anno Jacob. 147.

---

[1] *annuatim*] om. B.
[2] *taurus*, ins. C.D.
[3] *sub*, A.
[4] *flumine*] om. C.D.
[5] *confluerent*, B.D.
[6] So D.; *hujus*, A.E.
[7] *aut*, ins. B.
[8] *comedere*, C.D.
[9] *tertius*, D.
[10] *et*, A.
[11] In the Harleian MS. the years of *Isaac* (not Jacob) are computed; thus giving 193, &c. instead of 133, &c.
[12] *segetes habuit*, C.D.
[13] *autem*, ins. C. (not D.)
[14] *postquam mansisset in terra illa septemdecim annis*, ins. C.D.
[15] *filiorum*] Joseph, C.D.
[16] *suorum*, ins. B.
[17] *mortuus est*, B.
[18] *est*] om. B.D.
[19] *defertur*, C.D.
[20] *ad*] in, C.D.; ab, B.
[21] *quibus deplangerent*] et singulis diebus plangere, C.D.
[22] *fovere*, C.D.
[23] *utrum*, C.D.
[24] *an*, C.D.

TREVISA.

of þe ryuer Nilus, and hadde a whyte mark in þe riȝt schuldre i-schape as a newe mone, and whanne þe Egipcians come to hym wiþ alle manere musyk and merþe, þat bole was i left vp in to þe ayer as it were wiþ iolyte, and at þe meuynge and styntynge of þat boole þe Egipcians meued and stynte vp on þe erthe, but þat bole vanisched out of hir siȝt þe[1] same day. Þerfore þe Egipcians worschipped þe[2] bole for þat man Apis, and a kowe in stede of Isis[3] þat womman, and a bole also for Iupiter. Þerfore it was a grete abhomynacioun among þe Egipcians to sle reþeren[4] or[5] ete reþeren flesche. Argus þe fourþe kyng of Argiues bygan to regne, and regnede sixe and fourty ȝere. In his [tyme][6] Grees hadde seed i-brouȝt out of oþer londes, and gan to ere and sowe and haue corne i teled þere ynne. Iacob, an hondred ȝere olde and seuene and fourty, blessede his children, and ȝaf eueriche his blessynge, and deyde. and was anoynt, and i-kept þritty dayes, and at þe laste i-bore in to Ebron, and i-buried þere in þe double graue. ***Petrus.*** Hit was þe manere of mysbeleued men forto kepe a dede body nyne dayes wiþ oute oignement, and make sorwe for hym nyne dayes, and wasche þe body nyne daies, for to wete wheþer þe soule were apassed oþer no. Afterward þey

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

water was callede Nilus, hauenge in the ryȝhte schulder a white signe other merke cornerede lyke to the moone; whom men of Egipte attendenge syngenge with alle kyndes of musikes, that bulle was eleuate anoon in to the aier, as makenge a melody; at the movenge or stondenge of whom men of Egipte were movede other stode; whiche bulle euanescheде a weye the same day. Therefore men of Egipte worschippede a bulle for Apis, a kowe for Isis, and a schepe for Iupiter; wherefore to slee eny of those bestes was an abhominable thynge amonge theyme, other elles to eite eny of theyme. Argus, the iiij^{the} kynge of Argyues, began to reigne, whiche reignede xlvj. yeres, in whiche tyme the londe of Grece began to sawe corne. Iacob beenge of a c.xlvij^{ti}. yere in age, blessenge his childer with single benedicciones, and the childer of his childer, diede, whiche kepede xxx^{ti} daies, was brouȝhte at the laste to Hebron, and beriede in a threfolde denne. *Petrus, decimo capitulo.* The maner and consuetude of Ethnikes was to kepe bodies dedde by ix. daies, in whom they myȝhte sorowe theire dethe, and norische the body with hoote water, that thei myȝhte haue perfecte knowlege wheder thei were

---

[1] *þat*, Cx.
[2] *þat*, *α.*, Cx.
[3] *Isus*, MS.
[4] *reþeren*] neet, Cx.
[5] *oþer*, *α.*
[6] Added from *α.* and Cx.

sopita. Postmodum[1] corpora condita quadraginta diebus servabantur. Sed mos erat Judæis[2] septem diebus incondita corpora servare, et post triginta diebus servare condita. *Augustinus, libro octavo-decimo.*

Prometheus homines fecisse fertur.

Prometheus filius Iapeti et frater Atlantis astrologi secundum Ovidium in Magno fertur fecisse homines, ⌜tum quia de rudibus doctos fecit[3] (*Isidorus libro tertio-decimo,*) tum quia legitur fecisse imagines hominum,[4] quas arte quadam ambulare[5] fecit. Et etiam iste[6]

Annulum invenit.

invenit primus annulum ferreum, cui[7] gemmam inclusit et ungulum vocavit; quia sicut unguis carne sic gemma metallo circumdatur.[8] *Hugutio, capitulo*

Annulus derivatur.

Annulus.[9] Item[10] annulus dicitur ab ano, quia olim deprehensi in homicidio vel furto solebant portare[11] simiam in collo, ad cujus anum tenebant ora sua. Sed hac[12] consuetudine turpi cessante ferebant tales sic[13] deprehensi annulum ferreum in digito, ad cujus[14] rei distinctionem nobiles viri fecerunt[15] sibi annulos

---

[1] *Postmodum*] om. C.D.

[2] *Hebræis*, C.D., and the passage transposed and abbreviated.

[3] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[4] *homines*, E.

[5] *deambulare*, C.D.

[6] *Et . . . iste*] Iste etiam, B.

[7] *in quo*, B.; *et*, D.

[8] Slightly varied in C.D.

[9] *Anulus*, MSS., here and everywhere.

[10] *Item*] om. C.D.

[11] *deferre*, C.D.

[12] *hac*] om. C. (not D.)

[13] *sic*] om. D.

[14] *cujus*] om. B.

[15] *fecerunt*] om. E.

kepte þe bodies fourty dayes anoynt.[1] But it was þe manere of Iewes forto kepe dede bodyes seuene dayes wiþ oute oynementis, and afterward þritty dayes anoynt. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Me seiþ þat Prometheus[2] Rapetus[3] his sone, and Atlas[4] þe astronomere, his broþer, made men; so seiþ Ouidius in Magno; noþeles þat is i-seide, for of men þat were vnkonnynge and boistous as bestes he made konnynge [men][5] and wise.[6] *Isidorus* 13°. Also for me redeþ þat he made ymages of men goo and walke in[7] þe grounde by a certeyn craft. Also þese fonde first a ryng of iren, and closed þerynne a precious stoon, and cleped it a nayle, for as þe nayle is i-closed in þe flesche, so is suche[8] a stoon i-closed in þe metal. *Hugutio, capitulo Anulus.* Anulus is a ryng i-seide of anus an ers, for somtyme þeues and mansleers, whan þey were i-take, scholde bere an ape on hire nekke and holde hir mouþ to þe apes[9] ers. But þis foule vsage cesed, and þeues and mansleers whan þey were i-take schulde bere rynges of iren on hire fyngres. And þerfore gentil men, for to haue dyuersite and distinccioun from TREVISA.

---

dedde other nay. After that thei dressede the bodies with spices, and kepede theyme by xl[ti] dayes, other elles thei kepede theyme after thei were beriede by xl[ti] daies. But the consuetude of the Iewes was to kepe the bodies vnberiede by vij. dayes, and kepede theym by xxx[ti] daies after theire berienge. *Augustinus, libro octavo decimo.* Prometheus, the son of Iapetus,[10] and brother to Atlas[4] the astronomier, after Ouidus in Magno, is seide to haue made men, in that he made discrete men of rude peple. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* And also for cause that he made the ymages of men to walke by crafte. Also he founde firste a rynge of yrne, puttenge a gemme in hit, callenge hit vngulum, for like as the nayle of a fynger is cloosede with flesche, so he compassede that gemme with metalle. *Hugutio, capitulo Anulus.* Also anulus, whiche is callede a rynge, toke begynnenge of this worde, anus; for somme tyme men taken in manslauȝhter other in thefte were wonte to bere an ape in theire necke, holdenge theire mowthes to the hynder partes of that ape. That vile consuetude y-ceasede, suche men taken in felony were wonte to bere a rynge of yrne in theire fynger, vn to the distinccion of whom now- MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *enoynted*, Cx.

[2] So α.; *Promotheus*, Cx. (and so MSS. often); *Ptholomeus*, MS.

[3] So MSS. (including β. and γ.) and Cx., for *Iapetus*.

[4] *Athlas*, MSS. and Harl. MS., and so below.

[5] Added from α. and Cx.

[6] *wise men*, MS.

[7] *on*, Cx.

[8] *suche is*, MS.

[9] *ape his*, α.

[10] *Tapetus*, Harl. MS.

aureos et argenteos [1] quos ponebant in quarto digito, quem medicum [2] appellant, causa ornatus dignioris; eo quod in [3] illo digito vena quædam a [4] corde protenditur.[5] Sed apud Romanos annuli quondam dabantur ex publico sed nobilibus viris; cæteris autem dabantur solidi, unde et liberi utebantur annulo aureo, libertini argenteo, servi ferreo. Et quidem apud veteres ultra unum annulum uti [6] infame fuit.[7] *Isidorus, libro vicesimo* [8] *in fine.*[9] Hujus Promethei frater [10] Atlas astrologus [11] fuit; quapropter cœlum portare fingebatur; unde et mons enormis [12] in Africa ab ejus [13] nomine Atlas dicitur, et [14] cœlum portare a vulgo creditur.[15] *Petrus.* Eo in [16] tempore dicitur Tri[p]tolemus [17] in nave [18] dracone [19] depicta Græciam intrasse, et agri culturam ampliasse.[20] Tunc quoque Ceres, quæ a Græcis Demetra [21] dicitur, præter instrumenta arandi etiam [22] mensuras tritici adinvenit, cum tamen prius triticum [23] per acervos numeraretur.[24] *Ranulphus.*[25]

Atlas.

Triptolemus et Ceres.

[1] A.B.C.D. rightly introduce here the reference to *Isidore* below. See Lib. xix. c. 32.

[2] *medicus*, B.; *medium*, E.

[3] *ab*, B.

[4] *ad cor protendens*, A.

[5] So B.; *pertingit*, D.; *prætenditur*, E.

[6] *uti ultra uno anulo*, B.

[7] *fuit*] erat, A. The whole extract considerably varied and transposed in C.D.

[8] 19°, C.; 9, B.

[9] *Augustinus de Civitate, libro* 18, A.B.C.D. correctly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8.

[10] *frater*] originally *filius* in C.; but corrected in the margin in another ink.

[11] *quidam*, ins. C.D.

[12] *unde et mons enormis in Africa*] Mons etiam in Libia, C.D.

[13] *hujus*, B.

[14] *et*] quem propter enormem altitudinem, C.D.

[15] *vulgus credit*, C.D.

[16] *in*] om. B.D.

[17] *Tritholomus*, B., and versions.

[18] *nave sua*, A.B.

[19] *draco*, A.

[20] Extract altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

[21] So Higden writes for Demeter.

[22] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[23] *triticum*] om. C.D.

[24] *numerabant*, B.; *numerarent*, D.

[25] *Ranulphus . . . habere*] om. C.D.

suche briboures, made hem rynges of gold other of siluer. *Isidorus, libro* 19°, *in fine.* Gentile men vsede here rynges of gold and of siluer[1] on þe fourþe fynger, þat is y-cleped þe leche by cause of þe more hiȝtynge and fairenesse, for in þat fynger is a veyne þat streecheþ to þe herte. But Romayns hadde rynges of þe common tresour[2]: gentil men hade rynges, and oþere hadde solidy þat were hole and sownde. Fremen of blood vsede [rynges of gold; free men that came of bonde men vsed][3] rynges of siluer, but bonde men vsede rynges of iren. Somtyme it were a greet diffamacioun for a man to vse more rynges þan oon. *Augustinus de Civitate.* Þis Prometheus hadde a broþet þat het Atlas, and was an astronomer; þerfore me feynede þat he bare heuene; also a greet hille in Affrica, þat[4] hatte Atlas by þis man Atlas his name; and þe lewed peple weneþ þat þat hylle bereþ vp heuene. *Petrus.* Me seiþ þat Tritholomus wente þat tyme in his schippe þat was i-peynt wiþ a dragoun into Grees, and made þere more craft of telienge of feeldes. Also þat tyme Ceres, þe womman þat þe Grees clepeþ Demetra, wiþ oute instrumentes þat sche fonde vp of erynge craft, sche fonde vp also mesures of whete; for to forehonde þey delede whete by hepes[5] smal oþer greet. ℞. After TREVISA.

ble men made rynges of golde and of syluyr. *Isidorus, libro decimo nono, in fine.* Whom thei putte in the iiij^{the} fynger, whiche is callede the fynger medicinable, for cause of more dignite, in that a veyne is protendede from that fynger to the herte. Also rynges were ȝiffen to nowble men in Rome, and schilenges were ȝiffen to other men. Wherefore free men vsede rynges of golde, libertynes rynges of syluyr, and seruauntez[6] rynges of yrne. For hit was somme tyme as a thynge of grete infamy to haue werede moo rynges then oon amonge olde men. *Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro* 18mo. Atlas, the astronomier, and broder to Prometheus, was seide to bere heuyn, wherefore there was a grete hille in Affrike callede Atlas after hys name, whiche hille by the estimacion of commune peple is supposede to bere heuyn. *Petrus.* Tritholomus, peyntenge a dragon in his schippe, is seide to haue entrede in to Grece, and to haue amplifiede the tyllenge of londe; and Ceres, whiche is callede Demetra of the Grekes, founde diuerse measures of whete, for whete was nowmbrede afore that tyme by grete heepes. ℞. And after Isidorus, libro MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *of seluer and of gold*, α. β. γ., Cx.
[2] *tresorye*, α. β. γ., Cx.
[3] Added from β. γ., Cx.
[4] *þat*] om. α. β. γ., Cx.
[5] *huples*, Cx.
[6] So Harl. MS.

Et ex tunc,[1] secundum Isidorum libro quinto, Græcia cœpit segetes habere.[2]

Joseph moritur; item fratres.

Joseph centum et decem annorum existens[3] moritur in Ægypto, et conditus aromatibus conservatus est usque ad exitum Hebræorum de Ægypto per centum quadriginta[4] quatuor[5] annos, quibus Hebræi servierunt Ægyptiis. Fratres quoque Joseph, prout singillatim moriebantur, sepeliebantur[6] in Hebron; ossa tamen eorum cum[7] ossibus Joseph postmodum[8] translata sunt in Sichem,[9] quæ modo dicitur Neapolis, urbs Samaritanorum. Et sic a descensu Jacob in Ægyptum usque ad exitum Hebræorum sunt anni ducenti quindecim.[10]

Anno Abr. 361. Anno Jacob. 110.

Cap. XIII.

De Moyse.[11]

Moyses nascitur.

Amram, filius Caath,[12] filii Levi,[13] ex uxore sua Jochabeth,[14] cum esset quadraginta[15] annorum, genuit Moysen. *Petrus.* Pharao ille,[16] sub quo fuit Joseph, proprio nomine dictus est Nephros;[17] post quem octavus dictus est Amonophis, sub quo Moyses natus est. *Josephus, libro secundo.* Iste Pharao[18] odiebat[19] Israel

Anno Abr. 424. Anno Moysi 1.

---

[1] *hoc*, B.
[2] *habere*] om. E.
[3] *existens*] om. C.D.
[4] *sexaginta*, B.
[5] *quinque*, C.D.
[6] *sepulti sunt*, B.
[7] *postmodum cum*, A.; *cum*, om. E.
[8] *postmodum*] om. A.B.
[9] *Sichen*, A.
[10] Paragraph slightly transposed in C.D.
[11] No title in MS.
[12] So A.B.C.D. (and Vulg. 1 *Chron.* vi. 2.); *Gath*, E.
[13] *Levy*, E.
[14] *Jocabet*, A.
[15] *sexaginta*, C.D.
[16] *ille*] om. B.
[17] *Nephres*, B.D.
[18] *Iste Pharao*] Hic rex, C.D.
[19] So MSS.

TREVISA.

þat tyme Grees by gan to haue tilþe and[1] corne; so seyþ Isidre, libro 5°. Ioseph, an hondred ȝere olde and ten, deyde in Egipt, and was anoynt wiþ swete oynementis, and i-kepte anon to þe goynge of þe children of Israel out of Egipte, an hondred ȝere and foure and fourty, in þe which tyme þe Hebrewes seruede þe Egipcians; also as Ioseph his breþeren deide eueriche after oþer, they[2] were i-buried in Hebron. Noþeles afterward hire bones were i-bore in to Sychem wiþ Ioseph his bones: þat place hatte now Neapolis, þe citee of Samaritans: and so from þat tyme þat Iacob come into Egipt anon to þat tyme þat þe Hebrewes þe children of Israel went out of Egipt were two hondred and fiftene ȝere.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

Amram was Caath is sone, Caath was Leuy is sone. Þis Amram, sixty ȝere olde, gat Moyses on his wif Iocabeth. ***Petrus***,[3] ***libro*** 2°. Pharao, vnder wom Ioseph was, heet Nephres by his owne propre name; þe eiȝtþe Pharao after hym heet Amonophis, in his tyme Moyses was i-bore. ***Iosephus***,[4] ***libro*** 2°. Þis Pharao hatede þe children of Israel for

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

quinto, from that tyme the londe of Grece began to haue cornes. Ioseph, beenge of a cx. yere in age, dyede in Egipte, whiche dressede with spices, was kepede there vn to the goenge furthe of men of Ebrewe from Egipte, that was by c. and xliiij[ti] yere, in whom men of Hebrewe seruede men of Egipte. But the breder of Ioseph were beriede in Hebron, but the boones of theim were translate with the boones of Ioseph in to Sichem, now callede Neapolis, the cite of Samaritanes. And so hit was that cc. yere a passede and xv. from the commenge of Iacob in to Egipte vn to the goenge furthe of men of Hebrewe from hit.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

AMRAM, the son of Caat, the son of Leui, beenge of lxx[ti] yere, gate of Iocabeth his wife Moyses. *Petrus.* The propre name of Pharo, vnder whom Ioseph was, was Nemphers; the viij[the] Pharao after whom was callede Amonophis, vnder whom Moises was borne. *Iosephus, libro secundo.* This Pharao did hate moche the peple of Israel, for the vertu of

---

[1] *and*] of, Cx.

[2] So γ., Cx.; *and were*, MS. and α. (without sense); *also Ioseph hys breþron*(sic), *as hy deyde*, &c. *were*, β.

[3] *Petrus*] So α., Cx.; *Iosephus*, MS.

[4] *Iohannes*, Cx.

propter virtutem ingenii, laboris industriam, opum affluentiam, et sobolis elegantiam; unde et callide excogitavit filios[1] Israel opprimere, ne multiplicatus contra eum[2] insurgeret. Imposuitque eis angarias operum multimodorum, scilicet lateres[3] coquendi, fossata circa rivulos Nili faciendi, lutum exportandi, sed paleas tantum ad victum præbens; quibus operibus populus[4] confractus et fame confectus amplexibus non vacaret, et per consequens proles sic deficeret.[5] Insuper et quidam scriba sacrorum præscius futurorum nunciavit Pharaoni unum quemdam de[6] Hebræis nasciturum, qui principatum Ægypti[7] humiliaret et genus Israel exaltaret. Qua[8] de causa jussi sunt infantes necari. *Petrus.*[9] Sed his non obstantibus, populo[10] adhuc[11] multiplicato,[12] præcepit[13] Pharao obstetricibus Ægypti[14] masculos infantes necare, fœminas[15] vero reservare; tanquam sexum invalidum ad rebellandum,[16] delicatum tamen ad libidinem Ægyptiorum. Sed cum

---

[1] *filios*] om. C.D.
[2] *eum*] om. E.
[3] *lateris*, D.
[4] *populus*] om. E.
[5] Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[6] *de*] om. E.
[7] *Ægypti*] ejus, A.C. (not D.)
[8] *Hac*, C.D.
[9] *capitulo primo*, ins. C.D. In the Lyons edition of 1543 it is c. 3.
[10] *populo*] populoque, A.C.D.
[11] *adhæc*, B.
[12] *multiplicante*, C.D.
[13] *præcepit* after *necare*, B.
[14] *Ægypti*] om. C.D.
[15] *fœminasque*, B.
[16] *bellandum*, B.

TREVISA

vertu of witte, ffor konnynge of trauaille, ffor plente of richesse[1] and for fairnesse of children; þerfore he byþouȝt hym felliche and gilefulliche to bere a doun þe children of Israel, and holde hem lowe, leste þey wolde multeplie to swiþe[2] and aryse aȝenst hym; also he putte vppon hem charges of many manere works forto make brend tyle forto digge diches aboute þe rennynge stremes of þe ryuer of Nilus, and for to bere fen and clay; and ȝaf hem nouȝt to mete but smal chaf, for he wolde so ouercome hem wiþ trauaille and wiþ honger, þat þey schulde haue no wille to ligge by here wyfes; and so it schulde folowe þat children schulde faile. Also oon, þat was a writere of holy lettres and wiste what was[3] to comynge, warnede Pharao þe kyng of Egipt þat oon schulde [be i-bore of þe Hebrewes þat schulde][4] bere adoun þe principat of Egypt, and arere þe kynde of Israel, and make hem ful grete. Þerfore it was i-hote þat[5] þe knaue[6] children of Israel schulde be i slawe whan þei were i-bore. *Petrus.* But ȝit for al this þe peple multeplied wel faste, and Pharao heet þe mydwyfes of Egipte þat þey schulde kylle[7] alle þe knaue children of Hebrewes, and kepe þe mayde children; ffor he heelde womman kynde ful feble to be rebel, and noþeles wel likynge to þe leccherye of[8] þe Egipcians. And whan Pharao myȝt nouȝt so haue[9] his wille, he heet þrowe þe children þat were

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

the witte of theyme, for the affluence of richesse, for the beaute of theire childer; where fore he thouȝhte to slee theyme priuely, that theire multiplicacion and frute scholde not be able to resiste theim. Where fore he putte to theyme diuersites of labores, to make tyle stones, diches abowte ryueres, and to make clay, ȝiffenge to theire fyndenge but chaffe, that peple oppressede with labore and hungre scholde refuse multiplicacion, and so theire frute scholde decrease and faile. But a scribe, hauenge prenostication of thynges to comme, schewede to kynge Pharao oon childe to comme of men of Hebrewe, that scholde make Egipte meke and tame, and exalte the kynde of Israel. Where fore the infantes of theyme were commaundede to be sleyne. *Petrus.* This not withstondenge and the peple causenge multiplication, kynge Pharao commaundede the mydde wifes of Egipte to slee the male childer and to kepe the childer female, as a kynde not apt to make batelle, and pleasaunte to the luste of men of Egipte, commaundenge the childer to be caste

---

[1] *riches*, α.
[2] *fast*, Cx.
[3] *was to done and*] MS. (not α. β. γ., Cx.)
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *þat*] So α. and Cx.; þe, MS.
[6] *men*, Cx.
[7] *slee*, Cx.
[8] *of lechery to*, Cx.
[9] *haue so*] MS. (not α. or Cx.)

nec sic prævaleret, jussit recenter natos in flumine projici. Pro hoc peccato creditur Ægyptios in hunc errorem incidisse, ut Apim[1] pro deo colerent. *Genesis.*[2]

Filia Pharaonis Moysen adoptat.

Quapropter natus Moyses tribus mensibus absconditus est,[3] sed tandem in fiscella scirpea bituminata conclusus projectus est in carecto fluminis; quem filia Pharaonis Thermut reperiens in filium adoptavit, Moysenque appellavit.[4] *Josephus, libro secundo.* Quod Græce componitur a *moy,*[5] quod est aqua, et *esis,* quod est salvatus; quasi per aquam salvatus.[6] Hic quoque omnem mammam Ægyptiarum abhorrens a propria matre prudenter lactatus est; at cum trimus effectus esset,[7] speciem ejus et[8] staturam[9] Deus auxit; ut, ubicunque per plateas efferretur,[10] circumstantes relictis occupationibus suis, quantumcunque severi aut turbati essent animi,[11] in eum intenderent.[12] Die igitur quadam cum[13] Thermuth[14] eum Pharaoni

Moyses Pharaonis coronam conculcat.

inspiciendum offerret[15] ut et ipse[16] adoptaret in filium, admirans rex pueri venustatem coronam suam

---

[1] So B.; *Apum,* A.E.

[2] *Genesis*] om. E.

[3] *est*] added from B.

[4] Extract slightly varied in C.D.

[5] *moys,* B.D.

[6] Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.; *quasi . . . salvatus,* om. B.

[7] *esset*] om. E.

[8] *in,* A.

[9] *ita,* ins. C.D.

[10] *deferretur,* C.D.

[11] *animi essent,* B. Probably we should read *animos,* placing the comma after *essent.*

[12] Sentence slightly varied in D.

[13] So B.; *dum,* D.E.

[14] *Theremuth,* B.

[15] So B.; *obtulisset,* E., after *Thermuth.*

[16] *Moysen,* ins. C.D.; *eum,* B.

TREVISA.

knaue children[1] in to a ryuere anoon as þey were i-bore. Me troweþ þat for þat synne þe Egipcians fille in to þat errour for to worschippe þat oxe[2] þat þey clepeþ Apis, instede of God. *Genesis.* Þerfore Moyses was i-hydde þre monþes whanne he was [i-bore, but at þe laste he was][3] i-doo in a scaf of risshes[4] i-schape as a litel boot i-glewed wel a boute, and i-þrowe in þe ryuer. Þanne Thermit, Pharao his dou3ter, fond hym, and took hym up of þe water, and made hym as it were hire owne sone, and cleped hym Moyses. *Iosephus,*[5] *libro* 2°. Moyses is a name i-made of tweie names of Grewe, of *moy*, þat is water, and *esis*, þat is i-saued; and so Moyses is i-seide as he þat is i-saued by water. Also þis childe Moyses hatede alle þe wommen brestes of þe Egipcians, and wolde souke no woman breste of þe Egipcians, but he was sliliche i-brou3t to his owne moder, and sche fed hym; and whan he was þre[6] 3ere olde, God Almy3ty made hym so fayre of schap and of stature, þat whanne they were i-bore[7] by stretes al þat were aboute lefte [of][8] hire work and occupaciouns for to loke and byholde on þat childe, were þey neuere so sterne ne so angry. Þan in[9] a day Thermuth, Pharao his dou3ter, brou3t þe childe to Pharao, for he schulde see þe childe and make hym as hit were his owne sone. Þanne the

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

freschely or newly in to the water after theire byrthe, leste that he scholde not preuayle in þat other wyse. For whiche synne hit is trawede men of Egipte to haue fallen in to that erroure that thei scholde worschippe Apis for Godde. *Genesis.* But Moyses borne was hidde iij. monethes, at the laste he was putte in a weele made of rishes dressede with picche, and caste in to the water, whom Thermuth, þe do3hter of kynge Pharao, fyndenge, desirede hym in to here childe. *Iosephus, libro secundo.* That name Moyses is compounde of thys worde *moy*, that is, water, in Grewe, and *esis*, that is saluede, callede Moyses, as saluede by water. Whiche aborrenge the noryschenge of men of Egipte, was norischede of his awne moder, and when he was of iij. yere in age, God encreasede soe the beaute and stature of hit, that men movede thro labore, other in trowble, wolde refuse their occupacion to beholde þat childe. In a tyme when Thermuth offrede that childe to kynge Pharao here fader, vn to beholde hym, and that he scholde

---

[1] *the men childer*, Cx.
[2] *an oxe*, Cx.
[3] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx. (β. γ. Cx. have *atte last.*)
[4] *resches*, α.
[5] So α. and Cx.; *Isidorus*, MS.
[6] *so þre*, MS. (not α.)
[7] So MS. and α.; *he was born*, Cx.; *he were y bore*, β.; *a wer y bore*, γ.
[8] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[9] *on*, Cx.

(in qua Hammonis, id est Jovis, imago insculpebatur)[1] capiti infantis apposuit; quam[2] statim puer pedibus conculcavit. Astansque[3] sacerdos Heliopoleos exclamavit dicens:[4] "Hic est puer, quem nobis occidendum Deus[5] "monstravit, ut de cetero timore careamus." Et sic in puerum irruisset, nisi persuasione cujusdam sapientis, qui hoc per insipientiam puerilem[6] factum asseverabat, liberatus fuisset. *Petrus, libro secundo,*[7] *capitulo xlj°.*[8] In cujus rei argumentum allatæ sunt prunæ ardentes[9] coram puero, qui statim eas[10] ori apponens linguæ summitatem ardore corrupit. Unde et ipsum in antea impeditioris linguæ fuisse Hebræi autumant. Tantæ autem fuit pulchritudinis, ut[11] intuentes aspectui ejus hærerent, rigorem animi deponerent, occupationes[12] dimitterent. Circa hæc tempora[13] Hercules fertur Antæum lucta vicisse.

Contra Æthiopes Moysen sibi præficiunt Ægyptii.

Anno Moysi 20. Anno Abr. 444.

[14]*Josephus libro secundo.*[15] Æthiopibus Ægyptum infestantibus,[16] augures Ægyptii responsum acceperant,[17] ut uterentur[18] duce Hebræo; et vix obtinuerunt[19] ut Moysen sibi[20] præficerent, qui tamen[21] in

---

[1] *fabrefacta fuerat,* C.D. (with other slight variations).
[2] *tamen,* ins. A.B.
[3] *Astans quoque,* A.D.
[4] *dicens*] om. C.D.
[5] *Deus* before *nobis,* B.
[6] *puerilem*] om. C.D. (with other slight variations).
[7] *libro . . . xlj°.*] om. C.D.
[8] *xj°.* A. See Pet. Com. *Lib. Exod.* c. 5. (fol. 36, b. Lugd. 1543).
[9] *ardentes*] om. C.D.
[10] *eas*] om. E.
[11] *cuncti,* ins. C.D.
[12] *si quas haberent,* ins. C.D.
[13] *circa hæc tempora*] om. C.D.
[14] *Capitulum tertium decimum,* A.
[15] B. omits reference; *Cum adultus esset Moyses,* ins. C.D.
[16] *vastantibus,* C.D.; *vastantibus vel infestantibus,* B.
[17] *acceperunt,* B.
[18] *verterentur,* B.
[19] *obtinuerint,* B.
[20] *sibi*] om. C.D.
[21] *tamen*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

kyng wondrede[1] of þe childes fairnesse, and took his owne crowne in þe whiche the ymage of Iupiter was i-graue, and sette it on þe childes heed; but þe childe anon þrewe doun[2] þe crowne, and tradde þeron spitousliche wiþ his feet. And þere stood one þat was god Eleopoleos his preoste, and cride and seide: "Þis is þat childe þat oure god heet vs slee, þat we "drede na[3] more;" and wolde anon haue i-slawe þe childe; but þere was a wise man and seide þat þe childe hadde so i-doo by vnkonnynge of childhode, and so he saued þe child. *Petrus, libro* 2°. In euydence of þis excusacioun of þe childe were brennynge cooles i-brouȝt to fore þe childe Moyses, and anon he putte hem in his mouþe and scaldede þe poynt of his tonge. Þe Hebrewes troweþ þat bycause þerof he hadde[4] a lette of his tonge. Þis childe Moyses was so faire, þat men þat by helde hym took so great hede to þe fairnesse of hym[5] þat þey putte away[6] alle anger and tene,[7] and toke hede to þe fairnesse of the childe.[8] Me seiþ þat aboute þis tyme Hercules ouercome Anteus[9] in wrastlynge. *Iosephus, libro* 2°. Þe Ethiopes, blewe men, werred vppon Egipt, and þe dyuynours of Egipt fenge answere þat þey schulde take a ledere of Hebrewes; and vnneþe þey gat Moyses, and made hym hire

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

desire hym in to his son, Pharao meruellenge the beaute of þe childe, put the crowne on his heede, in whom an ymage of Iupiter was graven, whom that childe did trede with his feete. A preste stondenge þer by seide, "This ys the childe "whom Godde willethe to be sleyne of vs, that we scholde "not be in drede afterwarde." And so he wolde haue pereschede that childe, but that a discrete man was by and seide contrary, excusenge that thynge by the insolence of the childe. *Petrus, libro secundo.* For the probacion of whiche thynge hoote cooles of fire were brouȝhte a fore the childe, whiche takenge oon of theym, putte hit to his mowthe, and brente the extremite of his tonge. From whiche tyme men of Hebrewe suppose Moyses to haue hade an impedimente in his tonge. Hercules is seide to haue geten victories at Athenes abowte these tymes. *Iosephus, libro secundo.* Men of Ethioppe guerrenge ageyn men of Egipte, theire wicches ȝafe answere that thei scholde take a man of Hebrewe in to theire gouernoure, whiche hauenge grawnte made Moises theire gouernoure. Whiche beenge

---

[1] *had wonder*, Cx.
[2] *it doun*, MS. (not α.)
[3] *no*, α., Cx.
[4] α. and Cx. add *afterward*.
[5] *hym*] so α. and Cx.; *the childe*, MS.
[6] *away*] *of*, α. β. γ., Cx.
[7] *teone*, β.
[8] Text as in α. and Cx.; MS. has several words repeated.
[9] *Antheus*, MSS.

bellicis rebus peritus, relicto itinere per aquam Nili, circumduxit exercitum per loca serpentibus plena; quibus tamen de nocte objecit ibices, id est, ciconias Ægyptias, quæ naturaliter infestæ sunt serpentibus, sed mites sunt hominibus.[1] Et sic improvisos conclusit Æthiopes in Saba civitate regia, quam postmodum Cambyses rex ex nomine sororis[2] Meroen nuncupavit. Est autem civitas illa ratione murorum, fossarum, et circumfluentium aquarum fortissima; poniturque in confinio Ægyptiorum et Æthiopum super Nilum fluvium.[3] Tharbis vero filia regis Æthiopum, respiciens in elegantiam Moysi, tradidit ei ex condicto urbem, ita ut eam duceret in uxorem.[4] *Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Hæc est illa Æthiopissa, pro qua jurgati sunt Maria et Aaron contra Moysen[5] in deserto. Cum autem[6] Moyses[7] redire voluisset[8] ad Ægyptum, non adquievit[9] uxor. Proinde Moyses, tanquam vir astrorum peritus, duos annulos fecit; unum memoriæ, quem secum retinuit; alterum oblivionis, quem uxori tradidit, et sic[10]

Moyses duos annulos facit.

[1] Sentence slightly abbreviated in D.
[2] *suæ*, ins. A.B.D.
[3] *flumen*, B.
[4] Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
[5] *postmodum*, ins. C.D.
[6] *vero*, C.D.
[7] *Moyses* after *voluisset*, B.
[8] *voluit*, A.D.
[9] *quievit*, B.
[10] *in Ægyptum*, ins. C.D. (omitting *ad Ægyptum* above).

TREVISA.

ledere and cheueteyn.[1] Moyses was konnynge in dedes of batayle, and forsook þe wey by þe water Nilus, and ladde his oost by a wildernesse þat was ful of serpentes; noþeles he putte ciconias[2] by ny}te a}enst þe serpentes; ciconie[3] beeþ briddes[4] of the lond of Egipt, þat hateþ and destroyeþ serpentes, þat[5] beeþ mylde i-now to mankynde; and so com vnwar vppon þe Ethiopes, and closed hem in a rial citee Saba. Afterward Cambyses[6] þe kyng cleped þat citee Meroen after his owne [suster][7] name. Þat citee is ful strong by cause of walles of diches and wateres þat renneþ aboute þat citee, þat[8] is i-sette bytwene þe Ethiopes and þe Egipcians vppon þe ryuer Nilus. Tarbis,[9] þe kynges dou}ter of Ethiopes, sigh þe fairnesse of Moyses, and bytook hym[10] þe citee vppon a couenant þat he schulde wedde hir to wif. *Petrus, libro* 2°. Þis is þe[11] womman of Ethiopia for þe whiche Mary and Aaron stryue[12] with Moyses in desert. Whan Moyses wolde torne a}en in to Egipte, his wif wolde not assente; þerfore Moyses, as a man þat was konnynge in þe cours of[13] worchynge of þe sterres and planetes, made tweie rynges, oon of mynde and anoþer of for}etyngnesse; and kepte þe rynge of mynde wiþ hym self, and took his wif þe ryng of for}et-

MS. HARL. 2261.

wise in batelle, lefte the iourney by water, and brou}hte his hoste thro places fulle of serpentes, to whom he putte bryddes callede snypes, odious to serpentes and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethioppe, as withowt deliberacion, in the regalle cite of Saba, whom kynge Cambyses[6] callede Meron afterwarde, after the name of his sustyr. That is a stronge cite, by reason of the diches of waters rennenge abowte hit, and of stronge walles, whiche is sette in the costes of Egipte, on that floode callede Nilus. Tharbis, the do}hter to the kynge of Ethioppe, seenge the beawte of Moyses, toke to hym that cite, that he scholde wedde here to his wife. *Petrus, libro secundo.* That is the woman of Ethioppe for whom Maria and Aaron were at debate, and stryvede ageyne Moises in deserte. And when Moyses wolde haue goen in to Egipte, his wife wolde not condescende; wherefore Moises causede ij. rynges to be made, reteynenge with hym a rynge of memory, [and] }afe to his

[1] *capitayne*, Cx.
[2] *ciconyas*, MS.
[3] So *a.*; *cicoine*, MS.
[4] So *α. β. γ.*; *brydde*, MS.
[5] *þat*] and, Cx.
[6] *Cambises*, MS. and Harl. MS.
[7] Added from *α.*, &c.
[8] *and, α.*, Cx.
[9] *Tharbys*, Cx.
[10] *delyuered him*, Cx.
[11] *that*, Cx.
[12] So *α. β. γ.*; *stryueþ*, MS.; *stroof*, Cx.
[13] *and*, Cx.

rediit.[1] *Genesis.* Quo in tempore dum Moyses visitaret fratres suos in terra Gessen, occidit virum Ægyptium, qui percusserat virum Hebræum,[2] abscondens eum[3] sub sabulo.[4] Quod cum[5] die sequenti[6] sibi impropераretur a viro Hebræo,[7] tremens[8] fugit in terram Madian, ubi desponsavit Sephoram,[9] filiam sacerdotis; ex qua genuit Gersan et Eliezer.[10] *Petrus, libro secundo. capitulo sexto.*[11] Sacerdos iste primas fuit in terra Madian circa[12] Mare Rubrum, cujus nomen proprium fuit[13] Raguel, agnomen[14] Jethro,[15] cognomen Cineus; habuitque[16] septem filias pastrices; nam[17] officium alendorum gregum tunc erat mulieribus commendatum,[18] maxime in regione Trogloditarum.[19]

Moyses occidit Ægyptium.

Regnum Atheniensium incepit sub Cecrope, ex cujus uxore Latona et[20] Jove ferunt fabulæ Apollinem deum sapientiæ[21] progenitum fuisse.

Cecrops. Anno Moysi 39. Anno Abr. 463.

Deucalion cepit regnare in Thessalia,[22] cujus anno duodecimo[23] factum est tertium[24] diluvium particulare[25] in Thessalia, et incendium[26] sub Phaethonte.[27] *Augus-*

Deucalion. Anno Moysi 60. Anno Abr. 484.

[1] *quievit*, B.
[2] *occisum*, ins. B.
[3] *eum*] om. B.
[4] *abscondens . . . sabulo*] om. C.D.
[5] *dum*, A.E.
[6] *dum*, ins. B. (omitting *cum*).
[7] *a viro Hebræo*] om. C.D.
[8] *timens*, A.B.
[9] *Zephoram*, A.
[10] *Eliesar*, A.; *Eliezar*, D.
[11] *capitulo sexto*] om. C.
[12] *contra*, C. (not D.)
[13] *dictus nomine proprio*, C.D.
[14] *agnomine*, C.D.
[15] So A.; *Getro*, E.
[16] *habens*, C.D.
[17] *enim*, C.D.
[18] *commendatum*] om. C.D.
[19] *Trogoditarum*, MSS.
[20] *ex*, C. (not D.)
[21] *deum sapientiæ*] om. C.D.
[22] *in*, ins. C.D.
[23] *Moysi* 42°, ins. C.D.
[24] *tertium*] om. C.D.
[25] *particulare*] om. C.D.
[26] *incendia*, D.
[27] This and other classical proper names in this chapter are variously corrupted in MSS.

nesse;[1] and so sche[2] tornede home aȝen. *Genesis.* Þat tyme, whanne Moyses visited his breþeren in þe lond of Iessen, he slowȝ a man of þe Egipcians, and hydde hym in þe sonde; for he hadde i-smyte a man of þe Hebrewes. A morwe[3] a man of Hebrewe putte þat aȝen Moyses berd, and Moyses dradde sore, and fliȝe[4] into þe lond of Madian, and wedded Zephora a preostes douȝter of þat lond, and gat on hire Gersan[5] and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro 2°.* Þis preost was primat in þat[6] lond of Madyan aboute þe Rede See; his propre name [was][7] Raguel; and hadde tweie surnames, Jethro and Cineus; and hadde seuene douȝters þat were herdes and kepte bestes. For þe office of keþynge of bestes was þat tyme i-ordeyned to[8] wommen, and specialliche in þe lond of Trog[l]oditees. TREVISA.

The kyngdom of Athenes bygan under Cecrops.[9] Fables telleþ þat on his wife Latona[10] Apolyn lord of witt and of wisdom was i-gete of[11] Iupiter. Deucalion bygan to reigne in Thessalia; in his twelfþe ȝere was þe þridde particuler flood in Thessalia,[12] and þe brynnynge vnder Feton.[13] *Augus-*

---

wife that other rynge of obliuion and forgetenge. *Genesis.* In whiche tyme, when Moises visitte his brether in the londe of Gessen, he did sle a man of Egipte, whiche hade smyten a man of Hebrewe, hidenge hym vnder sonde. Whiche dredenge in the day folowenge, when that thynge was seide to hym by a man of Egipte, fledde in to the londe of Madian, where he did wedde Zephora, of whom he gate Gersan and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro secundo.* That priste, fader to Zephora, was the moste nowble man in the londe of Madian, abowte the Redde See; the propur name of whom was Raguel, by an other name Ietro, hauenge vij. doȝhters, and kepers of bestes. For that office of kepenge and norischenge bestes was commendede to women, and specially in the region of Trog[l]odites. The realme of men of Athenes began vnder Cecrops,[9] of Latona the wife of whom, and of Iupiter, fables reherse Apollo to haue be geten. Deucalion began to reigne in Thessalia; in the xij^the^ yere of the reigne of whom the thrydde particuler floode was made in Thessalia, and a brennenge under Pheton. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *oblyuyon*, Cx. (who has however *forgetyngnesse* above).
[2] *he*, α. β. Cx.; *a*, γ.
[3] *On the morue*, Cx.
[4] *auoyded for drede in to*, Cx.
[5] So α. and Cx.; *Tersan*, MS.
[6] *þe*, α., Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] *for*, Cx.
[9] *Cicrops*, MS. and Harl. MS., and so below.
[10] *Lathona*, MS.
[11] *by*, Cx.
[12] *in Thessalia*] om. Cx.
[13] *Pheton*, Cx.; but *Feton* below.

tinus, libro octavodecimo.[1] Istud diluvium magnam partem Græciæ absumpsit; unde[2] qui ad regem Thessaliæ Deucalionem, tunc temporis Parnassum montem occupantem, ratibus advecti confugerant, salvabantur. *Ranulphus.*[3] Ex isto eventu finxerunt poetæ quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.[4] *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo.*[5] Cum flumina supra modum inundant,[6] non solum præsentia damna inferre, sed[7] aliqua futura significare consueverunt. [8] *Orosius, libro primo.* Eo quoque tempore sol fervescens non solum Æthiopiam, sed et[9] Scythiam[10] intolerabiliter exussit. Qua de causa gentiles fabulam Phaetontis confinxerunt.

Phaeton.

Cap. XIV.

Historia Moysi concluditur. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.[11]

Moyses et Aaron Pharaonem alloquuntur.

Moyses octoginta annorum existens,[12] una cum Aaron fratre suo octoginta trium annorum tunc[13] existente, Pharaonem alloquitur, ut populum Dei dimittat; quo indurato percussa est Ægyptus decem plagis. *Augustinus, libro* xviij°. Ea tempestate quidam Ægyptiorum,

Anno Moysi 80. Anno. Abr. 501.

[1] B. omits reference.
[2] *et*, C.D.
[3] *Ranulphus . . . . . renovaverint*] om. C.D.
[4] *renovaverunt*, A.
[5] *capitulo ultimo*, ins. A.B. (correctly).
[6] *habundant*, D., which omits *supra modum*.
[7] *sed etiam*, D.
[8] Instead of this next passage C.D. have, *Corinthus condita est, quæ prius Epira dicebatur.*
[9] *et*] om. B.
[10] *Ciciam*, B.
[11] No title in MSS.
[12] *post visionem rubi flammei in monte Oreb*, ins. C.D.
[13] *tunc*] om. E.

TREVISA.

tinus, libro 18°. Þis flood destroyed a greet deel[1] of Grees, þere meny men fleiȝ in[2] schippes to Deucalion, kyng of Thessalia, and were i-saued. Deucalion occupied þat tyme þe hil Parnas[s]us. For þis happe poetes feynede þat Deucalion and his wyf Pyrrha[3] þrewe doun stones and arered men. *Isidorus, libro* 13°, *capitulo* 61°. Whan reueres wexeþ[4] ouer mesures[5] þey dooþ not harme onliche in þe arisynge, but þey bodeþ[6] also harme þat schal come afterward. *Orosius, libro* 2°. Also þe sonne þat tyme brende nouȝt onliche Ethiopia blewe men lond, bote he brende also the lond of Scythia[7] so greuousliche, þat men myȝte nouȝt endure. Bycause þerof mysbeleued men feynede þe fable of Feton.[8]

Capitulum quartumdecimum.

Moyses foure skore ȝere olde, wiþ his broþer Aaron foure skore ȝere olde and þre, spak to Pharao kyng of Egipt, for he schulde delyuere God Allemyȝty his peple and lete[9] hem goo to[10] doo sacrifice to God. But Pharao was harde and faste in his malice,[11] and wolde nouȝt lete goo þe peple. And Egipte

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

This floode destroyede a grete part of Grece, in whiche tyme men fleenge to Deucalion in schippes, to that grete mownte callede Parnassus,[12] occupyenge hit were saluede. ℞. Thro whiche chaunce poetes feyne that Deucalion and Pyrrha[3] his wife renewede men of stones caste vp with the water. *Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto.* Where and when floodes be more habundante then thei were wonte, thei be wonte to signifie not oonly hurtes presente but also to come. *Orosius, libro primo.* In whiche tyme the son beenge of feruente heete, brente not oonly Ethioppe, but also Scyttica[7]; for whiche thynges the fable of Feton is feynede of the Gentiles.

Capitulum quartumdecimum.

Moyses beenge of lxxx. yere in age, and Aaron his brother of lxxxiij. yere in age, spake to Pharao that he scholde suffre the peple of God to goe and to do sacrifice; whose herte was made harde, wherefore Egipte was smyten

---

[1] *partye*, Cx.
[2] *fledde into*, Cx.
[3] *Pirra*, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected.
[4] *waxen*, Cx.
[5] *mesure*, Cx.
[6] *bode and bitoken*, Cx.
[7] *Scicia*, MSS.
[8] This form, though unclassical, has been allowed to stand, as being in a manner anglicised.
[9] So α. β., Cx.; *hete*, MS.
[10] *goo to*] om. Cx., who has other slight variations.
[11] *malys*, α.
[12] *Pernasus*, Harl. MS.

timentes Ægyptum perituram, egressi sunt, ut Cecrops, qui[1] navigans Græciam urbem Atthen condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. *Ranulphus.* De qua vide[2] supra libro primo,[3] capitulo Græcia,[4] scilicet Helladia.[5] Veruntamen[6] Corinthus, quæ prius Ephyra[7] vocabatur, quinque annis ante Atthen condita est. *Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo vicesimo*[8] *tertio.*[9] Multæ aliæ fuerunt Ægypti plagæ præter illas decem famosas plagas;[10] unde et quidam dies in kalendario Ægyptiaci vocantur, quia in illis diebus[11] passa est[12] Ægyptus aliquas plagas. Ex quibus duos solummodo dies[13] singulis mensibus annotamus ad memoriam; quamvis[14] fortassis plures fuerint.[15] Nec est credendum quod Ægyptii, quamvis[16] astrorum periti, deprehenderent hos dies[17] nefastos in inchoatione operis vel[18] itineris seu munitionis.[19] *Genesis.*[20] Igitur[21] Moyses, cum[22] octoginta esset[23] annorum, quo die[24] Israel in Ægyptum[25] ingressus est, eo die eduxit eum de[26] Ægypto, luna existente quintadecima, post quadringentos triginta annos egressionis Abrahæ de Carra[27] Mesopotamiæ in

Ægypti plagæ.

Exodus Israel.

---

[1] *qui*] om. B.

[2] *vide*] urbe quære, C.D.

[3] *libro primo*] de provinciis, C.D.

[4] *Græcia . . . Helladia*] vicesimo secundo, B. See vol. i. p. 190, where for *Atthen* we have *Acten*, which is probably right. The similarity of of *c* and *t* in MSS. is a source of great confusion.

[5] *Elladia*, MSS. ('*s*' usually stands for *scilicet*, but *sive* would be better. The standard MS. of Trevisa has *scilicet* at length.)

[6] C.D. transpose this passage to the end of previous chapter.

[7] *Epira*, MSS.

[8] *decimo*, B.

[9] *libro . . . tertio*] om. C.D.

[10] *et ideo forte tacentur*, ins. C.D.

[11] *diebus*] om. C.D. (with other slight variations.)

[12] *patiebatur*, B.

[13] *dies*] om. C.D.

[14] *licet*, C.D.

[15] *fuerant*, B.

[16] *licet*, C.D.; om. A.

[17] *duos*, A.

[18] *vel*] om. B.

[19] *immissionis*, B.

[20] A.B.C.D. omit reference.

[21] *Igitur*] om. C.D.

[22] *cum*] om. B.

[23] *esset*] om. B.

[24] *die quo*, B.

[25] *in Ægyptum*] om. B.

[26] *ex*, C.

[27] *Charram*, B.; *Carram*, D. *Carrhis* would be more classical, if Haran or Charran is identical with Carrhæ.

TREVISA.

was i-smyte wiþ ten grete wreches.[1] *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Þat tyme þat God took wreche in Egipte, som of þe Egipcians dradde leste Egipte schulde be lost for euere more, and fley3e [2] into oþer londes. And so oon Cecrops seillede in to Grees, and bulde þe citee Athen, þat heet afterward Athene.[3] Loke more of Athen in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet Alladia.[4] Noþeles Corinthus þe firste heet Epira, and was i-bulde fyue 3ere to fore Athen.[5] *Petrus, libro* 2°. Þere were meny wreches in Egipt wiþ oute þe ten grete wreches. Þerfore some dayes in þe kalender beeþ i-cleped dayes of Egipt, [for þilke dayes fil wreches in Egipt.][6] Of þe whiche dayes we setteþ in þe kalender but in eueriche monthe tweyne in mynde of þe wreches þat God took of Egipt.[7] Neuerþeles þere were meny moo wreches i-take of Egipt. Hit is nou3t to trowynge,[8] þey þe Egipcians were konnynge in knowleche of sterres and planetes, þat þei founde þat þese dayes beeþ perilous and forbode in þe bygynnynge of werkes and of weyes and in blood letynge. Þanne whanne Moyses was foure skore 3ere olde, he ladde the folk of [Israel out of] [9] Egipt þe same day of þe 3ere þat Iacob and his children entrede in to Egipt. Whan Israel wente out of Egipte þe mone was fiftene dayes olde, and was foure hondred 3ere and þritty after þat Abraham wente out of Charran,[10] þat was in Mesopotamia,[11] in þe lond of

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

with x. plages and diseases. *Augustinus; libro* 18°. In whiche tyme somme men of Egipte dredenge hit to peresche, wente furthe with Cecrops; whiche sailenge in to Grece made a cite callede Atthen, and after that Athenes. ℞. Of whom hit is declarede afore, libro j°., capitulo 22°. Elladia other Corinthus, callede afore Epira, was edifiede v. yere afore the cite of Athenes. *Petrus, libro secundo.* There were mony other plages of Egipte, those x. famose plages excepte, wherefore somme daies be callede in the kalendary, the daies of men of Egipte, in whom Egipte was smyten with somme plages; for whiche cause ij. daies of theyme be annotede in the kalendary in euery monethe, thau3he þer were moo. Moyses ledde furthe the peple of Israel from Egipte in the xv^the^ day of the moone, after cccc.xxx^ti^ yere of the goenge furthe of Abraham from Carra Mesopotamie in to the londe of promission. As vj^c^.

---

[1] *wrecches and pynysshmentes*, Cx.
[2] *fley*, α. ; sentence varied in Cx.
[3] *Athenes*, Cx.
[4] So MS. for *Helladia*, the barbarous form in the Latin text.
[5] Sentence varied in Cx.
[6] Added from α. β. and Cx.
[7] *in Egipt*, Cx., and so below.
[8] *to be demed ne trowed*, Cx.
[9] Added from α. and Cx.
[10] *Carram*, MSS.
[11] *Mesopotanea*, MSS. and Cx.

terram promissionis. Egressi autem de Ægypto[1] quasi DC. milia[2] viri portaverunt secum ossa Joseph et ossa[3] undecim fratrum ejus, qui vocantur patriarchæ. Et condiderunt ea in Sichem,[4] prout dicit Hieronymus. Tulerunt etiam secum[5] farinam conspersam, qua usi sunt triginta diebus.[6] Columna[7] nubis præcessit eos de die, et columna ignis de nocte. Ad introitum quoque Hebræorum divisum est Mare Rubrum, quod quidem submersit Ægyptios sequentes.[8] *Josephus, libro septimo.*[9] Hujus maris divisio non est[10] discredenda, cum mare Pamphylicum legatur divisum fuisse coram Alexandro Macedone et etiam coram[11] ejus exercitu in persequendo[12] Darium. *Petrus, libro secundo,*[13] *capitulo tricesimo.* Aqua maris hujus non est rubea, sed ex terra rubra circumjacente gurges ipse et quod ex[14] eo sumitur inficitur. Ob hoc[15] gemmæ ibidem sunt rubræ,[16] et minium acutissimum inde[17] sumitur. Dividiturque[18] in duos sinus, Persicum et Arabicum. *Josephus, libro tertio.* Post triginta dies egressionis deficiente annona, dedit eis Dominus coturnices, manna, et aquam de petra

Mare Rubrum diffinditur.

Israel in deserto.

[1] *autem de Ægypto*] sunt, C.D.

[2] *milia*] om. A.E. and versions. Added from C.D. and Cx. See Ex. xii. 37. The Latinity is awkward, but is given as in D.

[3] *ossa . . . secum*] om. C.D.

[4] *Sichen*, A.

[5] *secum*] om. E.

[6] *diebus*] om. B.

[7] *vero*, ins. C.D.

[8] *insequentes*, A.B.; *prosequentes*, C.D. (placing *submersit* last).

[9] *libro septimo*] om. A.B.C.D. The reference is to *Ant. Jud.* ii. 16.

[10] *est*] om. E.

[11] *etiam coram*] om. B.; *etiam*, om. C.D.

[12] *in persequendo*] prosequente, C.; *persequente*, D.

[13] *libro secundo*] om. C.D.

[14] *de*, B.

[15] E. places the point after *hoc.*

[16] *rubiæ*, B.

[17] *inde*] om. E.

[18] *Dividitur autem*, C.D.

TREVISA.

byheste. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, aboute sixe[1] hondred [þowsand][2] men bare[3] wiþ hem Ioseph his bones and his enleuene breþeren bones, that beeþ i-cleped patriarkes, and buried hem in Sychem, so seiþ Ierom. Israel toke wiþ hem mele and floure i-spronge wiþ oyle, and vsed þat þritty dayes. A pyler of a cloude wente to fore Israel, and ladde hem by day; and a pyler of fuyre by nyȝte. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, þe Reede See openede and lete hem passe, and drenche[4] alle þe Egipcians þat took þe same weye in þe openynge of þis[5] see forto pursewe. *Iosephus.* Þe openynge of þis see schal not ben vntrowed, for me redeth þat þe see Pamphylicum openede to fore kyng Alexander Macedo and also to fore his oost whan he pursewed Darius. *Petrus, libro* 2°. Þe water of þis see is nouȝt rede of kynde, but is i-dyȝed[6] of reed clyues and erthe þat lieþ þere aboute. Þerfore also þere beeþ i-founde reed precious stoones, and þere is i-founde scharpe fermyloun.[7] Þis see is i-deled atweyne; þat oon is cleped þe see Persicus and [þat oþer][8] þe see Arabicus. *Isidorus, libro* 2°.[9] Þritty dayes after þat Israel wente out of Egipt, hem faillede corn;[10] and oure Lorde ȝaf hem corlewes and[11] manna and water of

MS. HARL. 2261.

men goenge furthe from Egipte bare the boones of Ioseph with theyme, and also the boones of his xj. brether, whiche ar callede patriarkes, and beriede theyme in Sichem, as Seynte Ierom seythe. They toke floure with theyme, whiche thei did vse; and a pylloure off a clowde wente a fore theyme xxx^{ti} daies in the day, and a pillore of fire in the nyȝhte. And the Redde See was diuidede at the entrenge of men of Hebrewe, and drownede the men of Egipte folowenge theyme. *Iosephus.* The diuision of that see is not be ȝiffen to diffidence, sythe hit is redde the see Pamphilyke to haue bene diuidede afore grete Alexander the Conqueroure, and afore his hoste, in the persecucion of Darius. *Petrus, libro secundo.* The water of that see is not redde, but that water is infecte of the redde grownde beenge abowte hit, where gemmes be founde of redde coloure; whiche water is diuidede in to partes, as in to Persia and in to Arabia. *Iosephus, libro tertio.* The corne of the childer of Israel faylenge after the xxx^{ti} day of the goenge furthe of theyme from Egipte, God sende to them certeyne bryddes, angelles foode, and water from the ston of Oreb.

[1] *an sixe*, α. β.
[2] Added from Cx.
[3] *hy* (*i.e. they*) *bar*, γ., which is better.
[4] *drenched*, α., Cx.
[5] *the*, α., Cx.
[6] *dyed*, α.
[7] *vermyloun*, α.
[8] Added from Cx.; but absent from MS., α. β. γ.
[9] *Johannes, libro tercio*, Cx. The true reference is to Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* iii. 1.
[10] *they faylled corne*, Cx.
[11] *and*] om. α.

Oreb. Adhuc autem sic[1] rigatur locus ille imbribus, sicut tunc per Moysen Deus ministravit.[2] Post tres menses egressionis eorum[3] ascendit Moyses in montem,[4] ubi jejunando quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus legem accepit,[5] et tabernaculum secundum quod sibi ostensum fuerat[6] in monte[7] septem mensibus construxit. Et sic[8] secundo anno egressionis, prima die mensis Aprilis, erectum est tabernaculum. *Ranulphus.*[9] Ab hoc[10] loco usque ad ædificationem templi[11] numerantur anni quadringenti octoginta. Sub hoc etiam tempore secundum quosdam[12] Io profecta est ab Argivis[13] usque[14] Ægyptum, ubi et[15] Isis appellata est; quæ et nupsit Telegono[16] et Epaphum genuit.[17] *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo sextodecimo.* Post secundum annum egressionis missis duodecim exploratoribus ad terram promissionis et reversis ob murmur populi et desperationem, prohibiti sunt filii Israel ulterius procedere. Unde et[18] reversi ad solitudinem, per quadraginta annos[19] afflicti; ex quibus nullus ingressus est[20] terram promissionis, exceptis Caleph et Josue. Hoc[21]

Io vel Isis Ægyptum venit.

---

1 *sic*] om. C. (not D.); *si*, A.
2 Slightly transposed in C.D.
3 *eorum*] om. C.D.
4 *Synay*, ins. C.D.
5 *accepit*] So A.B.D.; *suscepit*, E.
6 *fuerat*] om. B.
7 *secundum . . . monte*] om. C.D.
8 *Et sic*] om. C.D.
9 *Dionysius*, C.D.
10 *isto*, B.
11 *templi*] om. B.
12 *Argivorum*, ins. C.D.
13 *Arivis*, B.
14 *ab . . . usque*] ad, C.D.
15 *ibi quoque*, B.
16 *Thelegoni*, MSS.
17 Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
18 *et*] om. C.D.
19 *jugiter*, ins. C D.
20 *ad*, ins. B.
21 *Hoc*] om. C.D. (having *Dionysius* in margin).

þe stone in Oreb. ȝit þat place is i-watered wiþ reyn, as God ȝaf water þat tyme by Moyses hond. [Þre monthes][1] after þat[2] Israel went out of Egipt, Moyses wente vp in to the hille, and fasted fourty dayes and fourty nyȝtes, and fenge þe lawe; and seuene monþes he made þe tabernacle [by ensample þat was i-schewed hym on þe hille; and so þe tabernacle][3] was arered þe firste day of Auerel in þe secounde ȝere of here out goynge of Egipt. From þis tyme to þe buldynge of the temple in Ierusalem is acounted foure hondred ȝere and foure skore. Also þis tyme, as some men telleþ, Io that womman wente from þe Argiues in to Egipt, and þere sche was i-cleped Isis,[4] and was i-wedded to Telegon,[5] and hadde a childe þat heet Epaphus. *Petrus, libro* 4°, [*capitulo* 16°.][6] After þe secounde ȝere of þe out goynge of Egipte twelue spyes were i-sente to the londe of byheste, and come aȝen; and for grucchynge of þe peple and despeyre and wanhope þe children of Israel were forbode to goo forþere. Þerefore þey tornede aȝen in to wildernesse, and were þere i-punisched fourty ȝere; and noon of hem entrede into þe lond of byheste outake Caleph and Iosue. TREVISA.

Whiche place is habundaunte with water vn to this tyme, as God ministrede hit in that tyme by Moyses. Whiche Moyses ascendede in to the mownte of Syna, after iij. monethes of the egression of the peple of Israel from Egipte, fastenge by xl^ti daies afore and xl^ti nyȝhtes, toke a lawe of God, settenge his tabernacle þere by vij. monethes, as he was commaundede to do; and so the tabernacle was erecte in the secunde yere of the goenge furthe of the peple of Israel from Egipte, in the firste day of Aprile. From whiche tyme cccc.lxxx. yere be annumerate other nowmbrede vn to the edificacion of the temple. In whiche tyme, after somme men, Io goenge furthe from the Argyues vn to Egipte, callede there Isis, and mariede to Theologenes,[7] gate Epaphus. *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo decimo sexto.* After the secunde yere of þe egression of the peple of Israel from Egipte, xij. meassyngers sende to the londe of promission, and returnede ageyne; for þe murmur and desperation off the peple, the childer of Israel hade in commaundemente that thei scholde returne, whiche returnenge were afflicte in deserte by xl^ti yere, of whom eny entrede not in to the londe of promission, Iosue and Caleph ex- MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[2] *þat tyme*, MS. (only).
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] So α.; *Isus*, MS.
[5] *Thelegon*, MS.
[6] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] Here and below the proper names, which are considerably corrupt, have been left unaltered.

Varia de Græcia.

sexto anno egressionis templum Apollinis Delphici ab Aristone[1] ædificatur. Quo etiam anno Atheniensium secundus Cranaus cœpit regnare, et regnavit novem annis; ex cujus filia Athis[2] Attica terra[3] nuncupatur.[4] *Ranulphus.* Vide supra libro primo,[5] capitulo Græcia, scilicet[6] Helladia. Quo in tempore[7] Hebræi receperunt[8] literas, et Græcia vites.[9] [10] Lacedæmonia quoque[11] a Lacedæmone filio Semelis condita est. Et Atheniensium quartus Ericthonius regnavit quinquaginta annis. Et Argivorum nonus Sthenelus. Et Sicyoniorum Ericthonius. Argivorum rex Arcas Arcadiam a nomine suo[12] nominavit, quæ prius Sicyonia dicebatur.[13] Ægyptus, quæ prius[14] Aerea[15] dicebatur, ab Ægypto[16] tunc regnante,[17] Ægyptus dicta est.[18] Argivorum decimus Danaus regnavit quinquaginta annis. *Orosius, libro primo.* Danaus et Ægyptus[19] fratres fuerunt; Danaus autem per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Ægypti una nocte interfecit, uno[20] filio solummodo relicto, qui post illum regnaret.[21] Inde ipse Danaus tot malorum fabricator Argos conscendit; ubi per fraudem expulso Sthenelo, qui eum exulem et inopem

Anno Moysi 86. Anno Abr. 510.

Anno Moysi 98. Anno Abr. 522.

Anno Moysi 102. Anno Abr. 526.

Danaus et Ægyptus.

Anno Moysi 111. Anno Abr. 535.

[1] So A.; *Eristone*, D.E. (and versions). There is, however, no doubt that *Erysichthone* is the true reading. See Eusebius *Chron.* (*Vers. Armen.*), vol. ii. p. 61. (Vers. 1818.)

[2] *nomine terra*, ins. C.D. Higden should have written *Atthide*.

[3] *terra*] om. E.

[4] *nominatur*, C.D.

[5] *Vide . . . primo*] Quære supra de provinciis, C.D.—See vol. i. p. 190.

[6] *scilicet*] om. E.; *capitulo* 22, B.

[7] *Tempore ducatus Moysi*, C.D.

[8] So A.B.; *ceperunt*, C.D.E.; *habere*, ins. C.D.

[9] *vitem*, D.

[10] *Dionisius*, ins. C.D. (in marg.)

[11] *quoque*] om. B.C.D.

[12] *a nomine suo*] om. C.D.

[13] *quæ . . . dicebatur*] so B.; om. C.D.; *dicitur*, E.

[14] *prius*] om. B.

[15] *Aera*, B.

[16] *rege*, ins. C.D.

[17] *in ea*, ins. B.

[18] *vocabatur*, C.D.

[19] *Egistus*, A.B.; and so E. below.

[20] *unico*, B.

[21] *regnavit*, B.

Þis sixe ȝere after þe out goynge of Egipt Eriston bulde þe temple of Appolyn Delphicus. Also þat ȝere Cranaus þe secounde of Athenes bygan to reigne, and reigned nyne ȝere. His douȝter heet A[t]this; of hir Attica[1] þat lond haþ þat name. Looke to fore in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet El[l]adia. Þat tyme þe Hebrewes feng lettres, and Grecia vynes. Also Lacedemon Semelis sone bulde Lacedemonia þat citee, and þe ferþe Ericthonius of Atthene reignede fifty ȝere olde, and þe[2] nynþe St[h]enelus of the Argyues and Erict[h]onius[3] of Sciciones. Arcas[4] kyng of þe Argyues, ȝaf his name to þat lond Arcadia,[4] and cleped it so after his owne name; but þat lond Arcadia heet raþer Scicionia. Egipt heet rather Aerea, and hadde þat name Egipt of oon Egiptus þat reigned þerynne. Danaus þe tenþe of Argyues reigned fifty ȝere. *Orosius, libro primo.* Danaus and Egiptus[5] were tweye breþeren; and Danaus by his fifty douȝters slowȝ Egiptes fifty sones in oon nyȝht, outake oon þat schulde reigne after hym. Danaus doere of meny euel dedes wente vp to þe Argyues, and by gile putte out St[h]enelus, þat hadde ofte i-saued hym whiles he was nedy TREVISA.

cepte. The temple of Apollo Delphicus was edifiede of Heristones in the vj[the] yere of the egression of the childer of Israel. In whiche yere also Cranaus, the secunde kynge of men of Athenes, began to reigne, and reigned ix. yere. Of Athis, the doȝhter of whom, that londe callede Athica was namede, as hit is schewede afore, libro j., capitulo 22°., Elladia. In whiche tyme men of Hebrewe receyvede letters, and men of Grece vynes. Lacedemonia was edifiede oones of Lacedemon. Eructonius, the iiij[the] kynge of men of Athenes, reignede l[ti] yere. Archas, kynge of Argyues, namede Archadia after his name, whiche was callede afore Scicionia. Egiptus toke the name of hit of a man calledde Egiptus reignenge in hit, for hit was callede afore Aeria. Danaus, the x[the] kynge of Arguyes, reignede l[ti] yere. *Orosius, libro primo; et Petrus, li. 2, 6° capitulo.* Danaus and Egistus were brether, but Danaus, by his l[ti] doȝhters, did slee in oon nyȝhte l[ti] sonnes of Egistus, oon childe lefte oonly, whiche scholde reigne after hym; wherefore Danaus, the causer of that mischefe, wente to the Argyues, expellede S[th]enelus by fraude, whiche norischede MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Atthica*, MSS.

[2] *in þe* MS. (not *α.*): Cx. has some omissions here.

[3] So *α.*; *Erictorius*, MS.

[4] *Archas* and *Archadia*, MSS.

[5] Here and below MSS. and Cx. have *Egistus*.

foverat, ipse quoque regnavit.[1] [2]Sub ea tempestate egressus creditur Liber pater, qui et Dionysus Bacchus; qui Argos condidit, et usum vineæ Græcis dedit.

Mercurius. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro* 18°.[3] His temporibus major ille Mercurius[4] fuisse perhibetur[5] nepos Atlantis, ex Maia filia Atlantis progenitus,[6] multarum artium peritus; unde et[7] deificatus est. Posterior illo[8] quodammodo fuit Hercules ille major,[9] qui cognominatus est Dasaneus secundum[10] Marianum, libro primo, ca-

Hercules. pitulo xlv.[11] Iste etiam est Hercules ille (*Ranulphus*)[12] qui[13] secundum Ovidium occidit Busirim[14] tyrannum. *Josephus.* Iste Hercules desponsavit Etheam,[15] filiam Afer, filii Madian; qua de[16] causa profectus est cum eo ad subjugandum Libyam, quæ ex Afer conquæstore dicta est Africa.[17] Quadragesimo anno egressionis[18] Israel de Ægypto[19] Aaron centum viginti Anno Moysi 120. Anno Abr. 514. trium annorum existens obiit in Oreb;[20] eodemque anno Moyses, cum quadraginta annis in Ægypto, quadraginta annis in Madian, et quadraginta annis, triginta diebus minus, in eremo[21] præfuisset, centesimo vicesimo ætatis suæ anno[22] obiit in monte Abarim contra Jherico. Sepultus[23] est a Domino in valle Moab.

---

[1] *Orosius . . . regnavit*] om. C.D.; *regnavit*, om. B.

[2] *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (in margin; varying also the sentence).

[3] *Alfridus xviij°.*, A.E. The reference is to Aug. *de Civ.* xviii. 8.

[4] *qui*, ins. B.

[5] *prohibetur*, A.

[6] *ex . . . progenitus*] om. C.D.

[7] *et*] om. C.D.

[8] *eo*, C.D.

[9] ℞, ins. B.

[10] *sicut dicit*, B.

[11] 45] added from B.

[12] ℞] om. B.

[13] *qui . . . qui*] om. A.C.D.

[14] *Busirum*, MSS.

[15] *Ethiam*, A.; *Ethinam*, B.; *Otheam*, D.

[16] *de*] om. A.

[17] Sentence altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

[18] *filiorum*, ins. B.

[19] *Israel de Ægypto*] om. C.D.

[20] *Oreb*] in Arabia in monte Asini (for Sinai ?; D. has Asī.) qui nunc Oreb dicitur, C.D.

[21] *populo*, ins. C.D.

[22] *anno*] om. A.

[23] *sepultusque*, A.B.D. In this chapter several slight errors of MSS. in the spelling of proper names have been tacitly corrected.

TREVISA.

and outlawe, and reigned hym self. Me troweþ þat in þat tempest went out þat man þat heet Liber pater and heet Dionysus[1] [Bacchus][2] also; he made vp Argiues, and ȝaf þe Grees vse of vynes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei.* Me seiþ þat þe grete Mercurius was in þat tyme; þis Mercurius was Maia Atlas[3] is douȝter sone. Þis Mercurius was connynge in meny craftes, and þere he was i-made among hem as it were a god. But þe grete Hercules[4] was somdel lattre þan he. R. Þis grete Hercules hadde a surname Dasaneus, so seiþ Marianus, libro primo, capitulo fyue hondred fourty and fyue. Also þis is þat Hercules þat slowh Busiris[5] þe tyraunt, so seiþ Ouyde. *Iosephus.* Þis Hercules weddede Ethea Affer[6] his douȝter. Affer was Madian his sone. Þerfore Hercules wente wiþ Affer to wynne Libya, and þat lond was þanne i-cleped Affrica by Affer þe conquerour his name. Þe fourty ȝere after þe out goynge of Egipt Aaron an hondred ȝere olde and þre and twenty deyde in Oreb. Also þe same ȝere Moyses whan he hadde i-lyued fourty ȝere in Madian, and fourty ȝere saue þritty dayes in desert, sex score ȝere old almost, he deide in þe hil Mont Abarim, aȝenst Ierico þat town, and was i-buried of oure Lord in þe valey of Moab.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Danaus when he was in exile and pouerte, that he myȝhte reigne þer. Dionysus Bacchus is trawede to haue bene that tyme, whiche made feldes, and began the vse of vynes, amonge men of Grece. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.* The nowble Mercury is seide to haue bene in this tyme son to the doȝter of Atlas, geten of Maia, wise in mony artes, wherefore he was callede a godde after his dethe. After whom grete Hercules was. R. Whiche was otherwise callede Dasaneus, as Marianus rehersethe, libro j°, capitulo cxlv^to^. Also that is Hercules, whiche did slee Busiris[5] the tyraunte, as Ouidius the poete dothe reherse. *Josephus.* This Hercules did mary Stea, the doȝhter of Affer, son of Madian; wherefore he wente furthe with Affer to make Libya subiecte to hym, whiche was callede after Affrica, after the name of Affer. Aaron hauenge a cxxiij^{ti} [yere] in age, in the xl^{ti} yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, diede in Oreb; and Moises the same yere, in the c. and xx^{ti} yere of his age, diede in Abarim, ageynes Iherico, and was beriede of oure Lorde in the vale of Moab.

---

1 *Dyonisius*, MSS.

2 Added from α. and Cx. (*Bachus*).

3 *Athlas* α.; *Athalas*, MS.

4 Text as in α. and Cx.; MS. has words repeated from below.

5 *Busirus*, MSS. and Cx.

6 So β. γ., Cx.; *after*, MS., α.

Cap. XV.

De gestis et morte Josue; varia de Jove et Saturno aliisque.[1]

Josue populum in Chanaan introducit.

Isidorus, Etym., libro quinto. Josue, minister Moysi, per viginti sex annos rexit populum secundum Josephum[2]; Scriptura tamen de annis tacet; qui[3] primo anno ducatus sui, patefacto Jordane, populum ad terram promissionis introduxit, Phase, id est Pascha, immolavit, circumcisionem per quadraginta annos intermissam innovavit; ac comedentibus illis de fructu[4] terræ illius[5] manna, quod per quadraginta annos duraverat, tunc defecit. *Petrus.* Secundum Eusebium in chronica sua annus ille erat Jubileus, et erat quinquagesimus primus[6] inter Jubileos annos; ac si[7] fluxissent ab initio mundi usque ad tunc[8] duo milia quingenti quinquaginta anni, singulis Jubileis[9] per annos quinquagenos computatis; sed secundum LXX. interpretes[10] longe plures anni fluxerant.[11] Beda vero sequens Hebraicam veritatem probat a[12] prædicta summa annorum septem annos deficere.[13]

De Jubileo. Anno Abr. 545. Anno Josue 1.

Erichthonius.

Anno primo Josue Erichthonius,[14] quartus[15] rex Athe-

[1] No title in MSS.
[2] Most MSS. of Josephus give 25 years. See *Ant. Jud.*, v. 1.
[3] *Hic*, C.D.
[4] *fructibus*, C. D.
[5] *illius*] om. C.D.
[6] *annus*, ins. B.
[7] *annos; ac si*] quasi, C.D.
[8] *usque ad tunc*] om. C.D.
[9] *annis*, ins. B.
[10] *interpretes*] om. C.D.
[11] *fluxerunt*, A.
[12] *de*, B.
[13] *defuisse*, C.D.
[14] *Erictonius*, MSS.
[15] *quartus*] om. C.D.

Capitulum quintumdecimum. Iosue. TREVISA.

IOSUE, Moyses seruaunt, rulede þe peple sixe and twenty ȝere, so seiþ Iosephus. Neuerþeles þe Scripture rekeneþ not þe ȝeres. Iosue,[1] þe firste ȝere of his ledynges[2] ladde þe peple into þe londe of byheste; and þe ryuer flom[3] Iordan oponede, and lete hem passe, and Iosue offrede þe Ester offrynge, and renewede þe circumsicioun þat was forbode fourty ȝere in wyldernesse. And whanne þey ete of fruyt of þat londe, þanne manna faillede þat hadde i-dured fourty wynter. *Petrus.* Eusebius in his book[4] seiþ þat[5] ȝere was Iubileus, þe ȝere of grace, and was þat oon and fyfty ȝere of grace, as þeyȝ þoo were apassed from þe bygynnynge of þe world two þowsand þere fyue hondred and fifty, þat is oon and fifty [siþes fifty][6] ȝere. Þan forto take of eueriche fifty ȝere oon ȝere of grace it comeþ to oon and fifty ȝeres of grace; but by þe Seuenty þere were apassed meny mo ȝeres. And Beda folweþ þe Hebrewes, and preueþ[7] þat þere lakkede seuene ȝere of two þowsand fyue hondred and fifty. Þe firste ȝere of Iosue Erichthonius,[8] þe fourþe kyng of Atthene, was þe firste þat

---

Capitulum quintumdecimum.

IOSUE, the minister of Moyses, rewlede the peple of Israel, MS. HARL. 2261. after Iosephus, xxvj^{ti} yere; neuertheles Scripture expressethe not the yeres. Whiche ledenge the peple þro the water of Iordan, in the firste yere of his gouernayle, vn to the londe y-promysede, offrede Ester, and renewede circumcision, refusede by xl^{ti} yere; and then the noryschenge that was ȝiffen of God to theyme failede, after xl^{ti} yere. *Petrus.* That yere was the yere of iubile, after Eusebius in his cronicle, and hit was the firste l^{ti} yere amonge other yeres, as if ij. m^{l} yere v^{c}. and l^{ti} hade bene from the begynnenge of the worlde, alle the yeres of the iubile acomptede by l^{ti} yere: but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, there were mony moo yeres from the begynnenge of þe worlde vn to that tyme. Bede, folowenge the trawthe and the trewe acompte of men of Hebrewe, provethe vij. yere to faile from the nowmbre rehersede. Erichthonius[9] the iiij^{the} kynge of men of Athenes, in the firste yere of Iosue,

---

[1] *of Iosue*, MS. (not Cx.)
[2] *ledynge*, *a.*, Cx.
[3] *flum*, *a.*, Cx.
[4] *cronike*, *a.*, Cx.
[5] *that that*, *a.*, Cx.
[6] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[7] *proued*, Cx.
[8] *Eructonius*, MSS.
[9] *Erutonius*, Harl. MS., twice.

niensis, primus in Græcia quadrigam junxisse creditur.[1] Erat tamen quadriga prius apud alias nationes. *Augustinus, libro xviij°.* Hic primus instituit ludos Apollini et Minervæ.[2] Eoque[3] tempore Busiris[4] tyrannus, rex Ægypti, tyrannidem exercuit in hospites suos. Nam diis suis homines immolavit, quem ferunt fuisse filium Neptuni ex Libya, filia Epaphi. [5] Josue[6] distribuit genti Judææ terram Palæstinorum. Eo tempore[7] Phœnix et Cadmus fratres de Thebis Ægyptiorum Syriam profecti, apud Tyrum et Sidonem regnaverunt.[8] Jupiter rex Cretæ rapuit Europam, filiam Agenoris regis Libyæ, quam postmodum Asterius[9] rex Cretensium uxorem sibi fecit.[10] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.* Jupiter ex Europa quam rapuit genuit Radamanthum, Sarpedon,[11] Minois, qui post eum regnavit in Creta. *Ranulphus.* Veruntamen Marianus, libro primo, capitulo dcx°., dicit quod Asterius[12] genuit ex Europa hos tres filios.[13] *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* Agenor, rex Libyæ, genuit tres filios, Cilicem,[14] Phœnicem et Cadmum, et unam[15] filiam nomine Europam; quam cum Jupiter[16] rapuisset, navi suæ,[17] quæ taurum

Busiris.

Anno Abr. 555. Anno Josue 10.

Phœnix et Cadmus.

Anno Abr. 563. Anno Josue 18.

Jupiter Europam rapit.

Anno Abr. 567. Anno Josue 22.

[1] *fertur*, B.C.D.

[2] *primusque currum junxisse fertur*, ins. C.D.

[3] *Eo quoque*, B.

[4] *Busirus*, MSS. and versions.

[5] *Dionysius* (marg.). *Anno decimo*, ins. C.D.

[6] *Joseph*, E.

[7] *Eoque tempore*, A.; *Eo quoque tempore*, B.; *Anno* 18° C.D.

[8] *Anno* 22 *Josuæ*, ins. C.D.

[9] *Astinus*, B.; *Astrius*, E.D.

[10] *duxit in uxorem*, C.D.

[11] *et*, ins. C.D. Higden's inflections have been left unchanged.

[12] *Astinus*, B.

[13] *Ranulphus . . . filios*] om. C.D.

[14] *Silicem*, MSS.

[15] *unamque*, B.

[16] *rex Cretæ*, ins. C.D.

[17] *suæ*] om. B.

TREVISA.

brouȝte charioth[1] in to Grees, as me seiþ. Noþeles to fore honde were chariottes in oþer londes. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Þis ordeyned first playes to Appolyn, and to Minerua. Also þat tyme Busiris þe tyraunt, kyng of Egipt, he kydde[2] his tyrauntyse[3] on his gestes; for he slowh men, and offred hem to goddes. Me seiþ þat he was Neptunus his sone i-gete on Libya, Epaphus his douȝter. Iosue departed þe lond of Palestines to þe Iewes. Also þat tyme Fenix and Cadmus,[4] tweyne breþeren of Thebe, þat is in Egipt, wente into Syria,[5] and reigned at Tyrus and at Sidon, tweie citees þat so hatte. Iupiter, kyng of Creta, rauesched Europa, þe douȝter of Agenor,[6] kyng of Libya. Afterward Asterius, kyng of Creta, wedded[7] Europa to his[8] wyf. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Iupiter on Europa þat he rauisched he gat Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos,[9] þat reigned after hym in Creta. Noþeles, Marianus, libro primo, capitulo 610,[10] seiþ þat Asterius on Europa gat þese þre sones. *Isidorus, libro* 14°. Agenor, kyng of Libya, gat þre sones, Silex,[11] Phenix, Cadmus, and oon douȝter þat heet Europa. Whan Iupiter hadde i-rauisched hire, he dede hire in

MS. HARL. 2261.

ordeinede firste a carte with iiij. wheles in Grece; neuerthe-lesse thei were afore in other places. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* The seide Erichthonius ordeynede plaies to Apollo and to Minerua. In whiche tyme Busiris, the tyraunte and kynge of Egipte, exercisede cruellenesse, for he offrede men to his goddes, whom men say to haue bene the son of Neptunus of Libya the doȝhter of Epaphus. Iosue distribute to the peple of Iewes the londe of Palestines. In whiche tyme Fenix and Cadmus brether, goenge from Egipte to Syria, reignede at Tyrus and Sidon. Iupiter kynge of Creta toke a weye Europa the doȝhter of Agenor kynge of Libya, whom Asterius kynge of men of Creta did wedde. Iupiter gate of Europa, whom he toke aweye, Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos,[9] whiche reignede after hym in Creta. ℞. Neuertheles Marianus rehersethe, libro i°. capitulo vjc° x°, that Asterius gate those iij. childer of Europa. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Agenor kynge of Libya gate thre sonnes, Cilix,[12] Fenix and Cadmus, and oon doȝter, Europa by name. But when Iupiter hade taken

[1] *chariot*, α. β. γ.; *charyote*, Cx.
[2] So α.; *hidde*, MS.; *vsed*, Cx.
[3] *tyrannye*, Cx.
[4] *Candmus*, MS. (not α.)
[5] *Sciria*, MS.
[6] *Agenore*, MS.
[7] *wedde*, α.
[8] *his*] om. α., Cx.
[9] *Minois*, MS.; *Minoys*, Harl. MS.
[10] 61, Cx.
[11] So MSS. for *Cilix*.
[12] *Silix*, Harl. MS.

habebat depictum eam imposuit. Qua de causa[1] fingunt poetæ Jovem in taurum[2] fuisse[3] transmutatum. Præcepit itaque[4] Agenor tribus filiis suis sororem suam sic raptam quærere, sub interminatione redeundi nisi eam reducerent. Sed cum eam non invenissent,[5] patris iram formidantes, Cilix in loco resedit[6] quem a suo nomine Ciliciam[7] nominavit. Phœnix quoque apud Phœniciam, Cadmus vero apud Græciam exilium elegit, ubi sequens vestigium bovis conspectæ[8] sedem posuit, et Bœotiam[9] nominavit; ubi et postmodum Thebas construxit.[10] *Ranulphus.* De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo Græcia.[11] [12] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.*[13] Eo tempore apud Cretam insulam[14] regnavit Jupiter, patre suo Saturno expulso ad Italiam. *Henricus.* Hic cum esset scelestissimus et bellicosissimus[15] Græciam conquisivit;[16] ubi post mortem a Græcis semper mendacissimis dominus[17] cœli putatus est, et Deus deorum ob magnitudinem potentiæ nominatus.[18] Cretenses vero, apud quos sepultus est, quando de sepultura ejus loquuntur[19] a Græcis dicuntur[20] mendaces.[21] *Alexander*

Cilix, Phœnix et Cadmus Ciliciam, Phœniciam et Bœotiam condunt.

Varia de Jove et Saturno.

[1] *Quamobrem,* C.D.
[2] *habebat . . . taurum*] om. B.
[3] *fuisse*] om. C.D.
[4] *Recessitque,* B.; *igitur,* C.D.
[5] *filii,* ins. C.D.
[6] *recedit,* B.
[7] *Ciliciam*] om. B.
[8] *conspecti,* C.D.
[9] *Boetiam,* MSS.
[10] Slightly transposed in C.D.
[11] *De . . . Græcia*] Quære supra de provinciis, capitulo Boetia, C.D.
[12] C.D. here introduce the following passage:—"*Petrus.* Eoque tempore Danaus decimus Argivorum "per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Egisti fratris sui "interfecit, uno solummodo superstite relicto, qui post eum regna"vit."
[13] B. omits reference.
[14] *Asiæ,* ins. C.D.
[15] *et bellicosissimus*] om. B.
[16] *acquisivit,* C.D.
[17] *Deus,* A.B.
[18] *nominatus*] om. C.D.
[19] *loquitur,* B.
[20] *dicunt,* E.
[21] *apud Græcos mendaces putantur,* C.D.

TREVISA.

his schippe þat was i-peynt wiþ a bole; and þerfore poetes feyneþ þat Iupiter was i-torned in to a boole. Agenor heet[1] his þre sones þat they schulde goo and seche her suster þat was so i-rauisshed and i-lad away, and forbede hem forto come aȝen, but ȝif þey brouȝte hir suster wiþ hem. And for[2] þey myȝte not fynde hir, þey dredde þe wreþþe of here[3] fader. Silex abood in a contray and cleped hit Scilicia[4] after his owne name, and Phenix[5] abood in Phenicia. But Cadmus chees his exilynge in Grecia. Þere he folowede þe fore[6] of an oxe, and come to a contray, and aboode þere, and cleped it Boecia, Oxelond. Afterward he bulde þere þe citee of Thebe. ꝶ. Loke more here in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. Iupiter regned in þe ilond Creta, and his fader Saturnus was i-put out, and wente to Itali. *Henricus.* Þis was a wicked man and a greet werriour, and conquered Grees. Þere after his deth, þe Grees þat were ful of lesynges hilde hym god of heuene, and nempned hym god of goddes for his grete power and myȝt. Þe men of Creta, fore he was i-buried among hem, wolde speke of his buriels. Þerfore þe Grees cleped hem lyȝers. *Alexander in Myth.*[7]

MS. HARL. 2261.

here awey, he putte her in a schippe in whom he hade a bulle depicte, wherefore poetes feyne Iupiter to be transmutate in to the similitude of a bulle. Wherefore Agenor commaundede his thre sonnes that thei scholde inquire for theire sustyr, and not to comme to hym in eny wyse with owte here. Whiche childer not fyndenge here and dredenge the wrathe of theire fader, Cilix returnede to Cilicia, namenge that cuntre after his awne name, and Fenix to Fenicea, and Cadmus to the londe of Grece, where he desirede exile; whiche folowenge the stappes of an oxe made a place, namenge hit Boetia, where he made Thebas afterwarde. ꝶ. Beholde more of this mater afore, libro j°, capitulo 22°, Boetia. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Iupiter reigned that tyme in the yle called Creta, Saturnus his fader expulsede to Ytaly. *Henricus.* Whiche beenge wyckede and bellicose gate the londe of Grece by conqueste; wherefore he was callede of men of Grece, that be and were the greteste lyers, a god, after his death, and namede as godde of alle goddes for the magnitude of his power. *Alexander in Mythologia.* The trewe story hathe

[1] *bad*, Cx.
[2] *by cause*, Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *the*, MS.
[4] So α. and Cx. (for Cilicia); *Scicilia*, MS.
[5] So α.; *Fenix*, MS.; and *Fenicea* below.
[6] *steppe*, Cx.
[7] So Cx. (*Mith.*); *Math.*, α.; *Mattheum*, MS.

in Mythologia. Vera historia habet Saturnum patrem et Jovem filium regna contigua in Creta habuisse; inter quos bello pro [1] finibus agrorum exorto [2] prævaluit [3] Jupiter; Saturnusque fugatus Italiam petiit, ubi [4] a Jano [5] regnante ob usum vinearum, falcis, et agriculturæ in partem imperii admissus est, dictusque [6] Saturnus a saturitate, quam ibidem promovit.[7] *Eutropius.* Hic Saturnus [8] fugiens filium suum Jovem e Græcia,[9] in finibus Tusciæ [10] non procul a loco [11] Romæ latuit, in loco quem Saturniam a nomine suo, et postmodum Latium [12] a latebra sua denominavit, ubi rudes populos ædificare, colere, et [13] plantare docuit, cum tamen [14] antea glandibus sustentarentur et sub frondibus contextis habitarent. Hic etiam nummos æreos instituit, quamobrem a multitudine rustica [15] deus putatus est. *Ranulphus.* Et quamvis poetæ [16] contendant Jovem [17] castrasse Saturnum,[18] ne in sui supplantationem [19] filios generaret; tamen historia Romana dicit [20] Saturnum [21] genuisse Picum in Italia. *Alex-*

---

[1] *de*, C.D.
[2] *orto*, C.D.
[3] *cum prævaluisset*, C.D.
[4] *ubique*, C.D.
[5] *tunc*, ins. D.
[6] *est*, ins. B.D.
[7] Sentence slightly varied in C.D., which omit *quam . . . promovit.*
[8] *Saturnus*] quoque, C.D.
[9] *Creta*, B.
[10] *Thussiæ*, A.; *Thusiæ*, B.
[11] *a loco*] ab urbe, C.D.
[12] *Lacia*, E.
[13] *et*] om. D.E.
[14] *tamen*] om. C.D.
[15] *rusticana*, C. (not D.)
[16] *aliqui* C.D.
[17] *eunuchasse sive*, ins. C.D.
[18] *patrem suum*, ins. C.D.
[19] *alios*, ins. C.D.
[20] *narrat*, C.D.
[21] *post fugam suam*, ins. C.D. (with slight transpositions).

Verrey storie seiþ þat Saturnus þe fader [and Iupiter][1] þe sone hadde tweie kyngdoms ioynynge to gidres in Creta, and for endes and bondes of feeldes was a bataile bytwene hem; and Iupiter hadde þe maistrie, and Saturnus was i-chased out and wente into Ytaly; and þere Ianus þe kyng feng hym to a part of þe empere, by cause þat he kouþe skile of vynes[2] and[3] in repynge and in telyenge of feeldes. And he was i-cleped Saturnus of *saturitas*, þat is plente; for he made a[4] grete plente in þat lond. *Eutropius.* Þis Saturnus fly[5] his sone Iupiter out of Grees to þe endes of Tuscia nouȝt fer from þe place of Rome; he hidde hym þere in a place, and cleped þe place Saturnia after his owne name; and afterward he cleped hit Latium, þat is his hydynge place. Þere he tauȝte boistous men to bulde and to erye and sowe, and to sette vynes. For to forehonde þey lyued by acres,[6] and wonede vnder bowes and twigges i-wounde[7] to gidres. Also þis ordeyned pannes of bras; þerfore þe vplondische men hilde hym a god. ℞. And þey poetes mene þat Iupiter gildede[8] Saturnus, for he schulde not gete children to supplante hym, neuerþeles þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Saturnus gat Picus in Itali. TREVISA.

Saturnus to the fader, and Iupiter to the son, and to haue hade realmes contiguate in Creta; but at the laste a batelle movede betwene theyme for certeyn londe, Iupiter hade the victory, and Saturnus fleenge wente to Ytaly, whiche was receyvede of Ianus, reignenge there in to parte of thempyre, for the vse of vynes and off tillenge of londe, that he brouȝhte in to Ytaly, where he was callede Saturnus, for the plentuousenesse that he brouȝhte in to that cuntre. *Eutropius.* This Saturnus fleenge Iupiter his son lay priuely in a parte of Tuscia not ferre from Rome, whiche place he callede Saturnia, after his name, where he tauȝhte rude peple to edifye, to tylle feldes, and to sette vynes, whiche peple lyffede afore with akornes, and inhabite places made with bowȝes of trees. Also he institute penyes of brasse, wherefore he was trowede to haue bene a godde of the rusticalle peple. ℞. And thauȝhe poetes feyne Iupiter to haue geldede Saturnus leste that he scholde gette eny childer to his supplantacion, neuertheless the story of the Romanes seithe that Saturnus gate MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from α. β. γ., Cx.
[2] So α. β. γ., Cx.; *wyne*, MS.
[3] *and*] om. α.
[4] *a*] om. α. and Cx.
[5] So α.; *fleeþ*, MS.; *flemed*, Cx.
[6] *akres*, α.; *akornes*, β., Cx.; *akkarns*, γ.
[7] *i-weue*, α.; *wouen*, β., Cx.
[8] *geldede*, α.

ander in Mythol.[1] Hunc[2] Jovem post patris expulsionem pacem quoque[3] perturbantem alii potentes tyranni expellere sunt conati; quos quia bellicis machinis superavit, gigantes fingitur fulminasse. *Genesis.*[4]

Josue ante mortem suam fœdus renovat.

Josue, antequam[5] moreretur, effudit aquam in terram coram populo[6] in signum fœderis initi inter[7] Deum et populum;[7] quod[8] scilicet[9] populus[10] verum Deum elegisset. Anno Abr. 570. Anno Josue 45.

De fœderibus veterum.

Petrus. Mos erat gentibus in signum fœderis contracti[11] sanguinem suillum effundere. *Hugutio, capitulo Fœdus.* Inde dicitur fœdus a fœda, porca scilicet[12] mactata, quasi diceretur: sic effundatur sanguis ejus,[13] qui violaverit hoc fœdus. *Petrus, capitulo sextodecimo.*[14] Sed Hebræi aquam fuderunt[15] in signum quod, sicut aqua effunditur totaliter absque vestigio sui relicto, ita violator fœderis pereat cum tota progenie sua. Solebant etiam veteres[16] aliqua durabilia erigere, utpote[17] lapides aut cumulos, ut diuturnitate sui initum fœdus posteris memorarent.[18]

---

[1] *in Mythol.*] om. C.D.
[2] *Hinc*, B.
[3] *etiam*, C.D.
[4] C.D. omit reference.
[5] *priusquam*, C.D.
[6] *coram populo*] om. C.D.
[7] *inter . . . populum*] om. C.D.
[8] *quia*, A.
[9] *scilicet*] om. C.D.
[10] *populus*] om. B.
[11] *initi*, C.D.
[12] *sic*, A.D.
[13] *illius*, C.D.
[14] *capitulo sextodecimo*] om. C.D.
[15] *effuderunt aquam*, B.
[16] *veteres*] om. D.
[17] *ut*, C.D.
[18] Slightly transposed in C.D.

Alexander in Mythologia. Oþere myȝty tyrauntis fondede to putte out þis Iupiter, þat [1] was ful cruel and desturbed þe pees, after þat his fader was i-put out, and ouercome þe geantes wiþ gynnes of werre. Me feyneþ þat he liȝtnede out geantes. *Petrus.* Iosue, or he deide,[2] helte [3] water on þe erþe to fore þe peple in tokene of þe couenante þat was i-made bytwene God and þe peple; [þat was, þat þe peple] [4] hadde i-chose þe sooþfast God. *Petrus.* Mysbyleued men vsede to helde out [5] and schede out [6] þe blood of a sowe þat is i-slawe [7] in tokene of couenant i-made. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus, þat is a couenant, is i-seide of *feda*,[8] a sowe þat is so [9] i-slawe, as it were to mene, þat is blood þat brekeþ þe couenant schulde in þat manere be i-sched. *Petrus.* But þe Hebrewes hilde out water in token þat as þe water is al i-schad and nouȝt i-left, so he þat brekeþ þe couenant schulde be ded, and al his kyn.[10] Also men in olde tyme vsede to arere signes and tokenes þat myȝte longe dure in mynde of couenant to [11] hem þat come afterward; and so somme arered [12] stones and hepes of stones in mynde of couenantes. TREVISA.

Picus in Italy. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Other myȝhty tyrrauntes trowblenge peace were abowte to expelle Iupiter, whom he ouercome, wherefore hit is feynede of poetes Iupiter to haue sleyn diuerse gigantes. *Petrus.* Iosue afore that he diede schedde water in to the erthe, in to a signe of luffe begunne betwene God and the peple, that the peple hade chosen a trewe Godde. But the gentiles vsede to caste downe the bloode of a sowe in to a signe of luffe. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus is callede so of a fowle swyne sleyne þer, as if hit scholde be seide, his bloode be schedde in lyke wyse that dothe violate and breke this bonde of luffe. *Petrus, capitulo decimo sexto.* But men of Hebrewe schedde water in to a signe, for like as water is schedde holly with owte eny signe or stappe apperenge afterwarde, soe in lyke wise the breker of that bonde scholde peresche with alle his progeny. Also olde men were wonte to electe thynges durable in to the signe of luffe, as stones and beryelles, that men succedenge myȝhte remembre the seide token of luffe. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þat*] þis Jupiter, α., Cx.
[2] Some words repeated in α.
[3] *hyeld*, Cx.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] *out water*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[6] *out*] om. α. β. γ.
[7] *þat is i-slawe*] om. α. β. γ., Cx.
[8] So α., Cx.; *pheda*, MS.
[9] So α. β. γ.; *is i-slawe*, MS., Cx.
[10] So α. and Cx. (MS. has repetitions from above).
[11] *to*] of, Cx.
[12] *arered and enhaunced*, Cx. Slight corrections of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly made in this chapter for both versions.

Cap. XVI.

De Chusan, rege Mesopotamiæ, et Othoniel. De nativitate Apollinis et Bacchi. Varia de Cadmo et litteris Græcis.[1]

Chusan. Post mortem Josue filii Israel servierunt Chusan regi Mesopotamiæ octo annis, qui tamen anni junguntur temporibus[2] Othoniel, fratris Caleph, secundum Hebræos. *Petrus.* Nisi anni quietis et servitutis simul comprehenderentur sub diebus judicum, non staret veritas computationis in historia. *Augustinus, libro xviij*°.

Apollo nascitur. Circa istud[3] tempus Latona peperit Apollinem apud insulam Delos. *Ranulphus.*[4] Non autem[5] illum Apollinem Delphicum, qui diu ante extiterat, sed illum Apollinem qui cum Hercule posteriore[6] servivit Admeto[7] regi. Hanc Latonam dicunt esse Isidem.[8]

Othoniel. Igitur Othoniel annumeratis octo annis servitutis præcedentis dux fuit super Hebræos quadraginta annis.[9] Anno Abr. 571. Anno Othoniel 1.

Bacchus nascitur. Atheniensium rex quintus regnavit nomine[10] Neptunus. Anno Abr. 581. Anno Othoniel 11. Cadmus regnavit Thebis, ex cujus filia Semele[11] natus est Dionysus Bacchus,[12] qui etiam[13] dicitur Liber Pater, cujus tempore Linus Thebæus musicus claruit. Anno Abr. 583. Anno Othoniel 13. Bithynia condita est a Phœnice, quæ prius Mariandyna[14] vocabatur.[15] Anno Abr. 591. Anno Othoniel 21. *Isidorus, libro secundo et quinto.*[16]

---

[1] No title in MSS.

[2] *junguntur temporibus*] annis, B.

[3] *idem*, C.D.

[4] *Ranulphus*] om. A.C.D.

[5] *autem*] om. C.D. ; *tamen*, B.

[6] *cum . . . . . posteriore*] Hercule posterior, C. (not D.)

[7] *servierat Meoto*, B.

[8] *Hanc . . . Isidem*] om. C.D.

[9] Sentence varied in C.D.

[10] *nomine*] om. A.B.C.D., placing *Neptunus* before *regnavit.*

[11] *Semela*, MSS., and so below.

[12] *Dionisius Bachus*, MSS., and so below ; similarly the versions.

[13] *Latine*, ins. B.

[14] *Marandina*, B.

[15] The whole sentence slightly varied in C.D.

[16] In vol. i. p. 128, the same passage is quoted from "Isido, us, libro "secundo, capitulo quinto," but the reference is false. Cf lib. i. c. 3., but this does not contain all here quoted.

Capitulum sextumdecimum. Othoniel.

TREVISA.

AFTER Iosue his deth Israel seruede Chusan,[1] kyng of Mesopotamia, ei3te 3ere. Neuerþeles þese ei3te 3ere beeþ acounted wiþ Othoniel his tyme, Caleph his broþer, by þe Hebrewes; but þe 3eres of reste and of þraldom were acounted to gidres vnder iuges of Israel þe sothnesse of acountes wolde not stonde in þe storie. [*Augustinus, libro* 18°.][2] Aboute this tyme þat womman Latona baar Appolyn in þe ilond Delos.[3] R. But nou3t þat oþer Appolyn Delphicus, þat hadde i-be longe to forehonde, but þat Appolyn þat seruede þe kyng Admetus[4] wiþ þe lattre Hercules. Me seiþ þat þis Latona[5] was þe same womman [that heet][6] Isis. Þanne Othoniel was ledere of Israel fourty 3ere forto rekene þe forseide ei3te 3ere of þraldom. Neptunus regnede and was þe fifte kyng of Athene. Cadmus[7] regnede in þe citee Thebes; of his dou3ter Semela was i-bore Denys Bacchus, þat heet also Liber Pater, þat is þe Fre Fader. In his tyme was Linus[8] of Thebe in Egipt, þe grete chauntour, in his floures. Fenix bulde Bithynia, þat heet somtyme Mariandyna.

Capitulum sextumdecimum.

MS. HARL. 2261.

The childer of Israel did seruyce to Chusan, kynge of Mesopotamia, viij. yere after the death of Iosue, whiche yeres be ioynede to the yeres[10] of Othoniel the brother of Caleph, after men of Hebrewe. *Petrus.* But if the yeres of the quietnes and seruitute be comprehended to geder vnder the daies of the iugges, the trawthe of computacion scholde not be in the storye. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Latona childedde Apollo abowte this tyme at the yle of Delos, whiche was not Apollo Delphicus, for he was longe afore, but this Apollo seruede kynge Admetus, with the later Hercules. The viij^the^ yere of the seruitute of men of Israel annumerate, Othoniel was gouernoure of men of Hebrewe xl^ti^ yere. Neptunus the v^the^ kynge of men of Athenes reignede. Cadmus did reigne in Thebis, of þe do3hter of whom, Semela by name, Dionysus Bacchus was geten, other Liber pater. In þe tyme of whom Thebeus the musicion was. Bithynia was made of Phenix, callede afore

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *Chasan*, MS.
[2] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *Dolos*, MS.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *Admetrius*, MS.
[5] *Lathona*, MS., and so below.
[6] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[7] So *a.*; *Cadynus*, MS., Cx.
[8] *Lynus*, MS. Similar *slight* errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter and the following.
[9] *yereres*, MS.

Et sicut Cadmus litteras septemdecim Græcis tradidit,[1] ita Phœnix frater suus quasdam litteras vermiculatas tradidit Phœnicibus.[2] *Ranulphus.*[3] De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo quintodecimo, scilicet Phœnicia.[4] *Isidorus, libro secundo.* Græcorum litteræ, quas Cadmus tradidit, et verba componunt et numeros efficiunt. *Ranulphus.*[5] In quoto enim[6] numero alphabeti a[7] prima usque[8] decimam littera ponitur, talem numerum apud Græcos designat;[9] quia prima littera Græca signat unum, secunda duo,[10] tertia tria, et sic deinceps usque ad decem; quia decima littera signat decem, sed undecima littera signat viginti, duodecima triginta, tertiadecima quadraginta; et ita deinceps usque ad centum, quod designatur[11] per nonamdecimam litteram. Inde vicesima littera designat[12] ducenta; vicesima prima trecenta; vicesima secunda quadringenta;[13] et sic deinceps.[7]

Literæ Græcæ.

Usus ferri[14] apud Ægyptios repertus est.[15] Et[16] ea, quæ de Demetra[17] et Danae, matre[18] Persei, dicuntur, contigerunt.[19] Civitas Corinthi condita est.[20]

Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.

Anno Abr. 595. Anno Othonicl 25.

[1] *tradidit*] primo dedit, C.D.

[2] Transposed in C.D., which add—"unde et color ille Feniceus dictus "est qui postea litera mutata puni- "ceus dicitur. *Hugutio, capitulo "Fenix.* Et quia Fenices fuerunt "primi literarum inventores, adhuc "literas capitales rubeo colore "scribimus, ut sic repræsentemus "eos fuisse literarum repertores."

[3] *Ran. . . . Phœnicia*] om. C.

[4] *ubi Fenicia*, B. See vol. i. p. 128.

[5] *Ranulphus*] om. C.

[6] *enim*] om. B.

[7] *a . . . . deinceps*] ponitur, litera Græca talem numerum significat, C.D., omitting the rest of the extract.

[8] *ad*, ins. A.

[9] *designant*, A.

[10] *duo*] om. B.

[11] *denotatur*, B.

[12] *signat*, A.

[13] *vicesima secunda quadringenta*] om. A.

[14] *designat . . . ferri*] *deferri*, B.

[15] *reperta est*, B.; *reperitur*, C.D.

[16] *Et*] om. C.D.

[17] So Higden, for *Demetre*, who has also *Dane*.

[18] *de Metra Dianæ matre*, B.

[19] *facta fuerunt*, C.D.

[20] *conditur secundum quosdam*, C.D.

Isidorus, libro 2°, *capitulo* 5°. And as Fenix ȝaf þe Fenices some reed lettres. ℞. Þerof loke more in þe firste book, capitulo quintodecimo,[1] in Fenicia. *Isidorus, libro* 2°. Þe lettres of Grees þat Cadmus ȝaf hem speleþ wordes, and stondeþ for nombres. [℞.][2] Þe lettres of Grees from þe firste to þe tenþe as þey stondeþ in ordre [in þe A.B.C., so þey stondeþ][3] for nombre among þe Grees; for þe firste stondeþ for oon; þe secounde for tweyne, [and][3] þe þridde for þre, and so forþ[4] anon to þe tenþe. But þe eleueþe lettre stondeþ for twenty, þe twelfþe for þritty, þe þrittene[5] for fourty, and so anon to an hondred. For an hondred stondeþ þe nyntenþe[6] lettre; þanne þe twentyþe lettre stondeþ for two hondred; þe oon and twenty for þre[7] hondred,[8] and so forþ. *Petrus.* Craft and vse of iren was i-founde in Egipte. Þe dedes þat me telleþ of Demetra[9] and of Dan, Persius his moder, byfel þat tyme. And þe citee Corinthi was i-bulde þat tyme. TREVISA.

Mariandyna.[10] *Isidorus, libris* 2° *et quinto.* And lyke as Cadmus toke to men of Grece xvij. letters so in like maner, Phenix, brother to hym, toke certeyne letters of a redde coloure to the Pheniceanes. ℞. Attende to this processe afore, capitulo 15°, Phenicia. *Isidorus, libro* 2°. The letters of men of Grece, whom Cadmus toke to þeim, compounde wordes and make nowmbres. ℞. And in what nowmbre a letter is putte from the firste letter to the x^the^, hit signifiethe a like nowmbre amonge men of Grewe, for the firste letter signifiethe oon, the secunde tweyne, and so vn to x., for the x^the^ letter signifiethe x. and the xj^the^ letter xx^ti^, the xij^the^ xxx^ti^, the xiij^the^ letter xl^ti^, and so on to a c., whiche is signifiede by the xix^the^ letter. The xx^ti^ letter signifiethe cc., xxj^ti^ ccc., and so furthe. *Petrus.* The vse of yrne was founde this tyme amonge men of Egipte, and also those thinges happede whiche be seyde of Metria and Dana,[11] the moder of Perseus. The cite of Corinthus was made, whom thei say to be Isis. MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So Cx., rightly; 5, MS. Trevisa's version is evidently mutilated here.
[2] Reference added from α. and Cx.
[3] Added from α. and Cx.
[4] *the fourth*, Cx.; badly.
[5] *þrittenþe*, α.
[6] So α.; *nynþe*, MS.
[7] So Cx.; *foure*, MS.
[8] Cx. adds: *the xxij. for four honderd.*
[9] So α. and Cx.; *Dometra*, MS.
[10] *Morienduna*, Harl. MS.
[11] So Harl. MS. for *Demeter and Danae.*

Cap. XVII.

Ayoth.

Aod vel Ehud.

Ayoth[1] annumeratis octodecim annis, quibus servivit Israel Eglon pingui regi Moab, et etiam connumerato uno anno[2] ducis Sangar, qui occidit sexcentos viros vomere suo,[3] fuit dux super Israel octoginta annis.[4] Iste Ayoth, filius Jhera[5] filii[6] Gemini, fuit ambidexter, utraque scilicet[7] manu utens pro dextra. *Petrus.* Geminum aliqui dicunt fuisse unam vilem personam in[8] tribu Benjamin; qui posteris suis legitur sæpe improperatus ob ignominiam. Hebræi tamen tradunt hunc fuisse Benjamin, et quasi per aphæresim[9] sic dictum. Nam[10] ubi nos ponimus Geminum,[11] ipsi ponunt Jamyn,[12] quod sonat dextrarium seu dextralem; qui Latine geminus dici posset. Anno Abr. 611. Anno Ayoth 1.

Triptolemus.

Triptolemus[13] longa navi[14] Eleusim veniens frumenta distribuit; et rex Molos[s]orum atque Thraciæ, Orcus nomine,[15] Proserpinam rapuit, cujus canis ingens Cerberus Pirithoum[16] devoravit,[17] qui cum Theseo[18] venerat ad raptum Proserpinæ; sed et Theseum devorasset, nisi Hercules superveniens eum liberasset. Et ob hoc[19] ab inferis receptus est.[20] Achaia ab Achæo fundata[21] est; Anno Abr. 613. Anno Ayoth 3.

Pirithous et Theseus.

Anno Abr. 620. Anno Ayoth 11.

---

[1] *Aioth*, A.

[2] *et . . . . . anno*] connumerato etiam uno, B.

[3] *uno*, B.D.

[4] Slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.

[5] *Jera*, A.D.

[6] *filius*, C. (not D.) om. B.

[7] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[8] *de*, B.

[9] Variously barbarized in MSS.

[10] *sic dictum. Nam*] om. C.D., with other slight variations.

[11] *Jeminum*, A.E.

[12] *Jamin*, A.

[13] *Tritholomus*, A.; *Tritolomus*, B.D.; *Tritolemus*, E.

[14] *navigatione*, B.

[15] *nomine*] om. C.D.

[16] *Piritoum*, A.E.; *Pirotonem*, B.; *Piritonem*, C.D.

[17] *devoraverat*, B.

[18] *cum*] om. E.

[19] *hoc*] id quoque, C.D.

[20] *dicitur*, C.D.

[21] *condita*, C.D.

TREVISA.

Capitulum septimumdecimum. Aioth.

Ayoth was ledere of Israel foure score ȝere, forto acounte eiȝetene ȝere in þe whiche Israel seruede Eglon þe fatte king of Moab; also forto rekene oon ȝere of Sangar, þe duke and ledere[1] þat slow sixe hondred men wiþ a plowh schare. Þis Aioth vsede eiþer hond for his riȝt hond, and was Ihera his sone; Ihera was Geminus[2] his sone. *Petrus.* Som telleþ þat Geminus was a vile persone of þe lynage of Beniamyn, and was ofte i-nempned in reprofe to al his ofspringe, for he was so fyle[3] and so vnworþy. Noþeles þe Hebrewes meneþ þat þis Geminus was Beniamyn, as þey he were[4] so i-nempned by chaungynge oþer wiþdrawing of somwhat of þe begynnynge of þe name. For þey we setteþ Geminum þe Hebrewes setteþ Iamyn, þat is a rynge þat longeþ to þe riȝt side, and may be side[5] Geminus in[6] Latyn. Ritholomus[7] com yn a longe schippe to Eleusis, and delede þere whete; and Orcus, kyng of Molos and of Thracia, rauesched Proserpina; hire hound, þat heet Cerberus, swelowede vp a man, þat heet Piritoun, þat come with Theseus to rauysshe Proserpina; and þe same hound Cerberus wolde have i-ete Theseus also, but Hercules hadde i-come þe mene tyme and i-saued hym, and þerfore he was i-fonge in to helle. Acheus

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum decimum septimum.

Then xviij. yere annumerate in whom the peple of Israel ministrede to Eglon the fatte kynge of Moab, and also oon yere of Sangar the duke, which did sle vj^{c}. men with the cultur of a plowe, Aioth reignede on the peple of Israel lxxx^{ti} yere. This Aioth, son of Ihera, the son of Geminus, vsede either honde as the ryȝhte honde. *Petrus.* Somme men say Geminus to haue bene a vile person in the tribe of Beniamyn, callede so as by effresis; for þei putte Iamyn where we putte Geminus, whiche sowndethe as pertenenge to the ryȝhte parte, whiche may be called welle in Latyn Geminus. Tritholomus commenge to Eleusis in a longe schippe, and the kynge of Thracia, raueschede and toke awey Proserpina, whose dogge callede Cerberus deuoured Pirotonus, which come with Theseus to the takenge aweye of Proserpina; whiche hade deuourede Theseus also, but that Hercules delyuerede hym, for whiche thynge he was receyvede of helle. Achaia was foundede of Acheus,

---

[1] *þe ledere*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[2] So α. and Cx.; *Gominus*, MS., which has *sometimes Gemynus* below.
[3] *vyle*, Cx.
[4] So α. β. γ.; *and þey were*, MS.
[5] *seid*, α.
[6] *in*] α, β. γ.
[7] Here and elsewhere in this chapter the orthography of the versions has been left unaltered; to correct them in such cases is to re-write them. The MSS. of Trevisa agree.

et Atheniensium dux, Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater dicitur, secundum quosdam, nascitur ex Semele; et mysteria de Perseo ceperunt, qui occidit Gorgonem meretricem quæ ob nimiam pulchritudinem obstupefecit[1] aspicientes in eam.[2] Sub[3] qua etiam ætate Phrixus[4] et Helle[5] soror[6] sua fugientes insidias novercales submersi sunt in mari, quod usque hodie a nomine sororis vocatur Hellespontus; at quia[7] insigne navis eorum fuit aries, ideo finguntur per aerem vehi ariete[8] velleris aurei.[9] Laomedon, Sicyoniorum[10] rex octavus decimus,[11] regnavit[12] quinquaginta annis. Amphion et[13] Zethus[14] regnabant[15] apud Thebas[16] Græcorum expulso Cadmo.[17] Tros, a quo dicuntur Trojani, regnavit in Dardania, quæ est Phrygia,[18] et postmodum indixit bellum Tantalo, regi Atheniensium, propter raptum Ganymedis filii sui. *Ranulphus.*[19] Frustra ergo Jovis fabula et raptrix aquila confingitur.[20] Perseus, frater Erechthei,[21] dimicavit adversus Persas capite Gorgonis[22] desecto. Pegasus equus velocissimus cujusdam mulieris seu Bellerophontis[23] navis fuit. Ion vir fortis ex suo vocabulo appellavit[24] Athenienses Iones. Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater, debellando Indos[25] urbem Nysam[26] construxit. Iste Dio-

Phrixus et Helle.

Anno Abr. 646. Anno Ayoth 16.

Tros, unde Trojani.

Ganymedes.

Anno Ayoth 47. Anno Abr. 657.

Perseus.

Anno Ayoth 54. Anno Abr. 664.

Pegasus.

Ion, unde Iones.

Anno Ayoth 62. Anno Abr. 672.

Dionysus Nysam condit.

---

[1] *obstupefaciebat*, C.D.
[2] *in eam*] om. C.D.
[3] *Sub*] om. C.D.
[4] *Fixus* or *Frixus*, MSS.
[5] *Elles*, MSS.
[6] *cum Helle sorore*, C.D.
[7] *atque*, B.
[8] *ab ariete*, A.
[9] Slightly varied in C.D.
[10] *Scicionorum*, MSS.
[11] *finguntur . . . xviij.*] om. B.
[12] *regnare cepit*, C.D.
[13] *et*] om. B.
[14] *Zephus* or *Zepus*, MSS. and versions.
[15] *regnaverunt*, C.D.
[16] *apud Thebas*] Thebis, A.B.
[17] Transposed in C.D.
[18] *Frigia*, MSS.
[19] Added from B.
[20] *Tros . . . confingitur*] Varied in C.D.
[21] *Erictei*, MSS.
[22] *meretricis*, ins. C.D.
[23] *bellofrontis*, A.
[24] *vocavit*, A.
[25] *debellando Indos*] adversus Indos dimicans, C.D.
[26] *juxta Indum fluvium*, ins. C.D.

bulde Achaia. Denys Liber Pater, duke of Athene, was i-bore of Semela, as som men telleþ, and took misteria of Perseus, þat slowȝ þat hore Gorgon, þat was so faire, [that she][1] astonyed men þat byhelde hire wiþ hir fairnesse. Also þat tyme Frixus and his suster Elles flyȝe þe malice and þe pursute of here stepdame, and were adraynt[2] in þe see þat heet Ellespontus. And for a weþer was i-peynt in þe signe of here schippe, þerfore me feynede þat a wether wiþ gildene flees bare hem forþ by þe ayer. Laomedon, þe eiȝtþe kyng of Siciones, regnede fifty ȝere. Amphion and Zethus regned in Thebe, þe[3] citee of Grees, and put out Cadmus. Tros[4] regnede in Dardania, þis is Frigia,[5] and werred afterward aȝenst Tantalus, kyng of Athene, for þe rauyschynge of Ganymedes. Of þis Tros þe Troians haueþ þat name, and hatte Troians. [℞.][6] Þan þe fable of Iupiter is i-feyned; and so þe rauyschynge of an egle is i-feyned and[7] ydul. Perseus, Ericteus his broþer, fauȝt aȝenst þe Perses, and[8] smoot of þe heed of þat hoor Gorgon. Pegasus was a ful swift hors of a womman, oþer[9] heet Bellefrontys his schip. Ion[10] þe strong man cleped þe men of Atthenes Iones by his owne name. Denys, that hatte Liber Pater also, werred wiþ þe Indes, and bulde þe TREVISA.

---

and Dionysus[12] Bacchus, other Liber Pater, gouernoure of men of Athenes, was borne abowte this tyme of Semela. And the misterys of Perseus began, whiche did slee a strumpette other hore, Gorgones by name, makenge men beholdenge to meruayle the excellente beaute of here. In whiche tyme Frixus, and Elle his sustyr, dredenge the watches of theire steppemoder, were drownede in the see whiche is callede vn to this tyme Ellespontus,[11] after the name of his sustyr. Laomedon, the kynge of men of Scitia, the xviij^the^ kynge, reignede l^ti^ yere. Amphion and Zethus reignede at Thebas in Grece, Cadmus expulsede. Tros, of whom the Troianes toke name, reignede in Dardania, otherwise called Frigia, after that ȝiffenge batayle to Tantalus kynge of Athenes, for the rape of Ganimedes his son. Perseus, the brother of Eruteus,[13] ȝafe batelle ageyne men of Persia for the sleenge of Gorgones. That stronge man called Ion namede men of Athenes Iones after his name. Dionysus,[12] other Liber MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from Cx.; *þat* (only), *β.*; *heo*, *γ.*
[2] *drowned*, Cx.
[3] *in þe*, MS. (not *α. β. γ.*)
[4] So *α. β. γ.*; *Troos*, MS.
[5] *Frisia*, MS.
[6] Added from *α.* and Cx.
[7] *an*, *α. γ.*; *in*, Cx.; *on*, *β.*
[8] *he*, Cx.
[9] *oþer*] that, Cx.
[10] So *α.* and Cx.; *Ione*, MS.
[11] *Elespontus*, Harl. MS.
[12] *Dionisius*, Harl. MS. Similar *slight* errors have been tacitly corrected in both versions.
[13] Clerical error for *Ericteus* (Erechtheus).

Pelops.

nysus[1] fœminas cum viris primus in exercitu habuit.[2] Pelops, primus Peloponnesensibus[3] regnans, Olympiis quoque præfuit; qui tamen postmodum[4] adversus Ilium[5] rebellans[6] a Dardano superatur.[7] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.* Temporibus Ayoth, ducis Israel,[8] floruit Hercules posterior; plane [diversus] ab illo Hercule superius memorato. *Trogus.*[9] Iste Hercules[10] fortis fuit,[11] orbis domitor, Amazonum contritor,[12] Indiæ penetrator, Trojanorum expugnator, Libyæ invasor, Hispaniæ dominator. *Ranulphus.*[13] Iste Hercules[14] secundum Ovidium in Magno, libro octavo, Antæum[15] gigantem[16] Libyæ[17] devicit, Geryonem[18] gigantem regem Hispaniæ occidit, armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam duxit; ex filia Fauni Latinum regem procreavit; leonem[19] interfecit; hydram serpentem in Lerna palude extinxit; stadium itineris uno[20] anhelitu percurrit; agonem[21] Olympicum instauravit; Centauros contrivit; apud Gades insulas columnas posuit; duodecim immensos labores consummavit. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo.* Et cum post insignes virtutes

Hercules posterior.

Herculis labores.

---

[1] *pariter in armis*, C.D. (*ad arma*, D.)
[2] *primus . . . habuit*] sociavit, C.D.
[3] *Peloponensibus*, MSS.
[4] *tamen postmodum*] postea, C.D.
[5] *illum*, C. (not D.)
[6] *rebellando*, B.
[7] *superantur*, C. (not D.)
[8] *ducis Israel*] om. C.D.
[9] So A.B.C.D.; *Titus*, E.
[10] *Iste Hercules*] om. C.D.
[11] *fuit*] om. C.D.
[12] *Hercules*, ins. C. (not D.)
[13] *Ranulphus*] om. B.
[14] *Hic*, C.D.
[15] *Antheum*, A.; *Atheum*, E.
[16] *regem*, ins. A.
[17] *Libyæ*] om. B; *Libiæ*, MSS., as usual.
[18] *Cerionem*, A.
[19] *leonem*] om. B.
[20] *unico*, B.
[21] *Aganum*, A.B.; *Aganem*, E.

TREVISA.

citee Nisan.[1] Þis Denys ordeyned first wommen in his oost wiþ [2] men. Pelops,[3] þe firste kyng of Peloponens, was heed of þe Olimpies;[4] neuerþeles afterward he was aȝenst Troye, and ouercome of Dardanus. In Aioth his tyme, duke of Israel, þe latter Hercules, anoþer þan we spak of raþer, was in his floures. *Trogus.* Þis Hercules was strong, and temede þe world, and ouercome þe Amazones, and passed in to Inde and werred þere, and ouercome þe Troians, and werred in Libya, and was lord of[5] Spayne. ℞. Þis Hercules ouercome Anteus,[6] þe geant of Libya, so seiþ Ouyde, in Magno, libro octavo; and slowȝ Geryon þe geaunt, kyng of Spayne, and ladde his catel and his bestes þorw Italy in tokyn of þe maistrye; and he gat þe kyng Latyn on þe douȝter of Faunus;[7] and he slowȝ a leon; he slowȝ þe serpent Ydra in þe water Lerna; and he ran a furlong at oon breeþ; and he restored þe tornementis and ioustes of Mont Olymp; he ouercome þe Centaures; and piȝte his pilers in þe see at þe Ilondes Gades; and he dede twelue grete dedes. *Trevisa.* Þe Centaures were men of Thessalia; þey were þe firste þat chastede[8] hors, and ladde hem wiþ brydels, and ride[9] on hors bakkes. *Augustinus, libro* 18°. And after his grete dedes he fille in a

MS. HARL. 2261.

Pater, fiȝhtenge ageyne men of Ynde, made that cite callede Nisan. This Dionysus hade firste women mixte with men in his hoste. Pelopos reignede firste amonge men of Peloponens, and also at Olympus, whiche rebellenge ageyne Troianes was ouercommen by Dardanus. The later Hercules was in the tymes of Aioth, duke and governoure of Israel. This myȝhty Hercules was the tamer of the worlde, the victor of þe Amazones, the perescher of Ynde, the expugnator of Troianes, the entrer of Libya, the lorde of Speyne. ℞. This Hercules, after Ouidius, in Methamorphoseon libro octauo, ouercome the gigaunte of Libia at Athenes, and did sle Geryon the gigaunte and kynge of Speyne, causenge his bestes to be brouȝhte thro Ytaly in a signe of victory, gettenge of the doȝhter of Faunus[10] Latinus the kynge; whiche did slee also a lyon and a grete serpente in a marras callede Lerna, rennenge the space of a forelonge with oon brethe, settenge pillores at the yle of Gades; whiche finischede xij. huge labores. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Whiche hauenge as a disease intollerable after his grete labores, commaundede hym selfe to be caste

[1] So all the MSS.
[2] *her men*, MS. (not *α.* or Cx.)
[3] *Pelopis*, MS. (not *α.*)
[4] So *α.*, Cx.; *Olimpus*, MS.
[5] *of*] in, MS. (only).
[6] *Antheus*, MSS., and so below.
[7] So *γ.*; *Fanus*, MS., *α. β.*
[8] *chastised*, Cx.
[9] *rode*, Cx.
[10] *Fannius*, Harl. MS.

morbum, quo vehementer languebat, ferre non posset, seipsum in Oeta[1] monte Hispaniæ[2] cremandum flammis tradidit. *Ranulphus.* Qui sunt isti duodecim[3] immensi sive inhumani labores, quos[4] consummavit, patet per Claudianum libro sexto de raptu Proserpinæ, et[5] per Virgilium Æneidos[6] octavo, et per Ovidium Met. nono libro. Quorum primus labor fuit de Centauris quos devicit; secundus fuit[7] interfectio et excoriatio leonis in Nemeæa[8] silva; tertius[9] effugatio Harpyiarum;[10] quartus tangitur in Lucano, libro nono, scilicet[11] ablatio pomorum aureorum de horto septem filiarum Atlantis,[12] sopito dracone custode; quintus catenatio Cerberi devorantis Pirithoum[13] in raptu Proserpinæ; sextus oppressio Diomedis regis Thraciæ, qui pavit equos suos carne humana; septimus extinctio hydræ serpentis in Lerna palude; octavus devictio Acheloi[14] in varias formas se mutantis;[15] nonus prostratio Antæi[16] gigantis Libyæ, qui terram tangendo semper[17] vires resumebat; decimus occisio Caci,[18] qui dicebatur[19] ig-

Hercules seipsum comburit.

---

[1] *Ceta*, A.B.D.; *Creta*, E.

[2] So MSS. for *Thessaliæ*; but the error may be due to Higden.

[3] *xii.*] om. C.D.

[4] *Hercules*, ins. B.D.

[5] *et*] om. C.D.

[6] *Æneidos*] om. C.D.

[7] *fuit*] om. C.D.

[8] *Menæa*, MSS.

[9] *est*, ins. A.

[10] *Erpiarum*, A.; *Arpiarum*, D.E.

[11] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[12] *Atthlantis* or *Athlantis*, MSS., and similarly elsewhere.

[13] *Pirotheum*, B.; *Pritonem*, C.; *Piritheum*, D.E.

[14] *Achiloi*, A.; *Archeloii*, D.

[15] *mutans*, E. (clerical error.)

[16] *Anthei*, MSS., and so below.

[17] *super*, B.

[18] *Casi*, A.; *Eaci*, B.

[19] *dicitur*, C.D.

TREVISA.

grete siknesse þat was so hard[1] and sore þat he myȝte not endure. Þerfore he þrewe hym self in to a fuyre, and brend hym self. [℞.].[2] Claudianus, libro 6°, de raptu Proserpinæ, and Virgil, Æneidos 8°, and Ouide, Methamorphoses, libro 9°, rekeneþ þe grete dedes þat Hercules dede. Of þe whiche dedes þe firste was þe victorie þat he hadde of þe Centaures. Þe secounde þe sleynge and þe hildynge of a leon in a wode þat hatte Nemea.[3] Þe þridde þe chasynge of þe foules þat hatte Arpies. Þe ferþe þe takynge of goldene apples out of þe orcheȝerd of þe seuene douȝters of Atlas[4] þe geant, and þe sleynge of the dragon þat kepte þe place.[5] Þe fifte þe chaynyng and teienge of þe grete hound Cerberus þat deuoured Pirithous[6] in þe rauischynge of Proserpina. Þe sixte þe berynge doun of Diomede, þe kyng of Thracia, þat fedde his hors wiþ manis[7] flesche. The seuenþe þe destroyenge of Ydra þe serpent in þe water Lerna.[8] Þe eiȝþe[9] þe ouercommynge of Achelous, þat chaunged ofte tyme in to dyuers liknes and schappes. Þe nynþe þe þrowynge doun of Anteus, þe geant of Libya, þat took aȝen myȝte and strengþe as ofte as he touched þe erþe. Þe tenþe þe sleynge[10] of the cat þat cast out fuyre of his mouþ,

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

in to a grete fire, in Ceta an hille of Speyne. ℞. Whiche labores were not like to be the labores of man, as hit is schewede by the poete Claudianus, libro vj^to de raptu Proserpinæ, and by Virgilius, Eneyd, libro viij°, and by Ouidius in Metamorphoseon libro nono. The firste was takenge aweye of apples of golde from the gardyn of þe vii. doȝhters of Atlas,[4] the dragon and keper of theyme beenge in slepe. The secunde was of the grete bestes callede Centauri, whom he ouercome. The thridde was the sleenge of a lyon, in a woode callede Menena. The iiij^the was the chasenge of Arpines. The v^the was the chenenge of the grete dogge callede Cerberus, whiche did sle Pirithous[6] in the takenge aweye of Proserpina. The vj^the was the oppression of Diomedes kynge of Thracia, whiche fedde his horse with the flesche of man. The vij^the was the sleenge of the serpente in that marras callede Lerna. The viij^the was the victory of Achelo[u]s, chaungenge hym in to diuerse formes. The ix^the was the victory of Anteus the gigaunte of Libya, whiche encreasede in strenghte as he towchede the erthe. The x^the labore was the sleenge of Cacus, whom men seide to euomette fire. The xj^the was the sleenge of

Hoc Lucanus affirmat libro suo nono.

---

[1] *hard*] payneful, Cx.
[2] Added from *α.* and Cx.
[3] *Nenia*, Cx.; *Menia*, MSS.
[4] *Athlas*, MSS., as usual; which conversely have *Tracia* below.
[5] *palce*, Cx.
[6] *Pyrytheus*, and *Peritheus*, MSS.
[7] So *α.*; *maris*, MS.; *mennis*, Cx.
[8] So *α*; *Berna*, MS.
[9] *echt*, Cx.
[10] *slynge*, MS. (clerical error.)

nem evomere;[1] undecimus interfectio apri Arcadiæ; duodecimus supportatio cœli, donec Atlas fatigatus respiraret. Sed[2] in tertiodecimo labore, videlicet[3] induendo se[4] interulam[5] Dejaniræ,[6] extinctus est. In quo notandum[7] est quod isti labores Herculi attributi vel solam[8] sonant historiam, ut secundus de leone et undecimus de apro; vel solummodo spectant ad integumentum morum,[9] et tunc fabulosum est quod explicant, quamvis[10] veritatem implicent, quales sunt tertius de fuga Harpyiarum, et quartus de raptu pomorum; vel etiam[11] sonant historiam mixtam cum fabula, ut cæteri omnes labores. Est etiam hic[12] advertendum quod non videtur unus et idem Hercules fuisse, cui[13] isti duodecim labores[14] attribuuntur; tum[15] quia Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo,[16] dicit[17] quod alius fuit Hercules cui ista duodecim attribuuntur et alius qui[18] Antæum in palæstra[19] devicit, et tamen Boethius[20] in fine quarti libri de consolatione narrat istud[21] de Antæo[22] inter duodecim labores[23] Herculis; tum etiam quia Augustinus[24] ubi supra et etiam[25] in capitulo xix°. dicit multos fuisse Hercules; et etiam[25] dicit quod Sampson propter mirabilem fortitudinem putatus est Hercules.

Quid de ejus laboribus statuendum.

Hercules varii.

[1] *evomuisse*, C. (not D.)
[2] *Sed*] om. C.D.
[3] *videlicet*] om. C.D.
[4] *se*] om. C.D.
[5] *interculam*, A.
[6] *Dejaniris*, B.; *Dianirœ*, D.
[7] *sciendum*, C.D.
[8] *solam*] om. B.
[9] *moralem*, B.
[10] *licet*, C.D.
[11] *etiam*] om. B.
[12] *hic*] om. C.D.
[13] *omnes*, ins. B.
[14] *ingentia facta*, C.D.
[15] *etiam*, ins. C.D.
[16] 9°, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 12.
[17] *dicit*] om. B.
[18] *qui*] om. E.
[19] *palustra*, B.
[20] *Boecius* or *Boetius*, MSS.
[21] *illud*, B.D.
[22] *de Antæo*] om. C.D.
[23] *labores*] om. B.
[24] *alius*, A.
[25] *etiam*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

as me seide. Þe enleuenþe þe sleynge of þe boor in Arcadia.[1] Þe twelfþe þe berynge and þe holdynge vp of heuene, while Atlas þe geant reste hym, whan he was wery. But in þe þrittenþe he dede on a corsette of Ianyr,[2] and deide. Here take hede þat þis[3] twelfe dedes þat beeþ acounted to Hercules sowneþ þe storie as it is i-tolde; soo dooþ the secounde of þe leon, and þe enleuenþe of þe boor; oþer he perteyneþ onliche þe couerynge of þewes; and þanne þe tale is a fable, but þe menynge is ful of trowþe and of soþnesse. So is þe þridde of þe arpies, and þe fourþe of þe takynge and rauyschynge of þe goldene apples. Other he tokeneþ and sowneþ the storye medled wiþ a fable; so dooþ alle his oþer dedes of þese twelue.[4] Also here take hede, it semeþ þat it is nouȝt al oon Hercules þat þese twelfe dedes beeþ acounted to; fore[5] Seint Austyn, de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 14°, seiþ þat it was an oþer Hercules þat [þese dedes beþ acounted[6] to, and anoþer Hercules þat][7] ouercome Anteus þe geant in wrastlynge. And also Boecius, in fine quarti libri de Consolatione telleþ þe[8] same of Anteus among þe twelue dedes of Hercules. Also Seint Austyn, ubi supra, et capitulo 19°, seiþ þat þere were meny Hercules; and also Sampson for his wonder strengþe was acounted Hercules.

MS. HARL. 2261.

the boore of Arcadia.[1] The xij^the labore was the supportation of heuyn while that Atlas beenge wery did reste; whiche diede or that he hade fullefyllede the xiij^the labore. Of whom hit is to be attendede, þat these labores attribute to Hercules sounde other a story, as that of the lyon, and the xj^the of the boore; other elles thei longe oonly to the couerenge of maneres, and then hit is a fable that thei expresse, þauȝhe thei do implicate trawthe, as the thrydde and iiij^the labore were of the takenge aweye of the apples; other elles thei sownde a story mixte with a fable, as alle other labores. Also hit is to be attendede, that þese xij. labores be not to be attribute to oon Hercules, for as Seynte Austyn seythe, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo quarto decimo,[9] that there was an other Hercules to whom these xij. labores were attribute, then that Hercules whiche ouercome Antheus the gigaunte of Palestria.[10] And Boecius, quarto libro de Consolatione Philosophiæ, rehersethe that of Antheus among the xij. labores of Hercules. Also Seynte Austyn seithe that þer were mony Hercules, and also Sampson was trawede to haue be namede

---

[1] *Archadia*, MSS., as usual.
[2] So MSS.; *Dianier*, Cx. (i.e., *Dejanira*.)
[3] *these*, Cx.
[4] So α. and Cx.; *twelue dedes*, MS.
[5] *too, for*, α.
[6] *aretted*, Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] *þe*] *that*, Cx.
[9] The numbers are so written at length.
[10] It is possible that the translator's Latin text was corrupt.

Et in libello[1] Phrygii Daretis de bello Trojano Jason ipse qui quæsivit pellem[2] auream apud Colchos[3] cognominatus est Hercules. Unde illud Ovidii tertiodecimo Metamorphoseon :

Mœnia sub furti Trojana[4] sub Hercule,[5]

et cætera. Et[6] Ovidius octavo Met. attribuit interfectionem[7] apri Arcadiæ Meleandro,[8] et etiam Met. septimo attribuit fugam Harpyiarum filiis Boreæ, scilicet[9] Zoe et Calai.[10] Unde dicitur a nonnullis sciolis[11] quod Hercules sit potius cognomen virorum illustrium, qui virtute et audacia singulares apparuerunt;[12] quod etiam nominis hujus interpretatio sonare videtur. Dicitur enim[13] Hercules ab *heros,* quod est vir, et *cleos,* gloria; quasi vir gloriosus.

Hercules quid significet.

Cap. XVIII.

De Græcorum fabulis, tempore potissimum Aod inventis.[14]

Fabularum inventor Æsopus.

Eusebius in Chronicis. Tempore Ayoth potissime in Græcia inventæ sunt fabulæ; et dicitur quod Æsopus primus[15] eas invenerit ad exornandum[16] veritatem

[1] *bello,* E.; *libro,* D.
[2] *vellus,* B.
[3] *apud Colchos*] om. C.D.
[4] *Trojana*] So D.; Trojani, A.E.
[5] The true reading is:
"Mœnia qui forti Trojana sub Hercule cepit."
Ov. *Met.* xiii. 23.
[6] *Similiter,* C.D.
[7] *illud,* B.
[8] So MSS. for *Meleagro.* See Ovid. *Met.* viii. 270.
[9] *scilicet*] om. C.D.
[10] Zethes and Calais, sons of Boreas, are mentioned by Ovid, *Met.* vi. 716; but Higden's statement is a mere blunder.
[11] *dicitur . . . sciolis*] videtur plerisque, C.D.
[12] *videbantur,* the rest of the chapter being omitted, in C.D.
[13] *autem,* A.
[14] No title in MSS.
[15] *primus*] om. E.
[16] *exorandum,* B.

And Frigius Dares,[1] in his book of bataille of Troye, seiþ þat Iason þat gat[2] þe weþer wiþ the[3] goldene flees at Colchos had a surname, and was i-cleped Hercules. Þerfore Ouid, Methamorphoses 13°, seiþ: Menia vnder furt[4] and þe Troians vnder Hercules. And Ouidius, 8° Methamorphoses, acounteþ[5] the sleynge of þe boor of Arcadia to Meleandrus;[6] and also 7°[7] Methamorphoses acounteþ þe chasynge of þe arpies to Boreas his sones, þat heet Zoas and Calaius.[8] Þerfore meny wise men telleþ þat Hercules is þe surname of noble men and stalworþe, þat passed oþer men hugely[9] in boldenesse and in strengþe. And so hit semeþ al by kyndeliche menynge of þat name; for Hercules is i-seide of heros,[10] þat is *a man*, and of cleos, þat is *blisse*; as þey Hercules were to menynge a blisful man and glorious. TREVISA.

Capitulum octavumdecimum.

Eusebius in Cronica. In Aioth his tyme, nameliche in Grees ffables were i-founde, and[11] me seiþ þat Esopus fonde first fables for to hiȝte[12] kyndeliche sooþnesse;[13] ffor þe

---

Hercules, for his meruellous strenȝhte. Also hit is expressede in the boke of Frigius Daretis, of the batelle of Troy, that Iason, whiche did feche the fleece of golde at Colchos, was callede Hercules. Also Ouidius, in libro octavo Metamorphoseon, ȝiffethe that labore of the sleenge of the boore of Arcadia to Melandrus other Melander. For that name of Hercules was ȝiffen to nowble men for a singuler vertu and audacite, whiche thynge semethe to appere by interpretation of that name. For this worde, Hercules, is seide of this worde, eros, whiche is *a man*, and cleos, that is *joy*, as a glorious man. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum decimum octavum.

Eusebius in Cronica. Fables were founde specially in Grece in the tyme of Aioth, and hit is seide that Ysopus founde theym firste to onorne trawthe naturalle, leste the secrete

---

[1] So Cx.; *Daret*, MS. α. β. γ.
[2] *wan*, Cx.
[3] *the*] om. α.
[4] So α. and Cx.; *fruit*, MS. Trevisa cannot be blamed for making no sense of a corrupt text; nor the Harleian translator for leaving it out.
[5] *arreteth*, Cx.
[6] *Meleandris*, MS. (only).
[7] So α. β. γ., Cx.; 17, MS.
[8] So α. β. γ., Cx.; *Calcanis*, MS.
[9] *greetely*, Cx.
[10] So Cx.; *eros*, MS.
[11] *as*, MS. (only.)
[12] So α. β. γ.; *hiȝte wiþ*, MS.
[13] Sentence varied in Cx.

De varia fabularum ratione.

naturalem, ne scilicet vilescerent secreta naturæ. Unde secundum diversas rerum naturas et qualitates confinxerunt deorum nomina et actiones. *Alexander in Mythol.* Utpote quod post diluvium homines de saxis et de arboribus[1] nasci dicuntur, ab antiquissima[2] hominum cohabitatione confictum est. Nam ante factas domos homines aut in cavis arboribus aut saxeis[3] speluncis manebant; vel certe, dum deerat usus casarum, ipsi homines more pecorum vagabantur.[4] *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviij°., capitulo xiij°.* Post mortem[5] Josue usque ad bellum Trojanum confictæ sunt fabulæ in Græcia; ut quod ex impetuosa libidine Vulcani cum Minerva Erichthonius[6] cum pedibus dracontinis fuerit progenitus,[7] fabulosum est et poeticum. Re autem vera in templo Vulcani et Minervæ, quod ambo Athenis commune habebant,[8] inventus est puer expositus, dracone involutus, qui eum significabat[9] magnum futurum. Et sic[10] propter commune amborum templum dicebatur utriusque filius; cum tamen ejus parentes fuissent[11] ignoti. Item de Triptolemo,[12] quod jubente Cerere anguibus portatus alitibus indigentibus terris frumenta volando contulerit. Item de Minotauro, quod fuit bestia inclusa labyrintho,[13] quo cum intrassent[14] homines,

Expositio fabulæ de Erichthonio;

et de Triptolemo;

et de Minotauro et Centauris.

[1] Transposed in B.
[2] *antiqua*, C.D.
[3] *in saxeis*, C.D.
[4] Slightly varied in C.D.
[5] *Post mortem*] A diebus, C.D.
[6] *Erictonius*, MSS.
[7] *esse progenitum*, C.D.
[8] *habeant*, A.
[9] *signavit*, C.D.
[10] *sic*] om. C.D.
[11] *essent*, C.D.
[12] *Tritolomo*, MSS.
[13] *laberinto* or *laborinto*, MSS.
[14] *transissent*, D.

TREVISA.

priuite of kynde schulde nouȝt be despised: þerfore [by][1] kynde of þinges and by dyuerse manere of doynge þey feyned names and worchynge of goddes. *Alcyn.*[2] *in Mythologia.* And so he[3] feyned þat after þe flood men come of stoones and of trees; bote þat was i-feyned for þe manere wonynge of men in olde tyme; for, ere[4] housynge were i-made, men wonede in holownesse of treen oþer in dennes of erþe and of stones, and som wente aboute as it were bestes. *Augustinus, libro* 18°, *capitulo* 13°. After Iosue his deeþ anon to þe bataille of Troye fables were i-feyned in Grecia. As þat Vulcanus[5] in grete hete and brennynge of leccherie wiþ Minerua gat Eructonius[6] i-foted as a dragon, þat is a fable and a poetes feynynge and sawe. But þe sooþ menynge is þat in þe citee Athene was oo temple of Vlcanus and of Minerua; in þat temple was a childe i-founde byclipped aboute wiþ a dragoun. Þat bytokened þat þe childe schulde be greet; and for þe childe was i-founde in here boþe temple, þerfore þe childe was i-cleped hir boþe sone. Also Tritholomus, þat was i-bore of fleynge addres in to nedy londes at þe heste of Cereres[7] and brouȝt hem whete, it is a fable. Also of Minotaurus,[8] þat was a best i-closed in laborintus, Dedalus his hous; and

MS. HARL. 2261.

thynges of nature scholde wexe vile. Wherefore thei feynede diuerse names and actiones of goddes after diuerse natures and qualites of thynges. *Alexander in Mythologia.* As thei seide men to haue bene made of stones after the grete floode; whiche was a thynge feynede of olde men, for men inhabite other in dennes made of ston, other in holo trees, afore that they hade howses made; other elles, if thei hade not suche habitaciones, thei wente abowte in the maner of bestes. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo* 13°. Fables were made in the londe of Grece after the dethe of Iosue vn to the batelle of Troy, as Vulcanus to haue tariede with Minerva, and that Erutonius was geten with the feete of a dragon, whiche is but a fable and a fenyede thynge of poetes. Neuerthelesse there was a childe founde in the temple of Vulcanus and of Minerua at Athenes, sette þer compassede and wrappede abowte with the tayle of a dragon, whiche signifiede the childe to be a grete man in tyme to comme, whiche childe was callede the childe of Vulcanus and of Minerva, the faders of whom were not knowen in trawthe. Also hit is seide off Tritho-

[1] Added from conjecture only.

[2] So also α. β. γ., Cx. Read *Alexander.*

[3] *he*] om. MS.

[4] So α.; *here*, MS.; Cx. omits twenty words.

[5] *Vlcanus*, MS.. α. β.; and so below (not γ.).

[6] So α. β. γ. (for Erichthonius); *Eructorius*, MS.; *Eruconius*, Cx.

[7] So all MSS. (or *Cerreres.*) The error is certainly due to Trevisa.

[8] So β.; *Mynataurus*, MS., α. γ.

Etiam de Cerbero, Phrixo, Bellerophonte, aliisque.

inextricabili errore non possent[1] exire. Item de Centauris, quod equorum hominumque natura fuerint commixta.[2] Item de Cerbero, quod sit triceps inferorum canis. Item de Phrixo et Helle sorore,[3] quod vecti ariete volaverint.[4] Item de Gorgone meretrice,[5] quod fuit crinita serpentibus et aspicientes vertebat[6] in lapides. [7] De Bellerophonte, quod equo pennis volante vectus sit,[8] cujus equus dicitur[9] Pegasus. [10] De Amphione,[11] quod[12] citharæ suavitate lapides mulserit et attraxerit. [13] De fabro Dædalo et ejus filio Icaro[14] quod pennis coaptatis volaverint.[15] [16] De Antæo quem necavit Hercules, quod sit[17] filius Terræ propter[18] quod cadens fortior surrexit.[19] *Isidorus Etymologiarum, libro undecimo.*[20] Item quod Geryon gigas, rex Hispaniæ ab Hercule occisus, triplici forma constare describitur, fabula[21] est. Nam fuerunt ibi tres fratres tantæ concordiæ, ut in illis quasi unus animus videretur.[22] Quod Gorgones meretrices, crinitæ ut serpentes, unumque oculum habentes, convertebant aspicientes in lapides, fabula est. Sed fuerunt tres sorores unius pulchritu-

Vera Geryonis historia explicatur; ut et Gorgonum meretricum.

[1] *poterant*, C.D.
[2] *conjuncta*, C.D.
[3] *ejus*, ins. B.C.D.
[4] *volaverunt*, A.
[5] *meretrice*] om. C.D.
[6] *convertebat*, C.D.
[7] *Item*, ins. C.D.
[8] *volante pennis vectus est*, B. *dictus est*, C.D.
[10] *Item*, ins. C.D.
[11] *Orpheone*, C. (not D.)
[12] *et*, B.
[13] *Item*, ins. C.D.
[14] *Ychario*, B.; *Ycaro*, E.
[15] *volaverunt*, A.
[16] *Item*, ins. C.D.
[17] *fuit*, C.; *fuerit*, D.
[18] *hoc*, ins. C. (not D.)
[19] *cadens in terram fortior surrexerit*, C.D.
[20] *undecimo*] 12°, capitulo 3, C.; li. 13. D. The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 3.
[21] So B.; *fabulata*, E., and so below, twice.
[22] *Nam . . . videretur*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

whan men wente into þat hous, þey were so i-briged[1] þat þey couþe nouȝt come out. Also of Centaures, þat were i-medled of mankynde and of hors kynde. Also of[2] Cerberus þe hound of helle, þat þadde þre heedes. Also of Frixus and his suster Elle, þat were i-bore of a wether by þe ayer and flih[3] as foules. Also of Gorgon þe hore,[4] þat sche was i-hered wiþ addres and torned in to stones men þat byhelde her. Also of Bellifront, þat he was i-bore of a fleynge hors wiþ feþeres and wynges; his hors heet Pegasus. Also of Amphion, þat he plesed stoones, and drew hem to hym wiþ swetnesse of his[5] harpynge. Also of Dedalus þe carpunter and his sone Icarus, þat made hem wynges of feþeres and fliȝe as foules. Also of Anteus; hym slowȝ Hercules. Anteus was þe sone of þe erþe; þerfore, whan he fel doun, he roos anon aȝen in wel more strengþe. *Isidorus, libro* 11°. Also Geryon, þe geant kyng of Spayne, þat was i-slawe of Hercules, and was descreued in þre liknesses and schappes, it is a fable. For þere were þre breþeren so wel acordynge to gedres þat it semed þat þey hadde oon soule, oon witte, and oon wil. Also þe hoores[6] Gorgons, i-hered as serpentes, hadde oon yȝe, and tornede in to stones men þat byhelde hem, it is a fable. But þere were þre sustres

MS. HARL. 2261.

lomus, that corne beenge skarse, he was brouȝhte in to the aier with bryddes, whiche flyenge brouȝhte cornes to londes hauenge necessite þer of. Also that Cerberus scholde be a dogge of helle. Also that Frixus and Elle hys sustyr cariede with a weder did flye. Also that the ylle disposede woman, Gorgones by name, chaungede men beholdenge here into stones. Also of Bellofrons, that he was cariede with an horse flyenge with wynges, þe horse of whom was callede Pegasus. Also of Amphion, that he attracte stones to hym thro the swetenesse off an harpe. Also of Dedalus, and Icarus his son, that they did flye. Also that Anteus was the son of the erthe, whom Hercules did sle, in that he fallenge and towchenge þe erthe was more stronge when he did aryse. *Isidorus, libro undecimo.* Also hit is but a fable that Geryon the gigaunte and kynge of Speyne, sleyne by Hercules, was of thre similitudes. For there were thre breþer of suche concorde that thei were alle as of oon sawle. That the commune women, Gorgones by theire names, turnede men beholdenge them in to stones, is but a fable. But there were iij. sustyrs as of oon pul-

[1] *begyled*, Cx.
[2] *of*] om. MS.
[3] *flewen*, Cx.
[4] *strompet*, Cx.
[5] *his*] om. MS.
[6] *strompettes*, Cx.

dinis, quasi unius oculi;[1] quæ spectatores suos, ac si[2] lapides essent, obstupefaciebant. Item quod fingunt[3] tres Sirenes[4] fuisse ex parte virgines et ex parte volucres, habentes alas et ungulas; quarum una voce, altera tuba,[5] tertia lyra canebat, quæ navigantes trahebant ad naufragia,[6] fabula est. Sed fuerunt meretrices, quæ quia adhærentes sibi[7] ducebant ad inopiam, ideo naufragium ingerere dicuntur.[8] Item quod fingunt Scyllam[9] fuisse[10] fœminam succinctam capitibus caninis cum latratibus magnis, hoc dicitur[11] propter fretum[12] maris Siculi, ubi[13] navigantes, verticibus[14] concurrentium undarum[15] exterriti, undas latrare putabant.[16] Sic fingunt Hydram serpentem cum novem capitibus, ita[17] quod uno abscisso tria succrescant.[18] Constat Hydram fuisse locum quemdam aquas evomentem,[19] ubi uno meatu clauso multi erumpebant; quod videns[20] Hercules locum exussit,[21] et sic meatus

Sirenes meretrices fuerunt.

Quid de Scylla judicandum;

et de Hydra.

[1] *quasi unius oculi*] om. C.D.
[2] *ac si*] velut, C.D.
[3] *finguntur*, C.D.
[4] *Sirenes*] om. E.; before *fingunt* in C.D.
[5] *tibia*, A.C.D.
[6] *naufragium*, C.D.
[7] *sibi*] om. B.
[8] So A. B. C. D.; *ingererebant*, (*ingerere* being followed by *bant* in another hand) E.; perhaps for *ingerere dicebant*.
[9] *Cillam*, B.
[10] *esse*, C.D.
[11] *fit*, C.D.
[12] *sevictum*, B. (*i.e. sævitum.*)
[13] *ubi*] in quo, C.D.
[14] *virtutibus*, C.D.
[15] *aquarum*, C.D.
[16] *æstimant*, C.D.
[17] *ita*] om. C.D.
[18] *succrescunt*, C.D.
[19] *vomentem*, B.
[20] *quod videns*] quem, B.
[21] *excussit*, B.

all of oon fairnesse ; men þat byhelde hem [þei] [1] made hem as stille and as stedfast as stones. Also þe þre Sirenes, þat were half maydens, half foules, and hadde wynges and clawes [2] as haukes; and oon of hem songe, þat oþer pipede, and þe þridde harpede, and drowȝ to hemward schipmen þat seilled in þe see in to shipbruche ; [3] it is a fable. But þere were þre hoores [4] þat brouȝte men þat vsede hem in to meschief; and þerfore me seide þat þey brouȝte hem to shipbreche. Also [þat] [5] me feyneþ þat Scylla [6] was a womman byclipped aboute wiþ hedes of houndes and wiþ grete berkynge of houndes, þat is i-seide for þe [7] wawes of þe [8] see Siculus, þat flascheþ and wascheþ vppon a [9] rokke þat hatte Scylla, makeþ suche manere noyse þat men þat seilleþ þerby beeþ so aferd þat þey weneþ þat þe wawes berkeþ þat wascheþ on þat rokke.[10] So þey feyneþ þat þe serpent Ydra wiþ[11] nyne hedes ; and if oon hede were i-smyte of, þanne grewe vp þre for þat oon. Þe sooþ tale is þat Ydra was somtyme a place þat wonderliche and perilousliche caste vp water ; and ȝif oo water wey were i-stopped, þe water brak vp in meny places and weyes. Hercules seigh þat, and destroyed the swolwe and closede alle þe weies ; þer- TREVISA.

---

critude, whiche meruaylede theire beholders, as if thei were stones. Also that poetes feyne iij. meremaydes to be in parte virgines and in parte bryddes, hauenge wynges and talandes, of whom oon songe with here voyce, an other with a trumpe, þat other with an harpe, whiche drawede men in the see to grete perelles, hit is but a fable. But there were iij. commune women, whiche inducede men drawenge to theym to grete pouerte, wherefore thei were seide to induce men in to grete perelle. Also that thei feyne Scylla [6] to be a woman succincte with the hedes of dogges, with grete berkenge ; that is seide for the see of Scicille, where in men saylenge and dredenge the turnenges of water þer trawede the water to berke like a dogge. Soe in like wise men feyne Idra, þe serpente, to haue hade ix. hedes, so that oon kytte awei iij. increasede, whiche Idra was a place conteynenge water, and euometenge hit, where of oon place stoppede other broste vp in mony places, whiche thynge Hercules perceyvenge schutte those goenges furthe; wherefore hit is seyde that Hercules MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from β. and Cx. ; γ. has *and.*
[2] *talentes,* Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx. (*shipwreke*) ; *þe shippe to breke,* MS.
[4] So α. and Cx. ; *hors,* MS.
[5] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[6] *Scilla,* MS., and *Silla* below.
[7] *þe*] om. MS.
[8] *þat,* α. β. γ. and Cx.
[9] *a*] that, α. β. γ. and Cx.
[10] So α. and Cx. ; *rokkes,* MS.
[11] Probably we should read *was wiþ,* or if not, cancel *þat.*

illos[1] clausit;[2] unde et Hydram serpentem extinxisse fingitur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo.*[3]

De variis fabularum generibus.

Fabulæ dicuntur a fando, non quia sunt[4] res factæ, sed loquendo fictæ; quas poetæ primo induxerunt triplici de causa. Aut enim causa delectandi, quales sunt apud Plautum et Terentium, et illæ quæ vulgo narrantur; aut etiam ad naturam rerum velandam[5] seu exornandam,[6] ut quod Vulcanus sit claudus, quia per naturam nunquam rectus est ignis; et quod Chimæra, hominis ætatem exprimens, sit bestia[7] triformis; cujus prima pars, adolescentia, est ferox, ut leo; secunda, juventus, acute videt, ut caprea, seu per luxuriam fervida fœtet,[8] ut capra; tertia, senectus, casibus est inflexus, ut[9] draco. Sic fabula Hippocentauri,[10] ex homine et equo mixti, humanæ vitæ velocitatem exprimit. Tertio, fabulæ confinguntur ad mores componendos; ut cum res finguntur ad se loquentes, ut per narrationem fictam ad quod agitur vera significatio referatur; ut apud Horatium de mure et mustela, apud Æsopum[11] et Avianum de vulpe et lupo, et in libro

[1] *illos*] om. C.D.

[2] *clausit*] om. E.

[3] *capitulo* 27°, C.; 32, D.; *capitulo* 31, A.B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 40.

[4] *sunt*] om. D.

[5] *velando*, B.

[6] *exornandum*, B.

[7] *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

[8] *fervida fœtet*] fœtida, D.

[9] *ut caprea . . . inflexus ut*] om. E.

[10] *ypocentauri*, MSS.

[11] Variously corrupted in MSS.

TREVISA.

fore me feynede[1] þat he destroyed Ydra þe serpent. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo* 13°. Fables beeþ i-seide of *fando*, þat is spekynge; nouȝt for þei beþ sooþ indede, but i-feyned in spekynge. Poetes brouȝte in fables for þre skiles; for likynge of[2] talkynge and of fayre spekinge; suche beeþ þe fables [of Plautus and of Terentius and fables][3] þat beeþ comounliche i-tolde. Also for helynge and hiȝtinge[4] of kynde; so me seiþ þat Vulcanus[5] halteþ, for[6] þe fuyre is neuere euene; Vulcanus is i-feyned god of fuyr. So Chimera is i-feyned a beest of þre manere schappe and kynde, and bytokeneþ þe ages of mankynde; þe firste ȝowþe of manhede[7] is cruel as a lyoun; þe secounde age of manhode is scharp of siȝt as a goot, oþer stynkeþ by leccherie as a goot; þe þridde age is elde and boweþ as a dragoun, and wasteþ alle away. And so þe fable of Ypocentaurus,[8] þat was feyned i-medled of hors kynde and of mankynde, bytokeneþ þe swift passynge of manis lyf. Also fables beeþ i-feyned for derke and faire manere speking of þewes; as whan me feyneþ þat þinges þat konneþ no resoun spekeþ hem self, þat by þe tale þat is i-feyned þe sooþ by tokenynge may be remeued [to þat][9] þat is soþeliche i-doo in dede. So Oras[10] spekeþ of þe Mous and þe Wesel, and Esopus and Avenet of þe Fox and of þe Wolf, and in libro Iudicum

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

did slee Idra the serpente. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo primo.* Hit is to be attended that poetes inducede fables for iij. especialle causes. Oon was for cause of pleasure and delectacion, as Plautus[11] and Terentius do reherse, and also the fables that be rehersede of commune peple. An other cause was for nature to be couerede and onornede that as a figmente callede chimera, expressenge the age of a man, scholde be of a triplicate nature. The firste parte of whom, that is adolescency, is cruelle as a lyon. The secunde is youthe, scharpe of siȝhte, or elles ille sauorenge like to a goote. The thrydde is age, declynenge to feblenesse like to a dragon. Therefore hit may be schewede that fables were ordeinede to the composicion and cause of vertuous exercise, that thauȝhe thynges be feynede the significacion of theyme is profitable, as in Oratius of the mowse and wesylle, in Ysope and Arrian of the fox and of the wulfe, and Demosthenes[12]

---

[1] *feyneþ*, α. β. γ.
[2] So α. β. γ. Cx.; *and*, MS.
[3] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[4] *helthe and enhauncing*, Cx.
[5] *Vlcanus*, MS., here and below.
[6] for me seiþ, MS., α. (not β. γ.)
[7] *manhod*, α.
[8] Read *Hippocentaurus*, but the barbarous form indicates the false derivation; cf. *Ypocras*, *Ypolita*, &c.
[9] Added from α. β. γ. Cx.
[10] *Orace*, Cx.
[11] *Plauctus*, or *Plauttus*, Harl. MS., and so below.
[12] *Demostines*, Harl. MS.

Judicum de lignis Libani, et apud Demosthenem de lupis et canibus ad liberationem oratorum confictis.[1] *Ranulphus.*[2] Et hoc est quod dicit Augustinus libro De Mendacio: "Fabulæ," inquit, "licet[3] veritatem in se "non[4] habeant, faciunt tamen in re significata."[5] *Augustinus, libro tertio, capitulo tertio.*[6] Auctoritate etiam Romana firmatum est quod Æneas ex matre dea Venere sit genitus; quod Romulus ex patre deo Marte[7] sit genitus. Sed ego non credo, sicut nec Varro Romanus historiographus doctus credidit; dicens latenter utile esse civibus,[8] ut viri fortes, etiam si falsum sit, se credant ex diis progenitos, ut eo modo animus humanus, velut divinæ stirpis[9] fiduciam gerens, res majores aggrediendas præsumat audacius, agat vehementius, consummet[10] felicius. *Alexander in Mythol.* Fabularum, teste Macrobio super somnium Scipionis, aliæ causa[11] delectationis[12] confinguntur, quales[13] sunt[14] comœdiæ[15] Menandri et Terentii,[16] et hæ ad philosophos non pertinent. Aliæ vero utilitatis causa ad exhortationem confinguntur, in quibus aut ipsa materia aut[17] narra-

---

[1] Varied verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.

[2] Reference added from B.

[3] *quod licet fabulæ*, A.

[4] *non*] om. E.

[5] This passage is omitted in C.D. The words are the same but much transposed in B.

[6] 30, B. The text is correct.

[7] *Marte sit genitus*] et matre deo generetur, C.; ex patre deo Marte generetur, D.

[8] *civitatibus*, C.D.

[9] *divina stirpe*, C.D.

[10] *consummat*, E.

[11] *causa*] om. A.

[12] *tantum*, ins. C.D.

[13] *cujusmodi*, C.D.

[14] *sunt*] om. B.

[15] *quales*, ins. C.D.

[16] *Menander seu Terentius conscripserunt*, C.D.

[17] *et*, C.D.

TREVISA.

of þe treen of Libanus ; and so spekeþ Demosthenes [1] of wolfes and houndes i-feyned for þe delyueraunce of þe advoketes and ditoures.[2] R. And þat is þat Seynt Austyn seiþ in his book De Mendacio. Fables, as seiþ Seynt Austyn, þeyȝ þey haue no soþenesse in ham self, noþeles þey makeþ soþenesse in þing þat þei[3] betokeneþ.[4] *Augustinus, libro* 3°, *capitulo* 3°. By auctorite of þe Romayns it was affermed þat þe goddes Venus was Enyas his moder, and þat god Mars was Romulus his fader. But I trowe not so ; Varro [5] troweþ it nouȝt, þe writere of stories of Rome, þat seiþ prueliche, it were profitable to citeseyns þat stronge men and orpede trowe [6] þat þey ben i-gete[7] of goddes, þeyȝ it be false ; þat in þat manere þe men hertes schulde be þe boldere, and haue trust in þe lynage[8] of goddes, and auntre[9] hem to þe grettere dedes, and doon [10] grete dedes wiþ þe more boldenesse and myȝt in trist of gracious ende by cause þat þey holdeþ hem self of þe kynde of goddes.[11] *Alexander in Mythologia.* Macrobius super somnium Scipionis seiþ þat som fables beeþ i-feyned by cause of likynge ; suche beeþ of Menander and Terentius, and suche longeþ nouȝt to philosofres. And som fables beeþ i-feyned by cause of profiȝt in excitynge and conforte ; in þe whiche fables þe matiere, þat me spekeþ of, oþer þe

MS. HARL. 2261.

of wulfes and dogges, made to the delieraunce of poetes. Seynte Austyn acordethe to this, libro De Mendacio, seyenge, thauȝhe fables be not trewe, neuertheles thei cause trawthe in the thynge significate by theyme. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo tertio.* Also hit is confirmate by the auctorite of the Romanes that Eneas was geten of that goddesse callede Venus, and that Romulus was gotten of that godde callede Mars ; but y ȝiffe not credence to that seienge, neither Varro the writer of stories of the Romanes ȝaffe credence þerto, seyenge, Hit is profitable that men of nobilite ȝiffe to credence þeim to be geten of goddes, and also to citesynnes, that the herte of man bolde thro hit scholde presume and be more bolde to go to grete thynges. *Alexander, in Mythologia.* As Macrobius rehersethe of the dreames of Scipio, somme fables be feynede for cause of delectation, as the fables of Menander and of Terentius ; and thei do not perteyne to philosophres. Somme be feynede for cause of vtilite to the exhortacion of peple, in whom other þat mater, other

[1] *Demostenes*, MSS.
[2] *lawers*, Cx.
[3] *hit*, α. ; α., γ.
[4] *netheles they represente and enduce to mannes mynde sothnesse that they bitokene and signefye*, Cx.
[5] So Cx. ; *Farro*, MS.
[6] *trowed*, Cx.
[7] *were bigeten*, Cx.
[8] *lignage*, Cx.
[9] *auenture*, Cx.
[10] *do*, α. β. γ. and Cx.
[11] Clause slightly varied in Cx.

tionis ordo de re ficta et[1] ficte,[2] (hoc est[3] falsum per falsum) narratur, ut patet in fabulis Æsopi et Aviani. Et nec istæ ad philosophos[4] spectant. Aut etiam res vera per ficta narratur, quales sunt fictitiæ Hesiodi et Orphei de deorum actu et progenie; et hujusmodi[5] non est fabula sed fabulosa narratio, quæ si fiat per obscœna, turpia, vel monstruosa, non spectat ad philosophos[4] nec ad theologos; sed illa quæ narrantur per pia et honesta ad philosophos pertinent. Sic Plato finxit quendem militem Er[6] nomine surrexisse a mortuis,[7] et multa de animæ immortalitate narrasse; sic[8] finxit Tullius Scipionem somniasse de animæ immortalitate.[9] *Ranulphus.*[10] Et Boethius finxit Philosophiam in specie puellæ sibi[11] apparuisse. [12] His modis[13] poterit theologus uti temperate, excepto penultimo[14] modo. *Petrus.*[15] Tempore Ayoth Apollo ille posterior,[16] filius Latonæ secundum traditionem Græcorum, artem medicinæ invenit, et lyram condidit. *Ranulphus.*[17] Veruntamen, secundum Isidorum libro tertio Etym., Mercurius postmodum sub diebus[18] Ge-

Apollo medicinæ et lyræ inventor.

Alii lyræ conditorem Mercurium asserunt.

[1] *aut*, B.
[2] *et*, ins. B.
[3] *quando*, ins. B.
[4] *spectant . . . philosophos*] om. C.D.
[5] So A.; *hujus*, E.
[6] *Eer*, B.
[7] *a mortuis*] om. B.
[8] *sicut*, C. (not D.)
[9] *sic . . . immortalitate*] om. B.
[10] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[11] *sibi*] om. C.D.
[12] *Omnibus*, ins. C.D.
[13] *prædictis*, ins. C.D.
[14] *ultimo*, B.
[15] *Petrus*] om. C.D.
[16] *Mercurius*, ins. C.D.
[17] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[18] *tempore*, C.D.

TREVISA.

ordre of tellynge of þe þing þat is i-feyned is feynyngliche i-tolde ; þat is to menynge, oo fals is tolde by a noþer false. So it fareþ in Esopus his fables and in Auian his fables also ; and þese fables longeþ nouȝt to philosofres.[1] Also somtyme a soþ sawe is i-tolde by a feynyng[2] tale ; and soche were þe feynynges of Hesiodus[3] and of Orpheus, whan he spekeþ[4] of dyuers dedes and kynde of goodes;[5] and such a tale is no fable, but a tale liche a fable. And if suche a tale is i-tolde by liknesse of foule þing and harlotrie, þan it longeþ nouȝt too philosofres [neþer to dyuynes ; but siche as beþ tolde by liknesse of feirnesse and of honeste perteyneþ to filosophris].[6] So Plato feynede þat a knyȝt, þat heet Er, aros from[7] deþ to lyue, and tolde meny þinges of þe euerlastynge lyf of manis soule. ℞. And Boys[8] feynede þat Philosofye appered to hym in þe lyknesse of a mayde ; in þis manere may a deuyn[9] vse ensamples manerliche in his talkynge and spekynge. ***Petrus.*** In Ayoth his tyme þe lattre Apollo,[10] þat was Latona his[11] sone, as þe Grees telleþ, fond vþ þe art of phisik and made harpe.[12] ℞. Noþeles Isidorus, libro 3°, Etym., seiþ þat Mercu-

MS. HARL. 2261.

the ordre of the narracion of the thynge y-feynede, that is feynede falsely, and tellede by a fals thynge; and these fables perteyne not to a philosophre ; as the fables of Isope and Auian. Other elles a trewe thynge is rehersede by a feynede thynge, as the seyenges of Esiodus and of Orpheus of the acte and progeny of goddes ; and that is not a fable, but a fabulous narracion ; whiche perteyne not to philosophres and to diuines. But fables whiche be rehersede by meke thynges and honeste, as Plato feynede a knyȝhte, Er by name, to haue risen from dethe, and to haue schewede mony thynges of the immortalite of the sawle. Soe in lyke wise Tullius feynede Scipio to haue dreamede of the immortalite of the sawle. ℞. Also Boetius, the grete clerke, feynede philosophy to haue apperede to hym. A diuyne may vse these maneres, the laste maner excepte but oon. ***Petrus.*** The latere Apollo, son of Latona, after the wrytenge of men of Grewe, founde the arte of medicines, and made an harpe, in the tyme of Aioth. ℞. And, after Isidorus, Ethymol., libro 3°, that man

[1] Clause varied in Cx.
[2] *feyned*, Cx.
[3] *Esyodus*, MS.
[4] *they spak*, Cx.
[5] *Goddes*, Cx. ; the more usual orm in MS. also.
[6] Added from β. γ.
[7] *som*, MS.
[8] *Boece*, β. Cx.
[9] *dyuyne*, Cx.
[10] *Appollo*, MSS.
[11] *Latonaes*, Cx. ; both forms are instructive.
[12] *harpes*, Cx.

deonis ad lyram sic[1] inventam septem chordas addidit, et in[2] nervos sonum strinxit in hunc modum: Cum Nilus post suam inundationem regrederetur in[3] proprios meatus, variaque in campis animalia reliquisset[4] mortua, relicta est et[5] testudo; qua[6] putrefacta nervi extendebantur infra corium[7] conchæ, qui ad tenuem auram sonum[8] reddebant. Quod comperiens Mercurius ad ejus similitudinem[9] lyram condidit, et[10] Orpheo citharœdo tradidit. *Petrus.* Illis etiam temporibus præfatus Mercurius syringas[11] invenit, quæ sunt musica instrumenta de fistulis seu calamis composita; quorum nomen tractum[12] est[13] a Syringe[14] uxore Cadmi,[15] quæ propter zelum harmoniæ a viro suo recessit.[16] Incertum est autem quis fuit iste Mercurius, an Hermes, an Trimegistus philosophus, an Mercurius ille major;[17] nam[18] apud Josephum tres leguntur Mercurii. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo vij°.*[19] Eo

De syringe.

---

[1] *sic*] om. B.
[2] *in*] om. B.
[3] *ad*, C.D.
[4] *relicta essent*, C.; *relicta fuissent*, D.
[5] *etiam*] om. B.; *etiam et*, D.
[6] *quæ*, B.; *de qua*, A.
[7] So D.E.; *cornu*, A.B., which is perhaps right.
[8] *sibilum*, A.B.C.D.
[9] *speciem*, C.D.
[10] *et*] om. E.
[11] *seringas*, B.
[12] *tractatum*, B.
[13] *trahitur*, C.D.
[14] *Seringa*, B.; *Siringa*, A.D.E.
[15] *Cadene*, B.
[16] *recesserat*, C.D.
[17] *minor*, C.D.
[18] *nam . . . Mercurii*] qui fuit nepos majoris Mercurii apud Josephum, C.D.
[19] *capitulo vij°*] om. B.C.D. The true reference is lib. v. c. 39.

TREVISA.

rius afterward in Gedeon[1] his tyme putte seuene strenges to þe harpe, þat was to fore honde i-founde; and þey putte to þe strenges and streyned hem in þis manere. Þe ryuer Nilus[2] had be vppe and byflowe þe lond and was a falle[3] into þe chanel aȝen, þan lay many beestes dede on þe feeldes, and among oþere lay a dede snayle. Whan þis snayl was i-roted, þe senewes[4] were i-streyned with ynne þe skyn of þe snayles hous, and sownede as þe wynde blewe þerynne[5] esiliche and softeliche. Þan Mercurius took hede[6] þerto and made an harpe to þe liknesse þerof, and took hit to Orpheus þe harpour. *Trevisa.* I rede among þe wondres of Ynde, þat snayles beeþ þere so grete and so huge þat a man may be herborwed in a snayles hous. *Petrus.*[7] Also þat tyme þe forseide Mercurius fonde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte Syringa [by the name of that woman Syringa][8] þat was Cadmus[9] his wif. She[10] wente away from hire housbonde for loue of musyk and melodie. It is vncerteynte whiche Mercurius þis was; wheþer Mercurius Hermes, oþer Mercurius Trimegistus þe philosofre, oþer þe [grete][11] Mercurius; for Iosephus spekeþ of þre, of þe whiche eueriche heet Mercurius. *Isidorus, libro quinto.*[12] Also þat tyme in Gres

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mercurius did adde to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede þeim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the flooenge of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diuerse bestes in the feldes, a schelle fische was lefte also, whiche putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the couerenge of that fische, whiche ȝafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and toke hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. *Petrus.* The seide Mercurius founde in that tyme siringas, whiche be musicalle instrumentes made of pipes other reedes, whiche name was taken of Siringa, wife to Cadmus, whiche departede from here howsebonde for the luffe of armony. But hit is not hade in certitude what Mercury this was, wheder hit was Hermes, other Trimegistus the philosopher, other elles grete Mercurius. For Iosephus rehersethe that there were thre nowble men callede by that name Mercurius. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro* 5to, *et*

---

1 So γ. Cx.; *Gedion*, MSS.
2 *Salus*, MS.
3 *was ebbed*, Cx.
4 *senwes*, α.
5 *þeron*, α. β. γ. and Cx.
6 *hede*] om. MS.
7 Reference added from Cx.
8 Added from β. γ. Cx.
9 *Cadynus*, MS. (not Cx.) Various slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapters.
10 *he*, α.; *heo*, β. γ.
11 Added from β. γ.
12 So α. and Cx. (who has *sexto*); *Petrus*, MS.

quoque[1] tempore chorus in Græcia repertus est.[2] *Petrus, vj°.*[3] Quod quidem instrumentum Strabus[4] dicit esse pellem cum duabus cicutis, per quarum[5] alteram inspiratur[6] et[7] per[8] alteram[9] sonus redditur.

Cap. XIX.

De Delbora, et de ultimis Argivorum, et de primis Laurentinorum regibus.[10]

Delbora vel Debora.

Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviij°., capitulo xiij°.[11] Delbora prophetissa de tribu Ephraim simul cum Barak de tribu Neptalim, connumeratis viginti annis quibus Jabyn[12] rex Chanaan afflixit[13] Israel, rexit populum[14] quadraginta annis. In cujus diebus reges Argivorum defecerunt, qui quingentis quadraginta annis regnaverunt a primo[15] Inacho usque ad tempora Pelopis primi Peloponnesensium regis. Et tunc translatum est regnum ad[16] Mycenas.[17] Eo[18] tempore cœpit regnum Laurentinorum in Italia, ubi post mortem Jani et Saturni, qui diu ibidem regnaverant, Picus filius Saturni[19] cœpit regnare. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Circa illud tempus obiit Dionysus,[20] qui et Liber pater dicitur, qui ali-

Anno Del. 1. Anno Abr. 691.

Dionysus moritur; ejus sepulchrum adhuc ostenditur.

[1] *etiam*, C.D.
[2] *adinventus est*, C.D.
[3] *vj°*] om. A.D.
[4] So A.B.C.D.; *Stabus*, E.
[5] *aquarum*, B.
[6] *inspirator*, B.
[7] *et*] om. C.D.
[8] *per*] om. B.
[9] *aliam*, C.D.
[10] No title in MSS.
[11] A.B.C.D. omit reference. It should be lib. xviii. c. 15.
[12] *Jabin*, A.D.
[13] *oppressit*, C.D.
[14] *rexit populum*] So A.D.; om. E.; *regens populum Israel*, B.
[15] *scilicet*, ins. B.C.D.
[16] So A.B., om. E.; *usque ad*, C.; *usque*, D.
[17] *Mecenas*, A.B.; *Micenas*, D.
[18] *quoque*, ins. C.D.
[19] *jam*, ins. D.
[20] *Dionisius*, MSS. and Harl. MS. as usual.

was i-founde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte chorus. *Petrus.* Strabus seiþ þat þat instrument is a skynne[1] wiþ tweie pipes; by oon pipe þe ayer gooþ yn, and by þe oþer þe soun gooþ out. TREVISA.

Capitulum nonum decimum.

Augustinus, de Civitate, libro 18°, *capitulo* 13°. Delbora þat womman was a prophetes of the lynage of Effraym. Þis Delbora wiþ Barach of þe lynage of Neptalym rulede þe peple of Israel fourty ȝere, for to rekene twenty ȝere in þe whiche Iabyn kyng of Canaan pursued Israel. In hir tyme kynges of Argyues faillede þat hadde i-regned fyue hondred ȝere and fourty, þat was from þe firste Inachus to þe firste Pelops his tyme, kyng of þe Peloponenses; and þanne þe kyngdom tornede to þe Mecenes.[2] Þat tyme bygan þe kyngdom of Laurentynes in Italy. After þe deth of Ianus and Saturnus þat hadde longe i-regned þere, þere regned Picus Saturnus his sone. *Augustinus de Civitate, ubi supra.* Aboute þat tyme deyde Denys þat heet also Liber Pater, þat werred in

---

Petrus. A instrumente callede chorus, other a chore, was founde in Grece, of fewe cordes and strynges, whiche is callede nowe a crowthe or a crowde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum decimum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo tertio. The xx^{ti} yere of Barach annumerate, whiche was of the tribe of Neptalym, in whom Iabyn, kynge of Canaan, trowblede þe peple of Israel, Delbora, the prophetisse of the tribe of Effraym, gouernede the peple of Israel xl^{ti} yere. In the dayes of whom the kynges of men callede Argyues began to fayle, whiche reignede v^{c}. and xl^{ti} yere from Inachus to Pelopis firste kynge of men of Peloponense; and then the realme of Argiues was translate to Micenas. In whiche tyme the realme of Laurentines began in Ytaly, where Picus the son of Saturnus began to reigne after the dethe of his fader and of Ianus, whiche reignede there longe. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Dionysus other Liber pater diede abowte thys tyme, whiche ȝiffenge batelle to

---

[1] *is a skynne*] om. Cx. | [2] So *a.* and Cx.; *Macenes*, MS.

quando Indiam debellans habuit fœminas cum viris mixtas in suo exercitu; tandem tamen devincebatur[1] a Perseo. Ejus sepulchrum[2] aureum adhuc ostenditur in Thessalia juxta Apollinem Delphicum in[3] Parnasso.

Rex Mida. Mida[4] rex dives sub hoc tempore regnavit in Phrygia, de quo poetæ multa confixerunt, sicut patet in Mythologia et[5] Fulgentii et Alexandri.[6] Et Ilium ab Ilo[7] filio Apollinis condita est in[8] Troja.

Ilium conditur.

Cap. XX.

De Gedeon, Minoe, et Dœdalo.

Gedeon. Gedeon sive Jheroboal, connumeratis[9] octo annis quibus Israel servivit Madianitis et Amalechitis, rexit populum[10] Israel quadraginta annis; in cujus diebus, secundum Josephum, Tyrus civitas condita est ducentesimo quadragesimo circiter anno[11] ante templum Salamonis. *Petrus, quarto.*[12] Minos, rex Cretæ, filius Jovis, tunc temporis mare obtinuit, et legem Cretensibus dedit.[13] Quo in tempore Theseus, filius Ægei regis Athenarum,[14] vir strenuus, Minotaurum in agone

Anno Ged. 1.
Anno Abr. 751.

Minos.

[1] *vincebatur,* C.D., which transpose other words.
[2] *sepulchrum*] om. B.
[3] *monte,* ins. C.D.
[4] *Midas,* C. (not D.)
[5] *et*] om. A.
[6] *de . . . Alexandri*] om. C.D.
[7] *Ilio,* MSS.
[8] *in*] om. E.
[9] *annumeratis,* C.D.
[10] *populum*] om. B.
[11] *in . . . anno*] om. C.D.
[12] *Petrus, quarto*] om. C.D.; *quarto,* om. A.B.
[13] *Petrus,* ins. C.D.
[14] *regis Athenarum*] om. C.D.

Inde, and hadde in his oost men and wommen i-medled to gedres. Noþeles at þe laste Perseus slowȝ hym. His goldene buriels is ȝit i-seyn[1] in Thessalia bysides Appolyn Delphicus in mount Parnassus. Mida þe riche kyng regnede þat tyme in Frigia; of hym poetes feynede meny þinges, as it is i-write in Mythologia Fulgentii and Alexandri. And Ilus,[2] Appolyn his sone, bulde Ilium in Troye. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum.

GEDEON, þat heet Iheroboal, was ledere of Israel fourty ȝere, forto rekene[3] eiȝte ȝere þat Israel seruede Midianites and Amalachites. Iosephus seiþ þat þe citee Tyrus was i-bulde in Gedeon his tyme, aboute an[4] two hondred ȝere and fourty to fore Salomon his temple. *Petrus.* Minos, kyng of Creta, Iupiter his sone, occupied þe see þat [tyme and ȝaf lawe to þe men of Creta. Þat tyme][5] þe strong man Theseus, Egeus þe kynges sone of Athene, slowȝ Minotaurus in þe tornemente. Þerfore

---

men of Ynde, hade women mixte with men in his hoste. But at the laste he was deuicte of Perseus, whose sepulcre of golde is schewed ȝitte in Thessalia, nye to Apollo Delphicus in Parnassus.[6] Mida, the riche kynge, reignede abowte this tyme in Frigia, of whom poetes feynede mony thynges, as hit is schewede in Methologe of Fulgentius and of Alexander. And also a cite callede Ilium was edifiede and made in Troy by Ilus the son of Apollo. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum.

THE viij. yere connumerate in whom the peple of Israel seruede the Madianites, Gedeon other Iherobal gouernede the peple of Israel xl[ti] yere. In the thyme of whom, after Iosephus, that cite callede Tirus was made, abowte cc. and xl[ti] yere afore the makenge of the temple of Salomon. *Petrus.* Minos kynge of Creta, son of Iupiter, obteynede that tyme the see, and ȝafe lawe to men of Creta. In whiche tyme Theseus, the son of Egeus, kynge of Athenes, a myȝhty man, whiche ouercome a beste

---

[1] *seie*, *a.*
[2] *Ilius*, Cx.; *Iulius*, MS. and *a.*
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *reigne*, MS.
[4] So MS. *a.* *β.* *γ.*
[5] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[6] *Pernasus*, Harl. MS.

interemit; quam ob causam Athenienses qui prius tributarii fuerant a præstatione vectigalis liberabantur.[1] Fuit autem Minotaurus vir quidam inhumanus multum valens in lucta palæstræ. Et etiam fuit carnifex regis Minois; qui ideo sic dictus est, quasi Minois[3] taurus, id est, Carnifex. Circa illud[4] tempus Theseus Helenam rapuit, quam rursus fratres sui Castor et Pollux reduxerunt, capta matre[5] Theseoque peregre profugato.[6]

Dædalus. Eo quoque[7] tempore Dædalus[8] fertur floruisse. Hic fecit aves metallinas volare artificioso spiritu incluso. Dicitur etiam fecisse simulacra sese moventia. Primus enim omnium pedes statuarum a se invicem divisit,[9] cum[10] cæteri eos conjungerent.[11] *Isidorus*,[12] *libro nono*.[13] Hic Dædalus habuit nepotem, Perdicem nomine, quem erudiendum susceperat; qui factus ingeniosus, dum materiæ dividendæ compendium quæreret, spinam piscis imitatus[14] laminam ferri exasperavit, quam[15] dentium[16] mordacitate armavit, quam modo[17] serram[18] nominamus. Hic quoque puer excogitavit primus usum circini; quamobrem Dædalus magister suus invidia

---

[1] So B.; *liberantur*, A.D.E.
[2] Transposed in C.D.
[3] *Monois*, A.E. (not D.); but *Minoys* or *Minois* above.
[4] *idem*, C.D.
[5] *Thesei*, ins. A.C.D.
[6] *profecto*, C.D.
[7] *eoque*, C.D.
[8] *faber*, ins. C.D.
[9] *separavit*, C.D.
[10] *tamen*, ins. C.D.
[11] *conjunctos eos facerent*, C.D.
[12] *Petrus*, B.
[13] 19º., A. correctly. See lib. xix. c. 19.
[14] *imitando*, B.
[15] *quam*] *quia*, E.
[16] *dentium*] om. B.
[17] *et*, C.D.
[18] *sarram*, A.D.

TREVISA.

men of Athene þat were tributarii to forhonde[1] were quyt and free of al tribute. Minotaurus was a grete man and huge, myȝty and strong, and a wiȝt wrastlere,[2] and was kyng Minois his bocher. Þerfore he was i-cleped as it were Minois taurus, þat is a bocher. Aboute þat tyme Theseus rauesched Eleyne;[3] and here tweye breþeren Castor and Pollux fette hir, and brouȝt hir aȝen, and took Theseus moder and chasede Theseus out of contray. Also me seiþ þat Dedalus was þat tyme in his floures. Þis Dedalus made briddes[4] of metal by craft of[5] spirit enclosed[6] for to flee aboute. Me seiþ also þat he made ymages þat meued hem self. He was þe firste þat departede feet of ymages atwynne; ffor oþer men ioyned hem to gidres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þis Dedalus hadde a nevew þat heet Perdix,[7] and fenge hym to his lore. Þis Perdix wax sotil and connynge of craft, and byþouȝt hym[8] for to haue som spedful manere cleuynge of tymber, and took a plate of iren, and fyled it, and made it i-toþed[9] as a rugge[10] boon of a fische, and þanne it was a sawe. Also þis childe byþouȝt hym and made þe firste compas, and wrouȝt þerwiþ. Þerfore his mayster Dedalus took greet envie to þe childe, and þrewe hym doun of an hiȝe toure,

MS. HARL. 2261.

callede Minotaurus; for whiche acte men of Athenes, whiche were tributaries afore, were delyuerede from that seruitute. Minotaurus was a myȝhty man, and as a gigante hauenge grete strenȝhte, whiche was the bocheor of kynge Minois, callede Minotaurus, as the bocheor of kynge Minois. Theseus toke awey Helena abowte this tyme, whom Castor and Pollux, breþer to here, broughte ageyne with the moder of Theseus, Theseus fleenge in to other cuntres for helpe. In whiche tyme Dedalus is seide to haue bene, whiche made bryddes of metalle to flye thro spirittes inclusede in theyme. Also hit is seide that he made similacres movenge theym selfe. Whiche diuidede firste the feete of ymages a sundre, for other men ioynede theyme to gedre. *Isidorus, libro nono.* This Dedalus hade with hym the son of his doȝhter, Perdix by name, whiche founde firste an instrumente whom men calle a sae. Also this childe founde firste the vse of a compasse, wherefore Dedalus his maister caste hym downe from a towre. Therefore Deda-

[1] *byfore*, Cx.
[2] *and ful delyure in wrastling*, Cx., who otherwise varies the sentence.
[3] *Eleyn*, Cx.; *Helen*, α.
[4] *byrdes*, Cx.
[5] *of*] and, α. β. γ. Cx.
[6] *i-closed*, α.; *closed*, Cx.
[7] So Cx.; *Pardix*, MS., here and below.
[8] Cx. adds, *in his ymagynacion.*
[9] *I toþed*, α.
[10] *rigge*, Cx.

ductus præcipitavit eum de quadam arce.[1] Inde[2] Dædalus cum Icaro filio suo apud Cretam fugiens devenit Siciliam; ubi et[3] primo fecit labyrinthum.[4] *Petrus, sexto.*[5] Idcirco propter celerem[6] et investigabilem fugam ejus post homicidium perpetratum fingitur pennis volasse.[7] *Isidorus libro quintodecimo.* Labyrinthus[8] est ædificium quoddam ex perplexis parietibus compositum, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; quo siquis sine glomere fili ingrederetur, exitum facile[9] non reperiret. Aperientibusque[10] in ea fores tonitrus terribilis audiebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Labyrinthus.* Descenditur[11] quasi gradibus centum; transitus ibi sunt quasi innumeri[12] per tenebras. Et sunt quatuor tales domus in orbe:[13] una[14] Ægyptia,[15] secunda Cretica,[16] tertia in Lemno[17] insula, quarta in Italia. Omnes quidem ita constructæ[18] ut vix per sæcula dissolvi[19] queant. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.*[20] Denique cum Athenienses laborarent pestilentia pro morte Icari et Erigones[21] filiæ suæ, et virgines Athenienses quasi ad laqueum compellerentur, responsum est ab[22] Apolline

Labyrinthus.

Quatuor Labyrinthi.

Mors Icari; peste laborant Athenienses.

---

[1] *arce*] om. B.

[2] *Unde*, C. (not D.)

[3] *et*] om. B.

[4] *laberintum*, MSS. Variously written below.

[5] *sexto*] om. A.B.D.

[6] So A.B.; *celebrem*, E.

[7] The two preceding sentences are varied and transposed in C.D.

[8] *Laberintum*, C.D.

[9] *facile*] om. C.D.

[10] *apparentibusque*, B.; *a parietibus quæ*, C. (not D.)

[11] *in illo*, ins. C.D.

[12] *centum . . . innumeri*] innumeris, C.D.

[13] *in orbe*] om. C.D.

[14] *una, &c.*] unus, &c., all masculine in MSS. It is harsh to understand *labyrinthus*; and Higden could hardly intend *domus* to be masculine. (See vol. I. p. 216, &c.)

[15] *apud Ægyptios*, B.

[16] *in Creta*, B.

[17] *Lempo*, B.

[18] *constructi*, MSS.

[19] *solvi*, B.

[20] 2540, C. (not D.)

[21] *Erigonis*, MSS., and so below.

[22] *ab*] om. A.

TREVISA.

and brak his nekke. Þerfore Dedalus wiþ his sone Icarus[1] at Creta fli3e and come in to Sicilia,[2] and þere he made first laborinthus.[3] *Petrus.* For Dedalus fli3 away so swiftliche after þe manslau3t,[4] me feyneþ þat he fley3 wiþ wynges as a bryd by þe ayer. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Laborinthus is a manere buldynge wonderliche i-bulde wiþ daungers[5] walles; þerynne Minotaurus was i-closed. 3if eny man wente þider yn wiþ oute a clewe of þrede, it were ful harde to fynde a way out. Þey þat oponed þe 3ates schulde here dredful þondringe. *Hugutio, capitulo Labor.* Me gooþ adoun [as hit were][6] by an hondred grees:[7] þere beeþ also in derkenesse wonder meny dyuers wyndynges and tornynges; and suche foure beeþ in þis worlde of suche hous;[8] oon in Egipt, anoþer in Creta, þe þridde in þe ylond Lemno,[9] and þe ferþe in Italy; and beeþ so i-made þat vnneþe þey mowe be destroyed, while þe worlde dureþ. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* Whanne þere fel a pestilence among men of Athene[10] for þe deth of Icarus and his dou3ter Erigon, and maydens of Athene were compelled as it were to snarles and greues, þanne þei hadde

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

lus fleenge with Icarus[1] his son to that yle callede Creta, come afterwarde to Sicilia,[2] and made a mase þere firste. *Petrus.* Whom men feyne to haue flyede, for the swifte fli3hte of hym after that he hade doen that offense. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* A turnenge, other elles a mase, is a thynge made with mony turnenges, and a man entrenge in to hit with owte a clewe of threde, can not comme furthe from hit ageyne li3htely, and also a thundre dothe appere to men openenge the durres of hit. *Hugutio, capitulo Labor.* To whom men goe downe as by a c. grees, the weies þer be as innumerable by derkenesse, and þer be iiij. suche places in the worlde; oon is in Egipte, an other is in Creta, the thrydde is in the yle callede Lemnus,[9] the iiij^the is in Italy; whiche be made soe that thei can not be destroyede vn to the ende of the worlde. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* When men of Athenes laborede in þe pestilence for the dethe of Icarus, and of Erigon his do3hter, and virgynes were compellede as vn to hongenge, hit was answerede to theyme by Apollo Del-

---

[1] *Ycarus,* MSS., and so below.

[2] *Scicilia,* MSS.; *Scilicia,* Harl. MS.

[3] Cx. adds, *otherwyse callyd a mase.*

[4] *after he had slayn his neuew,* Cx.

[5] *daungerous,* Cx.

[6] Added from *a.* and Cx.

[7] *grees or steppes,* Cx.

[8] *howses,* Cx.

[9] *Lempno,* MS. Similarly Harl. MS.

[10] MS. has some words repeated.

Pestis remedium.

Delphico illam pestem[1] sedari non posse[2] nisi[3] Icari et Erigones cadavera requirerentur. Quæ cum[4] diu quæsita reperiri non possent, ad ostendendum devotionem quam ad inquirendum habuerant,[5] ut in alio elemento viderentur quærere quod in terra reperire non possent, Athenienses suspendebant funes in aëre, ad quos homines innexi huc et illuc agitabantur, ut sic viderentur quærere in aëre cadavera prædicta. At dum[6] inde[7] caderent homines et læderentur, statutum fuit apud illos[8] ut statuæ illis cadaveribus[9] similes imponerentur et sic moverentur. Ludus autem ille apud Latinos vocatur *Ocillum*, quod componitur a *cilleo -les* quod est moveo, et *os, oris*, quia sic agitati[10] in ora hominum[11] movebantur.

Oscillum unde derivatur.

---

[1] *pestem*] So A.B.C.D.; om. E.
[2] *non posse*] om. E.; *posse*, A.
[3] *nisi*] so B.C.D.; *si*, A.E
[4] *dum*, B.D.
[5] *quam . . . habuerant*] suam, C.D.
[6] *cum*, C.D.
[7] *Ac dummodo*, B.
[8] *eos*, C.D.
[9] *cadaveribus*] om. C.D., which is better.
[10] *innexi*, C.D.
[11] *trahentium*, C.D., which transpose various words in this extract.

answere of Appolyn Delphicus þat þe pestilence myȝt cese, ȝif þey souȝte besiliche þe bodyes of Icarus and his douȝter Erigon. Þan þey souȝte besiliche, and whanne þey hadde longe i-souȝt and myȝte nouȝt[1] fynde,[2] for to schewe þe deuocion and wil þat þey hadde forto seche [and][3] forto be seie seche besiliche in anoþer element þat þey myȝte nouȝt fynde in erþe, men of Athene heng[4] vp ropes in þe ayer and men totrede þeron and meued hider and þider; for þey wolde be seie seche þe bodies in þe aier aboue þe erþe. And whan men [fel][5] of þe totres and were i-herte sore,[6] it was i-ordeyned among hem þat images i-liche to þe bodies schulde be sette in þe totros,[7] and meue and totery in stede of hem þat were a-falle. Þat game is cleped ocillum in Latyn, and is compowned and i-mayde of tweyne, of cilleo cilles þat is forto mene[8] *toterynge*,[9] and os oris þat is *a mouþ*; for þey þat totered so mouede aȝenst men mouþes. TREVISA.

---

phicus that pestilence to be mitigate if thei wolde inquire the cariones and bodies of Icarus and of Erigon his doȝhter. Whiche inquirede longe cowthe not be founde, men of Athenes schewenge a deuocion to the inquisicion of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an oþer elemente that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were hurte, ymages were made lyke to theyme, and movede þer in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocillum, whiche worde takethe composicion of this worde *cilleo es*, that is, to move, and of this worde *os oris* for a mowthe; for men sterydc in that wyse were mouede towarde the mowthes of men. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *nowther*, Cx.; *nowhar*, β. γ.

[2] *fynde in erþe*, MS. (not α. β. γ. or Cx.)

[3] Added from conjecture; but perhaps the five words following should be cancelled.

[4] *hyng*, α.

[5] Added from α. and Cx.

[6] *i-hurt*, α.

[7] *totres*, α., Cx.

[8] *meoue*, α.

[9] *toterynge*] om. α. and Cx.

Cap. XXI.

Abimelech et Thola judicant Israel. De Fauno; item de Amazonibus.[1]

De Abimelech. ABIMELECH, filius Gedeon[2] sive Jeroboal,[3] ex concubina natus, dux fuit[4] in Sichem[5] tribus annis post patrem, et occidit septuaginta fratres suos ex variis uxoribus progenitos excepto uno.[6] Eoque[7] tempore Atheniense[8] bellum fuit inter Lapithas[9] et Centauros, quos Palæphatus libro De Incredibilibus dicit fuisse[10] nobiles equites Thessalorum, qui pugnabant contra[11] Thebæos.[12] Thola de tribu Isachar[13] judicavit Israel viginti tribus annis, cujus anno quarto Medea discessit[14] a viro suo Ægeo, Atheniensium[15] rege, usque ad Colchos insulam unde fuit oriunda. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio.* Circa hos dies Faunus filius Pici regnavit in Italia, sub quo Evander de finibus Arcadiæ[16] veniens agros[17] et montem Palatinum accepit. Huic Fauno fuit[18] uxor nomine Fatua, spiritu vatidico frequenter[19] repleta, unde et[20] adhuc qui inspirari solent fatuari[21] dicuntur. Ex filia[22] hujus[23] Fauni et Hercule,[24] qui tunc extincto Geryone gigante[25] rege

Anno Abr. 771. Anno Abimelech 1.

Thola. Anno Abr. 774. Anno Tholæ 1.

De Fauno.

---

[1] No title in MSS.
[2] So A.B.E.; *Gedeonis*, C.D.;
[3] *sive Jeroboal*] om. A.B.C.D.
[4] *regnavit*, C.D.
[5] *Sichen*, A.
[6] *solo*, ins. C.D.
[7] *Eo quoque*, B.
[8] *apud Athenienses*, B.
[9] *Lahitas*, B.; *Laphitas*, D.E.
[10] *centum*, ins. C.D.
[11] *adversus*, C.D.
[12] *Thebas*, C.; *Thebes*, D.
[13] *Isacar*, A.
[14] *discendit*, C.D. (first hand.)
[15] *Atheniensium*] Atheniensi, D.
[16] *Arcadiæ*] om. B.
[17] *aros*, B.
[18] *præfuit*, B.
[19] *assidue*, C.D.
[20] *et*] om. C. (not D.)
[21] *fatuati*, C.D. (first hand.)
[22] *quoque*, ins. C.D.
[23] *hujus*] om. B.
[24] *Herculis*, A.
[25] *gigante*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

ABYMALECH, Gedeon[1] his son i-bore of a concubyn, was ledere in Sichem after his fader þre ȝere, and slow his owne broþern þre score and ten, outake oon, þat were i-bore of diuers wifes.[2] Þat tyme was þe batayle of Athene bytwene þe Laphites and Centaures. Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seiþ þat þe Centaures[3] were noble hors men of Thessalia, þat fauȝt aȝenst þe Thebes men of Thebe in Egipt. Thola of þe lynage of Isachar was iuge in Israel þre and twenty ȝere. In his fourþe ȝere Medea[4] wente from hire housbonde Egeus, kyng of Athene, in to þe ilonde Colchos, þere sche was i-bore. *Trogus*, 43. Aboute þat tyme Faunus [Picus his sone regnede in Italy. In his tyme Euander come out of Arcadia and feng fildes[5] and þe hil mount Palatyn. Þis Faunus][6] had a wyf þat heet Fatua, and hadde ofte a spirit of prophecie. Þerfore ȝit ofte þey þat haueþ a spirit of prophecie beeþ i-cleped Fatui. Þoo Hercules hadde i-slawe Geryon þe geant, kyng of Spayne, and ladde

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

ABIMALECH, the son of Gedeon, geten of a concubyne, was gouernoure in Sichem iij. yere after his fader, whiche did slee lxx[ti] brether to hym, geten of diuerse women, oon excepte. In whiche tyme the batelle of Athenes betwene Laphites and Centaures, whom Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seithe to haue ben nowble horse men of Thessalia whiche did fiȝhte ageyne the Thebes. Thola, of the tribe of Ysachar, reignede on Israel xxiij[ti] yere. In the iiij[the] yere of whom Medea wente from here howsebonde Egeus, kynge of Athenes, vn to that yle callede Colchos, where sche was borne. *Trogus, capitulo quadragesimo tertio.* Fanus, the son off Picus, reignede abowte this tyme in Ytaly, vnder whom Euander, of the costes of Archadia, commenge to those costes, toke the feldes and the mownte Palatyne. This Fanus hade a wife, Fatua by name, whiche was vexede moche with a spiritte, whereof peple so vexede now in this tyme bene seide to be fatuate, after the name

[1] So *a.*; *Geon*, MS.

[2] So *a* and Cx.; *a concubyn*, MS.

[3] So *a.*; *Sentaures*, MS.

[4] *Meda*, MS., and so below. A few similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter; as *Gereon*, *Synope*, *Archadia*.

[5] *receyued and toke feldes*, Cx.

[6] Added from *a.* and Cx.

Hispaniæ armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam duxerat, stupro conceptus est Latinus; qui postmodum regnavit ibidem. *Orosius*,[1] *libro primo.* Circa hunc annum Vezoses[2] rex Ægypti Scythis[3] bellum primo[4] indixit,[5] missis tamen prius legatis qui hostibus legem parendi indicerent.[6] Ad quod Scythæ sic[7] responderunt: "Stolide rex opulentissimus adversus inopes "bellum movet, præsertim cum dubius sit belli eventus, "præmia nulla, sed damna manifesta." Nec mora[8] quin dictis facta[9] subsequntur. Nam regem ad regnum Ægypti redire compellunt, exercitum ejus spoliant et invadunt, totamque Ægyptum spoliassent, nisi Nili paludibus impediti fuissent. Inde[10] redeundo per quindecim annos Asiam conterentes vectigalem fecerunt; quibus denunciatum est ab uxoribus quod, nisi redirent, sobolem sibi a finitimis locis quærerent. Medio tempore apud Scythas duo regii juvenes per factionem optimatum domo[11] pulsi, contracta secum ingenti mul-

Vesores, rex Ægypti, a Scythis invaditur.

Anno Abr. 790.
Anno Tholæ 17.

[1] *Orosius*] The rest of this chapter is omitted in C.D.

[2] *Vesozes*, A; *Vezores*, B. The MSS. of Orosius (lib. i. c. 14) similarly vary. Sesostris is presumed to be intended.

[3] *Scitis*, A.; *Schitis*, B.; *Shitis*, E., and similarly below.

[4] *primus*, A.

[5] *induxit*, B.

[6] *inducerent*, A.

[7] *sic*] om. A.

[8] *moris*, B.

[9] *acta*, B.

[10] *in*, B.

[11] *domo*] denuo, A.; viatorum denuo, B.

TREVISA.

his bestes þoruȝ Italy in token of þe victorie; he lay by þis Faunus his douȝter vnlawfulliche and gat Latinus,[1] þat regnede afterward in Itali. *Orosius, libro primo.* Aboute þis ȝere Vesores, kyng of Egipt, werred first aȝenst þe Scites; noþeles[2] firste he sente messagers and heet [his][3] enemyes be soget to his lawe; and þe Scites answerede: "A dul kyng and most riche "meueþ bataile aȝenst pore men and nedy, nameliche while it "douteþ what ende þe batayle schal haue; profite comeþ þerof "noon, but grete and opoun harme and damage." And nouȝt longe after the dede acordede[4] wiþ þe answere; for þey compelled þe kyng of Egipt forto flee aȝen, and chasede and spoylede his oost, [and wolde have i-spoylled][5] al Egipt, hadde þey nouȝt be lette by watres of þe ryuer Nilus. Þanne in þe tornynge aȝen þey werred fiftene ȝere in Asia, and made Asia tributarie; and here wifes sent hem worde, þat but þei wolde come home þey wolde haue children by men of þe contrayes aboute. Þe mene tyme among þe Scites tweye real ȝongelynges by fraude and deceyt of þe grete werre[6] i-putte

MS. HARL. 2261.

of þat woman. Of the doȝhter of whom Hercules gate a son, Latynus by name, whiche reignede after hym, not geten in trewe matrimony. *Orosius, libro primo.* Abowte whiche yere Vesores, kynge of Egipte, ȝafe[7] intendede to ȝiffe batelle to men of Scitia, sendenge to theyme messengeres afore commaundede theyme to obey him. To whiche messangeres the men of Scithia ansuerede, seynge, that the plentuous kynge of Egipte intendede a symple thynge to move batelle ageyne poore men, sythe the chaunce of victory in batelle is in dowte, where he knowthe to haue noon avayle but grete hurtes and losse. Whiche thynge happede accordenge to the seyenge of theyme; for they compellede the kynge off Egipte to returne, and pereschenge a grete parte of his hoste hade spoilede a grete parte of Egipte, but that þe water of Nilus was an impedimente to theyme. That peple of Scitia, returnenge towarde theire cuntre, fauȝhte myȝhtely ageyne men of Asia, and made theym theire tributaries. The wifes of whom sende worde to theim that thei wolde take men to theym of oþer cuntres to cause multiplication, withowte thei wolde comme home. Wherefore ij. nowble men were electe amonge theyme,

[1] So α. and Cx.; *Lathinius*, MS.
[2] *yet*, Cx.
[3] Added from Cx. (only), who varies the clause.
[4] *acord*, Cx.
[5] Added from α. and Cx.
[6] So MS.; *were*, Cx.
[7] Sic Harl. MS. Probably the word should be cancelled; if not, *or* must be added: *which* seems to be omitted after *afore*.

titudine, oram[1] Ponti et Cappadociæ occuparunt,[2] ubi post multam depopulationem factam a finitimis viris trucidabantur. Quorum uxores exilio ac viduitate permotæ arma sumunt, ultionem pro maritis faciunt. Amazones. Tunc pace armis quæsita externos[3] concubitus[4] ineunt, editos mares enecant, fœminas inustis dextris mammis reservant. Harum tandem duæ fuerunt reginæ Marcepia et Lapeto;[5] quæ agmine diviso vicissim curam belli et domus custodiam sortiebantur. Igitur cum Europam magna ex parte perdomuissent, captis aliquibus Asiæ urbibus præcipuam exercitus sui partem spoliis onustam domi remisissent, reliquæ fœminæ ad tuendam Asiam relictæ cum regina sua[6] Marcepia ab hostibus trucidantur. Cujus filia Sinope post matrem regnum tenuit, singularem virtutis gloriam perpetua virginitate cumulavit. Hujus nempe tanta[7] admiratio gentes invaserat, ut cum Hercules juberetur a domino

---

[1] *coram*, A.
[2] *occupaverunt*, A.B.
[3] *exterios*, B.
[4] So A.; *cubitus*, E.
[5] *Lampeto*, B.
[6] *sua*] om. B.
[7] *tam*, B.

TREVISA.

from home, and took wiþ hem a grete multitude of peple and strengþe, and werred in þe contrayes of Pontus and Cappadocia.[1] And whanne þey hadde i-doo greet destruccioun, þan þey were i-kilde of men of þe contrays aboute. Þanne hire wifes exilede and wydewes armed hem, and toke wreche of hire housbondes deþ; and whanne þey hadde i-made pees by strengþe and by dedes of armes þey took men of oþer londes to ligge[2] by hem forto haue children, and slow hire owne knaue children,[3] and kepte here mayde children, and brende of þe[4] riȝt brest. At þe laste tweyne of þese women were queenes, Marsepia and Lampeto, and departed hire oost, and kepte and mayntenede hem. and batailled[5] eiþer by hir cours. Þan whanne þey hadde ouercome a grete dele of Europa and many citees of Asia, þey sent home þe bettre part of here oost wiþ prayes þat þey hadde i-take. Þan enemyes slowȝ Marsepia þe queene and[6] þe oþere women þat were i-left þere forto kepe Asia. And here douȝter Sinope regned after hir moder deþ, and gadered a singuler ioye of vertue by euerlastynge chastite. Men wondrede so hugeliche of this womman, þat whanne Hercules hadde heste of his lorde for to werre

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche, takenge with theyme a grete hoste, occupiede the londes of Pontus and Capodocia, whiche were destroyede at the laste by oþer peple of þeire cuntrees. The wifes of whom movede there with toke armoure, inquirenge vengeaunce for theire howsebondes. So at the laste, peace made by grete batelles and conflictes, thei toke to theyme straunge men for cause of multiplicacion, sleenge the male childer, reseruede the childer female, brennenge the ryȝhte pappe of here. Of whiche women were ij. qwenes at the laste, Marsepia and Lampeto, whiche kepede batelles by course. And when thei hade made that londe of Asia tame, and taken the principalle cites in hit, thei sende the chiefe parte of theire hoste to theire cuntre with grete richesse and goodes. That other parte of women lefte with Marsepia to be the defence of Asia were sleyne. The doȝhter of whom, Synope by name, kepede the realme after the dethe of here moder, in kepenge the glory of vertu with virginite perpetualle. Also thei were of so grete myȝhte, that when Hercules was commaundede of his lorde that he scholde brynge

[1] *Capadocie*, Cx.
[2] *lye*, Cx.
[3] *men childer*, Cx.; who, however, has *childerer* above.
[4] *her*, Cx.
[5] *hem in batel*, Cx.; *bataille*, α. γ.; *batel*, β.
[6] So α. and Cx.; *of*, MS.

suo arma reginæ inferre,[1] universam [2] Græciæ electam juventutem contraxit, novemque longas naves præparavit,[3] insperatas mulieres circumvenit, malens insidiando quam palam bellando congredi. Oppressis igitur subito duabus sororibus reginis,[4] Hercules Melanippen[5] sorori suæ Antiopæ[6] reddidit.[7] Hippolytam vero sororem ejusdem Theseo militi suo copulavit; arma reginæ pretio redemptionis accepit. Tandem post Orthiam reginam Penthesilea [8] regina Trojano bello interfuit, magnaque insignia suæ virtutis[9] contra Græcos dedit.

Cap. XXII.

De Jair; item de Carmente Nympha, litterarum Latinarum inventrice.[10]

De Jair. JAYR[11] Galadites de tribu Manasse judicavit Israel viginti duobus[12] annis, habuitque triginta filios, quos fecit principes[13] supra[14] triginta civitates, quas denominavit a nomine suo Anat Jayr,[15] id est, oppida Jair. *Ranulphus.* Hujus Jayr[16] anno tertio secundum quosdam Carthago condita est; sed de hoc vide supra

Anno Abr. 797
Anno Jair 1.

[1] So A.; *afferre*, E.
[2] So A.; *universitati*, E.
[3] *reparavit*, B.
[4] *reginis*] om. B.
[5] *Monalippam*, MSS.
[6] *Antrope*, B.
[7] *reddit*, B.
[8] *Pentasilea*, MSS.
[9] *suæ virtutis*] Added from A.B.
[10] No title in MSS.
[11] *Jair*, A.C.D.
[12] *uno*, C.D.
[13] *principales*, B.
[14] *super*, C.D.
[15] *Anat jair*, A.; *Anathe jair*, B.; *Anot jair*, D.
[16] *Ranulphus. Hujus Jayr*] om. C. (D. omits *Ranulphus.*)

aȝenst þis[1] queene, he gadrede al þe grete strengþe of þe ȝong men of Grees, and ordeyned hym nyne longe schippes, and fil vppon þe wommen þat were vnarmed. For hym was leuere stele[2] vppon hem þan come vppon hem wiþ a bataile opounliche. Þan, whanne þe tweie queenes þat were sustres were sodeynliche ouercome, Hercules ȝaf Menalippa to his suster Antiopa, and wedded hir suster Hippolyta[3] to his knyȝt Theseus, and fenge þe armure of þe queene in prys of redempcioun. At the laste after Orthia þe queene, Penthesilea[4] þe queene was in þe batayle of Troye, and ȝaf and[5] dede meny grete dedes aȝenst the Grees. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

IAIR[6] of Galaad, of þe lynage of Manasse, was iuge of Israel two and twenty ȝere, and hadde þrittey sones, and made hem princes vppon þritty citees, and cleped þe citees by his owne name, Anot Iair, þat is to mene, Iair is townes. ℞. Som telleþ þat Carthago[7] was i-bulde þe þridde ȝere of þis Iaire, but

---

to hym the armore of the qwene of theym, he toke with hym the nowble men of the londe of Grece in ix. schippes, whiche compassede the women as with owte deliberacion; hauenge more pleasure to do soe then to make an open batelle ageyne theyme. The seide Hercules, those women oppressede, ȝafe Menalippa to his sustyr Antiopa, and mariede Ypolita, sustir to the same Menalippa, to Theseus his knyȝhte, takenge to hym the armore of the qwene as for a price of here redempcion. After that qwene callede Orthia, the qwene Penthesilea[8] was at the battelle of Troye, and schewede mony grete actes ageyne men of Grece. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

IAIR GALATIDES, of the tribe of Manasses, reignede on the peple of Israel xxij^ti yere whiche hade xxx^ti sonnes, whom he made princes of xxx^ti cites, whom he callede, after his name, Anot Iair, that is to say, þe cites of Iair. ℞. In the thrydde yere of whom, after diuerse men, that cite callede Carthago was edifiede, of whiche mater hit is rehersede afore,

---

[1] *the*, Cx.
[2] *to stele*, Cx.
[3] *Ypolita*, MS., *c.*; *Ipolita*, β. γ.
[4] *Pentasilea*, α.; *Pentasiles*, MS.
[5] *ȝaf and*] om. Cx.
[6] *Lair*, MS.
[7] *Cartago*, MSS.; *Cartage*, Cx.
[8] *Pentisilia*, Harl. MS.

libro primo, capitulo *Africa*.[1] Anno Jayr sextodecimo Ægyptiorum [rex] [2] Minois [3] adversus Dædalum in [4] Sicilia arma corripiens [5] a filiis Cocali [6] occiditur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo decimo*.[7] [8] Carmentis nympha, quæ et Nicostrata, mater Latini regis, Latinas literas reperit.[9] *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo vii°*.[10] Latina autem lingua in quatuor fuit dispartita; nam [11] Prisca fuit [12] sub Jano et Saturno; Latina sub rege Latino et cæteris regibus Tusciæ, ex qua lingua [13] fuerunt duodecim tabulæ legum conscriptæ; item [14] Romana, quæ post exactos reges cœpit; qua usi sunt Plautus, Tullius, Virgilius, Cato; sed mixta lingua post dilatum imperium crevit.[15] Post [16] mortem Jair,[17] Israel servivit Philistiim et Ammonitis xviij. annis; qui deputantur annis Jepte subsequentibus.[18]

Minos moritur.

Lingua Latina quadruplex.

---

[1] *sed . . . Africa*] Isidorus, libro primo, C.D.; Africa, scilicet Numidia, A. (See vol. i. p. 164.)

[2] The text has manifestly suffered. The Harl. tr. seems to have had *rex*.

[3] *Minoys*, E. Read *Minos*.

[4] *in*] om. A.

[5] So A.E.; *arripiens*, B.C.D.

[6] *filiis Dedali*, B.; *filiabus Dedali*, C.; *filiabus Cocali*, D.

[7] *capitulo decimo*] om. A.B.C.D.

[8] *Anno Jair vicesimo secundum quosdam*, ins. C.D.

[9] Slightly varied in C.D.

[10] *capitulo septimo*] om. C.D.; *libro quarto decimo*, A.B. Read lib. ix. c. 1.

[11] *nam*] om. C.D.

[12] *fuit*] om. C.D.

[13] *lingua*] om. B.C.D.

[14] *item*] om. C.D.

[15] Slightly varied in C.D.

[16] *Post . . . subsequentibus*] om C.D.

[17] *Jair*] om. E.

[18] *sequentibus*, A.

look in þe firste book, capitulo Affrica, scilicet Numidia.[1] Þe sextenþe ȝere of Iaire, Mynois of Egipt amendede armure aȝenst Dedalus in Sicilia, and was i-kyld of Cocalus his sones. *Isidorus, libro primo.* Carmentis Nympha, þat heet also Nicostrata,[2] kyng[3] Latyn his moder, fond and brouȝt vp[4] Latyn lettres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þe longage of Latyn was departed in foure: for þe firste was vnder Ianus and Saturnus, and was i-cleped Prisk; and Latyn vnder þe[5] kyng Latyn and oþer kynges of Thuscayn;[6] in þat longage were þe twelue tables of lawe i-write; also Romayn þat bygan after kynges were i-made suget; and þat longage vsede Plautus and Tullius, Virgilius and Caton; but medled[7] longage encresed after þat þe Empere encresede and was huge. After þe deeth of Iaire Israel seruede þe Philistinis and Ammonitys eiȝtene ȝere, þat beeþ acounted to þe ȝeres of Iepte þat was duke afterward of Israel. TREVISA.

---

libro j°. Minois, kynge off Egipte, movenge batelle ageyne Dedalus, was sleyne of the sonnes of Cocalus in the xvj^the yere of the reigne of Iair. *Isidorus, libro primo.* Nicostrata, the moder of Latinus kynge, founde letters of Latyne. *Isidorus, libro nono.* The langage of Latyn was departede in to iiij. For the olde tonge or langage of Latyn was in the tyme of Ianus and of Saturnus. And in the tyme of that kynge callede Latinus, and of other kynges of Tuschia, of whiche langage xij. tables were wryten of the lawes of theyme. Also the Romanes vsede that langage whom Plautus, Tullius, Virgilius, and Cato vsede; but langage that was mixte encreasede after the increase of thEmpyre. Israel, other the peple of hit, seruede the Philistes xviij. yere after the dethe of Iair, whiche be deputede to the yeres of Iepte folowenge. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So *β.*; *Munidia, α. γ.*, Cx.; *Mundia*, MS.
[2] *Nichostrata*, MSS.
[3] *kyng of*, MS., and so below.
[4] *vp*] om. Cx.
[5] *þe*] om. *α.*, Cx.
[6] *Tuscayn, α.*
[7] *melled, α.*; *myxt*, Cx.

Cap. XXIII.

De Jepte; item de Sibyllis, et de rebus Trojanis.[1]

Jepte.

Anno Abr. 819. Anno Jepte 1.

Jepte Galatides de tribu Gad, filius meretricis, judicavit Israel sex annis; cujus anno primo Latinus filius Fauni cœpit regnare in Italia, in qua regnavit triginta duobus annis, a quo regnum Latinorum sumpsit initium, cessante ex tunc vocabulo Laurentinorum.

Rex Latinus.

De decem Sibyllis.

Isidorus, libro octavo. Tempore hujus Latini floruit Sibylla Erythræa,[2] nomine Herophila,[3] de Babylone oriunda, quæ Græcis Ilium petentibus[4] prædixit Trojam evertendam et Homerum mendacia postmodum scripturum. Et cum decem fuerunt[5] Sibyllæ, hæc ponitur quinta in numero, et cæteris antefertur; quarum[6] prima[7] fuit Persica, secunda Libyca, tertia Delphica, in templo Apollinis[8] progenita ante bellum Trojanum, cujus plurimos versus Homerus inseruit in suis opusculis.[9] Quarta fuit Cimmeria[10] de Italia; quinta[11] Erythræa,[12] de qua nunc agitur;[13] sexta fuit Samia, in Samos insula nata; septima Cumana, de

[1] No title in MSS.
[2] *Eritrea*, MSS.
[3] *Erosiba*, B.; *Erofila*, E.
[4] *potentibus*, B.
[5] *fuerint*, B.
[6] *et . . . quarum*] om. C.D.
[7] *enim*, ins. C.D.
[8] *Delphici*, ins. C.D.
[9] *suo opusculo*, C.D.
[10] *Cimerica*, B.
[11] *fuit*, ins. B.
[12] *Eritrea*, MSS.
[13] *dictum est*, C.D.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium. Iepte.

TREVISA.

IEPTE of Galaad, of the lynage of Gad, an hoore[1] sone, was iuge of Israel sixe ȝere. Kyng Latyn, Faunus is sone, bygan to regne in Ytaly; and regned þere two and þritty ȝere. Of hym þe kynges of[2] Itali hadde þat name, and were i-cleped kynges of Latyns, and þan cesed þe name of Laurentines, and torned into þe name of Latyns.[3] *Isidorus, libro octavo.* In þis kyng Latyn his tyme was Sibil Eritrea in hir floures, þat heet Erofila, and was i-bore in Babilon. Sche warnede þe Grees þat wente to Troye þat Troye schulde be destroyed, and þat Homerus schulde write lesynges afterward. Þere were ten Sibilis, and þis is þe fifte in nombre, and is i-putte tofore oþere. Þe firste Sibile was of Pers, þe[4] secounde of Libya, þe þridde was Delphica yn Appolyn his temple to fore þe bataile of Troye. Homerus wroot meny of hir vers in his bookes. Þe fourþe was Cimeria of Italy. Þe fifte was Eritrea, of hire is now oure speche. Þe sixte was Samia, i-bore in þe ylond[5] of Samos.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

MS. HARL. 2261.

IEPTE GALATIDES, son of an hoore of the tribe of Gad, was iugge in Israel vj. yere. In the firste yere off whom, Latinus the son of Fanus began to reigre in Ytaly, in whom he reignede xxxij^ti^ yere, from whiche tyme the realme of Latines toke begynnenge, and the name off the Laurentynes decreasede and faylede. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* Sibilla Eritria, Erifola by name, borne in Babilon, was in the tyme of Latinus, whiche seide to the Grekes Troy to be destroyede, and that the poete Omerus scholde write mony lesenges afterwarde. But þer were x. Sibilles, amonge whom sche was putte the v^the^ in ordre, and is preferrede afore other. The firste of whom was callede Sibilla Persica. The secunde Sibilla Libica. The thrydde Sibilla Delphica, whiche was geten in the temple of Apollo afore the batelle of Troy, of the versus of whom Omerus toke mony and putte theyme in his werkes. The iiij^the^ was Sibilla Temeria,[6] of Ytaly. The v^the^ was Sibilla Eritria, of whom we spake of afore. The vj^the^ was callede Sibilla Samia, of that yle callede Samos.

---

[1] *a comyn womans*, Cx.
[2] *of*] om. MS. (only.)
[3] *and þan . . . of Latyns*] om. Cx.
[4] *Pierse*, α.
[5] *londe*, MS. (only.)
[6] Sic Harl. MS. for *Cimmeria*.

Campania oriunda, quæ novem libros attulit Tarquinio Prisco, Romano regi,[1] Romanis decretis conscriptos;[2] octava fuit[3] Hellespontia,[4] in agro Trojano nata, quæ legitur Cyri regis[5] et Solonis[6] temporibus extitisse; nona fuit Phrygia, quæ legitur vaticinata Anchisæ; decima Tiburtina, dicta Albunea.[7] Quarum[8] omnium carmina extolluntur, eo quod de Deo, de Christo, de gentibus multa scripsisse comprobantur.[9] *Ranulphus.* Veruntamen Augustinus octavo[10] libro De Civitate capitulo sextodecimo videtur velle, quod Sibylla Erythræa floruerit[11] tempore Romuli; de qua etiam dicit quod multa de Christo manifeste scripsit, sicut patet in illis ejus[12] versibus:[13]—

J udicii signum tellus sudore madescet;[14]
E cœlo rex adveniet per sæcla futurus.
S cilicet in carne præsens ut judicet orbem,[15]

et cætera.[16] Quorum versuum capitales litteræ hunc reddunt sensum: JESUS CHRISTUS DEI FILIUS SALVATOR. *Isidorus, libro quarto, capitulo sexto.*[17] Sibylla nomen est officii, non personæ. Dicitur enim a *Syos*,[18] quod est deus, et *Bele*, quod est mens, quasi[19] habens

1 *Romano regi*] om. C.D.
2 *inscripto*, D.
3 *oriunda . . . fuit*] om. B.
4 *Ellespontea*, C.D.
5 *regis*] om. C.D.
6 *Salonis*, A.; *Salamonis*, B.D.; *Salonis*, E.
7 *Albunia*, E.
8 *Quorum*, E.
9 Extract slightly varied in C.D.
10 *decimo octavo*, A. The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 23.
11 *floruit*, A.
12 *ejus*] om. B.
13 *qui sic incipiunt*, ins. C.D.
14 *madescit*, B.
15 *E . . . orbem*] om. C.D. (D. having instead: sicut Augustinus illos ponit seriatim in omelia quadam de adventu.)
16 *Scilicet . . . cætera*] om. B.
17 *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.
18 *Scios*, A.; *Sios*, D.
19 *quasi*] om. A.

Þe seuenþe [was][1] Cumana, i-bore in Campania; sche[2] brouȝte nyne bookes to Torquynus Priscus, kyng of Romayns, in þe whiche were i-write þe domes of Rome. Þe eiȝþe was Ellespontia, i-bore in a feeld of Troye. Me redeþ þat sche[3] was in kyng Cyrus and [in][4] Solon[5] his tyme. Þe nynþe was Frigia. Me redeþ þat he[6] prophecied in Anchisa. Þe tenþe was Tyburtina, and heet also Albymea.[7] Þe bookes of hem alle beeþ i-preysed, for þey writen moche of God, of Crist, and also of Payenis.[8] ℞. Noþeles it semeþ þat Seynt Austyn, 18° libro, capitulo 16°, wil mene þat Sibille Eritria was in Romulus his tyme, and sche wroot moche of Criste, and þat openliche, as in þis vers of heroes: TREVISA.

"Token of doome þe erþe schal wiþ swoot[9] by come weet,
"Out of heuene þe kyng endeles schal come to siȝte.
"And þat in flesche present forto deme þe world."

And so forþ Sibil haþ many mo vers. Þe heed lettres of þese þre vers, and of þe oþere as þey beeþ i-write in Latyn, speleþ þis menynge:[10] Ihesus Crist, Goddes sone, Sauyour. *Isidorus, libro* 14°.[11] Sibille is a name of offys, and nouȝt of persone, and is i-seide of *syos*, þat is God, and of *beele*, þat is þouȝt; and so

---

where sche was borne. The vij^the^ was callede Sibilla Cumana, borne in Campania, whiche brouȝhte to olde Tarquinius, kynge of the Romanes, ix. bokes of the decretes of the Romanes. The viij^the^ was callede Sibilla Ellespontia, borne in the cuntre of Troye, whiche was seide to haue bene in the tyme of kynge Cyrus and Salomon. The ix^the^ was callede Sibilla Frigia. The x^the^ was callede Sibilla Tiburtina, the wrytenges of whom be extollede in that thei didde wryte mony thynges of God, of Criste, and of other peple. ℞. Neuerthelesse Seynte Austyn semethe to expresse, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo sexto decimo, that Sibilla Eritria was in the time of Romulus, of whom he seithe that sche did write mony thinges of Criste. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* That name Sibilla is a name of an office, not of a person, for hit is seide of this worde, *scios*, þat is, God, and *bele*, that is a mynde, and þerfore Sibilla is seide, a MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 Added from α. and Cx.
2 *he*, α.
3 *he*, α.
4 Added from α. and Cx.
5 *Salon*, MSS.
6 *she*, Cx.
7 *Albumea*, Cx. Some proper names in this chapter being very corrupt, have been left unaltered.
8 *Paynes*, Cx. (who varies the sentence.)
9 *of swete*, Cx.
10 *speketh thus*, Cx.
11 9, α.; *quarto*, Cx. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 8.

mentem Dei; unde sicut vir prophetans dicitur vates seu[1] propheta, sic fœmina prophetans Sibylla vocatur.[2] Sub his diebus tempore regis Latini[3] facta est Argonautarum navigatio, quæ[4] fuit occasio belli Trojani, quod sic introducitur. *Trogus, libro secundo.*

Ægeus et Medea. Post Neptunum successorem Ericthonii regnum Atheniensium ad Ægeum descenderat, qui ex priore uxore filium Theseum genuerat; tandem, uxore illa mortua, desponsavit Medeam filiam regis Colchorum, ex qua genuit filium suum Medum. Medea tandem sibi[5] timens[6] propter adultam Thesei privigni sui ætatem, ad patrem suum cum filio[7] Medo Colchos rediit.[8]

Theseus. Post[9] Ægeum apud Athenas regnavit filius suus Theseus, qui aliquando cum Hercule profectus Amazones contrivit.

Demophon. Post Theseum Demophon[10] filius ejus successit, qui adversus Trojanos Græcis opem tulit *Phrygius.*[11]

Pelias. Igitur Pelias rex Peloponnesensis[12] seu Thessaliæ,[13] timens sibi ne Jason illustris filius Æsonis fratris sui regnum[14] invaderet, se expulso, suadet

[1] *vel*, C.D.

[2] *dicitur*, C.D. B. adds *quia habens mentem Dei.*

[3] *regis Latini*] Latini prædicti, C.D.

[4] *et*, C.D.

[5] *sibi*] om. B.

[6] *metuens*, C.D.

[7] *suo*, ins. B.

[8] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[9] *Post . . . Phrygius*] om. C.D.; for *Phrygius*, B. has *Trogus libro xj°.*; A. has *Trogus* 42.

[10] *Demefon*, B.

[11] *Frigius*, E. The text is correct. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 1, which explains the absurd gloss, *seu Thessaliæ*; but Higden has also borrowed from Justin, lib. xlii. c. 2.

[12] *Peloponensis*, MSS., as usual.

[13] *seu Thessaliæ*] om. C.D.

[14] *suum*, ins. B.

Sibil is i-seide as it were a womman þat haþ Goddes[1] þouȝt. þerfore as a man þat prophecieþ is i-cleped a prophete, so a womman þat prophecieþ is i-cleped Sibil. Vnder þis dayes in kyng Latyns tyme was þe seyllynge i-made þat is i-cleped þe seylynge of Argonautes. þat seillynge was cause and occasioun of þe bataille of Troye, and bygan in þis manere. *Trogus, libro* 2°. After Neptunus, þe successour of Erictonius,[2] þe kyngdom of Athene fil to Egeus, þat hadde i-gete his sone Theseus on his firste wif; and at þe laste whanne þat wyf was deed, he wedded Medea, þe kynges douȝter of Colchos, and gat on hire Medus. At þe laste Medea dredde hir step sone[3] Theseus, whan he come to age, and took wiþ here hir sone Medus, and wente hoom to hire fader in to Colchos. After Egeus his sone Theseus reignede in Athene; he wente somtyme wiþ Hercules and werred, and ouercome þe Amazones. After Theseus his sone Demophon regnede; he halp[4] þe Grees aȝenst þe Troians. *Trogus, libro* 42°. þanne Pelias, kyng of Peloponens, þat is of Thessalia, dredde leste Iason þe noble werriour[5] wolde werre in his londes[6] and putte hym out. Iason was Eson his sone; Eson was Pelias his owne broþer. Pelias brouȝte TREVISA.

---

woman hauenge the mynde of God. Wherefore like as a man prophecyenge is callede Vates, soe in lyke wise a woman prophecienge is callede Sibilla. In this tyme of Latinus the kynge, the Organautes seylede and keped the see, whiche was an occasion of the batelle of Troy, whiche was inducede in þis maner. *Trogus, libro secundo.* The realme of men of Athenes descendede to Egeus, after Neptunus, the successor of Erictonius, whiche gate of his firste wife a son callede Theseus. That wife dedde, he did wedde Medea, the doȝhter of the kynge of Colchos, of whom he gate a son callede Medus. Medea, dredenge Theseus when that he was commen to age, turnede ageyne to Colchos to here fader, with Medus here sonne. Theseus reignede at Athenes after Egeus his fader, whiche, goenge furthe with Hercules, hade the victory of the Amazones. Demophon, the son of Theseus, succedede in that realme, whiche ȝafe helpe to þe Grekes ageyne the Troianes. *Trogus, libro* 42°. Pelias,[7] kynge of Peloponense other of Thessalia, dredenge leste that the nowble man, Iason by name, son of Eson his brother, scholde entre in to his realme, movede Iason MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *God his, a.*
[2] So *a.*; *Erictorius*, MS. Read *Erichthonius.*
[3] So *a. β. γ.*, Cx.; *sone*, MS.
[4] *halp and assisted*, Cx.
[5] *werriour*] om. *a. β. γ.* and Cx.
[6] *lond*, Cx.
[7] *Peleas*, Harl. MS. here and below.

Jasoni quærere pellem auream apud Colchos insulam; sperans per hoc juvenis interitum provenire aut ex longa navigatione aut ex bello barbariei.[1] *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*[2] Insuper et Pelias fecit[3] Argum parare navem pulcherrimam huic profectioni congruentem. *Petrus.* Ab hoc nomine, Argon, Argonautæ descenderunt, qui fuerunt juvenes validi ad profectionem Jasonis undecumque[4] collecti, cum quibus Phrygiam primo applicuit,[5] regnante tunc ibidem Laomedonte. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*[6] Sed et Jason de finibus Phrygiæ repulsus cum suis sodalibus[7] Colchos venit, regem devicit, filium regis Ægealium occidit, pellem auream abstulit, Medeam regis filiam abduxit, et uxorem sibi fecit, quam tamen postmodum repudiavit. Sed cum postea[8] a Peliæ[9] regis filiis esset pulsus[10] e[11] Thessalia, reconciliata sibi Medea cum privigno[12] suo Medo de Ægeo rege Atheniensium suscepto,[13] ingentem juvenum multitudinem recollegit, Colchos repetiit, ubi socerum[14] suum regem regno[15] pulsum[16] viriliter restituit, nonnullas etiam civitates in recompensationem prioris injuriæ regno ejus adjecit. *Phrygius Dares.* Igitur Jason,[17]

Argonautæ.

---

[1] *barbari,* A.B.; *barbariæ,* Just. xlii. 2.

[2] *Frigius Dares,* A.B.C.D., which is better. See § 1.

[3] *et . . . fecit*] fecit Pelleas, B.

[4] *ubicumque,* C. (not D.)

[5] *applicavit,* C. (not D.)

[6] *primo,* C. *libro quarto,* D. The text is correct. See lib. xlii. c. 2. and c. 3.

[7] *juvenibus,* C.D.

[8] *postea*] om. B.

[9] *Pellee,* B.

[10] *expulsus,* B.

[11] *e*] a, C. (not D.)

[12] *primogenito,* B.; *filio,* C.D.

[13] *de . . . suscepto*] om. C.D.

[14] *socium,* B.

[15] *suo quodam,* ins. C.D.

[16] *expulsum,* B.

[17] *Jason*] om. B.

TREVISA.

Iason in witte forto fette[1] þe goldene flees at Colchos and hopede þerby þat þe ȝong man schulde be deed oþer for long seillynge in þe see oþer in bataile aȝenst straunge naciouns. *Phrygius*[2] *Dares.* Þerfore Pelias made Argus ordeyne a wel faire schippe couenable to þis seillynge and passage. *Petrus.* Of þis name Argon comeþ þis name Argonaute. Argonaute were stalworþe ȝonge men i-gadred al aboute for Iason his viage; þanne Iason seillede forþ wiþ þese men and londede first in Frigia. Þo Laomedon[3] reignede þere. *Trogus.* But Iason was put out of Frigia and come in to Colchos, and ouercome þe kyng and slowȝ his sone Egealius and took þe goldene flees, and had wiþ hym Medea[4] þe kynges douȝter, and made hire his wyf. Noþeles aftirward he forsook hire and putte hir away. But afterward whan kyng Pelias his sone was put out of Thessalia, Iason reconsilede[5] and took aȝen his wif Medea wiþ his stepsone Medus, and gaderede a stronge multitude of ȝonge men and wente in to Colchos and restored orpedliche[6] his wifes fader, þat was putte out of his kyngdom, and ȝaf hym meny citees to his kyngdom in[7] recompensacioun and amendement of þe olde wrong. *Phrygius*

MS. HARL. 2261.

to goe to the yle of Colchos to seche the skynne of golde, supposenge that by that laboure he scholde be pereschede other in the see other þro batelle on londe. *Phrygius Dares,*[2] xxxij^{ti}. Wherefore Pelias made Argus to ordeyne ryalle schippes apte and pleasaunt to theyme. *Petrus.* The peple that were callede Argonautes, toke name of Argon, whiche were myȝhty men, gedrede of alle costes to go with Iason. Whiche londede firste in Frigia, Laomedon reignenge there in that tyme. *Trogus.* But Iason, expulsede from Frigia, come with his felowschippe to Colchos, and ouercome the kynge of hit, sleenge Egealius his son, and toke with hym the skynne of golde, and also Medea, the doȝhter of that kynge, and toke here to his wife, whom he refusede afterwarde. But when that Iason was expulsede from Thessalia by the sonnes of Pelias, and Medea his wyfe reconsilede to hym, with Medus here son, getten by Egeus kynge of Athenes, he gedrede a grete hoste and wente to that yle callede Colchos, and restored his fader in lawe vn to his realme, whiche was expulsede from hit, and brouȝhte to his realme mony oþer cites, in recompensation of the wronge doen afore. *Phrygius Dares.* After that Iason hade

---

[1] *fetche*, Cx.
[2] *Frigius*, MSS. and Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *Laomadon*, MS.
[4] So Cx.; *Meda*, MS.
[5] *recounseylled*, Cx.
[6] *orpedly*, Cx.
[7] So α. β. γ., Cx.; *and*, MS.

Jason Trojam invadit et Hesionam rapit.

postquam Colchos subjugaverat, invitatis secum Castore et Polluce, Peleo[1] de Phthia,[2] Telamone de Salamine,[3] paratis quindecim navibus Phrygiam[4] nocte appulit, Laomedontem regem occidit, Ilium in[5] Troja[6] vastavit, Hesionam regis filiam rapuit, quam Telamoni, militi[7] suo, uxorem[8] dedit; eo quod primus Trojam intraverat.[9] Præda quoque[10] facta, Jason ad sua cum suis[11] rediit. Quo[12] audito Priamus Laomedontis primogenitus Ilium portis et muris firmavit et regnare cœpit.

Cap. XXIV.

De Abessa; reliqua de bello Trojano narrantur.[13]

Abessa.

Anno Abr. 825. Anno Abessa 1.

Abessa Bedlemita[14] judicavit Israel septem annis; cujus[15] anno secundo Priamus rex Phrygiæ seu Trojæ[16] misit Antenorem[17] ad Græcos, dicens se omnes injurias præteritas æquanimiter passurum, si

Priamus Hesionam requirit.

---

[1] *Pelleo de*, B.

[2] *Scthia*, D.; *Scitia*, MSS. The emendation is certain. See Dar. Phryg. § 3.

[3] *Salmania*, B.; *Salomonia*, D. *Salamina*, E.

[4] *de*, ins. C.D.

[5] *in*] de, E.

[6] *Troya*, MSS., and similarly below.

[7] *militi*] om. C.D.

[8] *in uxorem*, D.

[9] *introierit*, C.D.

[10] *Prædaque*, C.D.

[11] Transposed in A.B.

[12] *Hoc*, C.D.

[13] No title in MSS.

[14] *Beethlemita*, A.; *Bethelemita*, B.; *Bethleemita*, D.; *mortuo Jepte*, ins. C.D.

[15] *cujus*] om. B.

[16] *Trogæ*, B.

[17] *Anthenorem*, MSS.

Dares. Whan Iason hadde[1] sodued Colchos, he hadde wiþ hym at his prayenge[2] Castor, Pollux, Peleus of[3] Scitia, Telamon[4] of Salomina,[5] and come yn wiþ fyue schippes by nyȝte into Frigia and slow Laomedon þe kyng and destroyed Ilium in Troye. He rauysched Hesiona þe kynges douȝter and ȝaf hire to his kniȝt Telamon of Salamina to wife;[6] for he was þe firste þat entrede in to Troye and[7] þere took[8] a grete pray. And Iason tornede aȝen wiþ his men. Whan Priamus[9] Laomedon his eldest sone herde and wiste of al þis, he strengþede Ilium þat is Troye wiþ ȝates and wiþ walles and bygan for to reigne. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum. Abessa.

ABESSA of Bethleem was iuge in Israel seuene ȝere. In his secounde ȝere Priamus kyng of Frigia, þat is kyng of Troye, sente Antenor to þe Grees,[10] and seide þat he wolde gladliche forȝeue al trespas þat was doo to forehonde,[11] ȝif þey wolde

---

made subiecte that yle of Colchos, desirede with hym Castor and Pollux, and Peleus of Scitia, and Thelamon of Salamina, with v. schippes entrede in to Frigia in the nyȝhte, and did sle Laomedon the kynge of hit, and wastede Troy, and toke awey Hesion the kynges doȝhter, whom he toke to Telamon[4] his knyȝhte, to be his wife, in that he entrede in to the cite of Troy firste. And when thei hade taken preyes at theire pleasure, Iason returnede with his felowschippe towarde his cuntre. Priamus the son of Laomedon, herenge of that treason, made that city of Troy stronge, dressenge hit with ȝates and walles, and began to reigne in hit. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

ABESSA, of the cuntre of Bethleem, was iugge in Israel vij. yeres, and reignede þer. In the firste yere of whom Priamus, the kynge off Frigia other elles Troy, sende Anthenor vn to the Grekes, seyenge that he wolde suffre alle

---

1 *Thanne Iason whanne he hadde*, α. β. γ.
2 Cx. ins. *Hercules.*
3 *and of*, MS., α. (not β. γ. Cx.) For *Scitia* read *Phthia*. See above.
4 *Thelamon*, MSS. and Cx.
5 So β. γ.; *Salomina*, MS., α. Read *Salamis*.
6 *wyre*, α.
7 *and*] om. α.
8 *was i-take*, α. β. γ.; *was taken*, Cx.
9 *Pryamus*, MS. A few similar corrections have been made tacitly in this chapter.
10 *Grekes*, Cx.; and so below.
11 *trespasses that they had doo bifore*, Cx.

Hesiona soror sua dudum rapta sibi[1] redderetur. Negantibus[2] Græcis Priamus bellum instaurat, Hectorem primogenitum suum cæteris præficit. Id idem Alexander, qui et Paris,[3] frater Hectoris hortatur. Asserit enim,[4] dum quondam in Ida silva[5] venatum iret, vidisse se in somnis Mercurium[6] adduxisse Junonem, Venerem, et Minervam, ut inter illas de specie judicaret; tuncque Minervam sibi[7] promisisse sapientiam,[8] si ejus speciem præferret.[9] Helenus alter frater vaticinatur in contrarium, dicens, si Alexander uxorem de Græcia acciperet, Graios[10] venturos et Ilium vastaturos. Id idem vaticinata est Cassandra. Nihilominus naves parantur, et[11] Alexander cum Antenore[12] Græciam mittuntur. Ubi dum ad[13] insulam Cytheram[14] ad festum Junonis mulieres convenirent, Helenam regis Menelai uxorem ad videndum Alexandri formam ibi occurrentem Paris[15] rapuit, domumque rediit. Ad hæc Priamus[16] applaudit,[17] quasi Hesionam sororem suam

Paris cum Antenore ad Græcos mittitur.

Helenam rapit.

---

[1] *sibi*] om. D.
[2] *de gentilibus*, B.
[3] *Paris qui et frater*, B.
[4] *Nam asseruit*, C.D.
[5] *Idam silvam*, C.D.
[6] *sibi*, ins. C.D.
[7] *sibi*] om. B.
[8] *sapientiam*] om. C.D.
[9] *daturam se ei uxorem quæ in Græcia pulcrior foret*, ins. C.D. ; *et Venerem sibi promisisse uxorem de mundo pulchriorem si ejus speciem præferret*, A.B. and Harl. tr. The text is evidently incomplete. See Trevisa.
[10] *Græcos*, A.D. ; om. B.
[11] *et*] om. C.D.
[12] *cæterisque pluribus*, ins. C.D.
[13] *in*, C.D.
[14] *Cithaream*, MSS. (and versions).
[15] *Paris*] om. C.D., with other slight variations.
[16] *Priamus quoque*, C.D.
[17] *appellandi*, B.

TREVISA.

sende aȝen his suster Hesiona, þat þey hadde i-raueschéd. Þe Grees wolde nouȝt. Priamus arrayed for þe bataille and made his eldest sone Hector[1] ledere of oþere men. Alisaundre, þat heet Paris also, Hector his broþer, assenteþ her to, and seiþ þat whanne he hontede some tyme in þe woode þat hatte Ida,[2] he sleep[3] and mette[4] þat Mercurius brouȝte abowe to fore hym Iuno, Venus, and Minerua, for he schulde deme whiche of hem was fairest; and Minerua by heet hym wisdom, [Iuno worship, and Venus behete him][5] þe fairest wif of þe worlde, ȝif he wolde deme þat[6] sche were þe fairest. Helenus þe oþer broþer prophecied þe contrarie; and seide þat ȝif Alisaundre, þat heet Paris, took a wyf of Grees,[7] [þe Grees][8] wolde come and destroye Ilium, þat is Troye. Þat womman Cassandra propheciede þe same. Noþeles schippes were arrayed, and Alisaundre, þat heet Paris, wiþ Antenor[9] sent[10] into Grecia, and whenne wommen come[11] into þe ilond Cythera to þe feste of Iuno, Helena kyng Menelaus his wif come forto see þe fairnesse of Paris, [and Paris][12] raueschéd hire and took hir wiþ hym and torned home aȝen.[13] Þan was Priamus glad i-now,

MS. HARL. 2261.

iniuryes a-paste if that Hesiona his sustyr, taken aweye by theyme, myȝhte be restorede. The men of Grece denyenge that, Priamus made redy to make batelle ageyne theyme, makenge Hector, his firste son, gouernoure and rewlere of hit, whiche thynge Alexander other Paris exhortede to be fullefillede, seyenge that as he wente to hunte in a woode callede Ida, he see in his slepe Mercury to haue brouȝhte to hym Venus and Minerua to iugge of the beawte of theyme. Then Minerua promisede to hym sapience, if that he wolde preferre here beaute; and Venus promisede to hym oon of the feireste women of þe worlde to his wife, if þat he wolde preferre here beawte. Neuerthelesse schippes were made redy, and Alexander with Antenor were sende to the londe of Grece, whiche, commenge to an yle callede Cythera, where women were gedrede to the feste of Iuno, Paris toke awey Helena, the wife of kynge Menelaus, commenge to mete Paris to beholde his beawte, and broȝhte here to Priamus. At whiche acte Priamus ioyede moche,

[1] So β., Cx.; *Ector*, MS., here and below.

[2] So α., Cx.; *Yda*, MS.

[3] *slept*, Cx.

[4] *dremed*, Cx.

[5] Added from Cx. (only); *wyt and wysdom and the fayreste wyf*, γ.

[6] So α. and Cx.; *yf*, MS.

[7] *Grece*, Cx.

[8] Added from α. and Cx.

[9] *Anthenore*, MS., but *Antenor* above.

[10] *and Paris with Anthenor were sente*, Cx.

[11] *tho men came*, Cx.

[12] Added from α. β. γ., Cx.; MSS. sometimes have *Parys*.

[13] *and toke hir with hym in to Troy*, Cx. (omitting the rest.)

Græci classem parant,

per hoc recuperaturus. Igitur Menelao rege Lacedæmoniæ fratri suo Agamemnoni regi Mycenarum[1] de raptu uxoris suæ[2] gravius[3] conquerenti adunantur[4] robusti[5] quinque;[6] Achilles, Patroclus, Ulixes, Ajax, Nestor, cum cæteris validis numero quadraginta septem, habentes naves paratas in portu Athenarum[7] numero mille ducentas. Deinde responso[8] accepto ab Apolline Delphico, quod in decimo anno Ilium foret subvertendum, Græci mare sulcant, classem navium[9] solvunt, in Phrygia prædas agunt, et redeunt. Interea mittit Agammenon legatos Ulixem et Diomedem ad regem Priamum, si vellet Helenam reddere. Priamus illico commemorat Argonautarum injuriam, patris interitum, sororis raptum,[10] Antenoris legati sui contemptum; idcirco[11] pacem repudiat, et[12] bellum indicit.[13] Igitur exercitu hinc inde congregato Hector occidit Protesilaum, Patroclum et Merionem,[14] multosque sauciat; usque dum Ajax Telamonius, con-

et Phrygiam vastant.

Agamemnon ad Priamum legatos mittit.

Bellum indicitur.

[1] *Mecenorum*, MSS.
[2] *de . . . suæ*] om. C.D.
[3] *graviter*, B.
[4] *congregantur*, C.D.
[5] *fortes*, C.D.
[6] *quique*, MSS. See Harl. translation.
[7] *Atheniensi*, C.D.
[8] *Responsoque*, C.D.
[9] *navium*] om. C.D.
[10] *et*, ins. C.D.
[11] *ideoque*, C.D.
[12] *et*] om. C.D.
[13] So A.B.; *inducit*, E.
[14] *Menonem*, E.

TREVISA.

as þey he schulde rekke neuere and haue aȝen his suster Hesiona.[1] Þan Menelaus kyng of Lacedemonia made a greuous[2] playnt to his broþer Agamemnon,[3] kyng of Messenes,[4] of þe rauyschinge of his wif, and gadrede passyng strong men, Achille, Patroclus, Vlixes,[5] Aiax, Nestor, wiþ oþere stalworþe men, seuen and fourty; and hadde schippes redy in þe hauene of Athene[6] in nombre of a þowsand and two hondred, and hadde answere of Appolyn Delphicus, þat Ilium, þat is Troye, schulde be destroyed in þe tenþe ȝere. Þe Grees took vp here ancres and seillede on þe see, and took grete prayes, and tornede home aȝe. In þe mene tyme Agamemnon sende messangers Vlixes and Diomedes to kyng Priamus, ȝif he wolde ȝelde vp Helene, and sende hir home aȝen. Þanne Priamus byþouȝt hym, and hadde anon in mynde þe wrong of þe Argonautes,[7] þe deth of his fader, þe rauyschynge of his suster, þe displesynge of his messager Antenor. Þerfore he forsook pees, and heet array[8] for þe werre. Þan whan þe oost was i-gadred in eiþer side, Hector slow Protesilaus[9] and Menon,[10] and slow and felde to þe[11] grounde meny men

MS. HARL. 2261.

thenkenge to recure Hesiona his sustyr by that. Wherefore Menelaus, kynge of Lacedemonia, makenge compleynte to Agamemnon,[3] kynge of Mecenas, v. myȝhty men condescende to theire helpe, whiche were Achilles, Patroclus, Vlixes, Aiax, and Nestor, with mony other stronge men, xlvij. m[l] in nowmbre, hauenge a m[l] and cc. schippes redy at Athenes in the haven or porte. After that Apollo Delphicus ȝafe an answere to theyme that Troye scholde be destroyede after the x[the] yere; wherefore the Grekes goenge to the see londede in Frigia, and robbenge there, returnede after that thei hade taken þeire pray. Then Agamemnon[3] sende Vlixes and Diomedes as messyngeres to kynge Priamus that he scholde delyuere Helena. Then Priamus remembrede the iniurye doen to hym by the Argonautes, the dethe of his fader, and the takenge awey of his sustyr, and the contempte off Antenor his messyngere, refusethe peace, desirenge batelle. Wherefore an[12] grete hoste gedrede and metenge to gedre, Hector did sle Protesilaus[9] and Meno, and woundede soore mony other, vn til that Aiax, son of

[1] *as þey . . . Hesiona*] wenyng therby recouer his sister Hesiona, Cx.
[2] *greet and greuous*, Cx.
[3] *Agamenon* and *Agamynon*, MSS., and so below.
[4] *Mescenes*, β. γ.
[5] So β. γ., Cx.; *Flixes*, MS., α., and so below.
[6] *of Athene*] om. Cx.
[7] *Argenautes*, MS.
[8] *heet array*] ordeyned, Cx.
[9] *Prothesilaus*, MS.; *Prothesalaus*, Harl. MS.
[10] So MSS. here and below. The translators had *Menonem* (i.e. *Memnon*) in their text.
[11] *þe*] om. α. β.
[12] So the MS.

sobrinus ejus de Hesiona natus, recognita[1] inter eos consanguinitate, eum impediret. Interim[2] conceduntur induciæ biennales, ut quisque[3] mortuum suum[4] sepeliat; sed[5] post biennium bellum repetitur, in quo Hector decem fortes duces occidit. Econtra Achilles quatuor illustres viros interimit; ac[6] per octoginta dies acriter pugnatum est continue. Et post dantur induciæ triennales.[7] Post quas, inito certamine, plures utriusque[8] corruunt. Et quamvis Hector per somnium Andromachæ uxoris suæ, ne in bellum prodiret eo die admonitus fuisset,[9] in bellum tamen properat et ab Achille occiditur.[10] Quo sepulto induciæ dantur ad[11] annum. Dumque dies anniversarius[12] Hectoris ageretur, adest Achilles amore Polyxenæ filiæ Priami nimium[13] succensus, cujus nuptias dum petit et consequitur[14] a bello se[15] subtrahit, asserens iniquum fore propter raptum Helenæ totam Europam conturbari.

Post inducias biennales bellum repetitur.

Hectoris mors.

---

[1] *cognita,* C.D.
[2] *Ideo,* C. (not D.)
[3] *quilibet,* C. (not D.)
[4] *mortuos suos,* C.D.
[5] *sed*] om. C.D.
[6] *ac*] om. C.D.
[7] Altered verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.
[8] *utrimque,* C.D.
[9] *eo . . . fuisset*] moveretur, C.D.
[10] *interficitur,* C.D.
[11] *per,* A.D.
[12] So B.; *anniversaria,* A.C.D.E.
[13] *nimium*] om. C.D.
[14] *et consequitur*] quibus concessis, C.D., with other slight variations.
[15] *se*] om. B.

forto[1] þat his cosyn Hesiona sone, Aiax Telamonius,[2] knowleched kynrede bytwene hem, and so lette hym of his rees. Þe mene tyme were truyse i-take for two ȝere, þat þey myȝte burye hir men þat were i-slawe.[3] But after two ȝere þey fenge in a strong bataille. Hector slowȝ ten stalworþe dukes, and Achilles in þe oþer side slow foure stalworþe men and noble; and þe bataile durede foure score dayes contynueliche in harde fyȝtinge and stronge. And after þat were[4] trewes i-take for þre ȝere, and after þe trewes þey fenge on forto fiȝte and slowȝ ful meny men in eiþer side,[5] and Andromach, Hector his wif, warned Hector by here sweuene[6] þat he schulde[7] þat day nouȝt[8] wende in to batayle.[9] Noþeles Hector wente in to bataile and was i-slawe of Achilles. And whan Hector was i-buried, were trewes i-take for a ȝere. Whan Hector his mynde day was i-holde, Achilles was þerat, and loued hugeliche Polyxena,[10] kyng Priamus his douȝter, and axede and had[11] hir to his wif, and wiþdrowe hym from þe bataille, and seide þat it was euel i-doo[12] forto destourbe[13] al Europa for þe raueschynge of Helen. But at — TREVISA.

Hesiona, sustir to Priamus, did lette hym knowenge consanguinite betwene theyme. After that batelle doen, respite of ij. yere was grawntede, that men sleyne myȝhte be beryede. But that space a-paste, the batelle began, contynuenge by lxxx. daies, in whiche batelle Hector did sle x. nowble dukes, and Achilles did sle iiij. stronge men. After whiche batelle doen, space and respite of ij. yere were grawntede. The batelle begunne ageyne, mony nowble men were sleyne, where Hector, warnede by Andromacha his wife, that he scholde not goe to batelle in that day, was sleyne by Achilles, whiche beryede, respite was ȝiffen by a yere. And at the ende of the yere, in the anniuersary day of Hector, Achilles, movede to the luffe of Polixena, doȝhter of kynge Priamus, wente to theyme. Whiche desirenge of Priamus to haue Polyxena,[10] his doȝhter, to his wife, and hauenge grawnte, come not to þe batelle, seyenge that hit was a wickede thynge alle Europe to be trowblede for takenge aweye of Helena. Whiche, goenge to batelle at — MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *forto*] til, Cx.
[2] *Thelamonius*, MS.
[3] *slayn*, Cx.
[4] *was*, Cx.; but *were* (*trewes*) just below.
[5] Sentence slightly varied in Cx.
[6] *dreame*, Cx.
[7] *not þat*, α. and Cx.
[8] *nouȝt*] om. α. and Cx.
[9] *þe batayle*, α., here and below.
[10] *Polixena*, MSS.; *Policena*, Cx.
[11] *and had*] to have, Cx.
[12] *done*, Cx.
[13] *destrouble*, Cx.

Tandem rogatu Græcorum procedens, a Troilo, qui multos Græcos[1] occiderat, vulneratur.[2] Quo jam[3] exasperatus ipsum Troilum et Memnonem occidit. Exinde amaricata Hecuba, uxor Priami, dolum cogitat,[4] diem Achilli statuit,[5] qua filiam suam Polyxenam[6] ducat; qua tandem adveniente Alexander, qui et Paris, Achillem dolose occidit. Inde responso a diis accepto quod per progeniem Achillis Græci forent victuri, Neoptolemus, filius Achillis, in bellum prodit; in quo Ajax et Alexander alter ab altero letaliter vulnerantur.[7] Septimo igitur certaminis anno supervenit[8] Penthesilea,[9] regina Amazonum, in auxilium Trojanorum; quæ Græcorum obsidionem dissolvit, et multas de navibus Græcorum cremavit; veruntamen a Neoptolemo, quem vulneraverat, occiditur.[10] Post hoc exhortantibus Antenore et Ænea, ut Helena redderetur et pax peteretur, indignatur

Achillis mors.

Ajax et Paris alter alterum trucidant.

Amazones Trojanos adjuvant.

[1] *jam*, ins. C.D.
[2] *vulnerat*, B.
[3] *Quo jam*] qui jam, B.; unde, C.D.
[4] *excogitat*, A.B.C.D.
[5] *constituit*, C. (not D.)
[6] *Polyxenam*] om. C.D.
[7] *vulneratur*, D.
[8] *venit*, B.
[9] *Pentasilea*, MSS.
[10] Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

þe laste he wente forþ at þe prayere of þe Grees, and was i-wounded of Troilus,[1] þat hadde i-slawe meny Grees. Þerfore he was angri and wrooþ, and slow Troilus and Menon also. Þan was Hecuba wonder wrooþ, Priamus his wif, and by þouȝte [here of gyle],[2] and sette Achilles a day whan he schulde come and fecche home his wyf Polyxena, þat was hir owne douȝter. And whanne þe day was i-come,[3] Alisaundre, þat het Paris, slow Achilles gilefulliche. Þerfore þey hadde answere of goddes, þat þe Grees schulde haue þe victorie by Achilles his lynage. Neoptolemus,[4] Achilles his sone, wente forþ into bataille; in þe whiche bataile Alisaundre[5] and Aiax were i-wounded to þe deth eiþer of oþer. Þanne þe seuenþe ȝere of þe bataille[6] come Penthesilea,[7] queene of Amazones,[8] in help and socour of þe Troians, and brak þe sege of þe Grees, and brende meny of hir schippes. Noþeles sche was i-slawe of Neoptolemus þat sche hade i-wounded. After þat Antenor[9] and Eneas counsaillede forto delyuere hoom Eleyne, and forto axe[10] pees. Priamus took grete indignacioun [of here TREVISA.

---

the laste thro the supplication of the Grekes, was woundede soore of Troilus, whiche hade sleyne and woundede mony Grekes. Achilles seenge that, and vexede soore, did sle Troilus and Meno. Then Hecuba, the wife of Priamus, hauenge hym in despecte, intendede decepcion, thenkenge to ordeyne a day to Achilles in whom he scholde wedde Polyxena here doȝhter. Achilles, comenge to theyme that tyme assignede, was sleyne by disseite of Paris other Alexander. Where off an answere was ȝiffen of goddes that men of Grece scholde be victores thro the bloode of Achilles. Then Neoptolemus,[4] the son of Achilles, wente furthe to batelle, in whom Aiax and Alexander woundede either other dedely. Penthesilea,[7] the qwene of the Amazones, come to helpe the Troianes in the vij^the yere of theire batelles and fiȝhte, whiche dissoluede the sege of the Grekes and brente mony of theire schippes. Neuerthelesse that qwene Penthesilea[7] was sleyne of the son of Achilles, Neoptolemus[4] by name, whom sche hade woundede soore. After that, Antenor[9] and Eneas movenge Priamus that Helena, wife to Menelaus, scholde be restorede, he hade indignacion, MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Troylus*, MS. and Cx.
[2] Added from α. β. and Cx.
[3] *comen*, Cx.
[4] *Neoptholomus*, MSS., and so below; *Neoptholomeus*, Harl. MS.
[5] *Paris*, Cx.
[6] *siege*, Cx.
[7] *Pentasilia*, or *Pentisilia*, MSS.
[8] *Amosons*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *Anthenore*, MS., as often; *Anthenor*, Harl. MS.
[10] *desire*, Cx.

Priamus; mortem eis intentans, si ultra id persuaderent.[1] Quamobrem ipsi indignati[2] mittunt Polydamantem ad Græcos, urbis traditionem pro salute sua[3] offerentes. Concessa[4] igitur pace illis tribus et omnibus suis, scilicet Antenori, Æneæ, et[5] Polydamanti, urbs de nocte hostibus aperitur; ubi Priamus a Neoptolemo etiam ad aras deorum confugiens occiditur.[6] Æneas Polyxenam apud patrem suum Anchisen[7] abscondit ad instantiam Helenæ; libertas Andromachæ conceditur. Polyxena diu quæsita et tandem inventa a Neoptolemo ad patris sui[8] tumulum jugulatur. Æneas propter absconsionem Polyxenæ discedere jubetur; Antenori terra illa relinquitur; Helena cum suo Menelao domum redit.[9] Igitur pugnatum fuerat[10] apud Trojam decem annis sex mensibus, ceciderunt ex Trojanis ante urbem proditam dclxxvi.,[11] sed urbe prodita cclxxviij.[12] Æneas ergo cum viginti quatuor navibus a patria discessit, comitantibus eum tribus

Troja traditur.

Mors Priami,

et Polyxenæ.

Finis belli Trojani.

[1] *si . . . persuaderent*] om. C.D.
[2] *indignati*] om. C.D.
[3] *sua*] om. B.
[4] *Promissa*, C.D.
[5] So B.D.; om. A.E.
[6] Altered verbally in C.D.
[7] *Enchisen*, B.
[8] *sui*] om. A.D.
[9] *rediit*, C.D.; with other slight variations.
[10] *fuit*, B.; *pugnatum est itaque*, D.
[11] *milia*, ins. B.C.D.
[12] *milia*, ins. B.C.D. (D. has 296.)

TREVISA.

counsail, and seide he schulde dey ȝif euere he were so wood to counsail þat eftsones. Þerfore þey took greet indignacioun,][1] and sente Polydamas to þe Grees forto betraye þe citee for hire owne sauacioun. The Grees grauntede pees to þese þre, [to][2] Antenor, to Eneas, to Polydamas, and to alle hires,[3] and þe citee was i-oponed by nyȝte to þe enemyes.[4] Þanne Priamus fliȝ to auters of goddes, and Neoptolemus pursued hym and slow hym stan deed.[5] Eneas hidde Polyxena at his fader Anchises at þe prayer of Helene. Andromache hadde fredom i-graunted. Polyxena was longe i-souȝt, and at þe laste i-founde and i-slawe of Neoptolemus at here fader tombe. Eneas, for he hadde hidde Polyxena, was i-hote be agoo. Þe londe was i-lefte to Antenor. Helen wente home aȝen wiþ Menelaus. Me hadde i-fouȝte at Troye ten ȝere and sixe monþes, and were i-slawe of þe Troians, or þe citee was bytrayed, sixe hondred þousand þre skore and sixtene; and whan þe citee was betrayed, þre score þowsand and eiȝten þowsand.[6] Þanne Eneas wente out of þe contray wiþ foure and twenty schippes, and wiþ hym þre þowsend men and þre

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

seyenge þei scholde loose theire lyfes, if thei movede to hym eny more of þat mater. Wherefore thei, hauenge indignacion, sende Polydamas to þe Grekes, offerenge to theym the delyueraunce of the cite, the lifes of theym grauntede and of theire men. Whiche grauntenge to theyme peace, and to alle theire men, that is to saye, vn to Antenor, Eneas, and to Polydamas, and to alle theire men, the ȝates of the cite were sette open to the Grekes in þe nyȝhte. Where Priamus was sleyne of Neoptolomus. Eneas takenge Polyxena, hidde here at a place of Anchisen his fader, in the temple of goddes. Also liberte was grauntede to Andromacha at the instaunce of Helena. Polyxena, doȝhter to Priamus, founde at the laste, was throtelede at the beryalle of here fader. Wherefore Eneas was commaundede to departe from that cuntre, for the hidenge off Polyxena. That londe was lefte to Antenor, and Helena was restorede to Menelaus her howsebonde, kynge of Athenes. Where thei did fiȝhte by x. yere and vj. monethes, and there were sleyne of the Troianes, afore the treason of hit, vj^{c}. lxxvj. m^{l}, and after the treason of that cite cc. lxxviij. m^{l}. Eneas departede from that cuntre, takenge with hym xx^{ti}iiij schippes, with iij. m^{l}. men and ccc.;

---

[1] Added from α. and Cx. (β. has *þei* for *he* twice.)
[2] Added from α. β. and Cx.
[3] *to alle theyr retinue*, Cx.
[4] *Grekes*, Cx.
[5] *stan deed*] om. Cx.
[6] Sentence recast by Cx.

milibus et trecentis, Antenorem quoque[1] secuti sunt duo milia, Andromacham et Helenum[2] duo milia.[3]

Cap. XXV.

De Aylon et Abdon, judicibus Israel. Græci post Trojam eversam domum redeunt; socii Diomedis in aves conversi. De hujusmodi transmutationibus quid judicandum.[4]

Aylon. [5]Aylon de tribu Zabulon judicavit Israel decem annis; quos[6] tamen Septuaginta interpretes non annumerant, et ideo Eusebius annumerat ejus annos temporibus Josuæ, Samuelis, et Saulis, quorum annos Scriptura tacet, plus annorum ponens quam in Josepho reperitur. Ita ut ab egressu de Ægypto usque ad templum[7] Salomonis sunt anni quadringenti octoginta.[8] Anno Abr. 832. Anno Aylon 1.

Abdon. Abdon sive Labdon[9] judicavit Israel octo annis, cujus anno tertio capta est Troja, anno scilicet a nativitate Abrahæ octingentesimo xliiij°.,[10] ab egressu[11] Israel de Ægypto cccxl°.,[12] anno regni regis Latini in Italia xxv°., anno ante urbem Romam conditam circiter quadringentesimo xxxii°.[13] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*[14] Post Trojam eversam,[15] Anno Abr. 862. Anno Abdon 1.

[1] *vero*, C.D.

[2] *Helenam*, B., badly. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 44.

[3] *Andromacham . . . milia*] om. C.D.

[4] No title in MSS.

[5] *Post Abessam*, ins. C.D.

[6] So D.; *quem*, A.E.

[7] *tempus*, B.

[8] Paragraph slightly varied in C.D.

[9] *Lapdon*, B.

[10] *lxiiii.*, A.

[11] *ingressu*, B.

[12] *anno*, ins. E.; it would be better before *ab*.

[13] Numbers slightly varied in C.D.

[14] C.D. omit reference.

[15] *Troja eversa*, C.D.

hondred, and wiþ Antenor two[1] þowsand, wiþ Andromache[2] and Helenus two þowsand. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum. Aylon. Abdon.

AYLON, of þe lynage of Zabulon, was iuge of Israel ten ȝere. Noþeles þe Seuenty acounteþ hem nouȝt, and þerfore Eusebius acounteþ his ȝeres of Iosue, of Samuel, and of Saul; for þe Scripture spekeþ nouȝt of here ȝeres. Noþeles þey setteþ moo ȝeres þan beeþ i-founde by Iosephus. So þat from þe goynge out of Egipte anon to Salaman his temple were foure hondred ȝere and foure score. Abdon, þat heet Lapdon, was also iuge of Israel eiȝte ȝere. In his þridde ȝere Troye was i-take, eiȝte hondred ȝere and foure and fourty after Abraham his burþe, þre hondred ȝere and fourty after þe goynge out of Egipt, þe ȝere of kyng Latyn in Italy fyue and twenty, to fore þe buldynge of Rome aboute an[3] foure hondred ȝere and two and þritty.[4] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.* After þat Troye was destroyed, ȝit while kyng Latyn regned in Itali, þe Grees þat tornede aȝen and[5] hadde in þe

---

and also ij. m¹. folowede Antenor, and ij. m¹. Helena and Andromacha. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

AYLON, of the tribe of Zabulon, was gouernoure in Israel x. yere, whom the lxx^ti interpretatores do not annumerate; þerfore Eusebius ȝiffethe that tyme to the yeres of Iosue, Samuel, and of Saul, the yeres of whom Scripture dothe not reherse. Abdon, other Labdon, was gouernoure in Israel xl^ti iiij. yere, in the ccc. and fowrty yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, in the xx^ti v. yere off the reigne of kynge Latinus in Ytaly, and cccc. xxx^ti ij. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo sexto.* After the destruccion of Troye, Latinus the kynge reignenge that tyme in Ytaly, the Grekes were afflicte and trowblede soore in

---

[1] *thre*, Cx.

[2] *Adromache*, MS. A few similar trivial errors of orthography have been tacitly corrected in this chapter.

[3] *an*] So MS., α. β. γ.; om. Cx.

[4] *twenty*, Cx.

[5] This word should be cancelled apparently, though found in all the four MSS.

Græci post Trojam eversam domum revertuntur.

regnante adhuc in Italia rege Latino, reversi Græci multipliciter in itinere sunt afflicti. Nam, teste Varrone libro tertio de historiis, socii Diomedes in volucres sunt conversi, ipseque Diomedes in itinere dispa-

Diomedis templum; ejus socii in volucres conversi.

ruit, ita ut pro deo sit habitus, templumque ejus[1] celebre sit apud insulam Diomediam non longe a monte Gargano in Apulia; et hoc templum circumvolare atque incolere aves perhibentur tam mirabili obsequio ut aquam rostris[2] spargant. Ubi si venerint Græci aut Græcorum stirpe nati[3] eis adulantur;[4] si autem alienigenas viderint, grandibus rostris eos vulnerant.[5]

Similia de sociis Ulyssis et de Arcadibus in lupos mutatis narrat Varro.

Et ad id astruendum narrat Varro non fabuloso mendacio sed historica veritate de illa maga famosissima Circe, quæ socios Ulixis mutavit in bestias; et de Arcadibus qui sorte ducti transnatabant quoddam stagnum atque ibi convertebantur[6] in lupos, et cum feris[7] vivebant. Si autem non vescerentur ibi[8] carne humana, rursum post novem annos renatato[9] stagno reformabantur in homines. Dicit etiam[10] Demænetum

---

[1] *ejus*] om. E.
[2] *rostris*, om. A B.
[3] *progeniti*, C.D.
[4] So D., which has *et illic si* above; *adulentur*, A.E.
[5] *verberant*, B.
[6] *vertebantur*, B.
[7] *ibidem*, ins. C.D.
[8] *ibi*] om. B.
[9] *denatato*, C. (not D.)
[10] *denique*, C.D.

TREVISA.

weie many myshappes. For Varro,[1] libro tertio de historia, seiþ þat Diomed his felawes were i-torned in to foules, and Diomedes hym self was na more i-seie ; so þat he was i-holde a god. His temple is solempne in þe ilond Diomedia, nouȝt fer from Mont Gargan in Apulia.[2] Me seiþ þat foules woneþ and fleeþ about þis temple, and serueþ wonderliche, and springeþ water. ȝif þe Grees or[3] eny oþer of þe kynde of [þe][4] Grees comeþ þeder, þe bryddes makeþ[5] hem good semblaunce;[6] and ȝif eny oþer comeþ, þey woundeþ hem wiþ hire grete beeles. And forto conferme þe same Varro[7] telleþ nouȝt a fable lesynge, but soþenesse of storie of þat famous wicche[8] Circe, þat tornede[9] and chaungede Vlixes his felawes into bestes ; and of þe Arcades[10] þat by lot swam ouer a pool and þan were i-torned into wolfes and leuede wiþ wylde bestes, and ȝif he[11] ete þere no manis flesche, þey schulde after nyne ȝere swymme home ouer þe pool and torne aȝen in to schap of mankynde. [He sayth also that Demenetus, whan he had

MS. HARL. 2261.

theire returnenge home. For as the poete Varro rehersethe, libro iij°. de Historia, the felowes of Diomedes were turnede in to bryddes, and the same Diomedes euaneschede awey sodenly in that journey, in so moche that he is worschippede for a god, whose temple is an yle callede Diomedia, not ferre from the hille callede Garganus, in that londe callede Apulia. In whiche temple bryddes be of so grete diligence that thei caste water with theire billes, and if men of Greece comme thider, other elles eny of the kynde of theyme, thei schewe pleasure to theym. And if thei fynde other straungeoures there, thei hurte theyme with theire grete billes. To the whiche affirmacion Varro rehersethe, not as in fabulose lesynge, but as in a trawthe historicalle, of the moste famose Circes, whiche chaungede the felowes of Vlixes in to bestes ; and of men of Arcadia, or of Arcades,[10] whiche after chaunce did swymme ouer a water, and were turnede in to wulfes, lyvenge in deserte amonge wilde bestes ; and if thei did not eite the flesche of man, thei scholde returne after ix. yere y-paste vn to theire propre similitude and kynde, that water y-swymmede ouer ageyne. Also he seythe, that when Demenetus hade tastede

[1] So *β. γ.*, Cx. ; *Farro*, MS., *α.*
[2] So *α.* and Cx. ; *Ampula*, MS.
[3] So also Cx. ; *oþer*, *α.* (*or* is very frequently *oþer* in *α.*)
[4] Added from *α.* and Cx.
[5] *make*, *α.*
[6] *semblaunt*, *α.*, Cx.
[7] So *α.* and Cx. ; *Farro*, MS.
[8] *dyuyneresse*, *sorceresse*, *and wytche*, Cx.
[9] *transfourmede*, Cx.
[10] *Archades*, MSS. and Cx.
[11] *they*, Cx. (a frequent variation.)

cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam[1] formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercuisse, et Olympico postmodum vicisse[2] certamine. *Plinius, libro xvj°.,*[3] *capitulo xxij°.*[4] Homines in lupos verti rursumque[5] restitui falsum existimamus.[6] Auctores tamen Græciæ tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu eorumdem in quercu suspenso tranare,[7] et in deserto in lupos transfigurari,[8] et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinuerint, rursum renatato stagno ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem[9] annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat.[10]

Similia etiam narrat Augustinus,

Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.[11] Quid igitur ad hæc dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam

[1] *pristinam*, C. (not D.)
[2] *vixisse*, B.
[3] 18°, C.D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 34. (c. 22 of some.)
[4] 2°., A.
[5] *rursusque*, C.D.
[6] *æstimamus*, C.D.
[7] *transnatare*, B.
[8] *transformari*, B.
[9] *novem*] om. E.
[10] *careat*] om. E.
[11] The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 18.

TREVISA.

tasted of the sacrifice of Archad,[1] was torned in to a wolf; and after nyne yere he was restored ayene to his owne shappe of mankynde,][2] and vsede afterward geauntes dedes, and hadde þe maistrye in a tornement[3] of Olympus.[4] *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.* Þat men torneþ in to[5] wolfes and eft[6] in to hire owne schap, we troweþ it be false. Noþeles auctoures of Grees telleþ þat[7] Arcades were i-lad to a pool in þe same lond, and heng hire cloþes on an ook, and swam ouer þe pool, and in wildernesse tornede into wolues, and nyne ȝere wonede among wolfes; and ȝif þey kepte hem al þat tyme and ete no manis flesche, þey schulde swymme home aȝe, and take here owne cloþes and hire owne schap, and be nyne ȝere eldere[8] þan þey were whan they wente out: but þere is no lesynges so grete þat is wiþ oute witnesse.[9] *Augustinus, libro* 18º.,[10] *capitulo* 16.[11] Þan what schal we saye to alle þese sawes?[12] Certeynliche whanne we were in Italy we herde i-now of wommen hostelers of þat lond, þat vsede to ȝeue chese þat was bywicched to men þat

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

of the sacrifice of Archades[1] he was turnede in to a wulfe, and restorede in to his propur forme after ix. yere y-paste, and to haue hade the victorye after that at the actes Olimpicalle. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo* 22º. We suppose, in oure estimacion, that thynge to be false, as men to be chaungede in to wulfes, and to be restorede to theire propre forme ageyn. Neuerthelesse, auctores of the londe of Grece reherse that men of Arcadia be ledde to a certeyne watere in that cuntre, levenge theire vesture in an holo oke, swymme ouer that water, and be transfigurate in deserte in to wulfes, and to be conuersaunte with wulfes by ix. yere. And if they absteyne from the flesche of man by this season, that tyme y-paste, and þe water passede ouer, thei schalle be returnede in to theire propre forme. But truly there is noo lesenge, thauȝhe hit be of euidente apparicion of falsehenes, but hit hathe somme testimony and wittenesse. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo* 16º. What schalle we say to these thynges? Truly when we were in Ytaly we herde of diuerse women of that cuntre whiche were wonte

---

[1] Read *Arcas;* but the error may safely be ascribed to the translators themselves.

[2] Added from β. γ., Cx. (γ. omits *of mankynde*).

[3] *tornyng*, Cx.

[4] *Olymp*, α. β.

[5] *be transformed into*, Cx.

[6] *oft*, Cx.

[7] *þat þe*, α. (not Cx.)

[8] *older*, Cx.

[9] *þat ... witnesse*] but it may be confermed, Cx.

[10] So α. and Cx.; 16, MS.

[11] So α. and Cx.; 22, MS.

[12] *sayngys*, Cx.

illarum partium mulieribus stabulariis, quæ dare solebant caseum veneficum viatoribus; unde et[1] in jumenta illico verterentur, et onera portarent, manente in eis mente rationali; iterumque perfuncto[2] officio[3] ad se redire. Sic quoque de se fatetur Apuleius in libro suo sibi contigisse, quod veneno hujusmodi[4] sumpto,[5] et humano manente animo,[6] asinus fieret. *Ranulphus.*[7] Simile narrat Willelmus de Regibus libro secundo de duabus incantatricibus, quæ in strata publica Romam ducente[8] habitantes, hospitem, si quando solus veniebat, in aliquod animal vertebant. Unde et quemdam[9] histrionem sic hospitatum in asinum verterunt mirabilibus gesticulationibus insignitum, quem et pro[10] ingenti summa pecuniæ cuidam diviti[11] vendiderunt; sub tali tamen admonitione, quod aquam nunquam transiret.[12] Custos itaque illi appositus aliquandiu mandatum rigide observabat, veruntamen temporis lapsu sub laxiori custodia asinus evadens[13] in proximum lacum se projecit, et sic pristinam formam humanam recepit. Custos insequens de asino amisso a quocumque occurrente[14] sciscitatur. Refert ille sic reformatus se asinum fuisse,

et Apuleius,

et Willelmus Malmesburiensis.

---

[1] *et*] om. A.B.C.D.
[2] *perfinito*, A.; *perfecto*, C.D.
[3] *officio*] om. A.
[4] *hujusmodi*] om. C.D.
[5] *in eo*] ins. C.D.
[6] *animo*] om. E.
[7] *Ranulphus . . . xcj.*] om. C.D.
[8] So A.B.; *ducentes*, E.
[9] *quemdam*] om. B.
[10] *si*, B.
[11] *diviti*] om. A.
[12] *quod non in aquam transiret*, A.; *nunquam solus ad aquam*, B.
[13] *vadens*, B.
[14] Transposed in B.

TREVISA.

trauailled by þe weie, and anon [1] þe men tornede into bestes and bar heuy charges, and hadde kyndeliche witte and resoun; and whan þey hadde i-doo hir seruice þey tornede aȝen into [2] hir owne schap. Also Apule[i]us in his book knowlechede [3] þat so hit happed hym self, þat he toke suche venym, and hadde his witte and resoun, and was i-made an asse.[4] ℞. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo, telleþ suche [5] doynge of tweyne wicches þat wonede in þe hiȝe weye þat ledeþ to Rome; [6] and ȝif eny gest come allone, þey torneþ [7] hym in to a beest; and so come by ham a mynstral þat couþe moche merþe, and þey tornede hem in to an asse, and solde hym to a riche man for a grete somme of monay. Noþeles wiþ suche warnynge þat he schulde neuere passe water, and his wardeyn kepte hym besiliche longe tyme. Noþeles in passynge of tyme he took lasse hede to his asse; and þe asse scaped to water, and torned aȝen in to þe schappe of mankynde. Þe wardeyn of þe asse folowede after, and asked [8] his asse of euerich man þat he mette; and he, þat hadde ben an asse [and] [9] was torned to

MS. HARL. 2261.

to ȝiffe chese to trauellenge men thro the whiche thei were chaungede in to other similitudes and did bere burthones, the mynde of man remanente in theyme. And to returne to theire propre forme, that office and labore doen. Also Apule[i]us rehersethe in his boke that same thynge to haue happede to hym thro the recepcion of suche venome, and to haue been made an asse, hauenge the mynde of a man. ℞. Willelmus, de Regibus et Pontificibus, libro 2°, rehersethe, acordenge to the confirmacion of this mater, of ij. wicches dwellenge at Rome, wonte to chaunge a man in to an other similitude, if that he come to theire place sole. Whiche women turnede in a season a ioculer other mynstrelle in to the similitude of a ryalle asse, whom thei solde for a grete summe of money, vnder this condicion and monicion to the byer, that the asse scholde not goe ouer the water in eny wise. The byer kepede that commaundemente streytely a longe season, neuerthelesse he hade more liberte in kepenge by processe of tyme, whiche goenge ouer a water was restorede in to his propre forme. The byer of the asse folowenge, inquirede of euery man with whom he did mete of his asse. That man restorede to his propre forme seide that he was that asse, and to be restorede to

---

[1] *to þe*, MS. (not α. or Cx.)
[2] *to*, α.
[3] *knowlecheþ*, α. β.; *sayth*, Cx.
[4] Some words erroneously repeated in MS. (which omits ℞.), and α.; (text as β. γ. and Cx.)
[5] *þat suche*, MS. (not Cx.)
[6] *wey to Romeward*, Cx.
[7] *torned*, α. β.
[8] *axed after*, Cx.
[9] Added from α. and Cx.

et modo hominem induisse. Famulus custos ad dominum suum hunc adducit. Dominus autem ad Leonem papam utrumque ducit.[1] Incantatrices aniculæ coram papa convictæ id idem fatentur. Dubitantem papam super hac re confirmat Petrus Damianus, litteraturæ peritus, exemplo Simonis Magi, qui Faustinianum in Simonis figura videri et[2] a filiis propriis horreri fecerat. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.* Tenendum est igitur dæmones, nisi Deo permittente, nihil[3] posse; nec etiam naturam aliquam creare, neque animum neque[4] corpus mutare.[5] Quæ tamen a vero Deo conditore creata[6] sunt specie tenus videntur[7] aliquando commutare, ita videlicet ut illud hominis fantasticum, quod cogitando sive somniando variat,[8] per rerum genera, etiam cum corpus non sit, corporum[9] tamen similes formas mira[10] celeritate capit, sopitis corporeis sensibus;[11] fantasticum autem illud velut corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus[12] alienis, talisque homo sibi videatur esse, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et portare onera.[13] Quæ si vera

Talia per dæmonum præstigias fieri credibile est.

[1] *adducit*, B.
[2] So A.; om. E.
[3] *nec*, A.
[4] *aliquod*, ins. C.D.
[5] *permutare*, B.
[6] *creatore condita*, C. (not D.)
[7] *demones*, ins. C.D.
[8] *variatur*, A.D.
[9] *corporium*, A.
[10] *inita*, C.D.
[11] *fantasticum . . . sensibus*] om. A.B.
[12] Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

man aȝen, seide þat he hadde ben an asse and was by come a man. And his wardeyn ladde [1] hym to his lorde, and þe lorde ladde hem boþe to Leon þe pope, and þe olde wicches were conuycte tofore þe pope, and knowleched þe dede. Þe pope dowted [2] of þis þing, and Petrus Damianus,[3] a connynge man of lettrure,[4] confermede þe manere doynge by ensample of Simon Magus, þat tornede Faustinus in to his owne schappe, and made his owne children [5] drede hym ful sore. *Augustinus ubi supra.* Hit is to trowynge,[6] þat fendes mowe nouȝt doo but at Goddis suffraunce; and so þei mowe make no manere kynde, noþer body chaunge.[7] Noþeles it semeþ somtyme þat þey chaungeþ liknes and schappe of þinges, þat God made and wrouȝte; so þat þe ffantasie of man [8] þat chaungeþ in þouȝt and in metynge of sweuenes by dyuers manere þinges, and takeþ þe lyknesse of bodyes wiþ a wonder swiftnesse, þey no body be present. Whan þe wittes of þe body beeþ absent [9] and i-lette [10] of here worchynge, and þe ymage and [11] liknesse, þat is in þouȝt and in fantasie, is as it were i-peynted [12] in þe liknesse of som beest, and semeþ to [13] oþer men wittes in þe [14] same liknesse. And so a man may seme to hym self suche as he semeþ in metynge of sweuenes; and so TREVISA.

---

his propre similitude. The seruaunte and keper of that asse brouȝhte the man to his lorde. Then the lorde and byer of that asse brouȝhte bothe the wicches to Leo the pope, whiche conuicte afore the pope grauntede that thynge. The pope dowtenge of that thynge, Damianus, a man excellente in sapience, affermede Faustinianus to be seen in the similitude of Simon Magus, and to be dredde soore of his awne childer. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Hit is to be holden that the deuelles may not do eny thynge but by the permission and sufferaunce of God, neither to create eny nature, neither to chaunge the body or sawle of those thynges which be create of Allemyȝhty God. Neuerthelesse thei appere to chaunge thynges to the siȝhte, as the vertu fantasticalle, when a man is in slepe, causethe a man as to apparence to be chaungede in to an other similitude, and soe that thynge fantasticalle apperethe to theyme MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *led*, *a.*, Cx.
[2] *doute*, *a.*
[3] *Damyanus*, MS.; also *Symon* and *Fastinus* below. Other MSS. read as in text, but *Faustinus* is the mistake of Trevisa.
[4] *letture*, Cx.
[5] *childer*, Cx.
[6] *It is to be bileuyd*, Cx.
[7] *ne chaunge bodyes*, Cx.
[8] *a man*, Cx.
[9] *astent*, *a.* (not Cx.)
[10] *i-sette*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[11] So *a.* and Cx.; *in*, MS.
[12] *i-prented*, *a.* *β.* *γ.* and Cx.
[13] *to*] þat, MS. (not *a.*)
[14] *in þe*] so *β.* *γ.*, Cx.; *þe*, MS., *a.*

Mira de Præstantio.

sunt[1] onera, portantur a dæmonibus; ut sic illusio fiat[2] hominibus. Nam quidam nomine Præstantius patri suo hoc[3] contigisse narravit, ut venenum illud[4] per caseum in domo sua sumeret, et jaceret in lecto quasi dormiens, nec posset aliquatenus excitari. Post aliquot vero[5] dies evigilans quasi somnia narrabat, quæ passus fuerat; se videlicet caballum effectum, et annonam inter alia animalia militibus apud Rhæticam bajulasse; quod ita ut narravit factum fuisse compertum est. Dixit etiam se domi per noctem vidisse quendam philosophum sibi notum, sibique[6] exposuisse nonnulla Platonica, quæ antea rogatus exponere noluerat.[7] Et cum ab eodem philosopho quæsitum fuisset cur in domo ejus fecerit quod in domo propria petenti[8] negaverat, "Nec feci," inquit, "sed me sic[9] fecissse somniavi."[10] Ac per hoc alteri[11] per imaginem fantasticam exhibitum est vigilanti, quod alter vidit in somnis. Proinde quod Arcades vertuntur in lupos; quod carminibus Circes[12] socii Ulixis vertuntur in volucres[13] secundum istum modum videtur mihi posse fieri, si tamen factum est. Socii vero Diomedis, quia cito disparuerunt et nusquam comparuerunt, perdentibus[14] eos ultoribus[15] angelis malis, creduntur in alias aves conversi; quæ arte dæ-

[1] *sint*, A.
[2] *fit*, C.D. (having *et* for *ut*.)
[3] *hoc*] om. B.
[4] *illud*] om. B.
[5] *vero*] om. C.D.
[6] *que*] om. B.
[7] *nolebat*, B.
[8] *petenti*] om. B.
[9] *sic*] om. C.D.
[10] *somniavi*] om. E.
[11] *aliquando*, C.D.
[12] *Circe* (for *Circæ*), MSS.
[13] *bestias*, B.
[14] *portantibus*, C.D. (not Aug.)
[15] *ulterioribus*, C.D. (not Aug.)

TREVISA.

hym may seme þat he bereþ burþenes and charges; [but if þey beeþ verrey burþens and charges],[1] fendes bereþ hem, þat men mowe so be bygiled. For oon Prestantius tolde þat suche an happe byfel his owne fader, þat he took suche venym by chese in his owne hous, and lay in a bed, as he were slepynge; and no man myȝte hym awake, but after many dayes he wook,[2] and tolde as it were a sweuene how hym was byfalle; for hym þouȝte þat he was i-made an hors, and bare corne among oþer bestes to knyȝtes þat were at Retica;[3] and it was i-founde, þat riȝt as he tolde it was i-doo in dede. He seide also þat he say a philosofre at home in his hous; þe whiche philosofre[4] expowned hym[5] many þinges[6] of Plato his bookes, þe whiche þinges he hadde i-bede hym expowne to fore honde, and he wolde not. And whan me axed of þe philosofre, why he wolde expowne in anoþer manis hous þat [he][7] hadde denyed in his owne, "Nay," quod he, "I dede nouȝt so, but I "mette þat I dede." And in þat manere by þe ymage and liknes of fantasie it was schewed to þat oon waking what þat oþer mette in his slepe. Þerfore þat þe Arcades torned in to wolfes by wicchecraft of Circa,[8] me semeþ it myȝte bee in þis manere, noþeles yf it were sooþ. But for Diomedes his felawes vanschede sodeynliche awey, and were neuere after i-founde, me troweþ þat wicked aungels took wreche of hem, and torned hem in to anoþer foules liknesse,[9] þat were i-made and i-brouȝt

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

as thynge corporealle in a straunge similitude, and to bere burdones, whiche be borne of deuelles and if the trawthe myȝhte be knowen. A nowble man, Prestantius by name, rehersethe suche a thynge to haue happede to his fader by the eytenge of chese, lyenge in his bedde that he myȝhte not move. Whiche man awakede rehersede meruellous thynges whiche he hade suffrede, and how that he was made in the similitude of an horse, and how he bare corne amonge other bestes to Retica,[3] whiche thynge was provede to haue bene after his narracion. Also that men of Arcadia be chaungede in to wulfes, and that þe felawes of Vlixes were chaungede in to bryddes thro Circe,[8] y thenke that hit may be doen by this maner rehersede afore. The felawes of Diomedes be supposede to haue bene chaungede in to bryddes, whiche were pereschede as sodenly of myȝhty bryddes, callede Gripes, but to be trawede raþer that thei were deuelles, whiche bryddes were brouȝhte thro the

---

[1] Added from *α.* *β.* and Cx.
[2] So *α.*; *awoke*, Cx.; *toke*, MS.
[3] *Rethica*, MSS.
[4] Words erroneously repeated in MS. and *α.*; text as *β.* *γ.*, Cx.
[5] *to him*, Cx.
[6] *secretes*, Cx.
[7] Added from *α.* and Cx.
[8] So MSS. and Cx., for *Circe;* but correctly above; *Sirces*, Harl. MS.
[9] *torned hem in to oþer foules*, *α.* *β.* *γ.*

monum aliunde deductæ[1] sunt, et in loco illorum hominum subrogatæ, sicut cerva pro[2] Iphigenia Agamemnonis[3] filia supposita fuisse cognoscitur. Quod autem Diomedis templo aves rostratæ aquam spargunt et Græcigenis blandiuntur, dæmonum[4] fit instinctu; quorum interest persuadere hominibus Diomedem deum factum esse, ut sic decipiantur homines in cultura deorum[5] falsorum.[6] *Ranulphus.* De ista materia vide plus supra, primo libro, capitulo[7] *Hibernia.*[8]

Species tantum, non naturas, possunt dæmones mutare.

Giraldus in Topographia. Dæmones seu[9] mali homines naturas mutare non possunt;[10] sed species, Deo permittente, transmutant seu transfigurant. Ita ut sensibus humanis illusione sopitis res non videantur sicut sunt, sed vi phantasmatis aut magicæ artis[11] fictitiæ formæ appareant; sed Deum[12] sicut res creare ita et eas[13] invicem commutare se vindicando aut potentiam suam seu[14] misericordiam declarando non absurdum[15] credimus; sicut uxorem Loth in statuam salis, et aquam in vinum, vel, interiore manente natura,[16] extra[17] solum transformare.[18]

---

[1] *adductæ,* A.B.D.

[2] *et,* E.

[3] *regis,* ins. C.D.

[4] *demonis,* E.

[5] *deorum*] om. E.

[6] C.D. introduce the following passage here: "*Isidorus, Etymologiarum xi°., capitulo ultimo.* Fiunt "quandoque monstruosæ transfor-"mationes hominum in bestias, "quod fit magicis carminibus aut "herbarum veneficiis. Quidam "enim recipiunt mutationem per "ipsam naturam; quidam vero per "corruptionem transeunt in alias "species, ut de putridis vitulis apes, "de equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius: "'Concava litorei si demas brachia "'cancri, Scorpius exibit caudaque "'minabitur unca.'" For *quidam* D. has *quædam* twice. See p. 208.

[7] *de,* ins. A.

[8] Abbreviated in C.D. See vol. i. p. 358.

[9] *ac,* C.D.

[10] *non mutant,* C.D.

[11] *magicis artibus,* C. (not D.)

[12] *Deum vero,* C.D.

[13] *et eas*] so A.D.; ut eas, E.; et ea, B.; eas et, C.

[14] *vel,* A.; *sive,* D.

[15] *absurde,* C.D.

[16] *materia,* C. (not D.)

[17] *exterius,* C.D.

[18] *sicut in prædictis patet exemplis,* C.D. (D. has various clerical errors and omissions in this citation).

þider by craft of fendes in stede of þe men,[1] as hit is i-knowe þat an hynde was i-brouȝt and i-put in stede of Iphigenia,[2] Agamemnon[3] his douȝter; and sche was i-lad away. Þat foules at Diomedes temple springeþ water, and flatereth wiþ þe Grees, þat is by excitynge of þe deuel for to brynge men in witte for to trowe[4] þat Dyomede is i-made a god, þat men be so begiled in worschippynge of false goddes. ℞. Loke more of þis mattere in þe firste book, capitulo *Hibernia*. *Giraldus in Topographia*. Fendes and wicked men mowe not chaunge kynde but by suffraunce of God; þei mowe chaunge liknesse and schappe and lette manis wittes and bygile men, so þat þinges semeþ nouȝt as þey beeþ. But by strengþe of fantasie and of wicchecraft men haueþ semynge by feyned schappes; but it is nouȝt vnsittynge[5] þat we trowe þat God as he makeþ þinges of nouȝt, so he chaungeþ hem oon into anoþer,[6] forto take riȝtful wreche oþer forto schewe his myȝt oþer mercie. So he tornede Loth is wyf in to an ymage of salt, and water in to wyn; oþer chaunge þe liknesse wiþ oute and leue þe kynde vnchaunged wiþ ynne. TREVISA.

---

illusion of the deuelle, and subrogate in þe places of those men. Lyke as a herte was knowen to haue bene putte in the place of Iphigenia[2] doȝter of Agamemnon.[3] And that grete bryddes caste water with theire bylles in the temple of Diomedes, and schewe as a glosenge chere to men of Grece, is causede by the illusion of the deuelle, causenge men to beleve that Diomedes was a godde, that men scholde be deceyvede in the worschippenge of false goddes. R. Beholde more of this matere afore, libro primo, capitulo 34°. *Giraldus in Topographia*. Deuelles or ylle men may not chaunge nature of eny thynge, but thei may chaunge similitudes thro the permission of God, so that the trawthe of the thynge dothe not appere, the wyttes oppressede with the illusion of the deuelle; but after a similitude fantasticalle made and causede by wycchecrafte. But we beleve Godde, that made nature, to chaunge theym, lyke as he chaungede the wife of Loth in to a grete parte and quantite of salte, and water in to wyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Clauses varied in Cx.

[2] *Ephigenia*, MSS. and Cx.

[3] *Agamenon*, MSS. and Harl. MS.

[4] *for to trowe, &c.*] to believe Diomede to be made a god, Cx.

[5] Sic MS.; and so α. β. γ., Cx.

[6] *oþer*, α. β. γ.

Cap. XXVI.

De Ænea et Didone, et de regibus Latinis. Quæ in Græcia acciderunt tempore Sampson.[1]

Æneas in Italiam venit.

Anno Abr. 804. Anno Abdon 3.

Martinus. Post Trojæ excidium Æneas[2] cum Anchise patre suo[3] Ascanioque[4] filio in[5] navibus duodecim venerunt in[6] Siciliam, ubi Anchise mortuo, cum vellet Æneas navigare Italiam, tempestate pulsus[7] venit[8] in Africam; ubi a Didone regina[9] nimium est adamatus. Sed post aliquantulæ moræ spatium relicta Didone devenit[10] Italiam. *Ranulphus.* Sed si verum est quod Trogus et Papias et alii docti dicunt Carthaginem fuisse fundatam a Didone septuagesimo secundo anno ante conditionem urbis Romæ, quæ condita est anno quarto Achaz regis Judæ, constabit[11] quod Æneas nunquam vidit Didonem reginam Carthaginis, quia Æneas præcessit Didonem,[12] et obiit ante fundationem Carthaginis plusquam trecentis annis. Et hoc[13] innuit Augustinus primo libro Confessionum in fine,[14] dicens quod docti negant[15] Æneam vidisse Carthaginem.[16] *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Hæc Dido vocata est Elissa, id est virago, ab eventu subsecuto; quia viriliter

Utrum Didonem viderit Æneas, necne.

[1] No title in MSS.
[2] *Æneas*] om. B.
[3] *et*, ins. C.D.
[4] So A.B.; E. omits *que*.
[5] *in*] suo cum, C.D.
[6] *in*] om. A.B.
[7] *repulsus*, C.D.
[8] *devenit*, C.D.
[9] *regina*] om. B.
[10] So A.B.D.; *venit*, E.
[11] *constat*, A.B.
[12] *Didonem*] om. A.B.
[13] *Et hoc*] ut, B.
[14] *in fine*] so A.B.; om. E.
[15] *negabant*, A.B.
[16] *Ranulphus . . . Carthaginem*] om. C.D.

Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

TREVISA.

AFTER þe destroyenge[1] of Troye, Eneas wiþ his fader Anchises and his sone Ascanius wiþ twelue schippes come to Sicil. Þere[2] Anchises deide. And whanne Eneas wolde seille into Itali, tempest drof hym in to Affrica.[3] Þere he was hugeliche[4] i-loued of Dido þe queene; but after a schort tyme he lefte Dido and come in to Italy. ℞. Yf it is sooþ þat Trogus and Papy and oþer wise men telleþ, þat Dido bulde Cartage þre score ȝere and twelue to fore þe byldynge of þe citee of Rome, þat was i-bulde þe fourþe ȝere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda, þanne it is sooþ þat Eneas sygȝ[5] neuere Dido þe quene of Cartage; for Eneas was to forehonde,[6] and deide þre hondred ȝere and more to fore þe buldynge of Cartage. And þat meneþ Seint Austyn primo libro Confessionum in fine, and seiþ þat wise men denyeþ þat Eneas sey Cartage.[7] *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Þis Dido heet Elissa, þat is Virago, a manliche womman; for hap þat fel afterward, for sche

---

Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Martinus. Eneas, with Anchisen his fader, and Ascanius his son, come to Sicille with xij. schippes, after the batelle of Troy, where Anchisen diede, whiche dedde, Eneas willenge to sayle to Ytaly, was brouȝhte thro tempestes in the see vn to Affrike, where he was luffede moche of Dido the qwene. Whiche, levenge Dido the qwene, wente in to Ytaly. ℞. And if that be trawthe that Trogus and Papias reherse, seyenge that cite of Carthago to haue bene made by Dido in the lxxij. yere afore the makenge of the cite of Rome, whiche was edifiede in the iiij^the yere of Achaz kynge of Iuda; then hit may be concludede that Eneas see neuer Dido qwene of Carthago, for Eneas was before the fundacion of Carthago more than ccc. yere. To the whiche confirmacion Seynte Austyn seythe, primo libro Confessionum, in the ende, that men discrete denye Eneas to have seen Carthago.[7] *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* That Dido was callede Elissa, that is to say, virago, of a chaunce folowenge, for

---

[1] *destruction*, Cx.
[2] *and there*, Cx.
[3] Sentence varied in Cx.
[4] *hugeliche*] right wel, Cx.
[5] So α.; *sawe*, Cx.; *seiþ*, MS. (probably clerical error for *seiȝ*).
[6] *was bifore*, Cx., who varies the sentence.
[7] So α. β. γ.; *Cartago*, MS. and Harl. MS.

se occidit. *Trogus, libro octavodecimo.* Ipsa denique Elissa, soror Pygmaleonis, cum ad[1] accipiendum maritum a populo quasi urgeretur, ascendit super pyram quam ipsa[2] sibi[3] construxerat, et[4] seipsam occidit, ac pro dea diu culta est. *Martinus.* Æneas igitur Italiam veniens confœderatus est regi Evandro, qui in septem montibus tunc regnabat. Hi duo pugnaverunt contra Latinum, regem Latinorum, et contra Turnum, regem Tusciæ,[5] generum scilicet regis Latini. In quo bello Pallas filius Evandri et Turnus occiduntur.[6] *Ranulphus.*[7] Vult tamen Trogus,[8] libro xliij°.[9] quod Æneas in primo adventu suo tantam gratiam coram rege Latino invenerit,[10] quod in partem regni intraverit, et quod filiam ejusdem Latini, Laviniam, sponsam Turni, in uxorem acceperit.[11] Unde et ambo sic confœderati, Æneas et Latinus,[12] bellum contra[13] Turnum[14] propter fraudatas Laviniæ nuptias susceperunt.[15] In quo[16] bello Turnus et Latinus ceciderunt.[17] Igitur Æneas post hanc victoriam utroque regno potitus, scilicet Latinorum et Tuscorum,[18] urbem nomine uxoris vocatam Lavinium condidit, et[19] bellum deinde contra regem[20] [21]

Æneas et Evander contra Latinum et Turnum pugnant.

Æneas eorum regnis potitur.

Lavinium condit;

---

[1] *ad*] om. B.
[2] *ipsa*] om. D.
[3] *sibi*] om. C. (not D.)
[4] *et*] om. B.D.
[5] *Thussiæ*, A.
[6] Citation slightly abbreviated in in C.D.
[7] *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.
[8] *Pompeius*, ins. C.D.
[9] 93°., C.D. wrongly. See lib. xliii. c. 1.
[10] *Latini meruit*, C.D.
[11] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[12] *Æneas et Latinus*] om. C.D.
[13] *adversus*, C.D.
[14] *regem Tuscorum*, ins. C.D.
[15] *susceperint*, A.; *protulerunt*, C.D.
[16] *quidem*, ins. C.D.
[17] *occubuerunt*, C.D.
[18] *scilicet . . . Tuscorum*] om. C.D.
[19] *et*] om. C.D.
[20] *urbem . . . regem*] om. A.B.
[21] *Tuscorum*, ins. C.D.

slowȝ hir self manliche. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.*[1] At þe laste þis Elissa, Pygmalion[2] his douȝter, whan he[3] schulde be[4] compelled of þe peple forto take an housbonde, sche wente in to a greet fuyre þat sche hadde i-made; and so sche slow hir self manliche, and was longe after i-worschipped as a goddes. *Martinus.* Þan Eneas com in to Itali, and was confedered and i-swore to kyng Euander, þat þoo regnede in seuene hilles. Þese tweyne fauȝte aȝenst Latyn, kyng of Latyns, and aȝenst Turnus,[5] kyng [of Tuscan, kyng][6] Latyn his douȝter housbonde. In þat batayle Pallas Euander his sone and Turnus were i-slawe. ℞. Noþeles Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio, wil mene þat Eneas in his firste comyng fond so grete grace wiþ kyng Latyn, þat he entrede into a partye of þe kyngdom, and wedded Lauyn,[7] kyng Latyn his douȝter, þat was Turnus his spouse; and so boþe Latyn and Eneas i-confedered to gidres toke batayle aȝenst Turnus for þe gileful mariage of Lauyn, and Latyn and Turnus were boþe dede in þat bataile. And Eneas afterward was kyng of eiþer kyngdom of Latyns and of Tuscans, and bulde a citee and cleped þe citee Lauinium by þe name of his wif, and werred afterward aȝenst þe TREVISA.

sche did sle here selfe manly. *Trogus, libro decimo octavo.* That Elissa, doȝhter vn to Pygmalion, compellede by the peple to take an howsebonde, wente in to a place that sche hade made, and did sle here selfe, whiche was worschippede longe for a godesse. *Martinus.* Eneas, commenge to Ytaly, was confederate with Euander kynge, whiche reignede in vij. mowntes. Whiche ij. so confederate ȝafe batelle ageyne Latinus, kynge off Latynes, and ageyne Turnus, kynge of Tuscia, son in lawe to kynge Latinus, in whiche batelle Pallas, the son of Euander, and Turnus were sleyne. ℞. But Trogus rehersethe, libro xliiij°, that Eneas in his firste commenge to Ytaly founde suche grace of kynge Latinus, that he admittede hym in to parte of his realme; whiche toke Lauina, þe wife of Turnus and doȝhter of kynge Latinus, in to his wife. Wherefore thei, so confederate as Eneas and Latinus, ȝafe batelle ageyne Turnus for the fraude and delay of the weddynge of Lauina his doȝhter. In whiche batelle Turnus and Latinus were sleyne. That batelle doen, Eneas reioycede bothe the realmes, of Latynes and of Tuscia, and made a cite, callenge hit Lauinium, after the name of his wife, whiche MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So α. and Cx.; *octavo*, MS., wrongly. See lib. xviii. c. 6.
[2] *Pigmaleon*, MS.
[3] So also α.; *she*, Cx.; *heo*, β.; α. γ.
[4] *haue be*, Cx.
[5] *Tornus*, MS., α. (not β., Cx.)
[6] Added from α. β. and Cx.
[7] So α. and Cx.; *Lamyn*, MS., and so below.

In bello contra Mezentium occiditur.

Mesentium[1] egit;[2] in quo et[3] Æneas[4] occubuit, relicto post se Ascanio filio[5] quem ex Creüsa genuerat apud Trojam.[6] *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quarto.*[7]

De Iulo, qui et Ascanius vocatur.

Iulus[8] fuit filius Æneæ, qui primo loco dictus[9] est Ascanius, ab Ascanio fluvio Phrygiæ, et postmodum[10] dictus est Iulus[11] ab Ilo[12] rege Trojano. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.*[13] Postmodum[14] occiso Mesentio[15] Tuscorum[16] rege certamine singulari, Ascanius[17] vocatus est Iulus,[18] a prima lanugine barbæ tunc primum[19] in ea[20] apparente, quæ proprie dicitur Iulus;[21] et est nomen disyllabum, licet quandoque metrice ponatur trisyllabum.[22] *Ranulphus.* Hic notandum est quod[23] nisi tres[24] anni regni[25] Æneæ computentur infra annos regis[26] Latini vacillabit historiæ calculatio, quæ dicit Latinum regnasse xxxij. annis; præsertim cum anno xxv^o^. regis Latini[27] secundum omnes historicos Æneas, capta Troja,[28] Italiam venerit.

Ascanius Albam Longam condit.

[29] Ascanius filius Æneæ cœpit regnare apud Latinos, et regnavit triginta octo[30] annis. Qui relicto oppido Lavinio, quod pater suus[31] construxerat, Albam Lon-

---

[1] So A.D.E.; *Mecentium,* B. Commonly written *Mezentius,* but text agrees with Greek form.

[2] *gessit,* C.D., and *genuit* below.

[3] *et*] om. A.

[4] *et Æneas*] om. C.D.

[5] *filio*] om. C.D.

[6] *apud Trojam*] om. C.D.

[7] *libro quarto*] om. B.D.; *quarto,* om. A.

[8] *Ylus,* B.

[9] *vocatus,* C.D.

[10] *et postmodum*] postea, C.D.

[11] So D.E. (second hand); *Ilus,* A.; *Ylus,* B.C.

[12] *Ylo,* B.D.

[13] *Julius,* B.

[14] *Postea,* C.D.

[15] *Mecencio,* B.

[16] So D.; *Ruscorum,* A.E., placing *rege* before *Mesentio.*

[17] *Ascanius*] om. C.D.

[18] *Ylus,* B.

[19] *tunc primum*] primo, B.; *populum,* E.

[20] *eo,* B.D.

[21] *Yulus,* B.

[22] *licet . . . trisyllabum*] om. C.D.

[23] *Hic . . . quod*] Et, C.D.

[24] *tres*] added from C.D.

[25] Added from A.B.C.D.

[26] *regni,* C.D., with other slight variations.

[27] *xxxij. . . . Latini*] small blank left in B.

[28] Here and elsewhere MSS. frequently have *Troya.*

[29] *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio,* ins. A.B.

[30] *septem,* C.D.

[31] *Æneas,* ins. A.B.

TREVISA.

kyng of Messene in Tuscan. And in þat bataile Eneas was dede,[1] and lefte after hym his sone Ascanius, þat he badde i-gete on[2] Creusa at Troye. *Isidorus, Etymolog.* Iulus was Eneas his sone, and heet firste Ascanius by þe name of a ryuer of Frigia þat so hatte,[3] and was afterwarde i-cleped Ilus, by þe name of Ilus kyng of Troye. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Afterward, whan þe kyng of Mesens was i-slawe in a singuler batayle of stalworþe men, þanne Ascanius was i-cleped Iulus for his firste spryngynge of berd [þat þo was first i-sene; for þe firste spring of berd][4] is properliche i-cleped Iulus in Latyn [and is][5] a name of tweie silables, [þey hit be oþerwhiles i-sette in þre sylables][6] by cause of metre. ℞. Here take hede þat but þe ȝeres of Eneas his regnynge be acounted wiþ ynn þe ȝeres of kyng Latyn, þe acountynge of þe storie schal faille. For þe storie seiþ þat kyng Latyn reignede two and þritty ȝere; and specialliche while Eneas, whan Troye was i-take, come in to Itali, þe fyue and twenty ȝere of kyng Latyn, as alle stories telleþ. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio.* Ascanius, Eneas his sone, bygan to regne among þe Latyns; and regnede eiȝte and þritty ȝere, and lefte[7] þe citee Lauinium, þat his fader Eneas hadde somtyme i-bulde, and bulde þe citee Alban along vppon þe ryuer

MS. HARL. 2261.

ȝafe batelle after that vn. to Mese[n]tius kynge of Tuscia, in whom Eneas was sleyne, levenge after hym Ascanius his son, whom he gate of Creusa, at Troye. *Isidorus, Ethym.* Ilus was the son of Eneas; callede afore Ascanius, of a floode in Frigia callede Ascanius; callede after Ilus, by Ilus kynge of the Troianes. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Whiche ȝiffenge batelle to Messentius, and sleenge hym, was callede Iulus; for in that tyme he began to haue a berde. ℞. Also hit is to be attendede but if the yeres of Eneas be acomptede with in þe yeres of kynge Latinus, the calculacion of the story schalle fayle, whiche seythe kynge Latinus to haue reignede xxx^{ti}ij. yere; and after alle storyes after the takenge of Troy, Eneas come to Ytaly in the xxv. yere of the reigne of kynge Latinus. *Trogus, libro* 43°. Ascanius, the son of Eneas, began to reigne amonge the Latynes, contynuenge his reigne by xxxviij. yere; whiche levenge the cite callede Lauinium, whiche his fader made, edifiede a cite, callenge hit Alba, on the water of Tibere,

[1] *slayne*, Cx.
[2] So α. and Cx.; *in*, MS.
[3] *heet*, Cx.
[4] Added from α. and Cx.
[5] Added from α. and Cx.
[6] Added from α. β. γ.; wanting in Cx.
[7] *specialliche lefte*, MS. (not α. β, or Cx.)

gam super ripam Tiberis construxit, quæ trecentis annis caput regni illius fuit; a qua urbe Latini reges dicti sunt Albani.[1] *Trogus, libro xliij.*[2] Hic Ascanius[3] fratrem suum[4] Silvium Posthumum ex[5] Lavinia noverca sua, post mortem patris[6] natum, summa pietate educavit. Qui ideo dictus est Posthumus, quia post humationem patris natus. Et Silvius dictus est, quia in silva nutritus. A quo postmodum Latinorum[7] reges dicti sunt Silvii.[8] Huic quoque[9] Silvio Posthumo Ascanius postquam regnasset triginta octo annis regnum reliquit, eo quod filius suus Iulus,[10] a quo familia Juliorum[11] orta est, adhuc tenellæ erat ætatis, sicut dicit Marianus libro primo.[12]

Silvius Posthumus succedit.

Quæ in tempore Sampson acciderunt.

Anno Abr. 850. Anno Sampsoni 1.

Sampson[13] judicavit Israel xx. annis; cujus tempore[14] ea contigerunt[15] de Græco Ulixe, quæ fabulæ tradunt; quomodo videlicet Scyllam[16] fugerit et Sirenas. De quo dicit Palæphatus,[17] libro primo Incredibilium, quod Scylla fuit mulier hospites suos spoliare[18] consueta, et Sirenas[19] dicit esse meretrices,[20] quæ deceperunt[21] navigantes.[22] Eoque tempore[23] Ægyptiorum[24] Pyrrhus ab Oreste in templo Delphici Apollinis occiditur.[25] Quo etiam[26] tempore quidam tradunt Homerum floruisse.[27]

---

[1] Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

[2] C.D. omit all reference, probably rightly; A.B. have *Eutropius* only. The reference to Eutropius is certainly false; and although Trogus, *i.e.* Justin (lib. xliii. c. 1), is properly quoted for the preceding sentence, the information here given does not occur there.

[3] *Aschanius*, A.

[4] *suum*] om. B.

[5] *a*, B.

[6] *sui*, ins. B.

[7] *Latini*, B.

[8] *Hic . . . Silvii*] slightly varied in C.D.

[9] *etiam*, C.D.; *quo*, A., by error for *quoque*.

[10] *Iulus*] Ilus, A.E.; om. B.

[11] *Iliorum*, C.D.E.; *Yliorum*, B.

[12] *eo . . . primo*] om. C.D.; *sicut . . primo*, om. A.B.

[13] *filius Manue*, ins. C.D.

[14] *cujus tempore*] om. C.D.

[15] *contiguerunt*, E.

[16] *Scillam* or *Cillam*, MSS.

[17] *Palefatus*, MSS.

[18] *scilicet*, ins. A.

[19] *Sirenes*, B.

[20] *esse*] om. B.

[21] *decipiunt*, B.

[22] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

[23] *Eoque tempore*] om. C.D.

[24] So MSS., but corruptly. Probably we should read *Epirotarum rex*.

[25] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[26] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[27] *fuisse*, C.D.

TREVISA.

Tibre. Þat cite was hede of þat kyngdom þre hondred ȝere; by þe name of þat citee kynges Latyns were i-cleped kynges Albans, Reges Albani. *Eutropius.* Þis Ascanius norsched vp ful myldeliche his broþer Siluius Posthumus[1] þat was i-bore of his stepdame Lauinia[2] after his fader deþ, and was i-cleped Posthumus, for he was i-bore after þat his fader was i-buried; and was i-cleped Siluius, for he was i-norsched in a wode.[3] A woode is *silva* in Latyn. By his name þe kynges of Latyns were i-cleped Siluies. Ascanius, whanne he hadde i-regned eiȝte and þritty ȝere, he lefte þe kyngdom to[4] Siluius Posthumus; for his owne sone Ilus was ȝet of tender age, so seiþ Marianus, libro primo. Of þis Ilus þe mayny[5] þat is i-cleped Familia Iliorum hadde þat name. Sampson was iuge in Israel twenty ȝere. In his tyme byfel þat þe fables telleth of Vlixes[6] of Grecia, how he fleigh Scylla and Sirenes. Þerof spekeþ Palephatus[7] libro primo Incredibilum, and seiþ þat Scylla was a womman þat vsede to robbe hir gestes, and seiþ þat Sirenes were hoores þat bygiled men þat seillede on þe see. Also þat tyme Orestes slow Pyrrhus[8] of Egipt in Appolyn Delphicus his temple. Also som telleþ þat Homerus was þat

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

whiche was adnecte to the realme off Latynes by ccc. yere, of whom the kynges of Latynes were callede Albani. *Eutropius.* This Ascanius norischede for pite his broþer Siluius Posthumus, geten of Lauinia[2] his stappemoder after the dethe of his fader, whiche was callede Posthumus, in that he was borne after the dethe of his fader. He was callede Siluius, for he was norySchede in a woode; of whom kynges of Latynes were namede Siluii afterwarde. To whom Ascanius, after that he hade reignede xxx^{ti}viij. [yere], lefte that realme, in that Iulus his son was but of tendre age, as Marianus rehersethe, libro primo. Sampson was gouernoure in Israel xx^{ti} yere; in whose tyme those thynges happede of Vlixes the Greke, after the fables, that he causede Scylla and Sirenes to flee, of whom Palephatus,[6] libro primo Incredibilium, rehersethe, seyenge that Scilla was a woman wonte to spoyle here gestes, and Sirenes to be commune women whiche deceyvede men saylenge, in that Pyrrhus was sleyne of Orestes in the temple of Apollo Delphicus in the tymes of men of Egipte. In whiche tyme somme men saye Omerus the poete to haue bene, of the tyme of whom greet

---

[1] *Postumus*, MS., here and usually (not always) below. A few very slight errors in spelling proper names below have been tacitly corrected.

[2] *Lavina*, MSS. and Cx.

[3] Sentence varied in Cx.

[4] So Cx.; *of*, MS.

[5] *meyne*, Cx.

[6] So Cx.; *Flixes*, MS., as before.

[7] *Palefattus*, MS.; *Polefatus*, Harl. MS.

[8] *Pirus*, MS.; *Pirrus*, Cx., Harl. MS.

De Homeri ætate.

De cujus tempore apud veteres magna dissonantia est; nam quidam centesimo anno, alii centesimo[1] quadragesimo anno, nonnulli centesimo octogesimo anno, alii ducentesimo quadragesimo[2] anno post eversam Trojam fuisse perhibent; quidam[3] ante Trojam eversam[4] fuisse putant. Huc usque liber Judicum annos trecentos[5] sub duodecim judicibus numerat.

Cap. XXVII.

Hely, [etiam de Bruto, et de rerum Britannicarum primordiis].[6]

Heli.

Anno Abr. 870. Anno Hely 1.

Hely sacerdos judicavit Israel post Sampsonem quadraginta annis, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, et secundum Josephum libro sexto; sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes Hely præsedit populo[7] viginti annis. In cujus diebus facta fame in terra Israel contigit historia Ruth[8] Moabitidis. Hectoris filii receperunt[9] Ilium, id est Trojam,[10] expulsis posteris Antenoris, opitulante Heleno filio Priami.[11] Latinorum[12] tertius Silvius Posthumus, filius Æneæ et frater[13] Ascanii, ex Lavinia noverca progenitus,[14] cœpit regnare; et regnavit triginta

Hectoris filii Trojam recuperant.

Anno Abr. 888. Anno Hely 18.

---

[1] *anno . . . centesimo*] om. B.
[2] 200°., C.D.
[3] *diu*, ins. C.D.
[4] *captam*, C.D.
[5] 200, C.D.
[6] MSS. have *Hely* only, for title.
[7] *Hely præsedit populo*] om. C.D.
[8] *Ruth*] om. C.D.
[9] *receperunt*] So A.B.C.D.; *ceperunt*, E.
[10] *id est Trojam*] om. C.D.
[11] Slightly transposed in C.D.
[12] *Latinus*, Gale.
[13] *frater*] om. Gale.
[14] *progenitus*] om. C.D.

tyme. But to speke of his tyme, olde men discordeþ. For som meneþ[1] þat he was an hondred ȝere, some an hondred ȝere and fourty, some an hondred ȝere and foure score, som two hondred ȝere and fourty after þat Troye was destroyed, and some troweþ þat he was to fore þat Troye was destroyed.[2] Hyderto þe book of Iuges, liber Iudicum, acounteþ þre hondred ȝere vnder twelue iuges. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum. Hely.

HELY þe preost after Sampson was iuge in Israel fourty ȝere; so seiþ Isidorus libro quinto, and Iosephus libro sexto; but þe Seuenty telleþ þat Hely was ouer þe peple twenty ȝere. In his dayes fil a greet[3] honger in þe lond of Israel; and þe storie of Ruth, þat was of Moab, fil in his tyme. Hector his children took Ilium, þat is Troye, and putte out Antenor his ofspringe by helpe of Helenus, Priamus his sone. Siluius Posthumus, Eneas his sone, and Ascanius his broþer, i-gete of his stepdame Lauinia, was þe þridde kyng of Latyns, and bygan to reigne and reigned nyne and þritty ȝere; in þe

---

dissonaunce is hade amonge olde men, for somme men say that he was in the c. yere, other in the cxl^{ti} yere, and mony men in the clxxx., after the takenge of Troye. And mony men suppose that Omerus was a fore the takenge of Troye. The booke of Iudicum nowmbrethe ccc. yere vn to thys tyme, vnder xij. dukes and gouernoures. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

ELY the preste was gouernoure in Israel, after Sampson, xl^{ti} yere, after Ysidor, libro quinto, and after Iosephus, libro sexto; but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, Hely was gouernoure by xx^{ti} yere. In the tyme of whom the story of Ruth Moabitidis happede, a grete hungre beenge that tyme in Israel. The sonnes of Hector recurede and toke þe cite of Troye, expellenge the succession of Antenor, thro helpe off Helenus son off Priamus. Siluius Posthumus, son of Eneas, geten of Lauinia, brother to Ascanius, the thrydde kynge of Latynes, began to reigne; whiche reignede xxx^{ti} yeres þer. In whiche yere Brutus, son of Siluius,

---

[1] *saye*, Cx.

[2] The text of this sentence as in α. β. γ. The numbers are confused in MS.

[3] So α. and Cx. (who has *felle*); *fil greet*, MS.

Brutus, filius Silvii Postumi, Britanniam occupat.

novem[1] annis. Quo[2] anno Brutus, filius Silvii, filii Ascanii, secundum historicos[3] Britanniam occupavit. *Ranulphus.*[4] De patre istius[5] Bruti historiæ videntur dissonare. Nam Britonum historia dicit istum Brutum fuisse filium Silvii, filii[6] Ascanii; sed historia[7] Romana dicit Ascanium genuisse Iulum,[8] a quo familia Juliorum[9] exorta est, nullam penitus[10] de Silvio faciens mentionem. Nisi ergo[11] iste Iulus[12] fuerit binomius, et dictus Silvius, altera dictarum[13] historiarum vacillat.[14] Nam cum Brutus iste asseratur patrem suum venando quindennis[15] occidisse, et Silvius Posthumus secundum omnes historicos sit[16] filius Æneæ, non filius Ascanii, diuque post[17] non occisus vixerit et[18] regnaverit: liquet profecto quod iste Silvius Posthumus non sit pater Bruti; nisi forsan[19] quia historia Romana dicit Ascanium post mortem Æneæ Silvium Posthumum summa pietate educasse, ob hoc[20] patrem ejus[21] putandum fore. Quod quidem[22] indubitanter admitterem, si Silvius Posthumus a Bruto filio occisus minime legeretur.

Historia Bruti narratur.

Gaufridus et Alfridus. Hic igitur Brutus, quia matrem in puerperio et patrem postmodum[23] quindennis occidit,[24] idcirco de Italia pulsus Græciam adiit;

[1] *quinque*, Gale.
[2] *Hoc*, C.D.
[3] *secundum historicos*] om. C.D.
[4] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[5] *illius*, C. (not D.)
[6] *filii*] om. Gale.
[7] *historia quoque*, C.D.
[8] *Julium*, B.
[9] *Iulorum*, E. (not A.B.D.)
[10] *penitus*] om. C.D.
[11] *igitur*, A.D.
[12] *Julius*, B.
[13] *istarum*, B.
[14] *multum nutat*, C.D.
[15] *quindennis venando*, B.
[16] *sit*] om. C.D. (having *Ascanii fuerit.*)
[17] *Ascanium*, ins. C.D.
[18] *vixerit et*] om. C.D.
[19] *forte*, B.
[20] *ob hoc*] ideo, C.D.
[21] *suum*, B.
[22] *quidem*] om. C.D.
[23] *renatu*, ins. A.B.; *renatu ut fertur*, ins. C.D.
[24] *occiderat*, B.

TREVISA.

whiche ȝere Brut, Siluius his sone, þat was Ascanius his sone, occupied Britayne, as stories telleþ. R.[1] Hit semeþ þat stories discordeþ, þat telleþ of þis Brute his fader; for þe storie of Britouns seiþ þat þis Brut was Siluius his sone, [þe whiche Siluius was Ascanius his sone].[2] But þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Ascanius gat Iulus, of þe whiche come the mayny, Familia Iuliorum, and makeþ noon mencioun of Siluius. Þan bot[3] þis Iulus hadde tweie names, and were i-cleped Siluius also, þat[4] oon of þe stories failleþ. For me seiþ þat þis Brute, whan he was fiftene ȝere olde, slouȝ his fader at hontynge; and alle stories telleþ þat Siluius Posthumus was Eneas his sone, and nouȝt Ascanius sone, and leued long age[5] afterward vnslawe, and regned also. Þanne hit is sooþ þat þis Siluius Posthumus was nouȝt Brute his fader, bote vppon caas for þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Ascanius after Eneas his deth norsched vp tenderliche Siluius Posthumus, þerfore he is acounted his fader. Herto I wolde assente wiþ oute doute, ner þat me redeþ þat Siluius was i-slawe of his sone Brute. *Gaufridus.* Þis Brute slowh his moder in his burþe, and his fader afterward an[6] hontynge, whan he was fifteuene ȝere olde. Þerfore he was i-putte out of Italy, and went into Grees, and

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

son of Ascanius, after storyes, began to occupye Briteyne. R. Storyes seme to discorde moche of the fader of Brute. For the storye of Britones seythe Brute to haue bene the son of Siluius, son to Ascanius. But the story of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue geten Iulus, makenge no mencion of Siluius: with owte þis Iulus hade ij. names, and [was] callede Siluius, the oon story faylethe. For hit ys seide that this Brute, of xv. yere in age, did sle his fader in huntenge, and Siluius Posthumus, after alle storyes, was the son of Eneas, and not the son of Ascanius, reignenge and lyvenge longe after that; but perauenture that the storye of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue noryschede þro pite Siluius Posthumus after the dethe of Eneas, and for that to haue bene trawede his fader. Whiche thynge y wolde admitte, if hit were not redde that Siluius Posthumus was sleyne of Brute his son. *Giraldus.* This Brute, whiche did sle his moder in the childenge, and also when he was of xv. yere in age, he did slee his fader in huntenge; wherefore Brute, putte from Ytaly, wente to the londe

---

[1] R.] added from α. β. γ. (not in Cx.)
[2] Added from α. β. γ.
[3] *if*, Cx.
[4] *þe*, α. γ. (not β. or Cx.)
[5] *longe after*, α. β. γ., Cx.
[6] *at*, Cx.

ubi [1] ope Trojanorum Pandrasum [2] regem Græcorum devicit, filiamque regis Pandrasi Innogen desponsavit, Trojanos liberavit; deinde enavigans,[3] responso Dianæ accepto, Africam appulit.[4] Inde aris Philænorum,[5] lacu salinarum, flumine Maluæ, columnisque Herculis pertransitis, Tyrrhenum æquor apprehendit; ac [6] reperto ibidem Corineo [7] ad Acquitanniam pervenit; ubi Gophario [8] Pictavorum duce devicto, (sed Turno, Bruti nepote, apud urbem Turnip [9] seu Turonensem,[10] de nomine suo dictam, occiso,) prosperis velis insulam Britanniæ apud Totonesium [11] litus in Cornubia tenuit. In qua primus monarcha[12] effectus[13] gigantes incolas [14] destruxit. Insulam a nomine suo Britanniam, sociosque suos Britones vocavit, Cornubiam Corineo tradidit, urbem Trinovantum, quasi Novam Trojam, quæ nunc Londonia,[15] super Thamisim fluvium construxit. Tres filios, Locrinum, Cambrum, et Albanactum, progenuit; et, postquam viginti quatuor annis insulam rexisset, decessit. Sicyoniorum [16] reges defecerunt, qui [17] centum lxij. annis regnaverant.[18]

Bruti filii.

---

1 *ubi*] om. C.D.

2 So A.D.; *Prandrasum*, E.

3 *enavigans*] so A.B.; *navigans*, D.E.

4 Slightly varied and abbreviated in C.D.

5 *Philencorum*, B.

6 *ac*] om. C.D.

7 *Corneo*, B.; *Corrineo*, D.

8 *Sophario*, A.; *Goffario*, D.; *Gaphario*, Gale.

9 *Turnei*, B.; *Turnew*, Gale.

10 *Tureñ*, A.; *Turonis*, D.; *Turon*, Gale.

11 *Totenestium*, B.

12 *monarchia*, C. (not D.)

13 *effectus*] om. C.D.

14 *inhabitantes*, C.D.

15 *London*, Gale.

16 *Schicioniorum*, B.; *Scicionorum*, E.

17 *postquam*, E.

18 *post quos sacerdotes constituit sunt*, ins. C.D.

TREVISA.

þere by help of þe Troians he ouercome Pandrasus þe kyng of Grees, and wedded Pandrasus þe kynges douȝter Innoges. Sche[1] delyuered þe Troians, and seillede þennes, and hadde answere of þe goddes, and londede in Affrica. Þan he passede þe aunteres[2] of Philenes, þe lake þat hatte Lacus Salinarum, þe salt lake, þe ryuer þat hatte[3] Malue, and Hercules his pilers, and com in to þe see Tyren, and fonde þere Corinius,[4] and wente into Gyan, and ouercome þere Gopharnys,[5] duke of Peytow. And Turnus, Brute his neuew, was i-slawe at a citee þat heet Turnupt[6] oþer Taroun[7] by his owne name. And þanne Brute hadde good wynde, and seilled into Britayne, and helde Bretayne at þe clif of Totenes in Cornewayle, and was first kyng of Bretayne al hoole, and destroyed þe geantes þat wonede þerynne; and cleped þe ilond Bretayne by his owne name, and cleped his felawes Britouns, and bytake[8] Cornewayle to Cor[i]neus, and bulde a citee, and cleped hit Trinouantum, as it were Newe Troye. Þat citee nowe hatte Londoun, and is vppon Themise.[9] Brut gat þre sones, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and deyde whan he hadde i-regned foure and twenty ȝere in þe ilond. Þe kynges of Scicions[10] faillede whan þey hadde i-reigned an hondred ȝere

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

of Grece, ouercommenge Pandrasus, kynge of hit, thro the helpe of the Troianes, and did wedde Ymogen his doȝhter, and delyuerede the Troianes; whiche saylenge from that cuntre, hauenge an answere of Diana, londede at Affrike. After that he entrede in to the see of Tirus, whiche fyndenge there Corineus, brouȝhte hym in his companye to Acquitannye; whiche ouercommenge Gepharyus, the duke of Pictaues, and Turnus, the son of the suster to Brute, dedde, at Turnip, or elles Tiroune, callede after his name, come to Briteyne, to Totenese in Cornewaile. In whom he, occupienge the monarchye, destroyede gigantes that inhabite that cuntre, namenge that yle Briteyne, and his felawes Britones; ȝiffenge to Corineus Cornewaile; made a cite on the water of Thamys, callenge hit Urbs Trinouantum, as Newe Troye, callede now London. Whiche gate iij. childer, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus, dienge after that he hade gouernede that yle xxiiij. yere. The kynges of Scitia faylede, whiche hade reignede a clxij. yere; after that prestes

The cite of London was edifiede by Brute.

---

[1] *He*, α. β., Cx., correctly.

[2] *auenters*, Cx.; but *auters* (*altars*) is doubtless the true reading, and so β. γ.

[3] *þat hatte*] om. α. β. γ.

[4] *Corneus*, Cx.

[5] *Gopharyns*, Cx.

[6] *Turnip*, α. β. γ.

[7] *Turon*, α. (Cx. has *Turon owther Turon*).

[8] *bytook*, α.

[9] *Temse*, α.

[10] Read *Sicyon*.

De Samuel propheta.

Samuel post mortem Hely judicavit Israel annis duodecim, secundum Josephum libro octavo; cum tamen Scriptura de hoc taceat. A quo tempora prophetarum incipiunt; cujus anno tertio David natus est.[1] [2] Iste Samuel judex et propheta[3] primus[4] instituit cuneos et[5] conventus psallentium religiosorum; qui etiam dicebantur psallere,[6] id est, jugiter Deum laudare.[7] Postmodum[8] sub Saule judicavit annis octodecim.

Anno Abr. 910. Anno Samuel 1.

Anno Abr. 911. Anno Samuel 2.

Locrinus, filius Bruti, in Britannia regnat.

Locrinus, filius[9] Bruti,[10] [11] cœpit regnare quasi super tertiam partem insulæ Britannicæ; a meridiano scilicet[12] freto usque ad Humbrum fluvium,[13] quam partem[14] Loegriam[15] nomine suo nuncupavit,[16] sicut[17] supra libro primo de Britannia dictum est. Sed, Albanacto fratre suo occiso, et Cambro tertio fratre defuncto, Locrinus post vicesimum annum regni sui occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildam intulerat. Guendolena post maritum regnavit quindecim annis.[17]

---

[1] *nascitur*, C.D.

[2] *Petrus*, ins. A.B.D.

[3] *judex et propheta*] om. A.B.C.D.

[4] *primo*, B.

[5] *cuneos et*] om. A.B.C.D.

[6] *prophetare*, A.B.C.D.

[7] *Deum laudare*] laudabant, C.D.

[8] *Post hoc*. This sentence transposed before the preceding one in C.D.

[9] *filius*] primogenitus, A.C.D.

[10] *Locrinus primogenitus Bruti*, B., Gale.

[11] *hoc anno*, ins. C.D.

[12] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[13] *Humbram*, Gale; *usque flumen Humbrum*, B.

[14] *insulæ*, ins. A.B.

[15] *a*, ins. C.D., Gale.

[16] *appellavit*, C.D.

[17] *sicut . . . annis*] Camber vero illam partem tenuit quæ est ultra Sabrinam usque ad occidentalem oceanum; quam a nomine suo Cambriam vocavit.* At Albanactus transhumbranas partes ad boream adiit, terramque ex nomine suo Albaniam vocavit. Quo tandem a rege Hunorum Humbro superveniente interfecto, Cambroque postmodum defuncto, Locrinus solus regnum tenuit, ac post decem regni annos occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildem superinductam intulerat, C.D. After which, Guendolena post eum quindecim annis regnum tenuit, C. (only).

* *appellavit Cambriam*, D.

þre score and tweyne. Samuel after Hely was iuge in Israel twelfe ȝere; so seiþ Iosephus, libro octavo, noþeles þe Skripture spekeþ nouȝt þerof. From his tyme bygan þe tymes of prophetes, tempora prophetarum. [And][1] in his þridde ȝere Dauid was i-bore. *Petrus.* Þis Samuel ordeyned first companye of clerkes and queres forto synge; and þan me seide þat þey prophecied, þat is to menynge, þei worschipped God bysiliche. Afterward Samuel was iuge in Israel vnder Saul eiȝtene ȝere. Locrinus, Brute his eldest sone, bygan to reigne as it were vppon þe souþ see to þe ryuer of Homber,[2] and cleped þat partye of þe ilond Loegria, þat is Engelond, as it is i-seide in þe firste book in þe chapitre of Briteyne. But Albanactus was i-slawe, and Camber deide; and Locrinus, after þat þey[3] hadde i-regned twenty ȝere, was i-slawe also in [a][4] batayle þat his wif Guendolena ȝaf hym, by cause of a strompet þat heet Estrilda. And Guendolena reigned aftir hire housbonde fiftene ȝere. TREVISA.

---

were made iugges and gouernoures. Samuel was gouernoure in Israel xij. yere after the dethe of Ely, after Iosephus libro octavo; but the story dothe not expresse that from whom the tymes of prophetes began, in the thrydde yere of whom kynge Dauid was borne. *Petrus.* This Samuel ordeynede conuentes of religious men, whiche were seide also to prophecy, that is, to lawde Godde. Locrinus, the firste son of Brute, began to reigne as on the thrydde parte of Briteyne, from the sowthe see of hit vn to the water of Humbre, whiche parte he callede Loegria, after his name. Albanactus his brother sleyne, and Camber the thrydde brother dedde, Locrinus was sleyne in batelle after the xx^ti^ yere of his reigne, whiche batelle Guendolena his wife movede for an hoore callede Estrilda, whiche reignede after her howsebonde xv. yere. MS. HARL. 2261.

Religion began.

---

[1] Added from α. β. γ. and Cx.
[2] *Humber*, α.
[3] *he*, α.
[4] Added from α. β. γ. (not in Cx.)

Cap. XXVIII.

Saul. [*Plura de Græcia, item de Britannia. Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.*][1]

Saul primus rex Israel.

Anno Abr. 922. Anno Saul 1.

Saul de tribu Benjamin, primus rex Hebræorum, secundum Josephum regnavit viginti annis; de quibus Sacra[2] Scriptura tacet. *Petrus, capitulo quinto.*[3] Nam Saul, vivente Samuele,[4] regnavit octodecim annis, et post mortem ejus[5] duobus annis. [6] Latinorum quartus Æneas Silvius, filius Posthumi, cœpit regnare; et regnavit xxxi.[7] annis. *Ranulphus.* Secundum aliquas historias frater Posthumi Latinus Silvius ponitur quartus, et iste Æneas Silvius ponitur quintus; sed hoc in[8] loco iste Æneas ponitur quartus.[9]

Anno Abr. 927. Anno Saul 6.

Codrus Athenis regnat.

Atheniensium dux septimusdecimus Codrus, Melanthi filius, cœpit regnare, et regnavit xxi. annis; post cujus mortem defecerunt reges Atheniensium[10] *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.*[11] [12] Rebellantibus Peloponnesensibus[13] contra Athenienses responsum est per oraculum, quod illi forent victores quorum dux occideretur; unde[14] militibus ante omnia indicta est Codri[15] regis custodia. Rex tamen Codrus, assumpto pauperis habitu, sarmenta[16] collo gerens castra hostium ingreditur; ubi in turba, jurgio provocato a milite quem falce vulneraverat, occiditur.[17] Quo cognito Dorienses[18] absque bello discedunt,[19] Athenienses

---

[1] MSS. have *Saul* only, for title.

[2] *Sacra*] om. B.

[3] C.D. omit reference; A.B. omit *capitulo quinto.*

[4] *Samuel, vivente Saul,* B.

[5] *mortem ejus*] eum, C.D.

[6] *Petrus,* ins. C.D.

[7] *xiii.,* Gale.

[8] *in*] om. B.

[9] *sed . . . . quartus*] om. C.D., which insert: Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 9.

[10] *Athenienses,* D.

[11] C.D. transpose reference as above.

[12] *De isto Codro legitur quod,* ins. C.D.

[13] *Peloponensibus,* MSS., as usual.

[14] *et,* ins. A.B.

[15] *Codri*] om. B.

[16] *armamenta,* B.

[17] *interficitur,* D. The latter part slightly abbreviated in C. (not D.)

[18] *Peloponenses,* C.D.

[19] *descendunt,* A.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. Saul. TREVISA.

SAUL of þe lynage of Beniamyn was þe firste kyng of Hebrewes, and regned twenty ȝere; so seiþ Iosephus. Of þe whiche ȝeres þe Scripture spekeþ not. *Petrus.* For Saul regnede eiȝtene ȝere while Samuel lyuede, and two ȝere after his deth. Þe fourþe kyng of Latyns, Eneas Siluius, was Posthumus his sone, and bygan to regne and regned oon and þritty ȝere. In som stories Posthumus his brother, Latinus Siluius,[1] is i-sette þe fourþe, and[2] þis Eneas is i-sette þe fifte. But in þis place þis Eneas schal be sette þe fourþe. Þe seuenteþe duke of Athene, Codrus, Melanthus[3] his sone, bygan to reigne, and regnede oon and twenty ȝere. After his deth kynges of Athene faillede. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.* Þe Peloponens, men of Thessalia, weren rebel aȝenst men of Athene. Þanne was answere i-ȝeue of[4] þe goddes, þat in wheþer side þe duke were i-slawe, þat side schulde haue þe maistrye. Þerfore þe knyȝtes were i-charged ouer al þing to take good kepe of kyng Codrus. Noþeles Codrus took a pore manis cloþinge and a burþen of fagettes on his nekke, and entrede in to þe strengþe of his enemyes. And þere was strif arered amonge þe peple; and a knyȝt slow hym, þat he hadde raþer i-wounded wiþ an hook. Whan þat was i-knowe þe Doreyns[5] wente away wiþ oute

---

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. MS. HARL. 2261.

SAUL, of the tribe of Beniamyn, firste kynge off men of Hebrewe, reignede xx^ti yere, after Iosephus, whom Holy Scripture expressethe not. *Petrus.* For, Samuel lyvenge, Saul reignede xviij. yere, and ij. yere after his dethe. Eneas Siluius, the son of Siluius Posthumus, the iiij^the kynge of Latynes, began to reigne, whiche reignede xxxi^ti yere. Codrus, the son of Melanthus,[3] the xvij^the duke of Athenes, began to reigne, whiche reignede xxxj^ti yere, after the dethe of whom kynges of Athenes faylede. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo* 14°. Men of Peloponense beynge rebellous ageyne men of Athenes, an answere was ȝifen that theke parte scholde haue þe victory, the gouernoure of whom scholde be sleyne; wherefore the knyȝhtes were commaundede that thei scholde not slee kynge Codrus in eny wyse. Neuertheles kynge Codrus, clothenge hym in a vile habite, berenge as kyttenges of trees in his necke, come amonge the companyes of his enmyes, where, a stryfe movede, Codrus was sleyne of a knyȝhte whom he hade woundede with a sythe. Whiche thynge y-knowen, men callede Dorienses wente from batelle, and men off Athenes

---

[1] *Siluinus*, MS. (not Cx.)
[2] So α. and Cx.; *in*, MS.
[3] *Melantus*, MSS.
[4] So α. β. γ.; *to*, MS.
[5] *that coreus*, Cx.

liberantur. Maluit enim Codrus mori dummodo[1] vincerent sui, quam vivere suis superatis. Post cujus mortem apud Athenas[2] respublica per magistratus diu administrata est; solaque libido dominantium pro lege erat; quousque[3] Solon,[4] insignis legum conditor, in ducem[5] eligeretur.

Post mortem Codri res publica mutatur.

Maddan rex Britanniæ.

Maddan,[6] filius Locrini et Guendolenæ,[7] regnavit apud Britannos[8] quadraginta annis, genuitque Mempricium et Maulum. Anno Abr. 936. Anno Saul 15.

Amazones invadunt Asiam.

Saul cum filiis suis[9] occiditur in Monte Gelboe.

Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.

Et sic terminatur tertia ætas seculi ab ortu Abrahæ usque ad regnum David; habens annos, secundum Isidorum,[10] nongentos quadraginta octo, per generationes quatuordecim; sed[11] secundum utramque editionem,[12] habet[13] annos nongentos quadraginta duos. *Ranulphus.* Hæc diversitas[14] emergit ex hoc,[15] quod Isidorus dicit Samuelem et Saulem præfuisse populo Israel quadraginta annis; cum tamen Josephus, libro octavo, et Magister in historiis dicant Samuelem præfuisse[16] duodecim annis solum,[17] et post illum[18] Saulem regnasse viginti annis.[19]

---

1 *dum*, C.D.
2 *apud Athenas*] om. C,D.
3 *usque*, B.
4 So B.; *Salon*, A.C.D.E.
5 *judicem*, B.
6 So A.B.D., Gale; *Maudan*, E.
7 *Gvedalene*, A.
8 *apud Britones*, A.; *in Britanniam*, C.D.
9 *suis*] om. C.D.
10 *quinto libro*, ins. A.B.D.
11 *sed*] om. A.
12 *sed . . . editionem*] secundum vulgarem editionem, B.
13 *habens*, C.D.
14 *Ista autem varietas*, C.D.
15 *eo*, C.D.
16 *populo . . . præfuisse*] om. B.
17 *solus*, A.D.E.; *se solo*, B.
18 *post illum*] postmodum, D.
19 Slightly transposed in C.D

bataile, and þe Athenes were delyuered. Codrus were leuere deye and his men haue þe maistrie, þan lyue and his men be ouercome. After his deeþ þe commounalte of Athene was gouerned by maistres. For þere was no lawe bot likynge of lordeschippe, forto þat Solon[1] þe noble makere of lawes was i-chose to iuge.[2] Maddan, Locrinus his sone, on Guendolena[3] i-gete, regnede fourty ȝere among þe Britouns, and gat Mempricius and Maulus. Þe Amazones werreþ in Asia. Saul and his children beeþ i-slawe in þe hille, Mont Gelboe. And so endeþ þe þridde age of þe world from þe burþe of Abraham to þe kyngdom of Dauid. Isidorus libro quinto seiþ þat the þridde age of þe worlde conteyneþ nyne hondred ȝere and two[4] and fourty by fourtene generaciouns. But eiþer translacioun seiþ þat þe þridde age of þe world conteyneþ nyne hondred ȝere and two and fourty. R. Þis dyuersite bifalleþ for Isidorus seiþ þat Samuel and Saul rulede þe peple fourty ȝere; noþeles Iosephus, libro octavo, and þe Maister of Stories telleþ[5] þat Samuel rulede þe peple allone twelue ȝere, and after hym Saul regnede twenty ȝere. TREVISA.

---

were delyuerede. For Codrus wyllede rather to dye, that his subiectes myȝhte be victores, then for to lyve his subiectes oppressede. After the dethe of whom eny man reignede there after his pleasure, vn tille that Solon,[1] the nowble man and maker of theire lawes, was electe in to theire gouernoure. Maddan, the son of Locrinus, reignede on the Britones xl^{ti} yere, whiche gate Mempricius and Maulus. The Amazones entrede in to Asia. Saul was sleyne with his sonnes in the hilles of Gelboe. And so the thrydde age off the worlde is terminate, for[6] the byrthe of Abraham vn to the reigne of kynge Dauid, hauenge after Ysidor, libro 5°, ix^{c} yere and xlviij., by xiiij. generaciones, and after oþer ix^{c}. xlij. yere. R. This diuersite of yeres may be causede of that thynge, that Ysidorus seythe Samuel and Saul to haue rewlede the peple of Israel xl^{ti} yere. But Iosephus seythe, libro octavo, and the Maister of storyes, Samuel to haue ben gouernoure in Israel oonly xij. yere, and Saul to haue reignede after hym xx^{ti} yere. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Salon*, MSS. and Cx.

[2] So *a.*; *iuges*, MS.; *was chosen iugge*, Cx.

[3] So Cx.; *Guendelona*, MS.

[4] *eyȝte*, *a.*, Cx..

[5] *acorden*, Cx.

[6] So Harl. MS.; probably a clerical error for *fro*.

END OF VOL. II.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[—750.—4/69.]